













*The Book of the First  
American Chess Congress.*

NEW YORK, 1857.





DEDICATED  
WITH  
THE HIGHEST ESTEEM AND ADMIRATION  
TO  
PAUL MORPHY

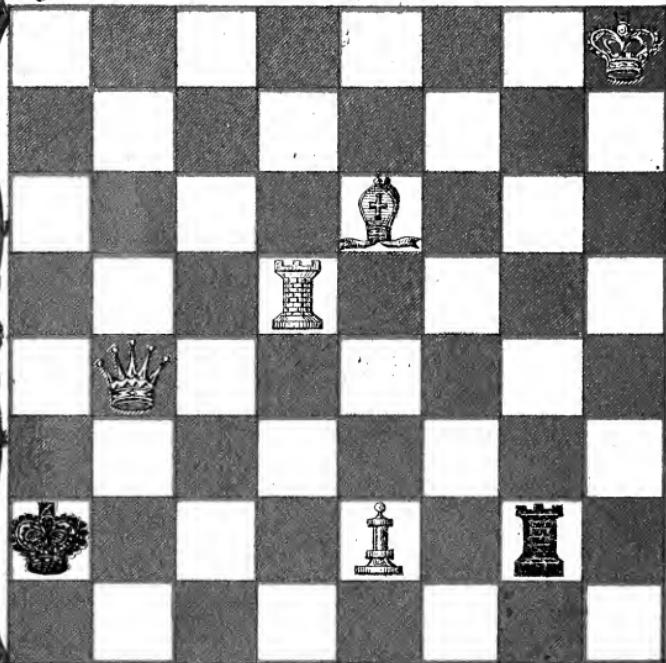
By

THE ONLY.

CHESS PROBLEMS

BLACK

E.B.C.



White to play and force Black to  
mate in Sixty-eight moves.

C. T.

Rudd & Carleton, 130 Grand St., N.Y.

Fiske, Willard

351

# THE BOOK OF THE FIRST

## AMERICAN CHESS CONGRESS :

CONTAINING THE PROCEEDINGS OF THAT CELEBRATED ASSEMBLAGE, HELD  
IN NEW YORK, IN THE YEAR 1857, WITH THE PAPERS READ IN ITS  
SESSIONS, THE GAMES PLAYED IN THE GRAND TOURNAMENT,  
AND THE STRATAGEMS ENTERED IN THE PROBLEM TOUR-  
NAY ; TOGETHER WITH SKETCHES OF THE HISTORY  
OF CHESS IN THE OLD AND NEW WORLDS.

BY

DANIEL WILLARD FISKE, M.A.



NEW YORK:

RUDD & CARLETON, 130 GRAND STREET,  
(BROOKS BUILDING, COR. OF BROADWAY.)

MDCCCLIX.

GV 1455  
.F5

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by  
**RUDD & CARLETON,**

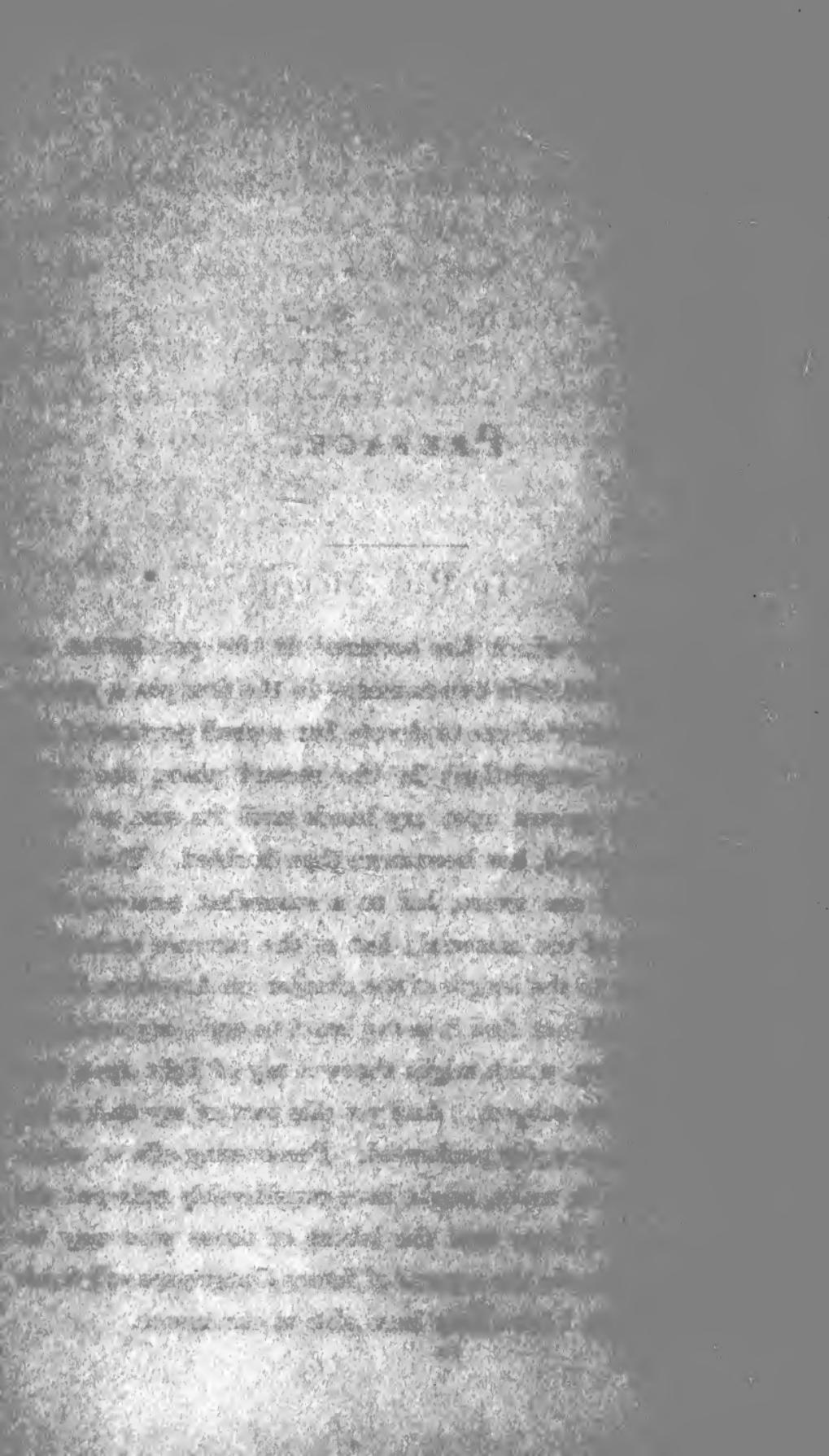
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

---

**R. CRAIGHEAD,**  
Stereotyper and Electrotypier,  
Carton Building,  
81, 83, and 85 Centre Street.

To PAUL MORPHY,

THE HERO OF THAT AMERICAN TOURNAMENT WHOSE STORY IS HERE  
TOLD, AND THE CONQUEROR UPON THE TRADITIONARY BATTLE  
FIELDS OF EUROPE, I DEDICATE THIS BOOK WITH EVERY  
SENTIMENT OF ESTEEM AND FRIENDSHIP.



## P R E F A C E .

---

THE long delay which has occurred in the publication of this volume arises from two causes:—In the first place, graver avocations permitted me to devote but a small portion of my leisure to its compilation; in the second place, the work has gradually grown upon my hands until its size, as originally contemplated, has been more than doubled. This latter fact has, as I am aware, led to a somewhat unmethedical arrangement of the material; but as the increase in bulk is mainly owing to the length of the chapter on American Chess history, I could not find it in my heart to omit any incident, however trifling, which might throw a ray of light upon that hitherto obscure subject. And yet this part of my task is far from being thoroughly performed. Persevering efforts, which I had no time to make, might have considerably enlarged the chapter; and I hope that the labors of those who may be selected to compile the reports of future Congresses will finish the work which I have only been able to commence.

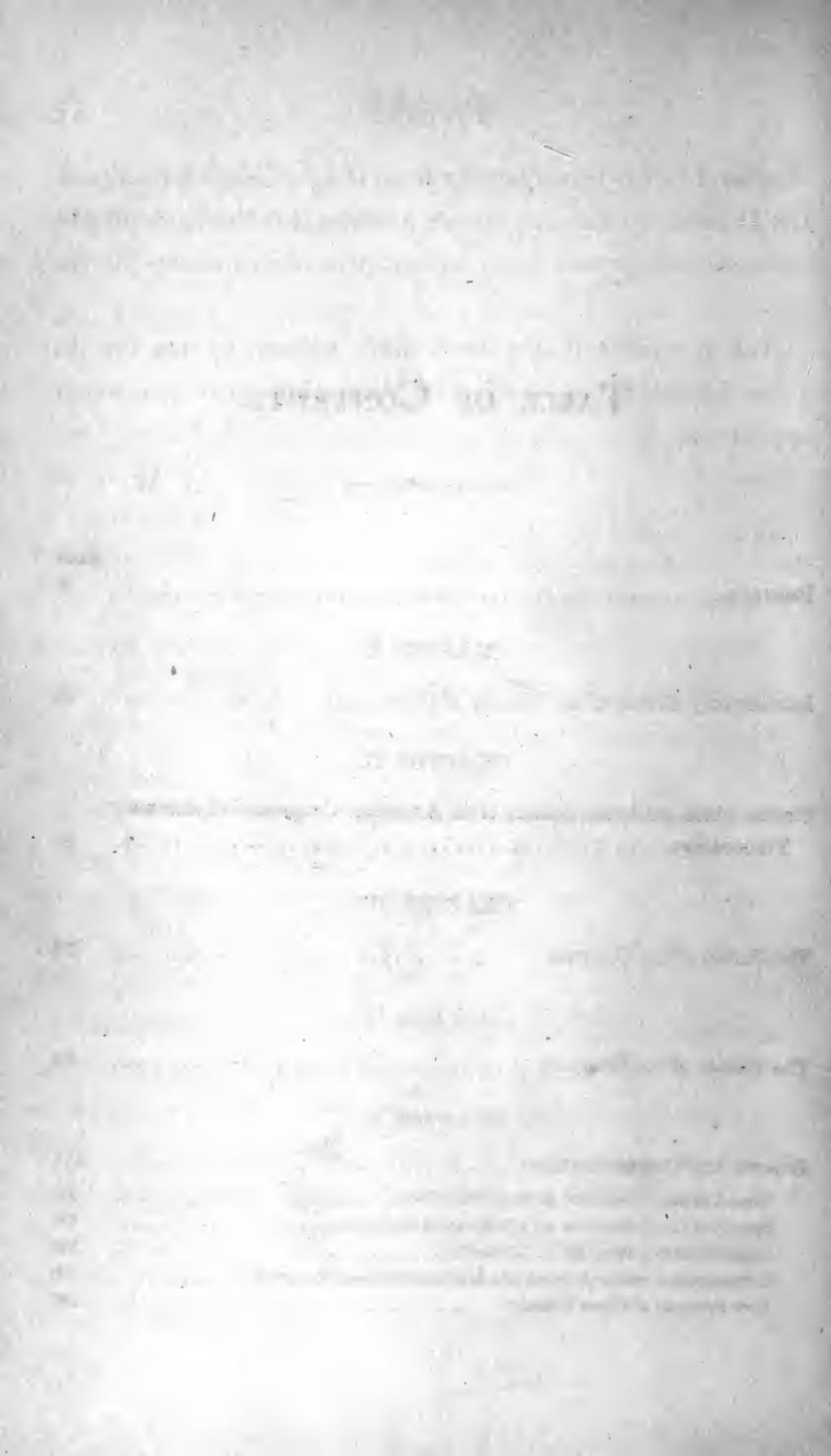
To Mr. GEORGE ALLEN, Greek Professor in the University of Pennsylvania, I am indebted not only for the pleasant narrative of the Automaton Chess-player's American career and for the account of Chess in Philadelphia—which cover, in fact, the most original and interesting pages of the book—but for much useful counsel and assistance during the progress of the work. To the obliging researches of Mr. WILLIAM H. KENT, of Boston, I owe the Life of Benjamin Lynde Oliver, and the very full sketch of Chess in the capital of New England. Mr. EUGENE B. COOK, of Hoboken, has, at my request, selected and arranged the problems composing the eighth chapter, with a skill and care which he alone possesses, and has contributed the beautiful and elaborate position which forms the frontispiece. To my kind and distinguished friend, Mr. PAUL MORPHY, the reader is under obligations for comments to several of the games in the Grand Tournament. Mr. J. LÖWENTHAL, of London, with his customary courtesy, contributed the narrative of his sojourn in this country. In writing the diary of proceedings in the third chapter, I found myself greatly aided by the daily reports in the New York journals, and chiefly by those from the pen of Mr. FREDERICK M. EDGE, who performed the duties of an assistant Secretary to the Congress with zeal and assiduity. Mr. H. R. AGNEL, Professor of French and Spanish in the United States Military Academy at West Point, Mr. CHARLES A. MAURIAN of New Orleans, and many other correspondents have given me information more or less important in reference to the Chess events of the past. And in the first

chapter I have drawn largely from the published writings of Dr. DUNCAN FORBES, of King's College, London, one of the first orientalists and most ardent Chess enthusiasts of the age.

A few articles in the book were written by me for the *Chess Monthly*, in which periodical they have previously appeared.

D. W. F.

NEW YORK, *August*, 1859.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
PREFACE.....	7
CHAPTER I.	
Introductory Sketch of the History of Chess.....	13
CHAPTER II.	
Causes which led to the holding of an American Congress—Preliminary Proceedings .....	49
CHAPTER III.	
The Period of the Congress.....	66
CHAPTER IV.	
The Dinner of the Congress .....	96
CHAPTER V.	
Reports and Communications .....	111
Report of the Committee on the Chess Code .....	111
Report of the Committee on a National Association .....	123
Communication from Mr. J. Löwenthal.....	125
Communication on the Subject of a Mechanical Chess Recorder.....	135
New Systems of Chess Notation.....	137

**Contents.**

	PAGE
<b>CHAPTER VI.</b>	
Games in the Grand Tournament.....	147
<b>CHAPTER VII.</b>	
Chess without the Chessboard .....	261
<b>CHAPTER VIII.</b>	
The Problem Tournay.....	271
<b>CHAPTER IX.</b>	
Incidents in the History of American Chess .....	330
I. The Chess Life of Benjamin Franklin .....	331
II. Lewis Rou.....	340
III. Aaron Burr and Chess .....	346
IV. Chess in Philadelphia.....	348
V. Chess in Boston .....	366
VI. Benjamin Lynde Oliver.....	385
VII. Löwenthal's Visit to America.....	389
VIII. Chess in New York .....	396
IX. Chess in New Orleans .....	415
X. The History of the Automaton Chess-player in America.....	420
XI. American Chess Bibliography.....	485
XII. Paul Morphy.....	503
XIII. Miscellanea and Addenda .....	532
<b>CHAPTER X.</b>	
List of Subscribers—Accounts—Solutions—Indexes.....	536

## CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTORY SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF CHESS.

CHESS, the most venerable for its antiquity, the most esteemed for its intellectual character, and the most universal in its extent of all those pastimes in which men of every age have been accustomed to seek rest from the fatigue of physical labor or the weariness of mental toil, arose in India at a very early period in the history of the world. It is distinguished from all other sports no less by its greater age than by its superior excellence; for, although an amusement, it is separated from the most abstruse of sciences only by a faint line of demarcation. The singular fascination which it has ever exercised over its votaries is a curious phenomenon in the history of mind. Men differing in character and disposition, in tastes and pursuits, in rank and religion, in climate and race, have been charmed by the study of its delightful arcana. The peasants of Persia and Iceland, the warriors of the East and the West, the scholars of Asia and Europe, the priests of the Moslem faith, and the ministers of a purer belief, the monarchs of enlightened nations and the rulers of Pagan lands, have all found entertainment in its study and pleasure in its practice. Kings, in imminent danger of losing their heads and their thrones, have clung to their game of chess undismayed by the threatened loss of honor and of life. Statesmen, at a time when their brains were busy with projects destined to result in the overthrow of kingdoms or the emancipation of nations,

have found leisure to engage in chess. Generals, on the eve of important and decisive battles, as if in mockery of real and sanguinary warfare, have thrown their whole souls into a bloodless contest on the checkered field. Sages have sanctioned its use as a recreation. Learned men have devoted the earnest efforts of acute minds to the elucidation of its theory, to the elaboration of its history, and to the enlargement of its literature. The graces of poetry and the charms of eloquence have been thrown around it. Orators in their speeches, poets in their songs, dramatists in their plays, annalists in their histories, and even divines in their sermons, have not hesitated to use expressions couched in its technical language and to employ metaphors drawn from the movements of its mimic soldiery. As in the multiplicity of its combinations it sets at defiance all the discovered laws of the science of numbers, so in its adaptability to minds of unlike formation it seems to repudiate all the theories of mental philosophy. For eminent skill in the game is neither limited to any particular class of individuals nor dependent upon any peculiar intellectual qualities. Its pursuit is not confined to highly cultivated minds. Eulers and Rousseaus have striven in vain to become practitioners of the first class, while Grecos and Mourets have risen to the highest rank. Almost every profession has furnished its quota of names illustrious in chess. Damiano was an apothecary, Lopez was a priest, Salvio was a lawyer, Philidor was a musician, Cunningham was a diplomatist, Stamma was a linguist, Atwood was a mathematician, Deschapelles was a soldier, Popert was a merchant. Tyros scarcely conversant with the moves appear to find in it an enjoyment no less keen and exciting than those great players who are familiar with all the mysteries of open games and of close games, of gambits and of counter-gambits, of openings on the king's side and of openings on the queen's side. In truth, however we look at it, at its nature, or at its history, we shall find anomalies that surprise and marvels that confound us. I propose to give a brief sketch of the rise and progress of this most singular emanation of the human mind—

this most remarkable conception of human genius. Trifling as is the place usually assigned to it in the economy of the world, it is, nevertheless, a theme bountiful of incident and prolific of interest. In the little space at my command it would be impossible to narrate its story in detail or to relate a tithe of those poetical fables, those noteworthy legends, those diverting anecdotes, which cluster as things of memorable beauty about its fifty centuries of existence. All that I can hope to do will be to present the reader with a sort of skeleton chronicle, whose dry bones he must clothe with the flesh and blood of his own imagination, and animate with the breath of his own fancy.

The date to which I have referred the origin of chess will probably astonish those persons who have only regarded it as the amusement of idle hours, and have never troubled themselves to peruse those able essays in which the best of antiquaries and investigators have dissipated the cloudy obscurity that once enshrouded this subject. Those who do not know the inherent life which it possesses will wonder at its long and enduring career. They will be startled to learn that chess was played before Columbus discovered America, before Charlemagne revived the Western Empire, before Romulus founded Rome, before Achilles went up to the siege of Troy, and that it is still played as widely and as zealously as ever, now that those events have been for ages a part of history. It will be difficult for them to comprehend how, amid the wreck of nations, the destruction of races, the revolutions of time, and the lapse of centuries, this mere game has survived, when so many things of far greater importance have either passed away from the memories of men, or still exist only in the dusty pages of the chroniclers. It owes, of course, much of its tenacity of existence to the amazing inexhaustibility of its nature. Some chess writers have loved to dwell upon the unending fertility of its powers of combination. They have calculated by arithmetical rules the myriads of positions of which the pieces and pawns are susceptible. They have told

## 16 Sketch of the History of Chess.

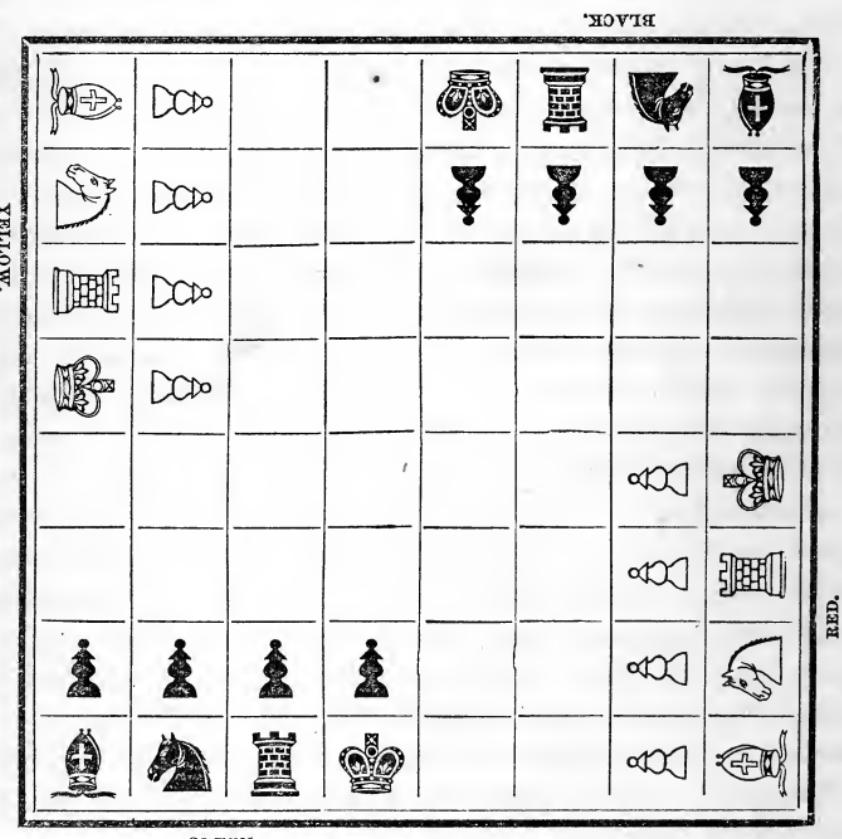
us that a lifetime of many ages would hardly suffice even to count them. We know, too, that while the composers of the Orient and the Occident have displayed during long centuries an admirable subtlety and ingenuity in the fabrication of problems, yet the chess stratagems of the last quarter of a century have never been excelled in intricacy and beauty. We have witnessed, in our day, contests brilliant with skilful manœuvres unknown to the sagacious and dexterous chess artists of the eighteenth century. Within the last thirty years we have seen the invention of an opening as correct in theory and as elegant in practice as any upon the board, and of which our fathers were utterly ignorant. The world is not likely to tire of an amusement which never repeats itself, of a game which presents to-day features as novel and charms as fresh as those with which it delighted, in the morning of history, the dwellers on the banks of the Ganges and the Indus.

Sir William Jones has given it as his opinion that the beautiful simplicity and extreme perfection of the game, prove it to have been the invention of a single mind. Later writers have rejected this hypothesis. In sooth, it seems incredible that any one man, by his own unaided brain, should have produced in its present symmetrical completeness, a thing at once so complex in detail, yet so simple as a whole. Who could estimate the mental strength of such a being? Would he not be a commander greater than Cæsar, who first calculated the exact evolutions, the marches and counter-marches, the fierce attacks and cunning defences of the chess-men? Would he not be a philosopher greater than Bacon, who constructed a theoretical art which should approach so near the domains of science, and yet not overlie the boundaries? Would he not be an artist greater than Phidias, who should design representative images which should last through all changes while the world stood? Would he not be a benefactor greater than Howard, who should devise an amusement that should refresh the faculties while it still kept them in

action, and upon which the spirit of gambling would never dare to seize? It seems to me that no such being has ever existed. It seems to me that chess grew, as music grew, as poetry grew. I believe that it sprang from rude beginnings, and gradually threw off one imperfection after another, or added one beauty after another, until it ripened into the old chaturanga, which is essentially our modern game. Those noble rivers which bear the fruits of a thousand fields and the wealth of a hundred cities upon their waters, take their rise from numberless insignificant sources among the untrodden mountain tracts. A multitude of rough but instructive attempts preceded the successful establishment of the art of printing. The experiments of Franklin, of Ørsted, and of Gauss, were the seeds which finally germinated, grew up, and blossomed, in the mind of Morse, into the electric telegraph. Countless fables, offsprings of the ardent imagination of Asia, or the sterner fancy of Europe, and many of them as beautiful as they are untrue, are extant, which pretend to explain the origin of chess. Some of the old chroniclers, who loved to invent history, tell us that the game was the product of the fertile brain of an Indian sage, named Sissa or Sassa, and connect therewith the famous story of the grains of corn which increased through the whole sixty-four squares in geometrical ratio. True history informs us that this Sissa was merely a player of more than ordinary skill. Other writers ascribe the invention of the game to two brothers, Lydus and Tyrhene, who, starving in a desert, discovered this excellent means of appeasing the pangs of hunger. Others again support the claims of an imaginary Greek philosopher, styled Xerxes, whose object was to convince a despot that the interests of the monarch were inseparably connected with those of his people. In fact a vast deal of erudition and an immense amount of imagination have been expended on this matter. Palamedes and Zenobia, the Chinese, Egyptians, Persians, Arabians, Welsh, Irish, Jews, Scythians, and Araucanians, have all had their zealous and credulous advocates.

The sober truth is, that a game, possessing all the essential features of chess, was in common use in Southern Asia some three thousand years before the commencement of our era, and that the oldest authentic books of India speak of it as a pastime which amused soldiers during a siege, and delighted princes and generals in their hours of recreation. Beyond this we know nothing. The names of its inventors, the precise time and exact locality of its first appearance, are probably problems which no study of the past, however acute and diligent, will ever be able to solve.

The first great period in the history of chess stretches from the supposed time of its origin down to about the sixth century of our era, comprising a space of between three and four thousand years. It may be called the age of the chaturanga,



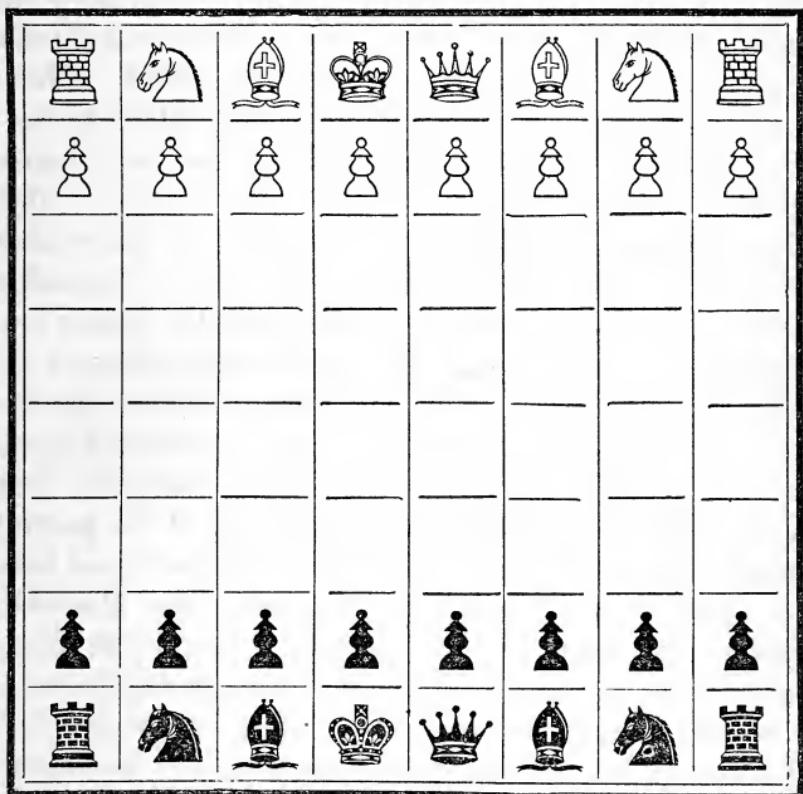
or primeval Indian game. This game was played like ours, upon a board of sixty-four squares ; unlike ours, it was played by four persons. Each player had a king, a rook, a knight, and a bishop, which at that time was styled a ship, and four pawns. The moves of these men, with a single exception, were precisely the same at that remote day as they are with us. The bishop, or ship, instead of ranging from one angle of the checkered field to the other, was limited to two squares at a time. Two of the players (black and green) were allied against the other two (red and yellow). Whenever it came the turn of a player, he decided what man to move by the throw of an oblong die, marked with the numbers two, three, four, and five. Thus, if five were thrown, the king or one of the pawns was moved ; if four, the rook ; if three, the knight ; if two, the bishop. Chess was, therefore, in its infancy, a game of mingled skill and hazard. It was not until the experience of successive generations had developed the resources which lay hid in those sixty-four squares and thirty-two figures that it became a stern mental encounter, a contest of mind with mind. But even this crude and simple form of the game pleased the people of tropical Asia in the younger years of the earth's existence. Men of the highest station felt and confessed its enticements. In one of the very oldest sacred books of the Hindoos, written in the Sanscrit language, the most ancient of all our Indo-European tongues, a royal personage seeks to acquire from a wise man a knowledge of chess. "Explain to me," he says, "explain to me, O thou supereminent in virtue, the nature of the game that is played on the eight-times-eight squared board." The sage proceeds to give him the information he desires. He describes the game, and among other counsel says, "Let each player preserve his own forces with excessive care, and remember that the king is the most important of all. O Prince, from inattention to the humbler forces, the King himself may fall into disaster." What could be better advice either for a chess-player or a prince ?

During this period the game appears to have spread to the eastward to China, Siam, and Japan, where, in the course of time, it took a shape somewhat different from that which it afterwards assumed in Western Asia and Europe. Enough of similarity, however, still remains between these two great branches to prove their common origin. In the Celestial Empire the chief changes were a division of the board into two equal parts by an imaginary river, the addition of two pieces, with peculiar powers unknown to the Indian game, and the substitution for the queen of two pieces of very limited action. This latter alteration rendered it necessary, in order to place all the chief officers upon the royal or first rank, to use the intersections of the lines instead of the squares. The moves of the king, rooks, bishops, and knights, are exactly the same as in the chaturanga. The Siamese game very closely resembles the Chinese. In Japan, instead of arranging the pieces upon the intersections of the lines, the board was enlarged to nine squares on each side. We find here, however, no trace of the river. A portion of the men may be reversed when they arrive at certain squares, and thereby acquire increased powers, a feature resembling the queening of the pawn in our western game. The line of division between these two great chess stocks—the Indo-European and the East-Asiatic—seems to be very exactly defined. Eastward, along the southernmost portion of Asia, and throughout the islands of the Asiatic seas, as far as Borneo, or wherever the influence of India was felt, the Sanscrit form prevails. In other lands farther north, which received their laws and customs from the country of Confucius, chess, as known in China, is predominant. Future laborers in the historical department of chess will find here a broad and unharvested field ready to reward their toil.

The second great period of chess history begins at about the sixth century after Christ, and terminates with the close of the fifteenth. It may be properly styled the age of the shatranj or mediæval game. There is reason to believe that long

before this era the use of the dice had been discarded, but now the game changed from a contest between four persons to a battle between two. The alteration was simple. The board and powers of the men remained as before. The bishops and the rooks changed places, and two of the allied forces were united upon one side of the board, and the other two upon

WHITE.



BLACK.

the opposite side. Two of the four kings were transformed into viziers or counsellors, who stood, as was natural, next the kings. These counsellors moved one square diagonally. These improvements in the fundamental laws of the game were important, and paved the way for those later alterations which gave its present form to chess. The game about this time, or during the reign of Chosroes, was introduced into

Persia, whence it soon afterwards spread, by way of imperial Byzantium, into Europe. Portugal and Spain, however, if we may judge by the etymology of their chess nomenclature, received the game from the Saracens. This shatranj form of chess continued to form one of the favorite amusements of monarchs and subjects, of knights and priests, in the lands of Asia, Africa, and Europe, for nearly one thousand years.

In the Eastern World numberless writers treated of its excellence in works full of the fantastic imagery and glowing with the gorgeous verbiage of the Orient. The names of Ali Shatranji, Adali, Suli, Damiri, Sokeiker, Abul-Abbas, Ibn-Sherf-Mohammed, and a hundred others, have come down to us as those of distinguished players and writers. Even the immortal Firdausi devotes a long episode, in his Persian epic, to chess, and the great Rhazes, one of the most famous of Arabian physicians, compiled a work upon the game; and numerous treatises have found their way into the libraries of the West, whose authors are entirely unknown. So far did the people of Persia and Arabia carry their love for the sport that they ascribed to it virtues almost miraculous. It was made to embrace all sciences. It was gravely said to teach religion and law, philosophy and astronomy, political economy and military strategy, and to be an efficacious remedy for diseases both of the mind and the body. "Chess," exclaims an enthusiastic Persian, "Chess is the nourishment of the mind, the solace of the spirit, the polisher of intelligence, the bright sun of understanding." By its practice all the faults which form the ailments of the soul are converted into their corresponding virtues." Great players bestowed their names upon openings of their own invention and died with their ambition gratified. Celebrated poets were proud to leave on record, side by side with the memorials of their inspiration as minstrels, the story of their skill in this mental sport. Courts seem to have been especially favorable to the cultivation of chess. Harun Rashid is supposed to have played it; and his son, the Caliph Mutasim Billah, composed the earliest chess

problems on record. Tamerlane, not content with the complicated manœuvres of the forces upon a board of the common size, invented a monstrous kind of chess which required a field of no less than one hundred and twelve squares. Problems, and end-games, many of which are still preserved, attest the extraordinary skill of the Asiatic masters; and the high point to which they brought the culture of the art is shown by the minute gradations of rank which were established among players. Several of them delighted in conducting games without sight of the board, and rules were laid down by which this rare accomplishment might be learned. Indeed the first performance of this difficult feat in Europe was by a Saracenic player, named Buzecca, and took place in Florence in the year 1266. In the West, the annals of chess, during this period, are no less interesting. It seems to have been known in Constantinople at least as early as the eighth century, and was generally diffused throughout Europe before the end of the eleventh. The monk, Jacobus de Cessolis, drew lessons of wisdom from its tactics in that celebrated morality, which was afterwards translated, both in prose and verse, into every European tongue, and which, in the English version of William Caxton, was the first book that issued from the English press. Conrad von Ammenhusen and Ingold of Germany, Nicholas de Saint Nicholai and Jacques le Grand of France, Innocent and Lydgate of England, Alfonso the Wise of Spain, and a multitude of anonymous writers, whose manuscripts are scattered through the great bibliothecal collections of the Old World, composed moral allegories and practical disquisitions upon chess. Most of the early novelists exhibit convincing evidence of the wide popularity which it had already attained. From Boccacio, the charming storyteller of Italy, down to the most turgid compiler of prosaic tales of chivalry and love, what may be called the light literature of the middle ages is crowded with allusions to chess. The romancers committed a thousand anachronisms, and violated the whole history of the game, in order to bring

the knightly sport into their pages. We owe to them, and to the chroniclers, whose veracity was sometimes scarcely greater, those pretty fables concerning the origin of the game, to which I have before alluded, and at which we have so often wondered and laughed. Outside of prose, the minstrels introduced it into their roundelays, and sang its delights in the bowers of maidens and the halls of nobles. Chess scenes and chess incidents are cunningly woven into the verse of Chaucer and his English successors, into the tales of the trouveres of Normandy and the troubadours of Languedoc, and into the lays of the Southern singers. Hebrew bards composed chess poems in the tongue of Isaiah. The language of ancient Rome was employed to set forth the virtues of an art which the ancient Romans never knew. The Væringar, or body guards of the Byzantine emperors, returning to their northern homes, brought the entertaining amusement to Scandinavia, and introduced it into the flourishing republic of Iceland, whose berserkers loved its practice, and whose skalds sang its glories in Eddaic stanzas. Charlemagne, Alexius the First, William the Conqueror, Richard of the Lion Heart, and most of the rulers of men in this period, whiled away their leisure hours with the shatranj. A set of chessmen, carved by skilful hands, was thought no unworthy present from one emperor to another. Kings gave golden sets to monasteries. Popes, bishops, and holy men, some of whom were afterwards canonized, gave by their acts the sanction of the Church to the practice of the game.

About the close of the fifteenth century the shatranj blossomed into our present phase of the game, and the third great period, that of modern chess, began. The vast revival of learning, the immortal invention of Guttemberg, and the increased intercourse between nations, brought about by the spirit of discovery and the extension of trade, exercised a visible influence upon chess as upon greater things. Although not entirely confined to the upper and educated classes, it had still been limited, in a measure, to the neighborhood of the

court and the cloister; now it became known to all ranks. Further improvements, evolved by experience, were made in the fundamental laws of the game. There is reason to believe that these were not the work of one generation, but that they had been gradually progressing for two or three centuries. The growing means of inter-communication, aided by printing, soon made them common to all Europe. The vizier, or counsellor of the shatranj, by a curious philological blunder, became the queen, and was raised from the rank of a minor figure to that of the most powerful piece on the board, combining the powers of the rook and the bishop. The bishop was now allowed the free range of a diagonal, instead of being restricted in his movements to two squares at a time. The pawns were permitted, on their first moye, to advance one or two squares, at the option of the player, whereas in the shatranj they were limited at all times to one step. This was a much needed alteration, as it brought about a more rapid development of the contest. To obviate, in a measure, this enhanced power of the foot-soldiers, the *non passar battaglia*, or right of capturing in passing, was introduced in many countries. The privilege of castling, unknown in the chaturanga and shatranj, was given to the king, at first according to the Italian method, and then in the manner of the Anglo-French school. Near the commencement of this period the convenient, but not essential practice of making the squares or houses of the chess-board of two different colors came into vogue. These changes, once effected, and firmly established, men commenced to turn their attention more closely to the theory of the game. Analyses were made of the different openings then in use, and the exact powers of the pieces and pawns in various positions began to be carefully studied. Systems of rules were devised for the government of players in their intercourse over the board with each other, and penalties laid down to insure their observance. In short, chess in its new development grew to be, if not less of a game, at least more of an art—an art requiring on the part

of its successful cultivators a kind of talent as peculiar, and a spirit of investigation as unwearyed, as those demanded by any other intellectual employment.

The sixteenth century opened with the appearance of the work of the Portuguese, Damiano; a few years before the treatises of the Spaniards, Lucena and Vicent, had been published, and to the former of these Damiano appears to have been largely indebted. Long before the close of the century his work was translated into Italian, French, and English. Following him, at the distance of fifty years, came Ruy Lopez, a Spanish priest, whose work hardly equals the reputation which he left behind him as a player. He criticises severely his Portuguese predecessor for having recommended the move of 2. Kt b8—c6 as the best method of defence for the second player in the King's Knight's Opening. It is curious that chess writers, after having for half a century gravely rebuked Lopez for his supposed error, now appear almost prepared to coincide with him. Lopez' book was soon translated into Italian. At this time, too, Vida, Bishop of Cremona, chanted the praises and pleasures of chess in Latin verse, whose vigor and elegance recalled the Augustan age. A hundred versions and paraphrases have since made his poem familiar to readers of every civilized speech. Ducchi, of Vicenza, gave to the world a sort of chess epic in six cantos. Azzio in Italy, and before him, Mennel in Germany, wrote volumes on the legal relations of the game. Just before the termination of the century appeared the work of Gianuzio of Turin, a writer who, in fecundity of ideas and correctness of combinations, excelled all before him. In the latter part of his work he explains how the knight may capture successively all the chess-men without twice occupying the same square—a puzzle which probably gave rise to the knight's tour, upon which De Moivre, Montmart, and others have expended so much mathematical skill. The great characteristic of this century was undoubtedly the awakening of a love for chess in the south of Europe. The first books were

published in the Iberian peninsula; the first clubs were organized in the Italian peninsula. Great players arose in both, and Naples and Madrid were the two centres around which the spirit of chess revolved. In Italy, Leonardo da Cutri, and Paolo Boi of Syracuse, acquired the largest renown, and placed their country at the head of chess-playing nations, a position which it maintained down to the days of Philidor. I regret that my space will not allow me to recount in full the romantic story of these knight-errants of chess. I should like to relate how, incited by an ambition to excel, they first contended with each other, and then betook themselves to other lands in search of foemen worthy of their prowess. How both met with numberless adventures and worsted a host of opponents in their wanderings. How love and patriotism, two of the holiest attributes of man's nature, mingled themselves with chess in their glorious careers. How, when they arrived at the Spanish capital, they encountered the great masters of Spanish chess, Ruy Lopez and Xerone, and made Madrid, in the year 1575, the scene of a long and exciting chess tournament, the first and perhaps the gayest on record. How, introduced by ambassadors and nobles, they played in the presence of the royal Philip the Second, who himself bestowed the well-earned prize upon the victor. And how, at length, the two gallant champions returned to their native land, and died rich in fame and crowned with unfading honors. Sebastian, the unhappy, but beloved, king of Portugal, was fond of chess, and patronized a distinguished player known as the *Moor*. The Neapolitan academy or club was founded in this century, and did much for the advancement of chess. Its chief players were Michele de Mauro, Domenico di Leonardi, Salvio, il Beneventano, l'Ametrano, and so forth. While these great events were happening south of the Alps and the Pyrenees, the other countries of Europe were slowly but steadily progressing in a knowledge of the game, although they produced but few players of renown, and added little except translations to the literature

of chess. In England, among the best players were Bishop and Potter, the former an officer in the army, and the latter a mechanician of great skill. It is reported that they once played a match which lasted some days, each party winning an equal number of games. The names of Blagrave and Sir Edward Hastings have also come down to us. That chess was not uncommon in Germany is seen from the anecdote, so often repeated, of the Elector John of Saxony, from the writings of Luther and others, and from many old paintings and engravings. The remainder of Europe furnishes little else but casual allusions to chess, occurring in the pages of various prose and poetical writers.

During the first years of the seventeenth century the general fondness for chess in Italy exhibited no symptoms of a decline. The brilliant and active club at Naples still existed, and Salvio, a strong player and clever writer, published at that city, in 1604, an excellent practical treatise, which displayed a marked advance in analytical labors. This was soon afterwards followed by the work of Carrera, a priest and antiquary of Sicily, whose book shows rather less acumen than that of his Neapolitan contemporary, but contains some ingenious end-games. Both of these authors mention the names of numerous remarkable players who flourished at this epoch. After their publications no theoretical work of note appeared in Italy except the small one of Piacenza, which was printed at Turin towards the close of the century. In 1647 Antonio das Neves, a Portuguese priest, gave to the world an unimportant work on the game. Its appearance was the last event worthy of record which occurred in the chess history of the Iberian peninsula. In France the splendid career of Greco was the noteworthy incident of the century. He is supposed to have been a native of the Morea, but passed his youth in Calabria, whence he is known as *the Calabrian*. He acquired a thorough chess education in the clubs of Italy, and may be considered as the founder of the Anglo-French school, whose glory culminated with Philidor. His book, although wanting in soundness, is

full of fresh fancies and novel ideas, and has gone through a multitude of editions and translations. Greco's chief opponents in France were the Duke of Nemours, Arnaud, Chaumont, and La Salle. In England Saul was the only native writer on the theory of chess, and his work possesses little or no originality. Several versions of foreign treatises appeared, and here, as elsewhere, the book of Greco exerted a great influence. Besides Broucker, Budden, the royal Stuarts, and the great William of Orange, no names of British players have been preserved. That the game was more generally understood than formerly, is proved by the popularity of Middleton's comedy of the *Game of Chesse*, a sort of scaccho-religious satire, which was acted in London, until suppressed, at Shakespeare's Theatre, the Globe. In Germany, Augustus Duke of Brunswick, better known to the literary world by his pseudonym of Gustavus Selenus, published his huge work on chess in 1616. The practical portion is a translation of Ruy Lopez; and the collection of extracts and anecdotes, which precedes it, was compiled with a loving and laborious hand from the books of the ducal library. Augustus gives the earliest detailed account of the village of Ströbeck, a singular little town in Prussia, where chess was taught in the schools and practised in public. This custom probably originated in the fifteenth century. The inhabitants acquired a great reputation for proficiency, especially in a variation of chess styled the *courier* game, but do not seem to have maintained it in more modern times. Two centuries after the days of Gustavus Selenus a famous English chess writer visited Ströbeck and published an interesting narrative of his intercourse with the villagers. This century was fertile in attempted reforms of chess. Carrera and Piacenza each sought to add two new pieces and two additional pawns to the thirty-two men, and Weickmann of Ulm enlarged chess into an enormous military sport played upon a gigantic board with an army of officers and soldiers. These innovations died with their inventors, for chess needs no enhancement of its difficulties. A more

interesting feature of this period was the historical researches which now began to be made by men of real intelligence and learning. The crude fables of the darker ages were swept away, and the labors of the scientific investigator substituted for the invention of the novelist. Sarrasin of France, and Severino of Italy, were followed by the erudite Hyde of England, whose extensive acquaintance with Oriental literature enabled him to add largely to the historical knowledge of the West. His work has been used by all succeeding writers. Nor was the chess muse entirely silent during this age. Tuccius, in Latin only inferior to that of Vida, Gould, in English, Kochanowski, in Polish, and many nameless poets chanted the charms of the ancient game in verse worthy of their theme.

The eighteenth century forms a memorable portion of chess history, and is crowded with the names of illustrious players and writers. During its first half the most noted practitioners in Great Britain, which was at this time the chief seat of the game, were Cunningham, the Earls of Sunderland, Stair, and Godolphin, Sir Abraham Janssen, Cluny, the Duke of Rutland, Black, Cowper, Salvador, Cargyll, Bertin, and Stamma. The London Club met at Slaughter's coffee-house, St. Martin's Lane. In 1735, Bertin gave to the world a treatise on the game of some interest. Stamma was a native of Aleppo, Syria, but passed a large portion of his life in Europe, where he published his work, of which the most important part is his hundred celebrated and beautiful end-positions. He is also worthy of remembrance as being the first person who adopted the simple and convenient system of notation which now prevails in all the continental countries of Europe. In France the best known players were the Chancellor d'Aguesseau, the Marquis de Grosménil, and Legal, the instructor of Philidor. Neither Italy nor Germany presents any names of distinction in the domain of practical chess during the first fifty years of this century. But in the latter half Europe was full of chess events of vast importance. Most prominent among these

were the life and deeds of the great Philidor. He was born at Dreux, France, in 1726, and died in London, in 1795, and is justly renowned both as a musical composer and as a chess-player. He founded schools of strong players, both in England and France, between which two countries the maturer years of his life were divided. He played a match with Stamma in 1747, and proved himself greatly the superior of the Syrian. His work on chess, which is rich in novel matter, has gone through a large number of editions and been translated into many languages. By his practice, his example, and his writings, he did more to increase the popularity and extend the influence of the game than any single man of any previous or later age. His feats in blindfold chess astonished his contemporaries, and his skilful management of the pawns—those humbler members of the chess armies—make his games the admiration of posterity. His latest and best biographer\* thus sums up his character: “But, of course, it is as a chess-player, that Philidor ranks among the privileged few, whose claims to be FIRST, in their respective spheres of intellectual activity, have been decided upon by an action, on the part of their fellow-men, as authoritative as it is undefinable—by a tacit admission of supremacy, a general and spontaneous act of homage. Such names become, in a manner, sacred. A Newton is never exposed to be bandied about in comparisons: no modern experimenter in electricity can ever disturb the serene atmosphere in which Franklin sits secure. The same instinct of reverential good taste discourages all attempts at plucking the laurel from the brow of Philidor. . . . The character of Philidor as a man is patent and palpable. Grétry penned his eulogy in the simple words, ‘he was a good husband, a good father, a good friend.’ Gentleness, meekness, amiability, amenity—such are the qualities dwelt on by all as the fitting adornment of perfect sincerity and sterling honesty.” It was

\* The Life of Philidor, Musician and Chess-player, by GEORGE ALLEN, Greek Professor in the University of Pennsylvania. Philadelphia, 1858. 8vo.

in Philidor's time that the useful practice of recording actually played games arose, and the famous master's contests are the earliest specimens of living chess, to which the names of the players are attached, that have been preserved. This custom has been of incalculable value to the chess student as well as to the analyst, and has added immeasurably to the sources of pleasure at the command of those possessing a knowledge of the game. In England the chief opponents and disciples of Philidor were Count Brühl, Saxon Ambassador in London, Lord Henry Seymour, Lord Harrowby, the Duke of Cumberland, Bowdler, Leycester, Sheldon, Cotter, Smith, besides Baron Maseres and Atwood, the mathematicians, and Wilson, a divine. To the last two we are mainly indebted for the games of Philidor now extant. In France the Café de la Régence acquired about this period its celebrity as a resort of the most distinguished players and amateurs of the day. There the philosophic Voltaire and the sage Franklin found pleasure in the contemplative game. There the crafty Robespierre withdrew awhile from the cares of diplomacy and the labors of statesmanship to find rest in chess. There the mighty Napoleon the First, in the earlier part of his career, traced, in the brilliant successes and disastrous failures of battles on the chess-board, an anticipatory parallel of the eventful life before him. There men of the pen, the volatile Rousseau, the gossiping Grimm, the pleasant Marmontel, were wont to meet, in mimic warfare, the men of the sword, Marshal Saxe, Marshal Berthier, the gallant Murat, and the Duke de Bassano. There the associate *Amateurs*, Verdoni, Leger, Bernard, and Carlier—all eminent players, pupils of Philidor and ardent propagators of his theories—compiled and published their *Traité* which possesses many excellent features, and forms, next to their great teacher's work, altogether the most valuable contribution ever made by the French mind to the literature of theoretical chess. In Holland, Stein, a professional teacher of chess, (whose best disciples were the Prince of Waldeck and Prince Christian of

Hesse-Darmstadt,) and Zuylen von Nieveld, a general, were both distinguished ornaments of this epoch. The former was a strong practitioner, but his book was of little value; the work of the latter is especially commendable for its instructions in conducting the terminations of games. Now occurred the second golden age of Italian chess. The appearance of an occasional new work, or new edition of an old one, sufficiently shows that the old spirit had never died out in the land of Boi and Leonardo, but since the days of Salvio and Carrera no player who could be styled first-rate, and no writers who could be called original, with but one or two exceptions, had come upon the stage. But now a brilliant constellation appeared in Central Italy, in the city of Modena, to which the throne of Italian chess was removed from Naples. The earliest in this starry cluster was Del Rio, a jurist by profession, whose work bears the date of 1750. It contains a series of useful and instructive end-games, but the openings, otherwise valuable, lose much of their interest to the reader on this side of the Alps, on account of the method of castling adopted by the Italian school. Del Rio is known as the *Anonimo Modenese*. In 1763, Lolli, of the same city, published a folio, composed by Del Rio and himself, which is remarkable for the carefulness and correctness with which it is elaborated. It contains openings, a treatise on the defence, a criticism on Philidor and his theories, and end-games, and has been much used by succeeding writers. Nineteen years after the appearance of Del Rio's work, and six years later than the publication of Lolli's folio, Ponziani, the third great Modenese illustrator of the game, gave to the public the first edition of his *Giuoco incomparabile*. Later laborers in the same field, of all schools, unite in praising its originality and completeness. The variations in the openings are systematically arranged, and the regular endings of games, as well as the artificial positions with which the work closes, are worthy of all praise. The author, who, because he styled himself the *Autore Modenese*, is sometimes confounded with Del Rio,

was esteemed both as a jurist and an ecclesiastic, and was a man of great erudition and genial manners. His book, which gives some acute critical notices of his predecessors, has been frequently reprinted in Italy, and translated into German and English. Del Rio and Ponziani contested over the board a host of games, none of which however have come down to us. The movement at Modena seems to have incited a similar enthusiasm in some other parts of Italy. In 1766 Cozio, a nobleman of the little town of Casale Monferrato, published at Turin a work on chess in two thick octavos. This laborious writer follows Greco in giving entire games, instead of mere openings, and also in employing one method of castling. He introduces much new matter, especially in the King's Gambit, and seems to have possessed an excellent chess taste. He was much beloved by those who enjoyed his acquaintance for his kindly disposition and generous nature. In Germany, the foundations of that thorough nationality, which is a distinguishing characteristic of Teutonic chess, were laid towards the close of the century. One of the most powerful agents in accomplishing this work was undoubtedly Allgaier of Vienna, whose book appeared in 1795. He was the first who made use of the tabular arrangement in printing the results of analyses. For the greater part of his matter he was indebted to Philidor, Lolli, and Ponziani, but original suggestions were not lacking, especially in his notice of the gambit which bears his name. The *Anweisung* has been repeatedly reprinted, and has undoubtedly had much influence in moulding the chess mind of Germany. Other practical disquisitions, of less extent and value, such as those of Kindermann and Andrä, appeared about the same time. In 1751 Philidor made a visit to Germany, and found many patrons and players among the sovereigns and nobility. He passed some time with the Prince of Waldeck, and played with the great Frederic, who in many other ways evinced his love of the game. This monarch was accustomed to combat with Marshal Keith, who left a considerable reputation as a player,

and with the Marquis de Varennes, and others of less skill. It is even said that he once played by correspondence with Voltaire. It was in Germany that one of the most remarkable mechanical contrivances of modern times originated. This was the celebrated Automaton Chess-player, invented by Baron Wolfgang Kempel, and first exhibited at Vienna in 1769. It is hardly possible to conceive the excitement which this machine created on its tour through Europe. Crowds flocked to see it at every stopping-place; crowned heads condescended to meet the turbaned Turk over the board; great players hastened to encounter such a mysterious and incomprehensible adversary; wise men wrote learned books on the wonderful invention, and gravely argued with each other on the character and source of its motive power to such an extent that a large literature grew out of it. In short, since the days when Moorish armies marched across the Pyrenees, and the hordes of the Sultans spread desolation over the plains of Hungary, no turbaned visitor had caused half so great a commotion in Europe as was excited by the marvellous Turk. It is now known that a strong player was concealed in its hidden recesses, but in those times its secret was well kept from the multitude, and thousands of prying eyes, and hundreds of acute intellects, failed to completely discover it. The automaton arrived in Paris in 1783, and afterwards visited London and Berlin, where Frederic the Great, incited by curiosity, purchased it of Kempel for a large sum. When its hidden mechanism was laid bare the monarch lost his interest in the contrivance, and it was thrown aside, to repose for many years in a garret at Potsdam. It would be superfluous to add that the automaton tended greatly to excite a popular fondness for chess both in this and our own century. Imitations of chess, and attempts to change the character of the game, were not wanting during this period. Marinelli of Naples invented a game of chess for three persons, and Hellwig, Venturini, and others, of Germany, and the Duke of Rutland, in England, endeavored to enlarge the board and increase the

military character of the game, while the ardent republicans of the French revolution tried, by the adoption of a new nomenclature, to banish its monarchical features. Novel names for the pieces and pawns were proposed by various writers in England and elsewhere, but, as might have been expected, none of these alterations ever came into use. Many eminent mathematicians, such as Euler, Guyot, Vandermonde, Collini, Mollweide, and Ballière de Laisement, spent much time and ingenuity, during this century, in seeking a formula for the knight's tour around the board. In the historical field Sir William Jones was undoubtedly the foremost laborer. Freret, in France, was little more than a copyist of Sarrasin, and Günther Wahl, of Germany, was chiefly indebted for the contents of his book to Hyde; but the researches of Sir William Jones were all his own. If modern investigations have discredited some of his opinions, and criticised with severity some of his conclusions, it is not so much owing to superior sagacity on the part of his successors, as to the great advance made of late in all Oriental studies. Among the Britons, besides Jones, Barrington wrote an essay on the names of the pieces, Irwin produced a dissertation on Chinese chess, and Lambe published a small and very imperfect history of the game. Among the Germans, besides Wahl, Nachtigall, and the renowned Leibnitz, an ardent admirer of the game, illustrated this department of chess. The entertaining collection of anecdotes and extracts by Twiss of London, and the pleasant *Letters* of Verci of Venice, belong to the same period. The best poetical attempt of the century, and undoubtedly the most elegant specimen of chess in verse since the days of Vida, was the *Caïssa* of Sir William Jones. Written at a very early age, it, nevertheless, exhibits all the smoothness of versification and ripeness of style which usually belong only to writers of mature years. Its excellence and popularity are attested by numberless reprints. In English, two obscurer writers, Thurston and Hawkins, published poems on the game, while Fischer and Ramler, in German, and Cerutti

and Roman de Couvret, in French, added to the literature of their countries and of chess in the same manner. And a great number of less ambitious pieces of chess verse, chiefly by anonymous bards, might be cited in many languages.

It was in the eighteenth century that the first glimmerings of chess in the New World appeared. The only name of note, however, was that of Benjamin Franklin, the philosopher, patriot, and statesman, who played chess from early youth to extreme age, in America, in England, and in France. He left to posterity a pleasant essay on the morals of the game, in which he warmly commends its practice.

Brilliant as the eighteenth century was in every department, the nineteenth has far surpassed it. In theory and practice, in historical investigation and in literary chess, it has excelled all the earlier and later ages. The spirit of invention was never before carried so far, analytical labors were never before so thorough and complete, and the amusement was never practised by so large a community of admirers. During the first decade many of the disciples of Philidor still survived. Bernard and Verdoni succeeded to the throne which he left vacant, while greater even than they were preparing to fill a larger space in chess annals. About the year 1807, the Honorable Francis Henry Egerton, afterwards the famous and eccentric Duke of Bridgewater, held several chess soirées at his residence in Paris, in which Carlier, one of the amateurs of La Régence, participated, and where we first meet with the name of Deschapelles. Stein was still living at an advanced age in Holland, and Allgaier did not die until 1826. Sarratt, for nearly a score of years, stood at the head of English players. Cochrane, Lewis, Mercier, Parkinson, Brand, and Lavallino were the other ornaments of English chess during the first quarter of the century. In France, during the same years, Deschapelles, Bourblanc, Boncourt, Mouret, *le petit Juif*, and Calma, were accounted the leading masters. The first-named, who lived until the year 1847,

undoubtedly left behind him a reputation as a practitioner which has never been excelled ; it is a matter of lasting regret that so few of his games were recorded. In the year 1834 a memorable event, which will never be forgotten, drew the attention of the chess world to a single board. This was the famous contest between La Bourdonnais of France and M'Donnell of Britain. The fame of the two combatants, their known skill, which had been proved in many battles against the best players of the day, and their different styles of play, contributed to render this fray the most interesting chess joust on record. It was played at the Westminster Club in London, and comprised six successive matches. The first three games were drawn, but the final result was La Bourdonnais, forty-four ; M'Donnell, thirty ; drawn, fourteen. The games are yet looked upon as master-pieces of strategy and appropriate models of study. Nine years afterwards another chess battle was fought between the rival nations on either side of the Channel. It took place in Paris ; the representative of England was Staunton, and that of France St. Amant. The score at the termination stood—Staunton, eleven ; St. Amant, six ; drawn, four. As specimens of the close game, the contests are justly regarded as admirable. Among the players of Great Britain, during the second twenty-five years of the century, were Staunton, Buckle, Donaldson, Williams, Walker, Wyvill, Tuckett, Evans, Harry Wilson, Kennedy, Spreckly, Daniells, Perigall, Mongredien, Slous, and Newham. Of a somewhat later date are Brien, Boden, Barnes, Owen, Bird, Green, Gordon, Greenaway, the Medleys, Hampton, Lord Lyttleton, Sir John Blunden, Lord Arthur Hay, and Viscount Cremorne. But English chess is not measured by the number of its native votaries. The popularity of the game in England and the reputation of its players have drawn to its shores such eminent men as Harrwitz, Löwenthal, Popert, Löwe, Falkbeer, Horwitz, and Zytogorski. In France, Chamouillet, St. Amant, La Roche, Jouy, Haxo, Lecrivain, Jay, Bonfil, Devinck, and Desloges,

have been succeeded by De Rivière, Count Casabiançon, Count Isouard, Boucher, and Lequesne.

Between 1830 and 1840 arose the celebrated school of Berlin, comprising an array of celebrated names such as were never before congregated within the limits of the same city and decade. Bilguer, Heydebrandt und der Lasa, Hanstein, Mayet, Horwitz, Bledow, Mendheim, and Oppen, were the prominent members of the active club in the Prussian capital. At about the same time Hampe, Falkbeer, Witholm, Lederer, and Matscheko lived in Vienna, Popert in Hamburg, and Szén, Löwenthal, and Grimm in Hungary. Rather later than these are Anderssen, Lange, Pollmacher, Dufresne, Count Vitzthum, and Lepge in Germany; and Erkel, Recsi, and Spitzer in Hungary. Russia has produced some great players, among whom are Petroff, Jäenisch, Schumoff, and the Princes Urussow. The chief practitioners of Italy have been Ciccolini, Calvi, Dubois, and Centurini; and of Holland—Hancock, Didymus, Verbeek, and Wentel. Among those who have pursued chess professionally the names of Kieseritzky and Harrwitz rank the highest. In America few players of note appeared until the century was well advanced. Among the earlier names are Oliver, Fisk, Vezin, Greene, Ingraham, and Vethake. They were followed by Stanley, Rousseau, Hammond, Thompson, Mead, Turner, Ballard, Raphael, Schulten, Ernest Morphy, Ford, Tilghman, and Ayers. Later names are Paul Morphy, Lichtenhein, Perrin, Marache, Paulsen, Thomas, Lewis, the Montgomerys, Morgan, Richardson, Meek, Fuller, Loyd, Roberts, Morgan, Kennicott, Maurian, McConnell, and Calthrop. The matches of Stanley and Rousseau at New Orleans in 1846, and of Stanley and Turner at Washington in 1850, excited much interest. In India, until the conquest of the English, the shatranj was still played; but now the Anglo-Saxons have taught the perfected form of the game to the race whose forefathers, so many centuries ago, originated the old chaturanga, and some great players have arisen. These are Moheschunder Bonnerjee, Petumber Mookerjee,

Karamat Ali Khan, and Ghulam Kassim. Chess by correspondence has been much practised. The most famous contests of this kind have been the Edinburgh and London match, played between 1824 and 1828, and those between Paris and Westminster in 1834–36, between Paris and Pesth in 1842–46, between Madras and Hyderabad in 1828, between Berlin and Magdeburg in 1833–34, between Hamburg and Berlin in 1833–36, between Berlin and Posen in 1839–40, between London and Amsterdam in 1849–50, between New York and Norfolk in 1840–42, and between Philadelphia and New York in 1856–57. The wonderful advance of science has opened to amateurs of the present age a new method of playing chess akin to that by correspondence. The first telegraphic match was that in 1844, between Baltimore and Washington; this was followed by one between London and Portsmouth in 1845. The electric wire is undoubtedly destined to be frequently used hereafter as a medium of chess communication. But great as have been the events and the names within the domain of practical chess, yet vast progress in theoretical knowledge is no less a characteristic of this century. Sarratt published an analytical treatise on the game and several translations of early writers, all of value, but far from perfect or correct. Cochrane issued his work in 1822; it was partly a translation, but contained some original games of great beauty. Lewis for a long time maintained the rank of the first analyst in Europe, and his numerous treatises on the game were not superseded until the appearance of the German *Handbuch*. Walker, Staunton, Kenny, and Boden, have also been of great service in this department. In Germany, the enormous work of Koch was published early in the century, but was only a compilation. It was followed by the volumes of Reinganum, Mauvillon, and Silberschmidt. But by far the most important theoretical aid bestowed upon the chess community has been at the hands of Jænisch of Russia and the analysts of the Berlin school. The great work of the former on the openings appeared in 1842–43, and has been rendered into English by Walker.

The unsurpassed analytical ability of the author was at once acknowledged over all Europe, and his labors have been continued in the same direction with equal effect and utility. The *Handbuch* of Bilguer and von der Lasa was first published in 1843, and has since been translated into English, with additions, by Staunton. It is difficult to accord too much praise to the distinguished authors. To say that their work, which grew naturally out of the formation of the Berlin school, greatly advanced the theory of chess, would be insufficient. It totally changed the aspect of theoretical chess. In the thoroughness and completeness of its analyses, in its philosophical arrangement, in its method of illustrating theory by practice, in its excellent treatment of the regular end-games, and in its fair and honest criticism of its predecessors, the *Handbuch* was a novelty in chess literature. Through this book, and in many other ways, the influence of the Prussian masters upon the entire chess world has been marked and beneficial. By the scientific laborers of the century several new openings have been discovered, and the character of many old ones entirely altered. The defence of 2. d7—d6 in the King's Knight's Opening, which was advocated by Philidor, was for a while superseded by that of 2. Kt g8—f6, which was analysed and supported by the Russian theorists. This in its turn gave way to the classical move of 2. Kt b8—c6; but of late a manifest tendency towards the defence recommended by Lopez, and bearing the name of Philidor, is again observable. The *Gioco Piano* of the Italian writers has been fully illustrated, and an entirely new attack was, about the year 1833, invented by Evans of England, and elaborated by M'Donnell, which has led to some of the most brilliant and instructive games ever recorded. The variation of the *Gioco Piano* formed by 3. Kt g8—f6, first proposed by Gianuzio, has been fully analysed by Bilguer, and, since his death, has undergone still further modifications of importance. Another one growing out of 3. B f1—c5, and known by the title of the Knight's Game of Ruy Lopez, has

come into favor after having been little played for more than two centuries. Still another attack in the King's Knight's Opening, that of 3. d2—d4 was revived at the time of the Edinburgh and London match, and called, on account of its excellent management by the combatants of the former city, the Scotch Gambit. In the favorite debut of the last century, the King's Bishop's Opening, the second player's move of 2. Kt g8—f6 has been analysed by the Prussian writers, from whom it is styled the Berlin Defence; Lewis has introduced a new counter-gambit, that of 2. d2—d4; M'Donnell has invented a new attack commencing with 3. b2—b4; and finally the results of 3. Q d1—e2 have been ascertained and modified. In the King's Knight's Gambit, the defence of 3. B f8—e7, first brought into general notice by Cunningham, the most eminent player of the generation which preceded Philidor, has been carefully studied; Cochrane has discovered one or two novel methods of attack; a vast deal of labor has been bestowed upon the brilliant Muzio Gambit as well as upon the variation springing from the first player's move of 4. h2—h4, which was noticed by the early Italian analysts, but more fully investigated and strongly played by Allgaier, of Germany. The resources of the King's Bishop's Gambit were first developed and appreciated as they deserve by the writers and players of the present century. It is especially indebted to M'Donnell, Jænisch, and the authors of the *Handbuch*. The Queen's Gambit has been admirably illustrated, in its acceptance, by the games of M'Donnell and Labourdonnais, and in its refusal by those of Staunton and St. Amant. In the so-called irregular or unclassified openings very important changes and corrections have been made, particularly in those formed by the two moves, on the part of the second player, of 2. e7—e6, and 2. c7—c5; the former has been a favorite subject of study and practice with the players of France, and the latter with English and German practitioners. This brief summary will give an imperfect idea of the immense progress of the

theory of chess, since the opening of the century. Of great use, both to the scientific inquirer and student, have been the collections of games actually played by proficients of great skill. Such collections have been compiled by Cazenove, Cochrane, Walker, Lewis, Hunneman, Bledow, Staunton, Kieseritzky, Williams, and Lange. But no department of the game exhibits the influence of the inventive acumen of the day more perfectly than that of regular end-games and artificial problems. The former have been thoroughly analysed, and numerous mistakes of the early writers corrected. Conspicuous in this line have been Szén, Kling, Centurini, Forth, and Adam. In regard to problems it would hardly be too much to assert that the compositions of the last twenty-five years exceed in number, beauty, and value, all the surviving productions of the earlier cultivators of this art. Montigny published, in 1802, a well-selected compilation from the old composers, and in 1814, Trevangadarya Shastree, a famous player of Bombay, issued a book of problems. But Bone in England, and Mendheim and Schmidt in Germany, were the first original European problem-makers of the century. They have been followed by a long train of brilliant strategists, whose ingenuity and industry have created a thousand never-failing sources of delight for the amateur. Such, among others, are Bolton, Angas, Brown, Healy, Campbell, and White, of England; Grosdemange and Hurlin, of France; Anderssen, Kling, Horwitz, Brede, Oppén, Döllinger, Silberschmidt, Kuiper, Bayer, Willmers, Pongräcz, Della Torre, and Novotny, of Germany; Calvi and Centurini, of Italy; Orville, of Belgium; Caprätz, of Switzerland; Petroff, of Russia; and Cook, Loyd, Marache, and Julien, of America. Several positions of striking beauty have also emanated from the native mind of India. Collections of problems and end-games, either original or compiled, have been given to the world by Lewis, Mendheim, Schmidt, Ciccolini, Mauvillon, Anderssen, Kuiper, Brown, Kling, Horwitz, Preti, and an enormous work, containing two thousand positions,

was published by Alexandre, in 1846. Of late years tournaments have been held, in which the distinguished composers of different countries have competed for prizes. The rules, too, which govern the composition of these riddles have been in a measure defined, and something has been done, by the great modern masters of strategic chess, towards establishing a sound code of criticism. The Knight's Tour has received its best elucidation at the hands of Roget, Willis, Käfer, Warnsdorf, and Billig. Chess history has been zealously explored and many of the obscurities which enwrapped it removed by Christie, Douce, Massman, Lake Allen, Madden, Von der Lasa, Bland, Pichard, and Singer; and very lately the researches of the learned Forbes have thrown a vast amount of light upon the origin of the game. The progress of chess from the East to the West, and the gradual changes which the names and powers of some of the pieces underwent, have been clearly and philosophically traced. Chess biography has been illustrated by Walker of England, Alliey of France, Von der Lasa of Germany, and Allen of America. Chess tales and sketches by Walker, Tomlinson, Oppen, Heinse, Hoffman, Kennedy, Aycard, and a crowd of anonymous story-tellers, and chess poems by Méry in French, D'Arblay, Slous, and Tomlinson in English, and by Carisien in German, have shown the adaptability of the game to the purposes of the romancer. A new feature in the literature of chess, unknown to the preceding centuries, has been introduced in the shape of periodical publications devoted to the game. In 1836 Labourdonnais and Méry commenced the publication of the *Palaméde* at Paris; after the death of the great Frenchman it was discontinued for a while and then revived by St. Amant, but was finally succeeded by the *La Régence*, edited at first by Kieseritzky, and then by De Rivière. In 1837 Walker published, for half a year only, the *Philidorian*, the first chess magazine in English. The *Chess Player's Chronicle* was commenced by Staunton, in 1841, and continued through seventeen volumes; it was chiefly filled

with games by the best players of Great Britain. The *Chess Player* was a less ambitious periodical, conducted for some time, in London, by Kling and Horwitz, and Harrwitz maintained for a year and a half the *British Chess Review*. In Germany several magazines have had a brief existence, such as the *Deutsche Schachzeitung*, the *Magdeburger Schachzeitung*, and the *Wiener Schachzeitung*, but the Berlin *Schachzeitung*, now in its thirteenth year, is the oldest and best, and was founded by Bledow. It still maintains, with undiminished lustre, the reputation of the Berlin school, and is under the charge of Lange. In Switzerland the *Schweizerische Schachzeitung* is issued by Capräz, and mainly occupied with problems. Holland boasts its *Sissa*, now eleven years old, and Italy its *Album*, of a much later date. In America, Marache published in 1846 three numbers of the *Chess Palladium*, which was followed the next year by Stanley's *American Chess Magazine*, which was continued only through one volume. The *Chess Monthly* of New York was established by the author of this sketch in 1857. Akin to the chess magazine in its character is the chess column of the weekly newspaper, a custom which has been followed by many journals. The first one was introduced, through the influence of Walker, into *Bell's Life*, about the time of the McDonnell and Labourdonnais contest. Then came in England the *Saturday Magazine*, the *Illustrated London News*, the *Era*, the *Field*, and others; in Switzerland the *Bund*; in France the *Illustration* and the *Journal du Plaisir*; in Holland the *Handelsblad*, *De Tijd*, and the *Nederlansch Museum*; in Germany the *Illustrirter Zeitung* and the *Familien-Journal*; in Sweden the *Illustrerad Tidning*; and in India the *Madras Examiner*. In the New World the *Spirit of the Times* was the first newspaper that filled a portion of its space with chess matter. It has since had a host of imitators, among which are the *Albion*, the *New York Journal*, *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*, and *Porter's Spirit*, of New York; the *Saturday Evening Gazette* and *American*

*Union* of Boston ; the *Delta* of New Orleans ; the *Dispatch* of Baltimore ; the *Dispatch* of Cincinnati ; the *News* of Lynn ; and the *Standard* of Syracuse. . It is scarcely necessary to add that this hebdomadal publication of games, problems, and chess news, by the widely circulated newspaper press, is contributing in an unaccountable degree to the spread and popularization of the game. Among the *curiosa* of chess literature may be enumerated the Philidor of Pohlman, where each move of the openings is represented by a diagram ; the huge *Encyclopédie* of Alexandre, a compilation of all the analyses of the *débûts* by different writers, arranged in a tabular form ; the *Chess Grammar* of Kenny ; the remarkable Philidor of Pratt ; the *Fünf und Neunzig Sätze*, by Porteus of Leipsic ; the *Philosophy of Chess*, by Cluley ; the *Chess Player's Annual* of Tomlinson ; and the *Schach-Almanach* of Germany. In 1806, upon the entrance of Napoleon into Berlin, the famous automaton was drawn from its obscurity by Maelzel, a clever mechanician, and after meeting and defeating the powerful Emperor of the French, again made the tour of Europe. It was finally taken to the United States by Maelzel in 1826, where it was at last destroyed by the burning of the Museum at Philadelphia in 1854. Its secret conductors were, at different times, Mouret, Lewis, Schlomberger, and others. It excited hardly less interest than upon its previous appearance, and it was very generally successful against many of the strongest players of the day. It again gave rise to much literary discussion, and to the names of Windisch, Hindenburg, Ostertag, Böckmann, Racknitz, Ebert, Taruffi, and Thicknesse, who labored to explain the mystery of the movements during the preceding century, were now added those of Willis, Walker, Tomlinson, Busch, Tournay, Poe, and Mitchell. Giacometti, of Genoa, in 1801, endeavored to bring into use a kind of warlike chess, where cannons and mortars were substituted for the peaceful pieces and pawns ; and Enderlein of Berlin wrote with enthusiasm on the subject of chess for four persons. The bibliography

of the game has grown to be a subject of study, and Cancellieri, Hoeck, Walker, Oettinger, and Schmid have compiled catalogues of chess works, while the magazines have been filled with critical articles of great merit on individual authors. Chess libraries have been collected, with the loving assiduity of the bibliomaniac, by Mercier, Walker, Lewis, Bledow, Alliey, von der Lasa, Schumacher, and Franz, in the Old World; and by Allen, Agnel, and Anderson in the New. Art has lent its aid to illustrate the game, and the chess pictures of Retzsch, Hasenclever, Meissonier, Marlet, and Stone, are well and widely known. Clubs have increased in a ratio corresponding with the increasing popularity of the game, and some of these organizations, like the Clubs of Berlin, St. Petersburg, Vienna, and Amsterdam, the St. George's Club and the London Club in the British capital, and the Cercle des Échecs at Paris, have exercised an influence far beyond the locality in which they were situated. Chess divans or chess rooms, established by private enterprise, are to be found in most of the large cities on both sides of the ocean. In some countries, as in Great Britain and the United States, national associations have been formed, holding meetings at stated periods, where prizes are offered to be competed for by players and problem-makers, and the leading lovers of chess are afforded an opportunity to become acquainted with each other's powers. And when the middle of the century had been reached, an assemblage, on a still larger scale, was convened at London, in which the foremost masters of all Europe participated. In this grand tournament the first prize was won by Anderssen of Germany, and the second by Wyvill of England. This congress of the master-minds of the chess community gave a great impetus to the game over the whole world. It also originated the movement now going on for a general revision of the chess laws and the adoption of a universal code—a movement which will be, in its results, of vast utility.

Such is a brief outline of the progress of chess from its infancy to the middle of the nineteenth century. It less

deserves the name of a historical sketch than of a mere chronological catalogue of the more important incidents in chess annals. I publish it here in the hope that some other writer will fill up the bare and meagre frame-work which want of ability, no less than lack of space, has forced me to leave incomplete. But even in this imperfect survey how glorious does the past of our game appear, and how richly does it promise equal splendor for the future! Experience has taught us that as a source of amusement its abundant wealth can never be exhausted by the limited intellectual powers of man—that its treasures of delight and enjoyment are perennial. Its nature, its history, and its literature place it altogether above and beyond the domain of the gambler, and its character should never be contaminated by any comparison with the debasing games of hazard, nor with the rude and savage exhibitions of physical strength. In due time our own country will bring forth its great players and its famous writers. May they prove themselves worthy to occupy high places in the Valhalla of chess! May they equal in their blameless lives, in their lofty mental culture, and in their correct appreciation of the character of our philosophical and gentlemanly pastime, those distinguished masters and teachers whose names adorn the pages of the past!

## CHAPTER II.

### CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE HOLDING OF AN AMERICAN CONGRESS—PRELIMINARY PROCEEDINGS.

IN the year 1851 the European votaries of the game of chess held a great meeting in the city of London. Players were present from Russia and Hungary, from Austria and Prussia, from France and England. A general interest in the undertaking was felt and manifested by amateurs in all portions of the Old World. Letters of sympathy were received from Turkey; a portion of the funds for defraying the expenses was contributed by the clubs of India. The public press, in many instances, encouraged the project. Men of wealth in Great Britain opened the list of subscriptions with true English liberality, and the chess lovers of the Continent, equally enthusiastic, added their own names to those of their insular contemporaries. Nor were the results unworthy of so much effort and zeal. Proficients of many nations participated in a grand trial of skill; masters, educated in different schools, and devoted to rival systems of strategy, met each other in stern mental encounter, and tested the relative excellence of their various theories by the most rigid of criterions—actual practice. Chiefs, jealous of each other's fame, had an opportunity of studying each other's character, and of admiring each other's talent; large prizes were bestowed upon the victorious combatants; and in spite of some trifling asperities a common harmony and a unity of action among

the leaders of the chess world were secured. No event so important had ever been recorded in the annals of the game. The assemblage was successful in everything it promised to accomplish, save one. The prospectus issued by its managers provided for an authoritative legislation upon the chess code. All modern writers admitted, all practical players felt, the imperfections and anomalies of the current laws. The necessity for their revision was everywhere acknowledged, but the convention adjourned without any attempt at reform. But the meeting, without doubt, paved the way for the efforts which have been since made, and are still making, with a reasonable prospect of final success, to bring about the general adoption of a common and universal code. With this exception the London Tournament of 1851 was a gathering of which our transatlantic brethren might well be proud; and that they did rightly appreciate its importance is shown by the elaborate account of its proceedings, published some months afterwards in a good-sized volume,\* by the formal crowning of the chief victor of the Grand Tournament upon his return to Germany, and by the articles chronicling or criticising its acts, which appeared in all the chess magazines and chess journals of England and the Continent.

America took no part in this world's festival of chess. Our chess public, at that time, was, indeed, singularly apathetic. It seems to have sunk into one of those periodical fits of inaction to which every art and pursuit are subject, and from which our amusement has no right to claim an exemption. Few or no clubs were then in existence. The magazine established by Mr. Stanley had been discontinued, and the only regular chess publication was a weekly problem in the Albion newspaper. The excitement consequent upon the playing of various important matches by Mr. Stanley, Mr.

\* The Chess Tournament. A Collection of the Games played at this celebrated Assemblage. Illustrated by copious Diagrams and Notes, critical and explanatory. By H. STAUNTON, Esq. London: 1852. 12mo. pp. lxxi. and 377.

Rousseau, Mr. Schulten, and Mr. Turner had died away. In the west the Kentucky Tournaments had ceased; in the south the career of Paul Morphy had scarcely begun; in the east Mr. Hammond played but little; and in the north neither Philadelphia nor New York possessed any organized chess associations. But in spite of the want of regular chess organs and the general lack of interest in the game, stray notices of the London Tournament crossed the Atlantic, were read, and served to revive the old enthusiasm. Several clubs soon afterwards sprang into existence. Chess departments were commenced in various journals, and at length a magazine exclusively devoted to the interests of the chess fraternity was established. It is somewhat strange that no one should have conceived the idea of a general meeting of American players during the period between the years 1840 and 1848—a period which was distinguished by a widely-manifested interest in the game. It is still more strange that, with the example of the British amateurs before them, no one should have proposed a similar convention in this country, during the time which has elapsed since 1851. It was not until the beginning of 1857 that any person appears to have seen the desirableness of a national tournament. In March of that year the following article appeared in the pages of the *Chess Monthly* :\*

\* It may not be improper to relate here the following incident. In January, 1857, Mr. H. P. Montgomery, of Philadelphia, called upon the editor of this volume. In the conversation which ensued Mr. Montgomery suggested that the three best New York players and the three best Philadelphia amateurs should meet in one of the two cities, for the purpose of playing a consultation match. In reply the editor proposed, instead of this arrangement, the holding of a national chess congress, either in Philadelphia or New York. This proposal met with a hearty response from Mr. Montgomery, and was, so far as we are aware, the very first mention of the subject. The editor afterwards wrote to five or six distinguished amateurs, and so favorable were their replies that the whole affair resulted in the article quoted in the text. Since writing the text, we learn that Mr. Stanley, in a speech at the dinner given by the lovers of chess in New York to M. St. Amant, in 1852, suggested the holding of a World's Chess Tournament at the Great Exhibition in that city in the course of the following year; but nothing further ever came of it.

## A GENERAL AMERICAN TOURNAMENT.

Some half-dozen communications from as many different sources have suggested to us the idea of a National Tournament. Among the leading chess men to whom we have referred the subject, the opinion seems to be unanimous that the time is ripe for such a general assemblage of American players. In pointing out what seem to us the proper preliminary steps to be taken to secure a result apparently so universally desired, we shall be guided, in a great measure, by the example of the London Tournament of 1854. That great gathering—the first of its kind—in spite of many errors in the details of its management, made an era in the annals of European chess; and we might confidently look for results as important to the chess interests of our country from a similar contest in one of our great cities. Just now, too, it would serve a good purpose in enabling the American chess public to pronounce upon the adoption or rejection, as far as this country is concerned, of the revised code by Jænisch, Heydebrandt von der Lasa, and Staunton, which will be published in a few weeks. As we look at it, the first movement ought to be the appointment of local corresponding committees, for the purpose of collecting subscriptions and arranging the chief features of the programme. They should consult concerning the place of meeting, and, with reference to this point, although New York seems to have many things in its favor, yet the idea of one of our correspondents, that it be held in the city furnishing the largest amount of subscriptions, appears to be worthy of consideration. Such a convention might very properly come together on the birthday of Philidor, which occurs on the seventh of September. After arranging the time and the *locale*, the lesser details should be entrusted to a committee resident in the city selected. The subscriptions for the London Tournament amounted to six hundred and forty-five pounds, or about three thousand dollars. Less than half that sum would amply suffice for the prizes, both to players and problem-composers, expenses, &c., of a meeting merely national in its character. Each subscriber of a stated sum should of course be entitled to a copy of the book published out of the fund, and comprising all the games played, all the problems receiving prizes, and a sketch of the entire proceedings. Will not the lovers of the game resident in our different cities at once appoint committees to ascertain the feasibility of the undertaking?

The publication of these brief suggestions drew forth a number of communications from various parts of the land, all exhibiting a hearty desire that the project might be carried into execution. The feeling was so strong that the officers of the New York Club felt justified in taking the initiatory steps. A special meeting of the members of the club was called for the evening of March 26th. At that meeting, after considerable discussion, it was unanimously resolved, that "a committee of five persons be appointed to issue a formal proposal for a general assemblage of American players, at some convenient time and in some accessible locality, and to correspond with other clubs upon the feasibility of such an assemblage." This committee consisted of Colonel Charles D. Mead, president of the club, Mr. Frederic Perrin, secretary of the club; Mr. W. W. Montgomery, at that time chess editor of *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*; Mr. James Thompson, one of the oldest chess-players of New York, and Mr. Daniel W. Fiske, editor of the *Chess Monthly*. This committee immediately held a consultation, and determined at once to issue the following circular:—

#### A NATIONAL CHESS TOURNAMENT.

NEW YORK, April 17th, 1857.

It is certainly a notable fact that Americans have exhibited during the last few years an enlarged appreciation of the game of chess and a growing fondness for its practice. The depth and extent of this manifestation is sufficiently indicated by a rapid increase in the number of amateurs and clubs, by the successful establishment of a magazine especially devoted to the interests of the chess community, by the regular insertion of chess matter in several of our weekly journals, and by the interest everywhere felt and expressed in recent contests by correspondence between our different cities.

These evidences of the progress and popularity of the game have induced a desire among many friends of chess for a great National Tournament, similar, in some respects, to the celebrated Congress held at London in the year 1851, and to that gathering which is about to take place in one of the inland cities of England. It is believed that

## Preliminary Proceedings.

such an assemblage of American players would serve at once to illustrate and assist the advancement of chess in this country. It would exert a wide and enduring influence upon popular opinion, and, in its ultimate results, would establish our elegant pastime on the same broad footing of public favor which it has so long occupied among the nations of Europe. By its means, too, many distinguished cultivators of chess, now known to each other, for the most part, only by reputation, would become personally acquainted. The actual relative rank of our foremost practitioners, at present a matter of frequent dispute, would be determined by an unimpeachable criterion. It would afford, not only to those participating, but to devotees of Caëssa everywhere, a large amount of instruction and delight. And particularly at this time does such a convention seem more than ever desirable and proper, in order to pronounce authoritatively upon the acceptance or rejection, as far as this country is concerned, of the forthcoming revised code of chess laws.

Actuated by considerations already enumerated, the New York Chess Club has appointed a local Corresponding Committee with the view of ascertaining the feasibility of such an undertaking. The members of that Committee, in the execution of the duty assigned them, would propose to their chess brethren throughout the United States:

I. The holding of a National Tournament of American chess players at an early period and in a convenient and accessible locality.

II. The appointment of similar Committees in our chief cities empowered to correspond with each other in reference to the time and place of meeting and to settle all other preliminary arrangements.

III. The collection of a fund, by general subscription, sufficiently large to allow of prizes of respectable amounts to those players and problem composers who shall prove themselves most worthy thereof, and to defray the expenses of publishing a full account of the entire proceedings, including a selection of the games played and of the problems competing for prizes.

The Committee would request those Clubs and Players to whom this Circular may be sent, to address their replies to the Tournament Committee, New York Chess Club, No. 19 East Twelfth Street, New York.

CHARLES D. MEAD, JAMES THOMPSON, FREDERIC PERRIN, W. W. MONTGOMERY, DANIEL W. FISKE,	}	Committee of The New York Club.
--	---	---------------------------------------

This circular, besides being inserted in the May Number of the *Chess Monthly*, was extensively circulated in a separate form. The responses which it called forth were in the highest degree satisfactory. Amateurs and clubs everywhere recognised the desirableness of the contemplated undertaking, and appreciated the advantages which would result from its accomplishment. Its feasibility having been thus ascertained, there still remained several vexatious questions to be settled. Conspicuous among these were the matters of locality and time. In a country, like ours, where the political, commercial, and literary interests of the nation are not concentrated in a single metropolis, but diffused among a number of large cities, it is always difficult to select a point of meeting which shall suit all the members of any profession, or every practitioner of any art. In this case the difficulty was enhanced by the diverse and almost equally balanced claims of several candidates. Philadelphia was noted for the excellence of its play, and had just acquired additional celebrity by winning a match by correspondence with New York. It was, besides, the traditional seat of chess in the United States. There, nearly one hundred and twenty-five years before, Franklin had played the first game of chess of which we can find any mention in the history of this continent; there the earliest American chess-book was published in 1802; there the most extensive and complete chess library in America, and one of the finest in the world, was to be found. New York, on the other hand, contained the greatest number of amateurs; it was, at the time, almost the only city that could boast of any regular chess organ; and the idea of a Congress had originated with its players. Chicago undoubtedly possessed the largest and best organized club in the land. Washington was the federal capital, and the most accessible place of assemblage for the amateurs of the Southern States. Baltimore, New Orleans, and Cincinnati, all had their peculiar advantages. But the time for holding the meeting was no less a matter of difference. It was found impossible to name

## Preliminary Proceedings.

a season which should be convenient to every amateur. Those persons who were fond of chess were engaged in different avocations, and were scattered over an extensive country, and all that was possible was to choose a time not inconvenient to the majority. A lively correspondence, lasting several weeks, resulted at length in a satisfactory settlement of these difficulties. The other cities peacefully and courteously yielded to the earnestly urged claims of New York, and it was finally determined that the first American Chess Congress should convene in that city, on the sixth day of October, 1857.

The clubs of New York and Brooklyn at once proceeded to constitute the following gentlemen a local

### *COMMITTEE OF MANAGEMENT.*

CHARLES D. MEAD,	}	of the New York Chess Club.
CHARLES H. STANLEY,		
THEODORE LICHTENHEIN,		
JAMES THOMPSON,		
WILLIAM W. MONTGOMERY,		
FREDERIC PERRIN,		
DANIEL W. FISKE,		
DANIEL S. ROBERTS,		
THOMAS FRÈRE,		of the Brooklyn Chess Club.

and subsequently the gentlemen named below consented to act as a general

### *COMMITTEE OF CO-OPERATION.*

SAMUEL SMYTH,	}	of Philadelphia.
W. G. THOMAS,		
H. P. MONTGOMERY,		
SAMUEL LEWIS, M.D.,		
PROFESSOR GEORGE ALLEN,		
A. G. BURLEY,		
J. SPENCER TURNER,		
HIRAM KENNICOTT,		of Chicago.

PAUL MORPHY,	}	of New Orleans.
CHARLES A. MAURIAN, Jr.,		
FRANCIS MICHINARD,	}	of Cincinnati.
WILLIAM P. PRATT,		
M. P. McQUILLEN,	}	of San Francisco.
LE ROY SMITH,		
SELIM FRANKLIN,	}	of Syracuse.
T. J. GROTJAN,		
WILLIAM R. WHEATON,	}	
J. P. HASKINS,		
GEO. N. CHENEY,	}	
F. LESTER,		
W. T. JOHNSON, of Augusta, Me.		
EDWIN J. WELLER, of Boston, Mass.		
S. R. CALTHROP, of Bridgeport, Conn.		
THOMAS LOYD, of Keyport, N. J.		
AMBROSE A. WHITE, of Baltimore, Md.		
MASON BROWN, of Frankfort, Ky.		
DAVID PARRY, of Belmont, Buckingham Co., Va.		
A. B. MEEK, of Mobile, Ala.		
THOMAS HAMILTON, of St. Louis, Mo.		
LOUIS PAULSEN, of Dubuque, Iowa.		
DANIEL ROHRER, of St. Paul, Min.		
T. B. BAILLIE, of Sacramento, Cal.		

The Committee of Management now set themselves earnestly to work. Distinguished players in all parts of the country were invited to be present; with a due regard to the interests of chess legislation, a committee on the chess code was appointed, and requested to draw up a report on the duty of American players in the present state of the chess laws; another committee was appointed to report upon the possibility of a permanent national organization of the lovers of chess; and finally, subscription-lists were commenced in New York, Philadelphia, Chicago, San Francisco, and other places. The following prospectus, the result of considerable deliberation, was drawn up and issued in the shape of a pamphlet. It was in part modelled from that of the London

Tournament; but the Problem Tournay, especially, was a feature not to be found in its prototype.

### PROSPECTUS OF THE NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS, COMMENCING IN NEW YORK, OCTOBER 6TH, 1857.

The circular issued on the seventeenth of last April, by the New York Chess Club, for the purpose of ascertaining the feasibility and propriety of a general assemblage of the Chess Players resident in America, met with a hearty and zealous response from the Amateurs and Clubs of the United States. So favorable was the feeling everywhere manifested, that it was deemed advisable to proceed with the undertaking, and to complete at once the preliminary arrangements. The size of the Republic, the broad extent of territory covered by the different Chess Associations, stretching as they do from New England to California, and the business engagements of a large number of the prominent friends of Chess, rendered it necessary to reconcile many conflicting interests in the choice of the locality and season. At length, after considerable correspondence, both with individuals and Clubs, in reference to these points, the Committee of Management have the satisfaction of announcing that the first Chess Congress of America will assemble in the city of New York, on **TUESDAY, THE SIXTH OF OCTOBER, 1857**, and continue its sessions until the fifteenth of the same month, or until its business is finished. The Committee feel a real pleasure in stating that they not only have assurances of a full attendance from the Atlantic, Southern, and Western States, but that several of our Chess brethren from the shores of the Pacific, have signified their intention to be present on the occasion. No efforts will be wanting on the part of the Committee of Management, to make the gathering every way worthy of the game and the country. The Congress will be conducted, as nearly as possible, in accordance with the following

### PROGRAMME OF PROCEEDINGS.

The first feature of the Congress will be one or more

### SESSIONS FOR DEBATE,

in which the interests of American Chess and the present condition of the Chess Code, will be fully discussed. A National Chess Associa-

tion, composed of delegates from all the Clubs, and assembling once in two or three years, to watch over and further the development of the game in this country, is very generally thought desirable. All readers of Chess journals are aware, too, that among the matters now occupying the attention of the public, in both the New and Old Worlds, none is more important or worthy of notice than a revision of the Chess Laws. Both of these subjects will therefore be taken into consideration by the Congress. In order that unnecessary time may not be consumed in debate, and to enable the members to arrive at a more ready understanding of the questions presented, the Committee have thought proper to appoint the following Special Committees, who will report on subjects assigned them at an early session:

*COMMITTEE ON THE CHESS CODE.*

PROFESSOR GEORGE ALLEN, of Philadelphia.  
PROFESSOR HENRY VETHAKE, of Philadelphia.  
SAMUEL LEWIS, M.D., of Philadelphia.  
MR. PAUL MORPHY, of New Orleans.  
PROFESSOR H. R. AGNEL, of West Point.

*COMMITTEE ON AN AMERICAN CHESS ASSOCIATION.*

MR. A. R. GALLATIN, of New York.  
MR. HENRY R. WORTHINGTON, of Brooklyn.  
MR. GEORGE HAMMOND, of Boston.  
MR. JAMES MORGAN, of Chicago.  
MR. T. J. GROTJAN, of San Francisco.

In addition to these reports, any papers on subjects connected with literary, theoretical, or practical Chess, that may be communicated by amateurs, either of this country or Europe, shall receive the utmost attention at the hands of the Committee, and will be submitted by them to the Congress.

**THE GRAND TOURNAMENT.**

A Grand Tournament, composed of acknowledged first-class players, receiving no odds from any other players, or from each other, is intended to form the second feature. This contest will, it is hoped, secure many valuable additions to the literature of practical Chess, and

furnish a satisfactory criterion for determining the relative rank and actual strength of our foremost practitioners. The entrance fee to this Tournament, which must be deposited with the Treasurer of the Committee on or before the fifth day of October, has been fixed at Ten dollars. The method of play will be as follows: The contestants shall meet on Monday, the fifth of October, at three P.M. Should the number of entrances amount to any even and easily divisible number, say thirty-two, they shall then be paired off by lot, and commence their games simultaneously. The sixteen players winning three out of five games, are to be declared victors in this *first section* of the Tournament, and the sixteen losers excluded from all further share in the contest. The sixteen winners are then to be paired off by lot as before, the eight couple beginning their matches simultaneously. The eight winners of the first three games are to be declared victors in this *second section* of the Tournament, and the eight losers excluded from all further share in the contest. The eight winners are then to be paired off by lot as before, the four couple beginning their matches simultaneously. The four winners of the first three games are to be declared victors in this *third section* of the Tournament, and entitled to the four prizes. To determine the order in which the prizes shall be distributed, the four prize-bearers will then be paired off against each other as before, each couple to play the best of five games. The two winners in this *fourth section* of the Tournament shall then play a match for the two highest prizes, and the player winning the first five games shall be entitled to the *first prize*—the second prize going to the loser. The two losers in this fourth section of the Tournament, shall also contend for the third and fourth prizes. The winner of the first three games shall receive the *third prize*—the *fourth prize* going to the loser.

Upon the assembling of the combatants in this Tournament, should the entrances amount to a number less adapted for ultimate division than thirty-two, the Committee of Management, in conjunction with the players themselves, shall arrange the method of play.

#### PRIZES IN THE GRAND TOURNAMENT.

After deducting from all the moneys received the sum necessary to defray expenses, and to publish the Book of the Congress, as well as the amount of prizes offered in the Minor Tournament, and in the Problem Tournay, the remainder of the fund will be divided into prizes to be given to the victors in the Grand Tournament, in the following manner:

The FIRST PRIZE shall consist of *three-fifths* of this fund.

The SECOND PRIZE shall consist of *one-fifth* of this fund.

The THIRD PRIZE shall consist of *two-fifteenths* of this fund.

The FOURTH PRIZE shall consist of *one-fifteenth* of this fund.

---

### THE MINOR TOURNAMENT..

In order to gratify the large class of Chess players, scattered throughout the country, who have not yet obtained the highest rank, a Minor Tournament has been arranged. This will comprise such players as may choose to enter the lists, who are in the habit of receiving the odds of at least a Pawn and Move from those participating in the Grand Tournament. The entrance fee to this contest, which is to be paid to the Treasurer of the Committee of Management, on or before the fifth of October, will be Five dollars. The method of play will be the same as in the Grand Tournament. The Committee offer the following

#### PRIZES IN THE MINOR TOURNAMENT.

The FIRST PRIZE will be Seventy-five dollars.

The SECOND PRIZE will be Fifty dollars.

The THIRD PRIZE will be Twenty-five dollars.

The FOURTH PRIZE will be an inlaid Chess Board.

### SPECIAL AND CONSULTATION MATCHES.

Should time and other circumstances permit, the Committee will arrange, after the conclusion of the two Tournaments, a series of Special Matches and Consultation Games, between prominent players. Suitable prizes will be offered for competition in these contests.

---

### THE PROBLEM TOURNAZ.

So much has the taste for problems increased of late years, and so large has the number of eminent composers now become, that the Committee have been induced to offer prizes for the best specimens of Chess strategy. They will give for the best set of three problems the sum of Thirty dollars, and five copies of the Book of the Congress;

and for the second best similar set the sum of Fifteen dollars, and three copies of the Book of the Congress. None of the problems are to be either suicidal or conditional. The following gentlemen have consented to act as a

*COMMITTEE OF EXAMINATION AND AWARD.*

- Mr. EUGENE B. COOK, of Hoboken.
- Mr. W. G. THOMAS, of Philadelphia.
- Mr. W. J. A. FULLER, of New York.
- Mr. J. FERGUSON, of Lockport.
- Mr. S. R. CALTHROP, of Bridgeport.

The problems, plainly prepared on diagrams and accompanied by sealed envelopes, distinguished by a motto, and containing the name of the composer, are to be addressed to EUGENE B. COOK, Esq., *Hoboken, New Jersey*, before the first day of November, 1857. This late date has been chosen in order to enable the composers of England, Germany, and France, to compete with their brethren of America for these prizes. The decision of the Committee will be announced in the various Chess periodicals, and the successful problems published in the Book of the Congress.

**THE BOOK OF THE CONGRESS.**

The Committee of Management will publish, under proper editorial supervision, a Book of the Congress, to comprise:—1. A historical sketch of Chess in America. 2. A complete account of the Congress, from its inception to its end. 3. Such reports made, papers read, or addresses delivered at the Congress as may seem of interest. 4. All of the games played, or such a selection from them as may appear desirable, illustrated by full and careful notes. 5. All the problems receiving prizes. 6. A list of subscribers to the General Fund.

**THE GENERAL FUND.**

Every subscriber to the General Fund, to the amount of five dollars and upwards, is entitled to a copy of the Book of the Congress. A project so likely to benefit materially the cause of Chess in America, cannot but commend itself to the sympathies of every amateur. The

Committee, therefore, confidently hope that lovers of Chess throughout the United States will be both liberal and prompt in their subscriptions. To carry the undertaking to a successful and satisfactory issue, a large fund will be required, and the Committee wish to ascertain as early as possible the exact amount of money likely to be placed at their disposal. Subscriptions can be remitted direct to JAMES THOMPSON, Esq., Treasurer of the Committee of Management, 359 Broadway, New York.

All other communications than those containing remittances, are to be addressed to DANIEL W. FISKE, Secretary of the Committee of Management, Chess Club, 19 East Twelfth Street, New York.

CHARLES D. MEAD,

President of the Committee.

DANIEL W. FISKE,

Secretary of the Committee.

New York Chess Club, July 20th, 1857.

Appended to the above prospectus were the following carefully considered

#### RULES AND REGULATIONS.

1. The Sessions are to be held, and the Tournaments played, at the New York Chess Club.
2. No others but subscribers to the General Fund will be admitted to the Rooms, or allowed to participate in the debates or play.
3. The names of all competitors in the two Tournaments, must be sent in to the Committee of Management, on or before the first of October.
4. The combatants in the Grand Tournament are to meet at the New York Club on *Monday, the fifth of October*, at three P.M., when they will be paired off by lot. The playing will be commenced on the following day.
5. The combatants in the Minor Tournament are to meet at the New York Club on *Monday, the twelfth of October*, at three P.M., when they will be paired off by lot. The playing will commence the following day.
6. The games are to be played in accordance with the Code of Chess Rules, published in Staunton's *Chess Player's Hand Book*, and all disputed points referred to a Special Committee appointed by the

Committee of Management, whose decision must be considered final. Drawn games are not to be counted.

7. The hours of play will be from 9 A.M. until 12 P.M.
8. Any player failing to attend within half an hour of the time appointed for play, must forfeit three dollars to the Fund, for each and every non-attendance; and after three forfeitures for absence, he will not be permitted to enter the lists again.
9. For non-attendance on one occasion only, a medical certificate will be allowed to excuse the absentee from penalty.
10. One game at least is to be played at a sitting. After four hours, however, at the request of either party, a game may be adjourned for one hour. All play will cease at 12 o'clock, P.M., or as near that time as both parties in a game shall have played an equal number of moves.
11. In cases of unreasonable delay, the Committee of Management reserve to themselves the right to limit the time to be consumed on any move, to thirty minutes.
12. As the Committee of Management guarantee to every subscriber of five dollars and upwards, a correct and detailed account of the Congress, all the games played, and all the problems competing for prizes, are to be regarded as their property, and no one will be allowed to publish any of such games or problems, without their express sanction.
13. Every player entering the lists in the Tournament, must consider himself *ipso facto* bound by all regulations issued by the Committee of Management.

Copies of this Prospectus, with the accompanying Rules and Regulations, were sent to the prominent journals of the large cities. Some of them copied the pamphlet *in extenso*; still more noticed the undertaking with handsome words of encouragement. The press, generally, throughout the Union, gave all needful publicity to the scheme, and no little degree of interest was manifested in these efforts to extend the practice of our quiet game of calculation even by the non-chess-playing portion of the community. The great commercial panic which commenced its ravages some weeks before the day fixed for the opening of the Congress undoubtedly influenced unfavorably the amount of subscriptions to the

general fund. But still the sum raised was much beyond the anticipations of the Committee.

About two weeks before the commencement of the congress the Committee issued a final circular, containing a list of such prominent players as had promised to attend and a programme of arrangements. It stated that the Committee were fully convinced of the success of the undertaking, and gave many items of information interesting to members outside of New York City. Its importance, however, was not great enough to warrant us in reprinting it here. It was widely circulated, and doubtless convinced many, who were still incredulous, that the coming festival was likely to be one of the great events of American chess history.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE PERIOD OF THE CONGRESS.

THE time, so anxiously expected by the cultivators of chess in the United States, at length arrived. Several days previous to the period set apart for the formal opening of the Congress, amateurs from various parts of the country began to arrive in the city. Among the earliest was Mr. T. J. Grotjan, delegate of the clubs in San Francisco, California. To the great regret of the Committee his engagements compelled him to leave without taking any active part in the proceedings. Mr. Louis Paulsen, of Iowa, whose high reputation preceded him, was in the city sufficiently early to gratify the members of the New York Club with an exhibition of his wonderful abilities in playing without sight of the board. Mr. Morphy, whose attendance for a long time was very doubtful, telegraphed to the Committee his departure from New Orleans in the latter part of September, and reached New York on Monday, October 5th. Mr. Kennicott, one of the leading players of the Chicago Club, and Mr. Allison, a prominent amateur of Minnesota, arrived on the previous Saturday. Judge Meek, who holds a high rank among the chess proficients of the Southern States, was at the metropolis in the month of September. On the afternoon of Monday, the fifth of October, those persons intending to participate in the Grand Tournament met, in accordance with the prospectus, at the rooms of the New York Club, in order to make the final arrangements for the contest. The following gentlemen were present, and signified their intention to enter the lists:

Mr. W. S. ALLISON, of Hastings, Minnesota.  
Mr. HIRAM KENNICOTT, of Chicago, Illinois.  
Mr. HUBERT KNOTT, of Brooklyn, N. Y.  
Mr. THEODORE LICHTENHEIN, of New York City.  
Mr. N. MARACHE, of New York City.  
Hon. A. B. MEEK, of Mobile, Alabama.  
Mr. PAUL MORPHY, of New Orleans, Louisiana.  
Mr. LOUIS PAULSEN, of Dubuque, Iowa.  
Mr. FREDERIC PERRIN, of New York City.  
Dr. B. I. RAPHAEL, of Louisville, Kentucky.  
Mr. CHARLES H. STANLEY, of New York City.  
Mr. JAMES THOMPSON, of New York City.

In addition to these Mr. W. J. A. Fuller and Mr. Denis Julien, of New York, both declared themselves willing to engage in the contest, provided the required number of sixteen could not otherwise be completed. A telegram from Mr. H. P. Montgomery, of Philadelphia, informed the Committee that, although he could not be present at this meeting, he would nevertheless reach the city in time to commence playing the following day. The gentlemen above named then organized, and requested Colonel Charles D. Mead to act as their chairman, and Mr. Daniel W. Fiske as their secretary. Several methods of play, differing from that laid down in the prospectus, were then proposed, calculated to do away with much of the difficulty which would result from the unfortunate pairing of the combatants. The most ingenious of these schemes were those submitted by the Hon. Mr. Meek and by Mr. Calthrop, of Bridgeport. It will be remembered that considerable disappointment had been felt in the London Tournament, from the fact that some of the very best players had been drawn against each other in the first round or section. Several, who would otherwise have probably taken prizes, had thus been thrown out at the very first stage. To obviate this it was proposed that the eight winners in the first section should play for the first and second prizes, and the eight losers for the third and fourth. In this way, it will be seen, that the best and second best players, even though they

had been paired together in the first round, would both have ultimately secured prizes. This was Mr. Calthrop's plan ; Judge Meek's, though differing in some particulars, was calculated to attain the same object. After a lengthy discussion it was finally determined to reject both these propositions, and to carry out the method of play adopted by the Committee of Management, and published in the prospectus. Several other questions of minor importance were debated, and so much time was consumed in these preliminary arrangements that it was resolved to postpone the drawing until the afternoon of the next day. In the evening the rooms of the Club were thronged with spectators to witness some passages-at-arms between Mr. Paul Morphy and Mr. Charles H. Stanley.

The sixth day of October was the time fixed for the formal opening and organization of the Congress. The Committee, having foreseen that the quarters of the Metropolitan Club would not be large enough to accommodate the number of subscribers to the fund, had hired the extensive apartments at No. 764 Broadway, known as Descombes' Rooms. These had been fitted up with special reference to the occasion, and the peculiar fitness and elegance of the decorations excited general admiration. At the east end of the main Hall, a room eighty feet in length, was a slightly raised platform, over which hung the American flag, draping the bust and bearing the name of Franklin, the first known chess player and chess writer of the New World. Along each side were suspended various national banners in the following order : the French tri-color, adorned with the name of Labourdonnais ; the English St. George's, with that of M'Donnell ; the German tri-color, with that of Bilguer ; the Spanish, with that of Lopez ; the Italian, with that of Del Rio ; the Neapolitan, with that of Salvio ; the Portuguese, with that of Damiano ; the Hungarian, with that of Szén ; and the Turkish with that of Stamma. At the foot of the hall were entwined the French and American colors, and stretching across them was seen the memorable name of Philidor. On scrolls, above the banners, were inscribed in silver

and gold typography, the names of the leading living professors of the art, including those of Lewis, Staunton, Walker, Von der Lasa, Anderssen, Löwenthal, Harrwitz, Petroff, and Jäenisch. The walls were furthermore ornamented with numerous chess engravings and photographs, much enhancing the general effect.\* Through the entire length of the hall extended two rows of marble tables, upon which were placed large inlaid boards and the classically designed Staunton chess-men. These were protected from the crowding of spectators by cushioned seats arranged on either side of these rows. A huge telegraphic chess-board, for repeating games of more than ordinary interest, hung at one end of the hall. The Committee had also provided for the convenience of members, ample conversation rooms, committee rooms, lunch rooms, etc., and printed cards were conspicuously posted containing the following

#### RULES OF THE ROOMS.

1. The Rooms are open (to ticket-holders only), from 9 o'clock in the morning until 12 o'clock in the evening.
2. All conversation and noise are positively and strenuously prohibited. Both spectators and players will at once see the importance and necessity of silence and quiet.
3. The games being the property of the Committee of Management, for the benefit of the subscribers, no person will be permitted to copy any of them for publication.
4. Refreshments are served at all hours in the lunch room below.
5. Persons desiring any information will please apply to one of the members of the Committee of Management.

At eleven o'clock, on the morning of the sixth of October, a large number of players and amateurs having assembled at

\* Among these were the two pretty engravings from the *Mate Pending* and *Mated* of Frank Stone, the celebrated outline *Game of Life* by Retzsch, the humorous picture by Hasenclever, entitled *The Chess Club*, a chess caricature by Cruikshank, photographs of Stanley and Löwenthal, groups of American players, etc.

## The Period of the Congress.

the Rooms, the Congress was called to order by Colonel Charles D. Mead, who, on behalf of the Committee of Management, nominated the following gentlemen as permanent officers of the first American Chess Congress:

### *President.*

The Honorable A. B. MEEK, of Alabama.

### *Vice-Presidents.*

Mr. GEORGE HAMMOND, of Massachusetts.

Mr. ALBERT R. GALLATIN, of New York.

Professor HENRY VETHAKE, of Pennsylvania.

Mr. HIRAM KENNICOTT, of Illinois.

### *Secretary.*

Mr. DANIEL W. FISKE, of New York.

### *Assistant Secretaries.*

Mr. THOMAS FRERE, of Brooklyn.

Mr. FREDERICK EDGE, of New York.

Mr. ROBERT J. DODGE, of New York.

Mr. WILLIAM C. MILLER, of Jersey City.

### *Marshals.*

Mr. DENIS JULIEN, of New York.

Mr. S. HEILBUTH, of New York.

The nominations were seconded, and the entire list unanimously elected. Judge Meek, upon taking the chair, made an eloquent address. He stated that he supposed his nomination was owing to that distinguished courtesy in her treatment of strangers for which New York was renowned. He enlarged upon the dignity of the game of chess, which, by its very nature, was placed above all other amusements, and hoped that the day would come when its introduction into the schools in partial substitution for some branches of mathematics would be brought about. He considered it, as a means of mental disci-

pline and as an effective method of mental culture, but little behind the science of numbers, and for many minds greatly superior. He congratulated the Congress upon the number and character of its members, and alluded to the favorable influence which it was destined to exert upon the spread of the game in this country, and upon our chess reputation abroad. He asserted that America stood in need of chess, and that chess stood in need of America. After some appropriate remarks upon the morality and refinement of the game, he concluded by thanking the Congress for conferring upon him the honor of presiding over its deliberations.

Colonel Mead then read the

#### REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE OF MANAGEMENT.

The idea of a national gathering of the chess-players of the United States was first suggested in *The Chess Monthly* for March last. So general was the feeling in its favor among the players of this city, that the President of the New York Chess Club called a meeting of that body on the 27th of February to inquire into the propriety of taking the preliminary steps toward the realization of the project. After considerable discussion, the New York Club unanimously resolved that it was very desirable that there should be a general reunion of the foremost chess talent of the nation in one place, for the purposes of play, debate, and a friendly interchange of opinion. A Provisional Committee, consisting of C. D. Mead, F. Perrin, W. W. Montgomery, J. Thompson, and D. W. Fiske, was appointed to ascertain the sentiments of amateurs in the various parts of the Union, and to take such other measures as might be necessary and proper. This Committee issued a circular on the 17th of April, which was sent to all the clubs and players of which any information could be obtained. The responses from every source were at once hearty and favorable. So general was the belief in the feasibility of the proposed Congress, that the New York Committee thought it advisable to take measures at once to determine the time and place. A majority of the communications received seemed to concur in designating this city, where the project originated, as the most proper locality. Several, however, inclined to Philadelphia, from the number and well known high character of its players, and from the fact of its having been for a long time a sort of traditional seat of

American chess. The Committee thereupon addressed the Philadelphia Committee upon this subject. They replied that, were that city selected, their ability to aid the fund would be materially increased, and that in such a case they would guarantee a subscription of \$500. As it appeared probable that a larger sum could be raised in New York, the Philadelphians courteously conceded the point, and New York was chosen. The time decided upon seemed to suit, better than any other, the convenience of a majority of those likely to attend.

These important questions having been settled, a Committee of Management was appointed by the New York and Brooklyn Clubs, consisting of Charles D. Mead, Charles H. Stanley, James Thompson, Theodore Lichtenhein, W. W. Montgomery, F. Perrin, and Daniel W. Fiske, of the former Association, and Daniel S. Roberts and Thomas Frere, of the latter. A prospectus was immediately drawn up and published. Subscription lists were started in New York and other places. Special Committees were appointed to prepare reports on the most important subjects. In short, the Committee set themselves earnestly to work to fulfil the duties with which they were charged. The result is the present Congress.

The absence of any of our distinguished players is to be regretted; but the Committee believe that no time, however convenient, and no place, however accessible, would have been entirely free from such a contingency. The great extent of our Republic and the diverse pursuits of our leading amateurs will rarely, if ever, permit a full and universally attended gathering of the members of the chess community. Owing in a measure to the present heavy commercial and financial depression, the subscription to the general fund has been, in many cities, much less than could otherwise have been reasonably expected. This will considerably reduce the amount of the prizes in the Grand Tournament. But, after all, honor is the real prize for which every true chess man combats, and victory is the only reward he covets. In spite of these adverse circumstances, the Committee nevertheless congratulate the members and chess-players everywhere upon the promised success of the National Chess Congress. Considered as the first assemblage of the devotees of chess in this western world it will be and is triumphantly successful. It will introduce to each other's acquaintance and esteem several of those men who have shown the acuteness of their intellects and the greatness of their mental power in numberless contests upon the checkered field; it will prove to the Old World the real strength and actual virtue of American chess; it will elevate the standard and enlarge the popularity

of the royal pastime in this democratic country; and finally, it is hoped that it will add to the literature of chess games and problems not altogether unworthy of the great and honored dead—the old masters of the art of chess-play.

The Report was unanimously accepted, and on motion of Mr. Kennicott, of Illinois, it was resolved, that the thanks of the Congress be voted to the Local Committee of Management, for the able manner in which they had prosecuted the undertaking from its commencement, and for the ample and excellent accommodation which they had provided. It was also voted that the Congress accept the action of the Committee in appointing the following Special Committees:

*ON THE CHESS CODE.*

Professor GEORGE ALLEN, of Philadelphia.

Professor HENRY VETHAKE, of Philadelphia.

SAMUEL LEWIS, M.D., of Philadelphia.

Mr. PAUL MORPHY, of New Orleans.

Professor HYACINTH R. AGNEL, of West Point.

*ON AN AMERICAN CHESS ASSOCIATION.*

Mr. ALBERT R. GALLATIN, of New York.

Mr. HENRY R. WORTHINGTON, of Brooklyn.

Mr. GEORGE HAMMOND, of Boston.

Mr. JAMES MORGAN, of Chicago.

Mr. T. J. GROTJAN, of San Francisco.

*ON THE PROBLEM TOURNAY.*

Mr. E. B. COOK, of Hoboken.

Mr. W. J. A. FULLER, of New York.

Mr. JAMES FERGUSON, of Lockport.

Mr. W. G. THOMAS, of Philadelphia.

Mr. S. R. CALTHROP, of Bridgeport.

It was resolved that the President, Secretary, and Chair-

man of the Committee of Management be *ex officio* members of the Committee on the Code. The Congress then adjourned to meet in deliberative session on the following Thursday, at nine o'clock in the evening.

After this adjournment the players in the Grand Tournament proceeded to draw lots for antagonists. In addition to those who had entered on the previous day, the names of Mr. W. J. A. Fuller and Mr. Denis Julien were inscribed on the list. Mr. H. P. Montgomery, of Philadelphia, was also present. These accessions raised the number of competitors to fifteen. At the solicitation of the Committee, Mr. Daniel W. Fiske, of New York City, consented to become the sixteenth. The result of the drawing was as follows :

- I. Mr. HIRAM KENNICOTT, of Illinois, against Dr. B. I. RAPHAEL, of Kentucky.
- II. Hon. A. B. MEEK, of Alabama, against Mr. W. J. A. FULLER, of New York.
- III. Mr. FREDEKICK PERRIN, of New York, against Mr. HUBERT KNOTT, of Brooklyn.
- IV. Mr. JAMES THOMPSON, of New York, against Mr. PAUL MORPHY, of Louisiana.
- V. Mr. W. S. ALLISON, of Minnesota, against Mr. H. P. MONTGOMERY, of Pennsylvania.
- VI. Mr. DANIEL W. FISKE, of New York, against Mr. N. MARACHE, of New York.
- VII. Mr. CHARLES H. STANLEY, of New York, against Mr. THEODORE LICHTENHEIN, of New York.
- VIII. Mr. DENIS JULIEN, of New York, against Mr. LOUIS PAULSEN, of Iowa.

Later in the day, Mr. S. R. Calthrop, of Connecticut, arrived, and expressed his regret at not having reached the city in time to take part in the Tournament. Mr. Julien consenting to retire, a paper was circulated, and received the signatures of all the contending players, permitting the substitution of Mr. Calthrop for Mr. Julien as the opponent of Mr. Paulsen. The Committee of Management announced that the Rev. Dr.

Walton and Colonel Charles D. Mead of New York, and Mr. Lewis Elkin of Philadelphia, had been appointed umpires for both the Grand and Minor Tournaments. The choice of these gentlemen was much commended, and the playing was at once commenced. As the evening approached the Rooms were filled with a throng of spectators to watch the progress of the battles. At the close of the evening the score stood as follows :

I. KENNICOTT, 1 ;	RAPHAEL, 0.
II. MEEK, 1 ;	FULLER, 0.
III. PERRIN, 0 ;	KNOTT, 1.
IV. THOMPSON, 0 ;	MORPHY, 2.
V. ALLISON, 1 ;	MONTGOMERY, 1.
VI. FISKE, 0 ;	MARACHE, 0.
VII. STANLEY, 0 ;	LICHENHEIN, 0.
VIII. CALTHROP, 0 ;	PAULSEN, 1.

*October 7th.*—The session of the Congress was a full one, and the interest caused by the publication of the first day's proceedings in the daily papers hourly increased the attendance. A number of distinguished amateurs, such as Mr. George Hammond, of Boston, who arrived too late to enter the Grand Tournament, Mr. Morphy, Colonel Mead, and others, encountered each other in side games. Besides Mr. Hammond, for many years the leading representative of New England chess, several other players from different parts of the country made their appearance this day, including Mr. Lewis Elkin and others, from Philadelphia. At twelve o'clock the score in the Grand Tournament was :

I. KENNICOTT, 1 ;	RAPHAEL, 1.
II. MEEK, 1 ;	FULLER, 1.
III. PERRIN, 1 ;	KNOTT, 1.
IV. THOMPSON, 0 ;	MORPHY, 2.
V. ALLISON, 1 ;	MONTGOMERY, 3.
VI. FISKE, 1 ;	MARACHE, 0.
VII. STANLEY, 0 ;	LICHENHEIN, 0.
VIII. CALTHROP, 0 ;	PAULSEN, 3.

It will be seen that two of the contestants, Mr. Montgomery and Mr. Paulsen, had won the required number of games and were now in the second section.

*October 8th.*—Considerable progress was made in the Grand Tournament. Much interesting outside play took place between Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen, Mr. Morphy and Mr. Montgomery, and Colonel Mead and Mr. Hammond. In the evening at nine o'clock the adjourned deliberative meeting of the Congress was held. A communication was read from Mr. Robert J. Dodge, of New York, on the subject of a chess notation. It was referred to the Committee on the Code. The lengthy and learned Report of the Committee on the Chess Code, drawn up by the Chairman, Professor George Allen of the University of Pennsylvania, was read by Colonel Mead. It was listened to with close attention, was unanimously accepted, and a vote of thanks tendered to the Committee for the thorough manner in which they had performed their task. Much discussion then ensued, relative to the proposed new Code, the duties of American players in the matter, etc., in which a number of members took part. On motion of Mr. Elkin of Philadelphia, it was resolved that when this Congress finally adjourns, it shall recommend to the National Association, if such an organization be formed, to convene the next Congress in the city of Philadelphia. The deliberative session then adjourned to meet again at the usual hour on Monday the 12th. Playing was then resumed, and at the time of closing the rooms, the remaining players, in the First Section, reported their scores to be

I. KENNICOTT, 1 ;	RAPHAEL, 1 ;	Drawn, 1.
II. MEEK, 1 ;	FULLER, 1.	
III. PERRIN, 1 ;	KNOTT, 1.	
IV. THOMPSON, 0 ;	MORPHY, 3.	
VI. FISKE, 2 ;	MARACHE, 0.	
VII. STANLEY, 0 ;	LICHENHEIN, 0.	

Mr. Morphy's name was thus added to the list of victors.

*October 9th.*—This day Mr. Charles H. Stanley, whose high reputation, during the last fifteen years, as a chess-player, had made his absence noticed, appeared at the Rooms and played his first game at the Tournament. Illness had prevented his previous attendance. It was announced that, on the following evening, Mr. Paulsen would play four games at once against four opponents, without seeing the boards and men. At Mr. Paulsen's request, Mr. Morphy was invited to be one of the opposing players, to which the latter readily consented on condition that he also played without sight of the board. In view of the desire of a large number of persons, not members of the Congress, to witness this extraordinary exhibition, tickets were issued by the Committee of Management, for three days, at one dollar each. The score in the Tournament stood at twelve o'clock, as follows :

I. KENNICOTT, 2 ;	RAPHAEL, 1 ;	Drawn, 1.
II. MEEK, 2 ;	FULLER, 2.	
III. PERRIN, 1 ;	KNOTT, 1.	
VI. FISKE, 2 ;	MARACHE, 0.	
VII. STANLEY, 0 ;	LICHENHEIN, 1.	

*October 10th.*—The Rooms to-day were thronged. Off-hand games and the contests of the Tournament occupied the entire forenoon, and in the afternoon Mr. Paulsen, according to arrangement, commenced the performance of his wonderful blindfold feat. Full accounts of this exhibition appeared in the New York daily journals of the twelfth, from one of which, the *Tribune*, the following notice of previous attempts at blind-fold playing is extracted :

The faculty of playing without seeing the board is by no means of frequent occurrence; the game of chess is of so complicated and varying a nature that it is generally considered sufficient to play well with the organ of sight in full operation. In a late conversation with Daniel W. Fiske, Esq., the editor of the N. Y. *Chess Monthly*, we gathered numerous interesting facts with regard to blindfold players.

In the year 970 of the Christian Era, a Greek named Joseph Tchelebi, who had travelled throughout Eastern Asia, played a blindfold match of chess at Tripoli, Syria. We should, however, be inclined to call his performance blind-man's playing, for, his eyes being bandaged, he was permitted to touch the pieces and thus discover the position of the game. The next instance on record is that of a famous Saracenic performer named Buzecca, time 1266, and scene the palace of Count Popoli at Florence. This may be considered the first true example of blindfold playing, for Buzecca performed the then unheard-of feat of conducting two games without seeing the pieces, and a third one over the board. In Carrera's scarce and valuable Treatise on Chess, published in 1617, we find mention made of several good blindfold players, such as Mangiolini of Florence, Zerone, Medrano, and the brilliant Ruy Lopez of Spain. Leonardo da Cutri and Paoli Boi were also known for like performances. At the commencement of the last century there lived a Jesuit priest, named Girolamo Saccheri, who, according to the assertion of the Turinese historian, Keysler, could play three games simultaneously without sight of any board; and Verci, in his Letters on Chess, declares that he possessed the power of playing even four games without scarcely committing the most trivial error in any of them. This is the only instance known, hitherto, of such a number being played simultaneously. The great master, and popularizer of Chess, Philidor, astonished everybody in the French and English Courts by his wonderful powers in blindfold playing. Such players had merely been heard of, not seen; and, when Philidor undertook three games at the same time, he was considered to have performed an incredible feat. Herr Harrwitz is the most noticeable instance of blindfold playing in the present century, and is considered in Europe as the great master of the science. He, however, plays but three games at a time, and when his opponents are of equal strength with himself he exacts odds from them. He has lately performed at the chess soirées given by Prince Napoleon at Paris, and also at the Manchester Tournament in England, where he won a game from the great German player, Anderssen, both gentlemen being blindfold. Labourdonnais, the vanquisher of M'Donnell, and Bilguer, could conduct two games at once, and it is pretty generally the case that a first-rate chess-player can undertake one game without seeing the board.

Mr. Paulsen and Mr. Morphy sat back to back on the platform at the end of the hall. The four boards were ranged

across the room, and besides Mr. Morphy the opponents of Mr. Paulsen were Mr. W. J. A. Fuller, Mr. Denis Julien, and Mr. C. H. Schultz. The contests began at half-past four, and Mr. Paulsen's accuracy astonished the numerous lookers-on. His vast powers of memory seemed never to fail him, and he retained throughout an unerring knowledge of the positions of the pawns and pieces on each board. At twelve o'clock Mr. Morphy had won his game, having announced, at the twenty-eighth move, checkmate in five moves; Mr. Schultz had resigned, and the remaining two games were adjourned, on account of the lateness of the hour, until Monday the twelfth, Mr. Paulsen calling off the positions of the men on each board in succession with almost incredible rapidity and precision. Several prominent citizens of New York and vicinity, including many distinguished ornaments of the pulpit and the bar, were present during the whole evening, and manifested great interest in this unusual exhibition of mental power. No progress was made in the Tournament to-day, the games being suspended a little after midday to make room for the necessary arrangements in connexion with the blindfold play.

*October 12th.*—This was the day appointed for the drawing in the Minor Tournament, to be composed of persons who were accustomed to receive small odds from players of the first rank. The sixteen amateurs who entered the lists were paired as follows :

- I. Mr. J. S. DUNNING, of New York, against Mr. E. FELDNER, of Hoboken.
- II. Mr. M. MANTIN, of New York, against Mr. A. MÖHLE, of Hoboken.
- III. Mr. THOMAS FRÈRE, of New York, against Mr. DENIS JULIEN, of New York.
- IV. Dr. J. W. STONE, of Boston, against Mr. W. SEEBACH, of New York.
- V. Mr. M. SOLOMONS, of New York, against Mr. J. TOBIAS, of New York.

VI. Mr. C. E. ANDERSON, of New York, against Mr. A. F. HIGGINS, of New York.

VII. Mr. ROBERT J. DODGE, of New York, against Mr. W. C. MILLER, of New York.

VIII. Mr. W. HORNER, of Brooklyn, against Mr. B. CARPLES, of New York.

Playing was immediately commenced, but was partially suspended during the evening, to witness the conclusion of Mr. Paulsen's blindfold match, which terminated in his drawing the game with Mr. Julien and winning the one against Mr. Fuller. At nine o'clock the adjourned deliberative session of the Congress was convened. The Secretary on behalf of the Committee read the report on a National Chess Association, which was laid over until the next meeting. On motion it was resolved "That the various reports accepted by this Congress be transferred by the Secretary to the proper officer of the American Chess Association, when the same is properly organized, said reports to be preserved among the archives of the Association." The session was then adjourned until the next Monday evening. The progress made during the day is shown by the following score :

I. KENNICOTT, 2 ;	RAPHAEL, 3 ;	Drawn, 1.
II. MEEK, 2 ;	FULLER, 2.	
III. PERRIN, 2 ;	KNOTT, 2.	
VI. FISKE, 2 ;	MARACHE, 0.	
VII. STANLEY, 2 ;	LICHENHEIN, 1.	

Mr. Raphael was consequently the fourth winner in this section. The drawing for the Second Section took place with the following result :

I. Mr. PAUL MORPHY against	{	Mr. W. J. A. FULLER
II. Mr. LOUIS PAULSEN "		or
	{	Hon. A. B. MEEK.
		Mr. H. P. MONTGOMERY.

III. Dr. B. I. RAPHAEL	against	{ Mr. DANIEL W. FISKE or Mr. N. MARACHE.
Mr. FREDERIC PERRIN	{ " "	
IV. or	{ Mr. CHARLES H. STANLEY. or Mr. T. LICHTENHEIN.	{ Mr. CHARLES H. STANLEY. or Mr. T. LICHTENHEIN.
Mr. HUBERT KNOTT		

*October 13th and 14th.*—Playing in both the Tournaments was carried on with zeal during these days. In the Grand Tournament the score of the players remaining in the First Section was

II. MEEK, 3 ;	FULLER, 2.	
III. PERRIN, 2 ;	KNOTT, 2 ;	Drawn, 2.
VI. FISKE, 2 ;	MARACHE, 0.	
VII. STANLEY, 2 ;	LICHTENHEIN, 2.	

Judge Meek, therefore, went over to the next section. Much interest was manifested in the contest between Mr. Lichtenhein and Mr. Stanley, the combatants being evidently very evenly matched. The old opponent of Rousseau, Löwenthal, and Schulten appeared, as the play went on, to regain much of that strength which, from long want of practice, he had lost. In the second section Mr. Paulsen won his first game of Mr. Montgomery. In the Minor Tournament Mr. Dunning won one game and his opponent drew one; Mr. Mantin and Mr. Möhle each won one; Mr. Julien won one game of Mr. Frère; Mr. Solomons won two of Mr. Tobias; Mr. Anderson won three, and his adversary none; Mr. Dodge and Mr. Miller each scored one; Mr. Horner won one of Mr. Carples; and Dr. Stone and Mr. Seebach each gained two games.

*October 15th, 16th, and 17th.*—During these three days but little of interest occurred. Players continued to arrive from different parts of the country, and the Rooms were continually filled with a large and interested crowd of amateurs. Among the new accessions may be mentioned Mr. W. S.

Thomas, delegate of the Yale Chess Club, Mr. Hollis R. Murdock, Secretary of the Stillwater Club in Minnesota, Mr. J. Chapman, of Boston, Dr. A. C. Hawes, of Providence, and Dr. S. Lewis, of Philadelphia. Both Tournaments steadily progressed. At the close of the week the First Section of the Grand Tournament was nearly finished. Mr. Marache, whom illness and business avocations had kept away, again appeared at the Rooms. The score stood

III. PERRIN, 3;	KNOTT, 2;	Drawn, 2.
VI. FISKE, 2;	MARACHE, 1.	
VII. STANLEY, 2;	LICHENHEIN, 3.	

Mr. Perrin and Mr. Lichtenhein thus reached the Second Section. Mr. Montgomery was unexpectedly called home, and was obliged to resign in the Second Section to Mr. Paulsen, the score standing Paulsen, 2; Montgomery, 0. In the same Section Mr. Morphy won his three games before his adversary, Judge Meek, had succeeded in scoring a single contest. In the Minor Tournament the first round was completed with the following result :

I. DUNNING, 3;	FELDNER, 0;	Drawn, 1.
II. MANTIN, 3;	MÖHLE, 2.	
III. FRÈRE, 0;	JULIEN, 3.	
IV. SOLOMONS, 3;	TOBIAS, 0.	
V. ANDERSON, 3;	HIGGINS, 0.	
VI. DODGE, 2;	MILLER, 3;	Drawn, 1.
VII. HORNER, 3;	CARPLES, 0;	" 1.
VIII. STONE, 2;	SEEBACH, 3;	" 1.

The dinner of the Congress took place at the St. Denis Hotel, on the evening of Saturday the 17th. A full account of this pleasant chess festival is given in another place.

*October 19th.*—This day the third week of the Congress began. The Congress dinner, on the preceding Saturday, seemed to have invigorated the members, for the playing now proceeded

with renewed zeal. There was no falling off in the attendance at the Rooms. Some faces, which had grown to be familiar during the early days of the Congress, were no longer visible, but new countenances were continually appearing to take their places. In the Second Section of the Grand Tournament Mr. Lichtenhein, having scored three games to Mr. Perrin's none, went over into the Third Section. The Congress was called to order at nine o'clock in the evening by the President, who stated that the first business in order was the consideration of the report of the Committee on a National Chess Association. After a thorough discussion of the articles of union, reported by the Committee, they were at length adopted. The vote having been taken the President announced, amid much applause, that the National Association was now a living fact, and that the Congress would proceed to the election of officers to serve until the next Congress. Mr. Paul Morphy submitted the name of Colonel Charles D. Mead, of New York, for the Presidency, a nomination which was seconded by Mr. N. Marache. Judge Meek stated that he had also been requested by the players of Philadelphia to put Colonel Mead in nomination, and that he deemed it essential for the interests of the national organization that the presiding officer should reside at a central point. Colonel Mead was thereupon unanimously elected President. In returning thanks Colonel Mead said, that he was fully sensible of the honor conferred upon him, especially when he saw himself surrounded by so many gentlemen better able to discharge the duties of the office than himself. But he would assure them that everything in his power should be done to promote the objects of the Association, and he was confident that, with the hearty co-operation of the clubs and amateurs of America, the most intellectual, the most moral, and the most fascinating of amusements, would be still further popularized. The following distinguished amateurs, representing the four sections of the Union, were then unanimously elected Vice-Presidents: the Hon. A. B. Meek, of Alabama, Mr. George Hammond, of

Massachusetts, Mr. H. P. Montgomery, of Pennsylvania, and Mr. James Morgan, of Illinois. Mr. Lewis Elkin, of Philadelphia, was elected Recording Secretary; Mr. Daniel W. Fiske, of New York, Corresponding Secretary; and Mr. James Thompson, of New York, Treasurer. The appointment of a Committee on the Code and on Chess Notation was left to the chair, who named the same gentlemen who had previously served in that capacity. At the suggestion of Colonel Mead it was resolved that all communications which had been received relative to any alterations of the code and to the adoption of a new notation should be referred to this Committee. Mr. Fiske stated that the articles of the Association provided for the election of thirteen Honorary Members, who must all be foreigners, and have shown some interest in American chess. It was resolved to fill seven of these appointments, leaving the remainder to be filled by future Congresses. The following celebrated European players and writers were accordingly chosen:

Mr. J. LÖWENTHAL, of London, proposed by Mr. Fiske.

Mr. H. STAUNTON, of London, proposed by Mr. Dunning.

Mr. T. VON HEYDEBRANDT UND DER LASA, of Berlin, proposed by Col. Mead.

Mr. CHARLES ST. AMANT, of Paris, proposed by Mr. Möhle.

Mr. C. F. JÆNISCH, of St. Petersburgh, proposed by Mr. Schultz.

Mr. A. ANDERSSEN, of Breslau, proposed by Mr. Fiske.

Mr. GEORGE WALKER, of London, proposed by Judge Meek.

On motion of Mr. Schultz it was resolved that a copy of the Book of the Congress be presented to each of the above-named gentlemen. Mr. Perrin, the Secretary of the New York Club, informed the Congress that he had received two communications from Mr. Löwenthal, of London; the first relating to the advisableness of always giving the first move, in published games, to the player of the white pieces, and the second containing a new analysis of the Pawn and Move opening. Both of these he was requested by their distinguished author to present to the Congress. A vote of thanks was given to Mr. Löwenthal

for his valuable communications. The President, Judge Meek, stated that he should be obliged to leave New York in a day or two and to yield the occupancy of the chair to the new President of the National Association. Mr. Dunning thereupon moved that the thanks of the Congress be tendered to Judge Meek for the very able and courteous manner in which he had fulfilled the duties of his office. This motion having been adopted, Judge Meek said that he cordially thanked the members for their adoption of the resolution. He had received a full reward for all his exertions in the pleasure he had experienced while presiding over their deliberations; and above all in the many delightful acquaintances which he had made among them. It had been his fortune to preside over many parliamentary bodies, but none of which he should retain such agreeable reminiscences as of this, and he hoped that he might hereafter enjoy other opportunities of uniting with them in furthering the cause and promoting the progress of chess. The Congress then adjourned, subject to the call of the President.

*October 20th.*—This morning the drawing for the Second Section of the Minor Tournament took place, resulting in the following manner :

I. Mr. M. SOLOMONS	against	Mr. C. E. ANDERSON.
II. Mr. M. MANTIN	"	Mr. J. S. DUNNING.
III. Mr. W. HORNER	"	Mr. D. JULIEN.
IV. Mr. W. C. MILLER	"	Mr. W. SEEBACH.

In the Grand Tournament the First Section was at last concluded by Mr. Marache winning of Mr. Fiske, the score being Marache, 3 ; Fiske, 2. In the Second Section Mr. Raphael won one game of Mr. Marache. In the evening an event occurred, which was watched with much interest by the members of the Congress. Mr. Paulsen's sister, the wife of a physician practising in New York, played two games of chess, first with Mr. Perrin and afterwards with Judge Meek, losing the former and winning the latter. This lady is believed to be the

strongest amateur of her sex in the country, and would certainly be ranked as a first-rate in any chess club. Her style very much resembles that of her brother, with whom she has had considerable practice.

*October 21st.*—In the afternoon of this day Mr. Paulsen commenced the unparalleled feat of playing five games at once without seeing any of the boards. His opponents were Mr. Thomas Frère, Mr. Robert J. Dodge, and Mr. S. Heilbuth of New York, Dr. A. C. Hawes of Providence, and Mr. C. Oscanyan from Constantinople. The announcement of such a performance drew together a crowd of distinguished men. Dr. Charles Mackay, the famous British poet, passed several hours in witnessing the games. Mr. Thalberg, the great pianist, was also an interested spectator. Among the other gentlemen present were the Hon. John Van Buren, son of the Ex-President; Mr. Bryan, the second of Mr. Staunton in his celebrated match with Mr. St. Amant; Mr. Richard Grant White, the most learned Shakespearian scholar on this side of the ocean; Mr. Oliver Byrne, the widely known mathematician; Mr. W. H. Hurlburt, the distinguished author; Judges Morton of Georgia, and Whiting of New York; Mr. Walker, the inventor of the American Chess Automaton; the Reverend Doctors Seabury, Vinton, and Walton, and many other clergymen; together with several prominent citizens of New York, and a number of officers of the army and navy. A number of ladies also attended. The general admiration of the wonderful mental power exhibited by Mr. Paulsen was loudly and frequently manifested. The arrangements in connexion with this affair, were the same as on the occasion when Mr. Paulsen played four games. At a late hour, the games not having been finished, it was decided to complete them the next evening. Mr. Paulsen, before leaving his seat on the platform, called off with great rapidity and exactness the positions of the men on all the boards in succession.

*October 22nd.*—The drawing for the Third Section of the Grand Tournament took place to-day and resulted

Mr. Morphy won to-day his first game of Mr. Lichtenhein. In the Second Section Mr. Marache and Dr. Raphael have each scored two games. In the evening Mr. Paulsen finished his admirable exhibition of blindfold play by winning of Mr. Frère, Mr. Heilbuth, Dr. Hawes, and Mr. Oscanyan, and by drawing the game with Mr. Dodge. This was the first authenticated instance in the history of chess, of so large a number of games being simultaneously played by one man without sight of the boards. The successful conclusion of this remarkable performance was greeted with hearty applause by a large and appreciative assemblage of spectators. A number of gentlemen took the initiative in raising a subscription to present to the blind-fold player an appropriate testimonial of their admiration.

*October 23rd and 24th.*—The third week of the Congress terminated with Saturday the 24th. It had already been protracted to a much greater length of time than had been anticipated by the Committee of Management. This was due in a great measure to the peculiar situation of the players resident in New York. They were, most of them, engaged in business avocations during the day, and they could consequently give only their evenings to the Tournaments. Meanwhile there seemed to be no diminution of public interest in the Congress. It even appeared to increase as the contestants were reduced in number. By the end of the week Dr. Raphael had won three games to Mr. Marache's two and two drawn games, thus concluding the Second Section. In the Third Section Mr. Morphy had scored two games and Mr. Lichtenhein none, one being drawn. Mr. Paulsen had won two games of Dr. Raphael and one had been drawn. In the Minor Tournament the Second Section was brought to an end, the final score being

I. SOLOMONS, 3 ;	ANDERSON, 0.
II. MANTIN, 3 ;	DUNNING, 0.
III. HORNER, 3 ;	JULIEN, 1.
IV. MILLER, 1 ;	SEEBACH, 3.

The drawing for the next or Third Section opposed the following players to each other :

I. Mr. M. SOLOMONS against Mr. M. MANTIN.
II. Mr. W. HORNER      "      Mr. W. SEEBACH.

*October 26th, 27th, and 28th.*—In the course of these three days the Third Section of the Grand Tournament was decided thus :

I. MORPHY, 3 ;	LICHENHEIN, 0 ;	Drawn, 1.
II. PAULSEN, 3 ;	RAPHAEL, 0 ;	Drawn, 1.

In accordance with the terms of the Prospectus Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen, therefore, began to play for the first and second prizes, and Mr. Lichtenhein and Dr. Raphael for the third and fourth. In the Minor Tournament the result of the Third Section was

I. SOLOMONS, 3 ;	MANTIN, 0.	
II. HORNER, 3 ;	SEEBACH, 1 ;	Drawn, 1.

Mr. Solomons and Mr. Horner consequently proceeded to contend for the first and second prizes, and Mr. Mantin and Mr. Seebach for the third and fourth.

*October 29th, 30th, and 31st.*—The close of the fourth week of the Congress found all the prizes decided except the first and second in each Tournament. In the Grand Tournament Mr. Morphy won two games of his opponent and drew the third. Mr. Lichtenhein won three games and Dr. Raphael none. In the minor contest Mr. Solomons and Mr. Horner each scored one game and one was drawn. Mr. Seebach won three successive games of Mr. Mantin. During these days two or three side Tournaments were arranged, of eight

players each, for sets of chessmen and boards. The amateurs present readily subscribed to these little trials of skill, and some of the games resulting from them were of considerable interest. Several excursion parties were formed during the latter days of the Congress (when so many of the players, having been thrown out of the Tournaments, had sufficient leisure to take part in them), and visits paid to the different objects of interest in the vicinity of New York. Among the visitors this week was Mr. Eugene B. Cook, of Hoboken, the distinguished problem composer, who although an invalid for many years still found strength to witness for a few days the exciting incidents occurring at the Congress.

*November 2nd—7th.*—The interest centred this week in the contest between Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen. Several circumstances conduced to make this combat unusually remarkable. Neither of the contending players had lost a single game during the entire Tournament; each had drawn one. Both were young men, and both gifted in a high degree with those mental characteristics which go to form the accomplished chess-player. Both were known to possess the art of conducting more than one game at the same time without perceiving the boards. The rooms were more crowded than ever, and the daily press of New York, by elaborate reports of each day's progress, contributed to increase the attendance. One journal declared that "the difference between Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen in their ordinary play, seems to be that between genius and talent." Another curiously said: "Altogether the two are fair types, the one of the Celt, with the nervous force, originality, and imagination of the race; the other of the Teuton, with its power of memory and reflection." This was intended to be an allusion to Mr. Morphy's Gallic descent. The *Chess Monthly* for December thus described their different styles:

Mr. Morphy is bold and attacking, resembling in this particular the lamented M'Donnell; Mr. Paulsen is cautious and defensive to a fault.

Mr. Morphy always met Pawn to King's fourth with Pawn to King's fourth; Mr. Paulsen, when his adversary had the move, invariably played Pawn to Queen's Bishop's fourth. Mr. Morphy is rapid in his moves and quick in his combinations, his time on any move never having reached a quarter of an hour; Mr. Paulsen is exceedingly slow, some of his moves having occupied more than an hour and several in succession having exceeded thirty minutes.

Both Mr. Morphy, and Mr. Paulsen, possessed those virtues—not too common among great chess players—of modesty and courtesy. And it was a subject of gratification to every member of the Congress that no manifestation of rivalry, no exhibition of jealousy occurred on the part of either player to mar the pleasure with which their passages at arms were witnessed. Both were uniformly courteous and gentlemanly in their treatment of each other. This was also the case, though perhaps in a less marked degree, with the other players in the Tournaments. None of that bitter asperity which has distinguished other important chess assemblies was visible in this first American chess gathering.

While Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen were contending for the victor's wreath the Minor Tournament was brought to a close. Mr. Horner won the first prize, the score being, Horner 5, Solomons 4, Drawn 2. It will be observed that these two fine players were very evenly matched, and their games developed some very pretty chess play. The side tournaments were continued during this week. Among the amusements of the members were a number of so-called *alternation games*, as many as twenty players sometimes taking part in one of these practical chess jests. Nor did Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen, after completing their daily game, hesitate to while away an hour in the evening by participating in one of these laughable battles. The blunders committed in these conjunctions of strong players with weak ones were a source of great merriment. This method of playing chess is certainly not very instructive, but as a recreation after severer chess labors it may be worthy of commendation and occasional trial.

*November 9th and 10th.*—The combat between the two leading prize-bearers went on during these two days, and was finally completed on the morning of Tuesday the 10th. Mr. Morphy gained the first prize, having won five games. Mr. Paulsen, who scored one game, was, of course, entitled to the second prize. Two games were drawn. The playing in both Tournaments being thus completed, the Committee of Management held a meeting on the afternoon of the ninth of October, and resolved that the Congress should close by a formal presentation of prizes to the several victors on Wednesday evening November 11th. It was determined, in order that every lover of chess in the city might be able to witness this interesting ceremony, that the Rooms of the Congress should be thrown open to the public on this occasion, and that notices should be published in all the New York journals.

*November 11th.*—In the evening, a large audience having assembled at the Rooms, Colonel Charles D. Mead, President of the American Chess Association, took the chair at eight o'clock. After expressing his regret that the Honorable A. B. Meek, the able presiding officer of the Congress, was not present to award the prizes, Colonel Mead said :

That the sessions of the National Chess Congress would this evening terminate. It was with pain that he announced this fact. To him it was a cause of sorrow that an occasion which had been so agreeable and full of interest should so soon be numbered among events passed away, not into oblivion, but to be ever retained among the pleasant memories of the past. It was another source of regret that many who had participated as members should have already returned to their homes, and that others would soon follow; but a lively recollection of each and all of them would long be preserved by those who remained behind. But, looking at the other side of the picture, it was a matter of great gratification to know that the first general chess assemblage of America had been so pre-eminently successful. Nothing had occurred to mar the design of those who had originated and conducted it through its long duration. Harmony had prevailed throughout. The intention of the originators of this gathering of chess-players from every part of the Union was to awaken an interest in the

noblest of all amusements and to promote its welfare. This object had been fully accomplished. Throughout the whole country the most favorable notice had been taken of their proceedings. The result would be that many new names will be enrolled among the devotees of Caïssa, and that many will bring into use those faculties which have been so long dormant. Other Morphys and other Paulsens perhaps will come forth to gather laurels and add fresh interest to future Congresses. But the powerful aid received from the press of this city must not be forgotten. Without it, the proceedings of this Congress would scarcely have been known beyond the walls of the place of meeting. To it they were greatly indebted for the interest it had manifested in the undertaking, and for the faithful reports it had always given.

The President then proceeded to read the following list of prize-bearers :

#### GRAND TOURNAMENT.

*First Prize.*—Mr. PAUL MORPHY, of New Orleans, La.

*Second Prize.*—Mr. LOUIS PAULSEN, of Dubuque, Iowa.

*Third Prize.*—Mr. THEODORE LICHTENHEIN, of New York City.

*Fourth Prize.*—Dr. B. I. RAPHAEL, of Louisville, Ky.

#### MINOR TOURNAMENT.

*First Prize.*—Mr. WILLIAM HORNER, of Brooklyn, L. I.

*Second Prize.*—Mr. MOSES SOLOMONS, of New York City.

*Third Prize.*—Mr. WILLIAM SEEBACH, of New York City.

*Fourth Prize.*—Mr. MARTIN MANTIN, of New York City.

Then turning to Mr. Morphy the President said :

In delivering to Mr. Morphy, the chief victor in the Grand Tournament, the first prize, consisting of a service of silver plate, I discharge a duty which I know meets with the cordial approbation of every member of this Congress. To none, I truly believe, is this act more gratifying than to those whom he has so gallantly vanquished. To none is it more agreeable than to myself to be the means of conveying to him that to which he has proven himself, by his superiority as a chess-player, to be justly entitled.

The remaining prizes were then awarded, the President stating that the prizes for problems would be delivered as

soon as the Committee, who had the competing positions in charge, had finished their labors.

The service of plate, which formed the first prize, was then exhibited. It was manufactured to the order of the Committee by Ball, Black & Co., of New York, and consisted of a silver pitcher, four goblets, and a salver. The latter bore the following inscription :

THIS SERVICE OF PLATE  
IS PRESENTED TO  
PAUL MORPHY,  
THE VICTOR IN THE GRAND TOURNAMENT,  
AT THE FIRST CONGRESS  
OF THE  
AMERICAN NATIONAL CHESS ASSOCIATION,  
NEW YORK, 1857.

Above this inscription was an admirable representation of Mr. Morphy and Mr. Paulsen seated at a chess-table playing. Both of the likenesses were excellent, having been copied from photograph by Brady. The pitcher and goblets bore the initials P. M. On the same table lay an elegant testimonial purchased for Mr. Paulsen, by a number of the members, as a token of the gratification with which they had witnessed his blindfold games. It was a medal of gold in the form of an American shield, having on the obverse a design representing Mr. Paulsen playing five simultaneous games without sight of the boards. The reverse bore this inscription

PRESNTED  
TO  
LOUIS PAULSEN,  
BY  
MEMBERS OF THE NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS.  
OCTOBER, 1857.

## The Period of the Congress.

After the distribution of the prizes Mr. Morphy, who had been requested by the subscribers to perform this duty, proceeded to present this elegant medal to Mr. Paulsen. Upon doing so Mr. Morphy said :

Mr. Paulsen, in behalf of several members of the first National Chess Congress, I present you with this testimonial. If measured by the admiration it is meant to convey of our estimation of your wonderful blind-fold play it will not be deemed of little value. Sir, I claim you for the United States. Although not a native of America, you have done more for the honor of American chess than her most gifted sons. Old Europe may boast of her Stauntons and Anderssens, her Harrwitzes and Löwenthals, her Der Lasas and Petroffs; it is the greater boast of America that the blindfold chess of Paulsen has not yet been equalled. What if Labourdonnaïs played two, Philidor three, and Kieseritzky four games at one time ? We have in our midst one whose amusement it is to play five, and who will soon fulfil his promise of playing seven blindfold games of chess simultaneously. We fling our proud defiance across the waters. Come one, come all ! Let the super-human feats of our Paulsen be performed with equal success by the much-vaunted European chess knights ! Let the much and deservedly extolled Harrwitz enter the lists ! We challenge him—we challenge all the magnates of the Old World. But, sir, your achievements need no commendation at my hands—they speak for themselves. And now, with a reiteration of our thanks for the many highly interesting entertainments you have so kindly given us, we beg you to accept this slight token of our admiration and gratitude.

Mr. Paulsen received the gift from the hands of Mr. Morphy and replied as follows :

The honor which you have deigned to confer on me, in presenting to me such a beautiful and valuable present, is so great, that I only regret not being able to return my thanks in words sufficiently expressive of the feelings of gratitude, appreciation, and pleasure, which move my heart at this moment. The pleasure which I have enjoyed at our recent campaign in fighting many a peaceful battle, and in making the acquaintance of the noble champion of our Congress, as well as of other worthy and esteemed friends of Caïssa—this pleasure is so great

that I do not hesitate a moment to mark these days as among the very happiest of my life. And ever afterward, when far from you, in the West of this broad country, where Providence has secured me a home, the remembrance of these days will be to me a source of joy and pleasure. Once more, sir, let me express to you my sincere and heartfelt gratitude.

Colonel Mead, after reminding the members of the necessity of supporting the American Chess Association, then pronounced the first National Chess Congress of the United States finally adjourned.

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE DINNER OF THE CONGRESS.

IN accordance with the time-honored custom of all chess assemblages it was determined to have a festive gathering of the members of the Chess Congress. In order to allow several amateurs from a distance, who were desirous of returning home as early as possible, to participate, the dinner of the Congress was fixed to take place on the evening of Saturday the 17th of October. The locality selected was the St. Denis Hotel, whose proprietor Mr. Denis Julien had long been known to the chess world for his ingenuity in the composition of problems and for his active efforts on many occasions to promote the cause of chess. Accordingly, at the time and place mentioned a large number of chess-players sat down to such a dinner as the high reputation of the hotel would naturally lead them to anticipate. The dining-hall was most appropriately decorated, emblems of the game and the names of its leading ornaments meeting the sight at every turn. The table itself was weighty with chess adornments. In glittering confectionery appeared a temple of Caïssa, and a monument to the memory of Philidor. There were statues of Franklin in ice, Kings, Queens, and Knights in jelly, Bishops, Castles, and Pawns in cream, and huge cakes in the shape of chess-boards. The bill of fare was certainly unique. It was neatly printed, headed by an elegant representation of a board and men, and containing such curious dishes as "Filets de boeuf à la Meek-Mead," "Dindonneaux au Congrès," "Bastion de Gibier à la

Palamède," "Chartreuse de Perdrix à l'Échiquier," "Vol-au-Vent de Cervelles à la Paulsen," "Pommes de Terre à la M'Donnell," "Gâteaux à la Julien," "Pudding à la Franklin," and a hundred similar singular specimens of culinary chess. It is needless to state how much better the "Côtelettes d'Agneau à la Bilguer" tasted than simple lamb-chops. Judge Meek presided at the head of the table, ably assisted by Colonel Mead. After partaking of all the delicacies enumerated in the bill of fare, the members gave themselves with a zest to those social enjoyments which make *after-dinners* so pleasant. The cloth having been removed, Colonel Mead, in a happy speech, proposed the health of Judge Meek, who responded as follows:

It is not often at chess, that I complain of having the *first move*, but at the present time and under such flattering circumstances I can scarcely deem it an advantage, for it necessarily places me in a *crowded position*, and forces me to adopt a *close* rather than a *brilliant style of play*. Still, acknowledging gracefully the full honor of the *odds* allowed me, I must say that this is to me an occasion of deep and peculiar interest. It has been my fortune, in a life of much social experience and adventure, to participate in many pleasant festive gatherings; but this superadds to the ordinary charms of convivial intercourse, attractive features never presented before. It is the "crowning rose" in the flowery incidents of the past two weeks. A Chess Congress, a Chess Tournament, and now a Chess Dinner, are hereby occasions of marked and novel delight to the lovers of "the noble game." They constitute an era in the social history of our country, for unquestionably the character and progress of their amusements are, in no small degree, an index of the intellectual and moral development of a people. They show the quality and direction of their tastes and sentiments.

What the patriot patron-fathers of our fraternity so anxiously desired has to some extent been realized in this country. This convocation of chess magnates from all portions of our Union, is an evidence of the wide diffusion of our favorite game among the American people. Here, at the call so laudably sent forth from the New York Club, have assembled the disciples of Philidor from every section of our wide and flourishing Republic. They have come, with fraternal impulses, from the auroral hills of New England, the rich regions of the middle States,

the flowery prairies of the illimitable West, and from my own golden and sunny section, where the blue waves of the Gulf of Mexico swell up a constant choral symphony with the music of our national Union.

They came together as strangers, but they have met as brothers and friends. The "hooks of steel" that have here been linked are a pleasing commentary upon the character of our pursuit. Ties of congenial taste and sympathy have been established, which will ever be cherished among the most pleasing connexions of life, and must exert no insensible influence in eradicating sectional prejudices, and uniting each and every part of the country, like the separate squares of the chess-board, in one harmonious whole."

After alluding to the financial crisis, Mr. Meek continued :

But I prefer dealing with the more pleasant associations of this occasion. This is no Egyptian feast, and we will remove the skull from the board. A band of brothers, we now meet in cheerful mood around the altar which our host of the St. Denis—a true Philidorean problem himself—has so tastefully and artistically decorated. Here he has fashioned all his most graceful *pâtisseries* into the images and implements of our own craft. To *solve* these felicitous devices is certainly more easy and agreeable than to unravel the ingenious *two-move* and *three-move* puzzles and enigmas with which he has perplexed our modern searchers into Sphinxeian mysteries. For the pleasure thus given us, as well as for the other delightful associations of our Congress and Tournament, I must reiterate my indebtedness to the New York Club, its able and efficient Committee of Management, and its accomplished, intellectual, and courteous president, Colonel Mead. To him and to them have I been especially indebted for innumerable kindnesses. And here, I may remark, that I have everywhere found that there is among chess-players a species of Freemasonry, which welcomes every player, no matter how much a stranger, with a cordial greeting, and introduces him at once to most intimate and delightful associations. This I particularly found upon my first visit to the city of New York.

Here Judge Meek narrated several interesting and amusing anecdotes of his first acquaintance with the chess circles of New York, which, as they were of a personal nature, are omitted at his request. He then concluded as follows :

But I linger too long over these personal allusions. "A winking spirit" from the glasses before me cries *check* to my *move*, and warns me to beware or I may make a *stale*. I therefore conclude with an expression of my gratification at the auspicious prospect opened for chess in the United States by the establishment of our National Chess Association. Our players have evinced in the Tournament that they possess skill and science equal to the masters of the Old World; and ere long, beside the classic names of Staunton, and Anderssen, and Der Lasa, and St. Amant, and Löwenthal, the Muse of Caïssa will delight to register those of Morphy, and Paulsen, and Stanley, and Montgomery, and Lichtenhein, and Mead, and Hammond, and others who have nobly won green chaplets by their "doughty deeds" in the embattled lists of chess, and on the mosaic pavement which she so proudly treads.

Reverting to our debts of gratitude, I propose the following sentiment:

"*The New York Chess Club*, distinguished alike for its Philidorean skill and its *Chesterfieldian* courtesy and hospitality. May it long retain the noble *meed* of merit which it now possesses."

This address, which was received with marked pleasure and enthusiasm, called forth a response from Colonel Mead, who, after some eloquent remarks by way of introduction, said,

That it gave him great pleasure to speak a word in behalf of the New York Chess Club. He had been its President for several years, and of his own knowledge he could testify to its moral and intellectual character. He referred to the great interest he had always felt in the advancement of the game. He thanked those present for the cordial manner in which they had received the toast offered by the President of the Congress. He then spoke of chess in a social point of view, and gave the results of his own experience—that for more than a quarter of a century he had come in contact with many thousand chess-players, both in his own country and in Europe—that he had met as his opponents the prince as well as the peasant, and he could truly say that he had never met with but one person to whom he could not extend the right hand of fellowship and greet as a brother. He further spoke of the refining influence of the game, and concluded by gracefully alluding to the distinguished chess-player and gentleman from New Orleans, and proposed—

## The Dinner of the Congress.

"The health of Mr. Paul Morphy, the refined gentleman, the accomplished scholar, and the master chess-player."

Mr. Morphy responded :

Mr. President and Gentlemen of the Congress—I sincerely thank you. To one, to all, I tender the expression of my warm and heartfelt acknowledgments. Much, however, as I feel honored, I must be permitted to see in this gathering of chess celebrities something more than a tribute to merit, whether real or supposed. Gentlemen, we have come together for a noble purpose; we meet at this festive board to rejoice at the success of a grand undertaking. Great, truly great, is the occasion. For the first time in the annals of American Chess, a Congress is being held which bids fair to mark an era in the history of our noble game. Chess, hitherto viewed by our countrymen in the light of a mere amusement, assumes at last its appropriate place among the sciences which at once adorn and exalt the intellect. We have met this night to hail the dawn of a true appreciation of its manifold claims to regard. And, gentlemen, may we not cherish the hope that this, the first great national gathering of the votaries of Caïssa, may prove but the forerunner of many yet to come? Should time realize this fond anticipation, to you, gentlemen of the New York Club, will belong the praise of having taken the lead in the glorious cause. You have, in political phrase, set the ball in motion. From the New York Club—from the altar where you worship—has gone forth the first note of praise, destined soon to swell into a mighty anthem to the achievements of our kingly pastime. I exult to think that the Chess warriors of the Crescent City will catch a spark of the enthusiasm of the New York amateurs; that gallant Southern spears, too long idle, will again be couched, and jousts as brilliant as that of '45 be witnessed once more.

But, gentlemen of the Chess Congress, I perceive that I too far tax your patience. I avail myself of the opportunity presented to tender to each and every one of you the assurance of my deep indebtedness for the more than kind manner in which I have been welcomed to New York. I propose, in conclusion,

"*The Chess Editors of New York.* Their labors have materially contributed to the spread of our noble and intellectual game."

Upon the announcement of this toast, Mr. W. J. A. Fuller, so long the unrivalled editor of the chess department of *Frank-*

*Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*, was generally called for. He arose and replied in a lengthy and elaborate address. Among other things he said :

Mr. President and Gentlemen,—It is not my purpose to speak at any length of chess abstractly. As an intellectual and gentlemanly amusement, as a discipline for the mind, as a solace for the cares and ills of this troublous world, and as a source of solid instruction and rational enjoyment, it more than fills the office ascribed to letters by Cicero, in his celebrated oration, *Pro Archia Poeta*, and that is so peculiarly appropriate to Chess that I must ask permission to quote it, even at the risk of being charged with pedantry : '*Hæc studia adolescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solatium præbent, delectant domi, non impediunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.*' Had Cicero written this sentence with direct reference to chess, he could not have come nearer to the truth.

Chess fills up the interstices of thought and action as nothing else in this world can. When engaged in the intricacies of a complicated position, where a beautiful combination is formed, what care we for the compressed iron lips of banks ? What care we whether money be worth seven per cent. a month or seven per cent. a year ?

“The world forgetting, and by the world forgot,”

we are wholly oblivious of care and anxiety, and totally regardless whether the morrow will bring its usual labor of “shining” to prepare against three o'clock. But why dilate upon the advantages and the glories of chess ? The plummet of no human intellect can ever fathom it, the power of mathematics cannot compute its infinite variations and combinations, the verse of the poet cannot sing its beauties, and to depict its merits might well challenge the utmost efforts of the most gifted pen or the most eloquent tongue.

The First National Chess Congress has been a perfect success, and the New York Club has covered itself with honor from the inception to the final consummation of so great an enterprise. Whether in generalities or in details, everything has been complete. For this we have been mainly indebted to Colonel Mead, the worthy and popular President of the Club; to Mr. Perrin, the “veteran Secretary,” and to the other gentlemen composing the Committee of Management. We owe them much—and for myself, I take this public occasion to thank them cordially in the name and behalf of the whole fraternity

of chess-players. Nothing has occurred to mar the unity and harmony of our proceedings, and I can only express the hope that every future gathering of the kind may be made under as happy auspices, and conduce to as pleasant results.

There is a sympathy about chess which can be understood only by the initiated. It is always an amusement at home and an introduction abroad. It brings into friendly conjunction and social intercourse persons as opposite as the antipodes.

Mr. Fuller then related several personal reminiscences and experiences, at home and abroad, in illustration of this position, and we regret that their extreme length precludes their publication.

But to return to the subject under more immediate and legitimate consideration. Our Congress would challenge the admiration of the world for all coming time, had it no other remarkable feature than the exhibition of powers that almost surpass belief, and sometimes really seem to stagger the evidence of the senses. Of course, I will be understood as referring to the blindfold playing of our friend, Mr. Paulsen, who comes to us from the broad prairies of the West, more than a thousand miles distant, to participate in this Tournament and bear off one of the leading prizes. Such a psychological phenomenon, in my judgment, the world has never before seen, and how to account for it is beyond my comprehension. I have heard various hypotheses advanced, and have a theory of my own in regard to it, but nothing entirely satisfactory. I suppose if Mr. Paulsen himself were asked to explain it, he would reply in precisely the language of Mrs. Siddons, when questioned by Hannah Moore and other pious ladies of the strait-laced school, who once paid her a formal visit. "Tell us," said they, "how you produce such wonderful effects? Is it by real or simulated passion? Is it by the perfection of art, or the abandonment of nature?" and other queries of a similar purport. "I really can't say," *naïvely* replied the queen of tragedy. "I only know I play as well as I can." So of Mr. Paulsen. He "plays as well as he can," and that is well enough to beat almost any of us, with eyes open or shut.

But what shall I say of the crowning excellence and glory of the Congress—the wonderful playing of our "young Philidor?" No, I am wrong; for though I believe I was the first to give him that appella-

tion, yet it is a misnomer. Philidor but shadowed forth the mightier chess genius which it was reserved for America to produce, in the person of our young friend, Paul Morphy, in whom we all take such national pride. He verifies the truth of the poet's line :

"Westward the star of Empire takes its way."

He charms us no less by his quiet, unobtrusive deportment, modest and refined nature, gentlemanly courtesy, elegant manners, and genial companionship, than by his wondrous skill at our noble game. Thoroughly conversant with all the openings and endings, he shows that he has laid every writer under contribution to increase his stock of "book knowledge;" but it is his own matchless genius which embraces and enlarges them all, that wins the victory, and that enables us, *as we intend to do*, to challenge the world to produce his peer. He reminds us of the noble river on whose banks he lives, which, gathering in its course the contributions of various tributary streams, pours at last its own current into the ocean, deep, clear, and irresistible.

To praise chess is to paint the lily and to gild refined gold. Even as the sordid and mean of soul shrink earthward on being touched by the sunlike spear of Ithuriel, so does chess purify from grosser essence that social circle which it permeates; and, Mr. President, no extravagance of language can be employed in extolling the game. Chess will exert a beneficial sway while the mind of man craves instruction and intellectual amusement; and so long as the brilliancy of M'Donnell and Labourdonnais shall charm, so long as the solidity and strength of Philidor shall delight, so long as the analyses of Jaenisch, Von der Lasa, and Staunton shall instruct, so long as the wondrous power of our own Paulsen, and the matchless genius of our native Morphy shall make men admire, so long will chess exert a power in the world, and that will be until time has no longer any concern with man, nor man with literature. In conclusion, I ask the members to drink the health of one to whom they are greatly indebted for the idea of the Congress —of one who is well and widely known both in the field of literature and the field of chess—Mr. Daniel W. Fiske.

The applause which followed Mr. Fuller's remarks having subsided, Mr. Fiske said :

I congratulate you, gentlemen, upon having witnessed the dawn

## The Dinner of the Congress.

of a new day in American chess. The movement whose inception we have so successfully promoted will, I believe, produce all the fair results we so fondly anticipate. The number of amateurs in our country will rapidly increase; clubs will be formed in every town; chess columns will be established in every literary weekly, and chess books will be issued by the American press. I love to contemplate the benefits which posterity will derive from our labors. I love to imagine, as commencing with this Congress, a long and splendid chapter in the history of chess. We shall have on this side of the water chess contests worthy to be classed with the deeds of our transatlantic predecessors. We shall have glorious and gallant combats between some M'Donnell of the North and some Labourdonnais of the South,—between some Stamma of the Eastern States and some Philidor from beyond the Mississippi; nay, why not between some American Staunton and some European St. Amant? In short, we shall soon behold, growing up and occurring in our midst events and incidents similar to those which gem, like diamonds of never-fading beauty, the pages of the Old World chronicle of chess.

But, while we watch, with feelings of pleasure and pride, the rapid progress of chess in America, we must not forget to honor those great men, living and dead, who have preceded us, and to whom we are so largely indebted. I should occupy too much time if I were to mention even a few of those various individuals and schools which have made large additions to the literature and practice of the royal sport. I cannot, however, refrain from reminding you of the labors of Germany. For the last twenty years no nation has done so much for the cause we love. From the famous Berlin school, as a centre, the beneficial influence of a new style of chess has radiated to the farthest confines of the earth—a style of which the distinguished characteristics are careful study and cautious analysis, and whose originators have built upon this sure and safe basis a superstructure of elegance and brilliancy beyond all praise. Many of those distinguished men who lived in the Prussian capital, and made the decade from 1837 to 1847 a memorable chess epoch, have passed away. Bilguer, the youthful and promising genius, Hanstein, the solid player, and Bledow, the lover of chess letters, are no more. But among the few still living, there is one, the mention of whose name will wake a warm response in the heart of every chess reader. As invincible as a player as he is learned as a writer, his fame will be one of the very brightest stars in the chess literature of the nineteenth century. He was among the foremost in found-

ing and supporting the Berlin school, and his life ever since has been passed in devotion to chess. Wherever his diplomatic duties have called him—whether to Vienna, Stockholm, Brussels, or the Hague—his first inquiry has been for chess clubs; his first labor to ransack the libraries for rare chess books and rare chess manuscripts. The pages of the German *Schachzeitung* and several separate publications attest the soundness of his learning and the depth of his research. Other persons have profited by his toil, other authors have derived advantage from his labors, but he has always been too modest and too unselfish to complain. His name will have occurred to your minds before it passes my lips. I ask you, gentlemen, to unite with me in drinking the health of the erudite and indefatigable writer, the masterly and classical player, the faithful and honest chronicler, the true and modest gentleman, Heydebrandt von der Lasa."

**Mr. Lichtenhein responded :**

He said that he was glad to see the services rendered to chess by distinguished Germans so generally acknowledged. There was no doubt that for analytical labors we were especially indebted to the Teutonic mind. But he hoped that the fusion now going on in this country, between the German and English races, would result in forming an American style which should unite the soundness of a Von der Lasa with the brilliancy of a Cochrane.

In conclusion Mr. Lichtenhein begged leave to toast *The Press*.

This was followed by brief speeches from several representatives of the city journals.

Mr. Julien, by birth a native of France, responded to the memory of the great Gallic trio, Philidor, Deschapelles, and Labourdonnais. He said :

I receive your call with thanks, but it places me under great embarrassment, because custom obliges me to reply. On such occasions, whether the orator be a Demosthenes or a blockhead, he must make a little speech. So, gentlemen, I will do my best and make a few remarks *en passant*. I take it for granted that it is not necessary here to speak in pure English, for the language of chess is cosmopolite, and the flag of Philidor is not altogether the tri-color, but it is composed

of sixty-four squares—twice the number of stars on the flag of liberty. While I acknowledge the obligations which the Congress owes to members of the press, I must notice a slight error which one of them committed. Some years ago, an English lady—a school-teacher and a blue-stocking—landed in France; the first woman she met was old and ugly, and she straightway wrote in her note-book “the female population of France is old and ugly!” It was the same with that reporter, who, on entering the Rooms of the Congress, met three gentlemen with bald heads, and at once concluded that nobody could play chess without that quality. He would undoubtedly have drawn a different inference had Mr. Morphy or Mr. Paulsen been present. Much has been said about the morality of Chess. Example is better than precept. I have remarked that since the New York Chess Club has been in the habit of holding its meetings at the St. Denis Hotel the only liquor consumed has gone down the throat of my bar-tender; and, gentlemen, believe my word, that barkeeper is not a chess-player.

Mr. Julien's observations were loudly cheered, and were followed by the following elegant song, written for the occasion by Mr. Julien himself and distributed in a printed shape among the guests. It was sung by Mr. Marache, who enjoys a wide and well-merited reputation for musical ability.

COUPLETS CHANTÉS AU DÎNER DU CONGRÈS DES ÉCHECS  
LE 15 OCTOBRE 1857.

---

NEW YORK.

---

AIR: *Partant pour la Syrie.*

1

Sur cet heureux rivage,  
Par vos calculs savants,  
Vous présentez l'image  
Des combats innocents.  
*Caïssa* qui vous inspire  
A battu le rappel :  
Buvons à son empire }  
Son règne est immortal. } BIS.

2

Pendant cet intermède,  
Après tant de travaux,  
Soldats de Palamède  
Cessez d'être rivaux ;  
De l'ébène et l'ivoire  
Suivons l'antique loi :  
Buvons à la victoire }  
Du *Cid* de ce tournoi. } BIS.

3

Parmi tous vos modèles,  
 Oh ! n'oubliez jamais :  
 McDonnell, Deschapelles,  
 Lopez, Labourdonnais ;  
 Sur deux tombes unies  
 Ma voix vous dit encor :  
 Buvons à deux génies      } BIS.  
 Legal et Philidor !

4

O mes compagnons d'armes,  
 J'attends votre concours,  
 Pour un *toast* plein de charmes  
 Venez à mon secours.  
 Pour qu'un refrain sonore  
 Éclate de vos rangs :  
 Buvons, buvons encore      } BIS.  
 A nos deux présidents !

D. J.

Mr. Thompson then followed in a humorous and sparkling speech. It is to be regretted that no notes of his remarks were preserved, for it was certainly one of the most entertaining productions of the evening. It was full of the genial humor of the man, and contained a multitude of laughable allusions to the characteristic traits of prominent players. Mr. Thompson also related a number of anecdotes of his chess life in New York.

After he sat down Mr. Stanley's health was proposed and that gentleman replied. Among other things he stated that all regretted the absence of Mr. Paulsen. But Mr. Stanley suggested that as that gentleman could play chess without seeing the board, he had no doubt that Mr. Paulsen had the power of partaking of this dinner without seeing the table, and he was probably thus exercising his peculiar psychological genius in some lonely chamber and enjoying the entertainment with as much zest as any present. This novel apology was received with repeated rounds of applause.

Mr. Stanley was followed by Mr. F. Perrin, the Secretary of the New York Club, who was in turn succeeded by Mr. Dodge, who kept the table in a roar for nearly half-an-hour.

The following song, written for the occasion by Judge Meek, was then distributed among the guests, and was very happily sung by Dr. Raphael and Mr. Dodge.

## SONG.

BY THE HON. A. B. MEEK OF ALABAMA.

Air: *Hunters of Kentucky.*

Ye champions of the checkered field,  
 Who love the lists of glory ;  
 Who wield not falchion, spear, nor shield,  
 Yet battle *con amore* :  
 Now lay aside your deeds of pride  
 For sportive song and sally,  
 And 'round this *board* where wine is poured,  
 In festive greetings rally !

Ye oft have mingled in the fray,  
 Where *Kings* and *Queens* contended,  
 And joined with *Knights* in fierce array,  
 'Round *Castles* long defended ;  
 Stern *Bishops* too, like Richelieu,  
 There hurried o'er the dying ;  
 Now meet you here with jest and cheer,  
 Where only corks are flying !

As chiefs of might, in ancient days,  
 At Tournaments collected,  
 And proved their prowess 'neath the blaze  
 From Beauty's eyes reflected,  
 So now your corps, renowned of yore,  
 Has held a gallant muster,  
 Where each, if not a *Philidor*,  
 Has proved a *Fillibuster* !

Yours is a loved and royal sport,  
 In every nation nourished ;  
 In camp and castle, cot and court,  
 For ages it has flourished ;  
 E'en Adam found, in Eden's ground,  
 No rapture—it is stated—  
 No spell to check sad sorrow's wreck,  
 Till he by Eve was *mated* !

Great names are yours, remembered well,  
By many a household fire,  
La Bourdonnais and Deschapelles,  
M'Donnell and Allgaier !  
And later days may Lewis praise,  
And Staunton's glories utter,  
With Anderssen, Petroff, and Szén,  
And Cochrane of Calcutta !

Fair France, amid her verdant vines,  
Has St. Amant, to grace her,  
And Germany triumphant shines  
With Harrwitz and Der Lasa !  
Amid them all stands Löwenthal,  
The victor at Manchester ;  
We well might guess that he at chess,  
Would make a mighty chess stir !

Rich blows the breeze beyond the seas,  
Amid the chestnut bowers,  
But now the dawn comes smiling on  
This western world of ours !  
Our Congress grave, in high conclave,  
Has spread a glorious standard,  
Whose checkered bars, like Freedom's stars,  
Shall light Columbia's vanguard !

Then fill the cup with bright wine up,  
And toast our noble pastime ;  
The Tournament "has come and went,"  
May it not prove the last time !  
May chess arise beneath these skies,  
With prouder deeds elated ;  
On Freedom's deck, receive no *check*,  
And never be *stale-mated* !

Mr. A. Perrin, in responding to a toast to the living players of England and France, said that he had just returned from those countries and had enjoyed an opportunity of contending, at large odds of course, with the famous men of London and Paris. He hoped that the defeats he had undergone would be

fully revenged whenever Mr. Morphy visited the Old World. Mr. Perrin then made some interesting and elaborate reflections concerning the morality of chess. He had noticed the freedom from immoral habits among chess-players. He dilated on the advantages which would accrue to the young from its study, and offered the following sentiment, which accurately represented the influence of the game :

“ *The noble Game of Chess*, the king of intellectual sports. Full of instructive emblems, rich in invigorating mental exercise, may it serve at once to lure our youth from the haunts of vice, and to train them to purposes of elevated usefulness.”

Mr. Frère then spoke and offered the following sentiment :

“ *The Brotherhood of Chess*, as its origin is untraceable, may its existence be everlasting.”

The “ Health of Mr. Rousseau and the players of the South” having been drunk, Mr. Morphy replied.

Dr. Raphael of Kentucky replied to the toast of “ Chess in the West.”

Mr. Marache, Mr. Dunning, Mr. Edge, Mr. Heilbuth, Mr. Oscanyan, and others, entertained the company with speeches of various length until, at last, the hour of midnight being close at hand, the members retired to their homes. Thus ended one of the most pleasant and agreeable festivals ever held in honor of Caïssa.

## CHAPTER V.

### REPORTS AND COMMUNICATIONS.

#### REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE ON THE CHESS CODE.

TO THE FIRST NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS OF AMERICA, NOW IN SESSION  
IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK, THE SPECIAL COMMITTEE ON THE CHESS  
CODE BEG LEAVE RESPECTFULLY TO REPORT,—

That, after mature deliberation, they have come to the conclusion, that they would best perform the duty imposed upon them, viz. that of "enabling the members of the Congress to arrive at a more ready understanding of the questions presented" in reference to "the revision of the Chess Laws," by presenting a statement of what has thus far been effected by the movement in the same direction, which is now going on in Europe. From such statement, they trust that the Congress will be enabled to determine, in what way to co-operate with that movement, in order to secure the object which was originally aimed at . . . viz. the enactment, by an authority that will command respect, of a uniform Chess Code. To secure accuracy, the Committee have consulted the proper foreign periodicals, and have carefully read such of the proposed codes as have been printed. They have also endeavored . . . but, up to this moment, without success . . . to obtain authentic information of any action that may have been taken at the recent meeting of the English Chess Association, on the Revised Code, prepared by Mr. Staunton.

The particular movement, with which your co-operation is

suggested, took its rise from the failure of the earlier attempt, in 1851, to form a "Constituent Assembly for remodelling the Laws of Chess" from the body of players, that should be present at the London Tournament. The *wish* for a revision of the Chess Laws had already been strongly expressed, both in the Berlin *Schachzeitung* (in which had appeared the ablest discussions on various points of chess legislation), and by Mr. Staunton . . . who, in his *Handbook*, expressed the hope that the leading authorities in Europe would soon unite for the purpose of abolishing "the several crude collections of ambiguities, which are now received as the 'Laws of Chess,' and to establish in their stead one general and comprehensive code." When Mr. Staunton published the games of the Tournament, in March, 1852, he stated more at length what he considered to be the "anomalies and absurdities" of the existing laws. Again, in May, 1853, at a meeting of the "Northern and Midland Counties Association," Mr. Staunton formally presented the subject of a revision of the Chess Code; and the result of the discussion which ensued, was the adoption of a resolution, "That Mr. Staunton be requested to put himself in communication with Major Jænisch, of Russia, and Mr. Heydebrandt the most distinguished chess-authors of the continent, to induce them to co-operate with him in drawing up a code of chess laws for general adoption, to be reported on at the next meeting of the Association."

Both of the great continental authorities, whose co-operation was so courteously invited, responded to the appeal with a promptitude that bore witness both to the completeness of their learning and to their forwardness to advance the interests of the game. Mr. Von Heydebrand und der Lasa was at that time residing at the capital of Belgium as Secretary of the Prussian Legation. By November of the same year, he was able to transmit the most important portion of his work to Major Jænisch. In December he completed his "Scheme of a complete body of chess laws," with an ample commentary (*Entwurf eines vollständigen Reglements für das Schachspiel*),

which was inserted at length in the Berlin *Schachzeitung* for February, 1854, and communicated to Mr. Staunton in a private separate impression.

The Russian theorist was already engaged in a work of the same kind before he had been appealed to from England. In May, 1853, a chess-club had been instituted at St. Petersburg, and Major Jænisch had been appointed to report a code of Laws. He now presented his work, with the view of making the Laws of the St. Petersburg Club a model of what he would recommend for general adoption, and presented a Report, in which the laws themselves were accompanied by a body of Notes, wherein the changes proposed were discussed with characteristic calmness and thoroughness. The club, while provisionally adopting the Rules reported (with one exception), ordered the entire Report, as presented, to be printed ("Règles du Jeu des Échecs adoptées par la Société des Amateurs d'Échecs de St. Pétersbourg comme base d'un code universel de ce Jeu"), and to be transmitted to the principal chess authorities of Europe, with a view to invite their opinion on each article . . . a course by which they believed they should best advance the work of securing, at last, a Chess Code for universal adoption. The Rules were not only in this way extensively distributed in the original French —a German translation of them (but without the Notes) was printed in the Berlin *Schachzeitung* for July, 1854. The statement may here be made by anticipation, that since Major Jænisch had been obliged to insert some provisions, in his reported Rules, which his own judgment did not approve as features of a model code, and since his own judgment had undergone some change on other points, he afterwards prepared a second edition of the Rules . . . or rather, perhaps, a new work . . . not reported for any particular society, but presented for general adoption, to which he gave the same title as that which had been adopted by Mr. Von der Lasa for his scheme. This new work of Major Jænisch's was printed at length in German, with all its Notes, in the June,

July, October, and November numbers of the Berlin *Schachzeitung*, for 1856.

The Committee deem it important, before proceeding with their historical statement, to give some general account of these two proposed Codes . . . those of Major Jænisch and of Mr. Von der Lasa. These two great authors, who are both equally characterized by the patient laboriousness and sincere love of truth with which they have pursued their investigations, in this instance differ widely in some of the rules which they recommend. This difference in the result arises entirely from a difference of judgment with respect to what should be presented in such a code as they were invited to propose. Major Jænisch approaches his work in the spirit of a man of science, who aims to present a system of law, which he believes to be theoretically and historically correct . . . the true laws of chess as ascertained by the more ancient or more numerous authorities, or by a consideration of the constituent principles and spirit of the game. Mr. Von der Lasa, on the other hand, appears more as the practical man. Equally learned . . . equally disposed to enter into all historical investigations and theoretical disquisitions, he still keeps his eye upon the object proposed by the English resolution: —he considers what is likely to be so approved by European chess-players as to be “generally adopted.” Major Jænisch inserts nothing in his scheme, which his own judgment does not approve. Mr. Von der Lasa deliberately adopts several features, which he considers theoretically erroneous, because he believes himself to be in the minority in holding them to be so; and is conservative enough to find nothing in the current code *so* anomalous or *so* absurd, that it might not with perfect propriety be retained, if only all *agree* to retain it. The scientific learning of the Russian theorist leads him to distinguish carefully the Laws of Chess from the Rules for the conduct of players, and to exclude from his code what belongs rather to the institutes or elements of the game. Mr. Von der Lasa, on the other hand, reproduces whatever is

usually found in such collections, and does not think it worth while to aim at any scientific arrangement of a few rules, which have only a limited practical aim. Both are agreed, however, in endeavoring to give greater precision of expression to laws which have been considered ambiguous, to complete them where not sufficiently comprehensive, and to add such new provisions as have been called for by a change of circumstances . . . by the greater frequency of matches, and of games played in consultation and by correspondence. Both agree in the opinion, that to take the Pawn *en passant* is optional or *facultative* only when there remains some other legal move; and they have consequently made the law express that opinion . . . so far as the St. Petersburg Rules are concerned. Both agree in forbidding the player, who gives the odds of the Queen's Rook, to castle on the Queen's side. Both agree in enacting that a Pawn, on reaching the royal line, *must* be immediately made a Piece, and may be made *any* Piece; whether it double a Piece still on the board, or not.

The two authors differ on several points. Major Jænisch, believing the Italian *passar battaglia* to be more consistent with the spirit of chess, proposes, in his later Scheme and in the *Notes* of the St. Petersburg Rules, to enact, that every Pawn, for its first move, may advance two squares, without incurring the liability of being taken *en passant*. Mr. Von der Lasa would sanction no innovation, on this point, upon the uniform law of all Europe without the Alps. Major Jænisch, again, in his aversion to all penalties for touching without moving, false moves, and the like, by which the particular game may take a shape totally at variance with the intention of one of the players, expels from his code the penalty of moving the King. To the suggestion that a false move may often be made fraudulently, he answers (substantially) that chess is played among gentlemen; and that the appropriate penalty for a fraud of the kind is expulsion from the room. Mr. Von der Lasa retains the customary penalty. Major Jænisch permits an error in setting up the pieces, or

the like, to be corrected only before completing four moves. Mr. Von der Lasa gives the latitude of two moves more. The "fifty move rule" (so called) is retained by Mr. Von der Lasa, although he seems not to be in favor of it; and he expresses himself distinctly opposed to permitting a recommencement of the counting upon the capture of a piece; yet he inserts that permission in his Scheme, in deference to what he believes to be the opinion of the majority. Major Jaenisch makes it a "sixty-move rule;" but he does not permit a second beginning of the counting. Both agree in defining, with a precision which was before entirely wanting, under what circumstances the demand for counting the moves may be made. Such, without entering into unnecessary detail, is a cursory view of the general character and principal features of these two important documents . . . the value of which, however, can be only imperfectly understood without a knowledge of the literary research and acute argument, by which each change is explained and defended in the Notes.

When Mr. Von der Lasa wrote the Preface to his Scheme, in December, 1853, three months after his meeting with Mr. Staunton at Brussels, he stated (upon the authority, no doubt, of Mr. Staunton), that the English *projet* was to be ready in the spring; and the editors of the Berlin *Schachzeitung* gave notice, that they would present it in their journal, translated into German, as soon as it should appear. Accordingly, at the annual meeting of the same *Northern and Midland Counties Association*, held at Liverpool, on the 23d and 24th of June, 1854, Mr. Staunton made report, that he had put himself into communication with Major Jaenisch and Mr. Von Heydebrand und der Lasa, and that he had received from each of them an elaborate work, of singular value, on the Chess Code. He stated the peculiar characteristics of each scheme, and detailed minutely the changes which each author proposed to make. He did not report his own contribution, but informed the meeting that it would be ready during the

year, and that it would be printed in a volume, along with those of his continental associates.

In the year 1855, the same Association held its annual meeting at Leamington, in the month of June. Mr. Staunton now reported epitomized translations of Mr. Von der Lasa's *Scheme* and of Major Jænisch's *Rules*, and a Code of Laws prepared by himself, "which seemed" (in the language of the reporter) "to meet most, if not all, the difficulties of the case." Of these three manuscript documents, Mr. Staunton's was read and discussed. . . . The reading of Major Jænisch's and of Mr. Von der Lasa's was omitted, because "it would occupy some hours." A fourth Code was also presented by Mr. Ingelby of Birmingham. The report of what was prepared by Mr. Staunton is too imperfect to be relied upon for accurate information. The opinions, which he had already expressed in the introduction to the *Chess Tournament*, and which he is reported to have expressed in his speeches of 1853 and 1855, appear to have been, in the main, coincident with those of Mr. Von der Lasa, whose recommendations and reasonings were, in fact, precisely such as to commend themselves to the English mind. The result of the discussion which followed the reading of the English documents, was the adoption of a resolution to refer Mr. Staunton's alterations to a Committee of four, consisting of the Rev. Mr. Wayte, Mr. Ingelby, Mr. Tomlinson (the well-known chess author), and the accomplished Hungarian, Herr Löwenthal, with instructions "to report a copy of the revised Laws at the next meeting of the Association, for discussion and sanction, with a view to their being published in a new edition of Mr. Staunton's *Handbook*, as the most practical measure for the improvement of Chess." . . . The meeting of the Association, which was to have been held in 1856, at Birmingham, was postponed until August of the present year, that it might be held, under more favorable circumstances, in connexion with the "Exhibition of Art-Treasures." The circular of the General Committee (as it is found in the Berlin *Schachzeitung*)

announced, that the expected Report of the above-named Committee would be presented, for final action, at this meeting. No account of any action of this kind, however, has appeared in the *Illustrated London News*; and the Congress will, no doubt, be perfectly safe in assuming, that either the Committee made no report, or that no final action was taken upon it. Meanwhile it has just been learned, from very recent information, that the second Scheme of Major Jænisch's . . . that which appeared in 1856 . . . has been adopted by the St. Petersburg Club as its code.

It is at such a state of the movement for establishing "one general and comprehensive code" of Chess Law for "general adoption," that the question presents itself to the American Chess Congress, *Whether, and in what manner, they will attempt to co-operate in that movement with their European brethren?* Your Committee believe that such co-operation is desirable, that it would be highly opportune and effective,— and that it would be particularly acceptable. Letters from Major Jænisch and Mr. Von der Lasa, and notices of Mr. Staunton, express great satisfaction at the interest which the subject has excited in this country, and at the prospect of some formal action on our part. The Committee think such action desirable, because of an apparent tendency in the European movement to become rather national than European . . . rather insular than continental. There is thus some ground for apprehension, that the result may be the establishment of much improved codes, indeed, each having the unity and symmetry of the Italian system . . . but each different from the other. There may be an English code, having strong affinities with a German one, but still different from it; there may be a St. Petersburg system, with the *passar battaglia* of the Italians, but with the castling *alla calabrista* of the ultramontane "barbarians." That such nationality may triumph would seem to be proved by the recent news from Russia, unless the adoption of Major Jænisch's second code has been merely provisional, as was the case with his former

“Rules.” The Committee cannot conceal their fears, that in England, also, from which the work, in its most cosmopolitan aspect, received its first impulse, the movement has become more insular than could be wished. The cause of this tendency lies, most probably, in the entire absence of any organ, wherein to make known to English amateurs what might have kept alive their sympathy with the unabated enthusiasm of Mr. Staunton and the steady zeal of his continental coadjutors. Soon after the first step taken at the Manchester meeting of 1853, the *Chess Players' Chronicle* passed out of Mr. Staunton's hands, and did not long survive the separation. The *Palamède*, which had formerly been read extensively in England, was no longer in existence. The Berlin *Schachzeitung* had, indeed, survived the blows under which its fellows had expired, and it still continued to publish precisely what was needed to help the good cause . . . the original documents, reviews of them, and discussions of the points raised by them; but unfortunately the *Schachzeitung* is “written in a tongue not understood of the people,” and has exerted little or no influence out of Germany. The English amateurs, necessarily ignorant of the disquisitions of their foreign brethren, destitute of the facilities for publishing to any purpose even the codes of the three associated authors, . . . finding nothing in any chess periodical left them beyond a game and a problem, appear to have sunk, almost of necessity, into that “indifference” of which Mr. Staunton has more than once complained. In this spirit, no active measures were taken to prosecute the work to effect,—no order was given to print and distribute documents . . . no communication was made to foreign authorities; and, at last, the cosmopolitan movement of 1853, in favor of a uniform code “for general adoption” descended to the Leamington resolution to adopt, without further extra-English reference, an English code to be printed in an English *Handbook*, “as the most practical measure for the improvement of chess.” It is fortunate, that the action contemplated by this resolution has

not been consummated, and that there is still room for American amateurs to offer their co-operation, in order to revive the old interest in the movement and to restore it to the high cosmopolitan character, which was first given it by the great English player. That such co-operation may be as effectual as it would be opportune, the Committee firmly believe.

As to the *manner* of the co-operation, the Committee would respectfully recommend, in the first instance, that no decided expression of opinion be yet made, in favor of either one of the three schemes proposed, even if accurate information should be received, before the adjournment of the Congress, concerning the changes recommended by Mr. Staunton . . . not even if *his* code should be found to be substantially coincident with either of the two others. Such action on our part, amounting as it would, in practice, to the adoption of a particular code, before proper measures had been taken to make it universal, would only confirm the existing tendency, which our co-operation should rather aim to counteract. In the second place, the Committee recommend the appointment of a *Committee on the Chess Code*, by the authority either of this Congress, or of such *American Chess Association* as may be formed at this Congress, whose duty it shall be,—to enter into communication with Mr. Staunton, Major Jænisch, and Mr. Von der Lasa, in reference to the revision of the laws of chess,—to endeavor to establish a similar correspondence with other eminent chess authorities in other countries,—to consider thoroughly such revised codes as have been, or may be, proposed,—and to report the result of their correspondence and of their consideration of the subject to the Congress, or to the Association (as the case may be), at their next meeting. It is further suggested, that it be recommended to publish in the *Chess Monthly* sufficient abstracts of the proposed codes of Major Jænisch and of Mr. Von der Lasa, and also of Mr. Staunton's, if to be obtained, together with the reasons given by these authors for the provisions recommended by them ;—and that both the members of the Committee and

other chess writers, foreign or American, be recommended and invited to contribute to the same periodical original discussions of the questions which are raised by the proposed revision. It would be within the competency of the Committee so instructed, to embrace in their Report a Code of Chess Law, if it should be found desirable to present the result of their labors in that form.

In the prospectus of the London Tournament of 1851, it was intimated, that the revision of the Chess Code would be accompanied by "the establishment of a uniform system of Notation for the whole chess community;" and in the Preface to the Rules of the St. Petersburg Club, Major Jaenisch strongly urges, that a uniform Chess Code should be equally yoked with a uniform chess language. The subject of Chess Notation might, therefore, with great propriety, be embraced in the reference to the above-named Committee.

All which is respectfully submitted.

(By order of the Committee,) 

---

GEORGE ALLEN, *Chairman.*

September 30th, 1857.

---

The Committee on the Chess Code have opened their Report, in order to add the interesting statement, that immediately after it had been adopted and closed, a most courteous and obliging letter was received by the Chairman, from Mr. Staunton, containing the information, that a proof of his proposed Code had been sent to a friend in this country, for which he requested the Chairman to apply.

TUESDAY EVENING, Oct. 6th.

This proof has just come to hand, through the kind attention of Mr. Eugene B. Cook, to whom it had been originally transmitted. It forms a small volume of sixty-three post-octavo pages. An hour's hasty examination, although, of course, in other respects unsatisfactory, has abundantly satisfied the Committee that the work is such as was to have been expected from

an author of great powers and enlarged experience, assisted by treatises so carefully prepared as those of the two continental writers. Upon the whole, the Committee have not been disappointed in their anticipation of Mr. Staunton's probable leaning :—in most instances, his judgment accords rather with the German than the Russian author, while in some cases he differs from both, and everywhere gives evidence of an independent command of the entire subject. Like Mr. Von der Lasa, he prefixes a chapter on the fundamental laws of the game, the powers and moves of the pieces, etc. Against his own conviction, he agrees with his colleagues in enacting that taking the pawn, *en passant*, becomes a forced move when no other is possible.\* He does not assent to “the extreme leniency” of Major Jænisch in reference to penalties for false moves, nor can he consent, with Mr. Von der Lasa, “to legalise what is illegal,” but prefers to re-enact the old rule, by which a *false* move is a *lost* move. He retains the penalty of moving the king. The text of his code contains the “fifty-move rule,” but he rather inclines, in his notes, to Major Jænisch’s extension to sixty moves. It is rather singular that in the introduction to the *Chess Tournament*, Mr. Staunton pretty distinctly intimates his opinion, that the *spirit* of the fifty-move law permits the party, which has the King and Rook against the King and Bishop, to claim a re-commencement of the counting on capturing the Bishop at the forty-ninth move ; but now that Mr. Von der Lasa, against his own convictions, and in deference, perhaps, to the opinion thus expressed, had inserted the privilege to begin the counting again, Mr. Staunton has found Major Jænisch’s to be the sounder doctrine. He sees no reason for extending the latitude for correcting an error in setting up the pieces, etc., to the sixth move. His sections on correspondence and consultation games are fuller than those of either of his colleagues. The proposition, which was first suggested in England, to

\* It is perhaps needless to add that he lends no support to Major Jænisch’s recommendation of the *passar battaglia*.

limit the duration of a game to two hours on each side and to measure the time consumed on each move by a sand-glass, was favored by Major Jænisch at first, but since abandoned by him. Mr. Staunton proposes to adopt it. These provisions, with many details, which it would be out of place to enumerate here, are discussed, in copious notes, with great acuteness and constant reference to the earlier authorities as well as to the arguments of the two continental writers. The number and perplexing character of the questions thus presented confirm the Committee in their opinion, that no intelligent judgment could be formed upon them from such consideration as could be given them during the present session of the Congress.

---

#### REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE ON A NATIONAL ASSOCIATION.

TO THE PRESIDENT, SECRETARY, AND MEMBERS OF THE CHESS CONGRESS.

The establishment of a permanent national organization of players and lovers of chess would, in the opinion of the Committee, meet a want long felt, and assist in a greater degree than any other project whatever in rapidly diffusing a more general taste for the game among our countrymen. Such an institution is especially desirable in the United States. In England, France, and Germany, where the large cities all lie within a few hours' travel of each other, the members of the various clubs have frequent opportunities of interchanging courtesies and testing one another's skill over the board. In our own country, however, such opportunities are of necessity comparatively rare. It is only by having some central point of assemblage, some special season of festivity, some national and general occasion of a re-union, that the mutual acquaintance of players, and a satisfactory trial of their respective abilities, can be brought about. A well organized body of this kind, with the annual dues placed at so low a rate as to enable every chess-player to inscribe his name upon its book, could,

in various other ways, aid the advancement of chess. It might encourage the establishment of clubs, assist in the publication of chess books and chess journals, favor the introduction of chess departments into the various literary weeklies, and help to bring into notice unknown but promising problem composers. Your Committee, therefore, would heartily recommend, as the proper crowning labor of the Congress, the organization of a National Chess Association, similar in design and character to the Chess Association of Great Britain and Ireland; and would propose, for the government of the association, the following

#### *ARTICLES.*

I. This organization shall be known as the American Chess Association.

II. Its officers shall be a President, four Vice-Presidents, Recording and Corresponding Secretaries, and Treasurer, elected at each Congress, and holding their office until the following one, or until their successors are chosen, and acting together they shall form a general Committee of Management, with power to supply vacancies in their own number. The Secretaries of all the regularly organized Chess Clubs in the United States shall form a general Committee of Correspondence.

III. The Congress of the Association shall be held as often as once in three years, in some one of the large cities. The time and locality for each Congress shall be determined by the Committee on Correspondence, and the arrangements shall then be perfected and carried out by a local managing Committee, to be appointed by the club or clubs in the city where such Congress is to convene.

IV. The annual dues shall be one dollar from each member, and three dollars from each club, payable in the month of January.

V. Foreign honorary members, consisting of distinguished players and writers, who have manifested an interest in American chess, may be elected, but the entire number shall never exceed thirteen.

VI. These articles shall be retro-active, so as to constitute the present the first Congress of the American Chess Association.

A. R. GALLATIN, *Chairman.*

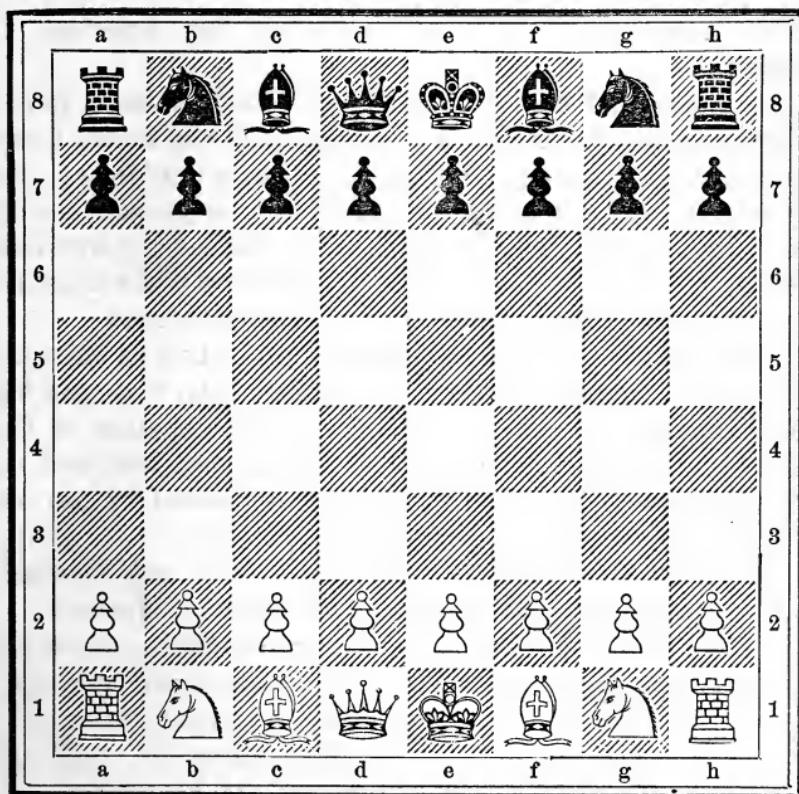
NEW YORK, October 10th, 1857.

## COMMUNICATION FROM MR. J. LÖWENTHAL.

[The following interesting and valuable analytical article was accompanied by a letter to the Secretary of the Congress, in which the distinguished author said that being at too great a distance to attend the gathering, he was desirous of evincing in some other way his warm interest in the great American movement. He therefore presented to the Congress a new analysis of the Pawn and Move Opening, together with some illustrative games. This manifestation of sympathy from so eminent a source was received with hearty gratification by the members of the Congress.]

## THE PAWN AND MOVE OPENING.

BLACK.



WHITE.

† = Check.

: = Takes.

:† = Takes checking.

o—o = Castles with K. R.

o—o—o = Castles with Q. R.

† = Mate.

The best mode of conducting the game of the second player in the Pawn and Move Opening is one of the most difficult problems of chess. Its difficulty arises not only from its own nature, but also from the fact that the odds of Pawn and Move are given, not to tyros, but to players of considerable power. For example, Petroff gives these odds to the eminent analyst Jænisch, and Mr. Staunton has given them to players of high standing and acknowledged reputation. In such hands the attack is easy enough. The first player, besides the advantage of a pawn, has the power of developing his game, whilst the second player is checked and cramped in his movements by the necessity of being continually on his guard. My object is to suggest what appears to me to be the best line of defence. I am not presumptuous enough to suppose that the mode I recommend will lead to a certain *remise*; the certainty of that is possibly unattainable, but I merely submit the moves indicated to the chess players of America, leaving it to them to decide whether or not they are more advantageous than those hitherto adopted. Little has been done of late years to develop the interesting features of the Pawn and Move game, and to exhaust the modes of attack and defence. I, therefore, in the first place venture some remarks on the more recent discoveries, and a comparison of them with the moves formerly adopted by great players.

When the first player opens with 1. e2—e4 Black has four recognised defences at his disposal, namely I. Kt b8—c6, II. e7—e6, III. Kt g8—h6 and IV. c7—c5. In the first line of defence, Kt b8—c6, I would recommend a mode of proceeding for the attack varying from that given in the *Companion*. That work (see *Chess Player's Companion*, p. 470) gives the following moves.

1. e2—e4	Kt b8—c6
2. d2—d4	d7—d5
3. e4—e5	

This is no doubt a good move, but the following, given in

*The Era*, some time ago, will be found to give White an infinitely superior game :

1. e2—e4	Kt b8—c6
2. d2—d4	d7—d5
3. B f1—b5	e7—e6
4. Q d1—h5†	

This move is given by Sarratt.

4. . . . .	g7—g6
5. Q h5—e5	Kt g8—f6

Black could scarcely venture to give up the Rook by playing K e8—f7. For suppose K e8—f7; 6. Q e5—h8:, Kt g8—f6; 7. Kt b1—c3, Q d8—d7 (best, for if Q d8—e7 White's reply is 8. B c1—g5 or 8. Kt. g1—f3, enabling him to liberate the Queen). 8. B b5—c6:, b7—c6:; 9. Kt g1—f3, with a winning position. Should Black, for his fifth move, play Q d8—f6, instead of Kt g8—f6, White would win by the following : Q d8—f6; 6. Q e5—c7:, Kt g8—e7 (best); 7. Kt g1—f3, d5—e4: (if B c8—d7, 8. B c1—g5, Q f6—g7; 9. B g5—e7:, Q g7—e7:; 10. B b5—c6: etc.) 8. Kt f3—e5, with an irresistible attack. I return now to the main game.

6. B c1—g5	B f8—e7
------------	---------

If K e8—f7; then 7. B b5—c6:, b7—c6:; 8. B g5—f6:, Q d8—f6:; Q e5—c7: etc.

7. e4—d5:	a7—a6
8. d5—c6:	a6—b5:
9. c6—b7:	

and wins a piece.

The following line of attack, which, however, I consider inferior to the above, has also been given in *The Era*:

1. e2—e4	Kt b8—c6
2. d2—d4	d7—d5
3. Kt b1—c3	d5—e4:
4. d4—d5	Kt c6—e5
5. B c1—f4	Kt e5—g6
6. B f4—g3	a7—a6
7. Kt c3—e4: etc.	

I am of the opinion that if Black adopts as his first move either Kt b8—c6, e7—e6, Kt g8—h6 or c7—c5, he will have great difficulty in bringing out his pieces. Analyses of these moves will be found in the *Chess Player's Companion*, pp. 470—490.

I will now proceed to point out a line of play which I consider more calculated to enable Black to develop his forces, and one which necessitates great nicety of play on the part of White, to retain the advantage of the odds given.

1. e2—e4	d7—d6
2. d2—d4	e7—e5

This move has never been made before, because it appeared obvious that if White captured the Pawn, Black could not re-take without serious consequences. One move, however, was left unnoticed, namely, Q d8—e7, and this leads to a more satisfactory defence than any hitherto adopted.

3. d4—e5:

White may also play 3. Kt g1—f3 and 3. d4—d5, which I shall examine respectively, under variations A and B.

3. . . . . . . . . . .	Q d8—e7
4. Kt g1—f3	

White has two other moves at his disposal, for which see variations C and D.

4. . . . . . . . . . .	d6—e5:
5. Kt b1—c3	

If 5. B f1—c4, B c8—e6; 6. Kt f6—e5; B e6—c4; 7. Kt e5—c4: Q e7—e4:†; 8. Q d1—e2, Q e4—e2:† etc.

5. . . . . . . . . . .	B c8—g4
6. B f1—c4	c2—c3
7. o—o	Kt b8—d7

and considering the odds given Black's game is a tolerably good one.

#### A.

3. Kt g1—f3

This is the correct move to enable the first player to maintain his position.

3. . . . . . . . . . . e5—d4:

B c8—g4 is an apparently good move, but it loses a second Pawn, thus: 4. d4—e5:, Q d8—e7, 5. Q d1—d5 etc.

4. Kt f3—d4:

Kt g8—f6

5. Kt b1—c3

c7—c6

To play c7—c5 would be bad, on account of 6. B f1—b5†, K e8—f7 (best, for if B c8—d7, 7. Kt d4—e6, Q d8—b6; 8. Kt c3—a4, Q b6—a5†; 9. B c1—d2, and wins). 7. B f1—c4†, and Black has a bad game.

6. B f1—c4

B c8—d7

Black dare not play b7—b5. Suppose b7—b5; 8. Kt d4—b5:, d6—d5 (best, for if c6—b5:; 9. B c4—d5, Kt f6—d5:; 10. Q d1—h5†, g7—g6; 11. Q h5—d5: etc.). 9. B c4—b3, c6—b5:; 11. e4—e5, and regains the piece with the better game.

7. o—o

c6—c5

And so on. It follows that although White, with the best play, must have the superior position, yet Black's game is a better one than he would have obtained by the other lines of defence.

### B.

3. d4—d5

This is not a good move, as it shuts out the White Bishop at f1, one of the most important pieces in the game.

3. . . . . . . . . . . Kt g8—f6

4. B c1—g5

B f8—e7

Or Kt b8—d7, followed by o—o, and White has no attack.

### C.

4. e5—d6:

Q e7—e4:†

5. Q d1—e2

Q e4—e2:†

6. B f1—e2:

B f8—d6:

And Black has an open game.

D.

4. Kt b1—c3 d6—e5;  
 5. Kt c3—d5 Q e7—d6

It would not be good play to move the Queen to f7, as in that case White would reply with 6. B f1—c4, and if Black then answers B c8—e6, White takes the Pawn c7† and wins a Pawn.

## 6. B f1—c4

If 6. f2—f4, then Black plays c7—c6.

6. : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : c7—c6

followed by Q d6—d1; and White has no attack.

By way of summing up this analysis, I may remark, that in the different variations, with one exception, Black obtains a free game, and an unquestionably better position than results from any other line of defence. In actual play, of course, this attack may be varied; but I have convinced myself, by repeated experiments, of the superiority of the above method of conducting the game on the part of the second player. In confirmation of that view, I beg to submit the accompanying games with various players.

I take the opportunity of adding another mode of defence; although it is inferior to that already given, yet as it has not been mentioned by others, nor, as far as I am aware, adopted in actual play, it may, perhaps, be deemed worthy of notice.

1. e2—e4 d7—d6  
 2. d2—d4 B c8—e6  
 3. Q d1—h5†

This is the only move, as any other would allow Black to plant his Bishop at f7 and render his game safe.

This is much better than to interpose the Bishop.

Black has now sacrificed another Pawn, but he has two pieces in play, and White must be very careful not to endanger the Queen. The following indicates the line of play best calculated to enable White to maintain his advantage.

## 6. c2—c3

Best, for if 6. Kt g1-f3, R a8-b8; 7. Q b7-a6, Kt c6-b4; 8. Q a6-e2, d6-d5; 9. e4-d5:, B d7-f5; 10. Kt b1-a3, Q d8-d5: etc.

6. . . . . . . . . . e7—e5  
 7. d4—d5 Kt c6—e7  
 8. B c1—g5

with an attacking game, and leaving Black without any compensation for the sacrifice of the Pawn.

## *ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.*

In playing over these games remove the Pawn f7.

## GAME THE FIRST.

Mr. V. Green.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.	Mr. V. Green.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	16. R d6—e6†	K e8—d7
2. d2—d4	e7—e5	17. R h1—d1†	K d7—c7
3. d4—e5:	Q d8—e7	18. g2—g3	R d8—d1:†
4. Kt g1—f3	d6—e5:	19. K c1—d1:	Kt b6—d7
5. Kt b1—c3	c7—c6	20. f2—f4	Kt d7—c5
6. B f1—c4	B c8—g4	21. f4—f5	Kt c5—e6:
7. h2—h3	B g4—f3:	22. B b3—e6:	Kt g6—f8
8. Q d1—f3:	Q e7—f6	23. B e6—c4	b7—b5
9. Q f3—g4	Kt b8—d7	24. B c4—d3	Kt f8—d7
10. B c1—g5	Q f6—g6	25. g3—g4	h7—h6
11. o—o—o	Kt d7—b6	26. Kt c3—e2	K c7—d6
12. B c4—b3	B f8—e7	27. Kt e2—g3	K d6—e7
13. B g5—e7:	Kt g8—e7:	28. b2—b3	R h8—d8
14. Q g4—g6:	Kt e7—g6:	29. K d1—e2	K e7—f7
15. R d1—d6	R a8—d8	30. K e2—e3	Kt d7—f6

Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.	Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.
31. B d3—e2	R d8—d4	49. Kt d3—c1	Kt b8—c6
32. B e2—d3	a7—a6	50. Kt c1—e2	K d6—e7
33. c2—c4	b5—b4	51. K f3—e3	R d8—d7
34. Kt g3—e2	R d4—d8	52. B c2—d3	Kt c6—a5
35. Kt e2—g3	Kt f6—d7	53. B d3—c2	Kt a5—b7
36. Kt g3—e2	Kt d7—c5	54. B c2—d3	Kt b7—d6
37. Kt e2—c1	K f7—f6	55. B d3—c2	Kt d6—e8
38. h3—h4	g7—g5	56. Kt e2—c1	Kt e8—f6
39. h4—h5	K f6—e7	57. Kt c1—d3	Kt f6—g4:†
40. B d3—c2	a6—a5	58. K e3—f3	R d7—d3:†
41. Kt c1—d3	Kt c5—d7	59. B c2—d3:	Kt g4—f6
42. K e3—f3	c6—c5	60. B d3—c2	Kt f6—h5:
43. K f3—g3	K e7—d6	61. K f3—g4	Kt h5—f4
44. K g3—f3	Kt d7—b6	62. B c2—d1	K e7—f6
45. K f3—e3	a5—a4	63. B d1—f3	Kt f4—d3
46. Kt d3—b2	a4—a3	64. K g4—h5	Kt d3—c1
47. Kt b2—d3	Kt b6—d7	65. K h5—h6:	Kt c1—a2:
48. K e3—f3	Kt d7—b8	And Mr. Green resigns.	

## GAME THE SECOND.

Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.	Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	13. Kt g1—f3	B f5—e4
2. d2—d4	e7—e5	14. B c1—g5	R d8—e8
3. d4—e5: Q	d8—e7	15. o—o	B f8—h6
4. Kt b1—c3	d6—e5:	16. B g5—h6:	Kt g8—h6:
5. Kt c3—d5	Q e7—d6	17. Kt f3—d4	R e8—g8
6. f2—f4	c7—c6	18. R f1—f2	Kt c6—e5:
7. Q d1—h5:†	g7—g6	19. Kt d4—e6	R g8—g6
8. f4—e5:	g6—h5:	20. R a1—f1	Kt h6—f5
9. e5—d6:	c6—d5:	21. Kt e6—d4	Kt f5—d6:
10. e4—e5	B c8—f5	22. R f2—f8:†	R h8—f8:
11. B f1—b5:†	Kt b8—c6	23. R f1—f8:†	K c8—c7
12. c2—c3	o—o—o	And Mr. Green resigns.	

## GAME THE THIRD.

Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.	Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	4. Kt g1—f3	Kt g8—f6
2. f2—f4	e7—e5	5. d2—d3	Kt f6—h5
3. B f1—c4	e5—f4:	6. o—o	c7—c6

Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.	Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.
7. g2—g3	B c8—h3	17. Q h3—g4	g5—f4:
8. Kt f3—h4	g7—g6	18. B b5—c6:	b7—c6:
9. B c1—f4:	B h3—f1:	19. Kt e2—f4:	Q d8—c8
10. Q d1—f1:	d6—d5	20. Q g4—g5	B c5—e3
11. e4—d5:	B f8—c5†	21. R a1—e1	B e3—f4:
12. K g1—h1	c6—d5:	22. g3—f4:	Q c8—h3
13. B c4—b5†	Kt b8—c6	23. f4—f5	R f8—f5:
14. Kt b1 c3	o—o	24. Kt h4—f5:	Q h3—f5:
15. Kt c3—e2	g6—g5		And Mr. Löwenthal wins.
16. Q f1—h3	Kt h5—g7		

## GAME THE FOURTH.

Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.	Mr. Green.	Mr. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	27. b2—b4	Kt f8—g6
2. d2—d4	e7—e5	28. Kt e2—g1	Kt g6—f4
3. d4—e5:	Q d8—e7	29. K e3—f3	K e7—d6
4. Kt g1—f3	d6—e5:	30. B c2—b1	K d6—c7
5. Kt b1—c3	c7—c6	31. B b1—c2	K c7—b6
6. B f1—c4	B c8—g4	32. B c2—b1	a7—a5
7. h2—h3	B g4—f3:	33. a2—a3	a5—a4
8. Q d1—f3:	Q d8—f6	34. B b1—c2	K b6—c7
9. Q f3—f6:	Kt g8—f6:	35. B c2—b1	K c7—d6
10. B c1—d2	Kt b8—d7	36. B b1—c2	Kt e6—d4†
11. o—o—o	b7—b5	37. c3—d4:	e5—d4:
12. B c4—d3	B f8—d6	38. Kt g1—e2	Kt f4—e6
13. B d2—e3	B d6—c5	39. B c2—b1	K d6—e5
14. B e3—c5:	Kt d7—c5:	40. Kt e2—g1	Kt e6—f4
15. R h1—e1	Kt c5—e6	41. Kt g1—e2	Kt f4—h3:
16. Kt c3—e2	K e8—e7	42. K f3—g2	Kt h3—f4†
17. c2—c3	R a8—d8	43. Kt e2—f4:	K e5—f4:
18. B d3—c2	h7—h5	44. f2—f3	K f4—e5
19. R d1—d8:	R h8—d8:	45. K g2—f2	d4—d3
20. R e1—d1	R d8—d1:†	46. K f2—e3	h4—h3
21. K c1—d1:	h4—h5	47. K e3—f2	K e5—d4
22. K d1—d2	e6—c5	48. e4—e5	K d4—e5:
23. K d2—e3	g7—g5	49. K f2—g3	h3—h2
24. g2—g4	Kt f6—d7	50. K g3—h2:	K e5—f4
25. B c2—b3	c5—c4	51. K h2—g2	K f4—e3
26. B b3—c2	Kt d7—f8	52. K g2—g3	c4—c3

And Mr. Green resigns.

## GAME THE FIFTH.

Mr. R. B. Brien.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.	Mr. R. B. Brien.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	20. K h1—g1	Kt f8—g6
2. d2—d4	e7—e5	21. R a1—f1	Q h4—e7
3. d4—d5	Kt g8—f6	22. Kt c3—d1	Kt g6—e5
4. B c1—g5	B f8—e7	23. Q f3—g3	B c8—d7
5. B g5—f6:	B e7—f6:	24. B d3—e2	R a8—f8
6. c2—c4	c7—c5	25. R f1—f8: <sup>†</sup>	K g8—f8:
7. Kt b1—c3	o—o	26. Q g3—f4 <sup>†</sup>	K f8—g8
8. B f1—d3	R f8—f7	27. Kt d1—c3	g7—g6
9. Kt g1—e2	Kt b8—d7	28. b2—b3	K g8—g7
10. o—o	Kt d7—f8	29. Q f4—f2	a7—a6
11. f2—f4	e5—f4:	30. Q f2—f4	h7—h5
12. Kt e2—f4:	B f6—e5	31. Kt c3—d1	g6—g5
13. Kt f4—e2	R f8—f6	32. Q f4—f2	g5—g4
14. R f1—f6:	Q d8—f6:	33. Q f2—f4	Kt e5—g6
15. Q d1—f1	Q f6—h6	34. Q f4—e3	Q e7—e5
16. Kt e2—g3	Q h6—e3 <sup>†</sup>	35. g2—g3	h5—h4
17. K g1—h1	B e5—g3:	36. g3—h4:	Kt g6—h4:
18. h2—g3:	Q e3—g3:	37. Q e3—c3	K g7—f6
19. Q f1—f3	Q g3—h4 <sup>†</sup>	And Mr. Brien resigns.	

## GAME THE SIXTH.

Amateur.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.	Amateur.	Mr. J. Löwenthal.
1. e2—e4	d7—d6	16. Kt f3—d4	Q d8—f6
2. d2—d4	e7—e5	17. Kt e3—f5	B e5—d4:
3. Kt g1—f3	B c8—g4	18. c3—d4:	g7—g6
4. B c1—e3	Kt b8—d7	19. g4—g5	Q f6—e6
5. B f1—c4	B f8—e7	20. Kt f5—h6 <sup>†</sup>	K g8—g7
6. Kt b1—d2	e5—d4:	21. R g1—g4	R f8—f3
7. B e3—d4:	B e7—f6	22. b2—b3	R f3—h3:
8. c2—c3	Kt g8—h6	23. o—o—o	R a8—f8
9. h2—h3	B g4—h5	24. f2—f4	Q e6—e4:
10. g2—g4	B h5—f7	25. R d1—e1	R h3—h1
11. R h1—g1	B f7—c4:	26. K c1—d1	R h1—e1: <sup>†</sup>
12. Kt d2—c4:	Kt h6—f7	27. Q d2—e1:	Q e4—d4: <sup>†</sup>
13. Kt c4—e3	o—o	28. Q e1—d2	Q d4—d2: <sup>†</sup>
14. Q d1—d2	Kt f7—e5	29. K d1—d2:	Kt d7—b6
15. B d4—e5:	B f6—e5:	And the First Player resigns.	

[Besides the above communication, another was received from the same able pen, in which Mr. Löwenthal discussed the propriety of always giving, in published games, the White pieces to the first player. He demonstrates the advantage of uniformity in this respect over the present system of sometimes calling one player White and sometimes the other. This interesting letter was referred to the Committee on the Chess Code.]

### COMMUNICATION ON THE SUBJECT OF A MECHANICAL CHESS RECORDER.

TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS.

The object of the Mechanical Chess Recorder is to enable players to recover or record a game within some short interval of time after it was played, and while the course of the game is still partially retained in the memory. It consists of the following arrangement. The men are made hollow, so as to contain a number of small balls of ivory or other material. These balls are colored and marked, so as to designate the particular piece to which they are appropriated; but the two sets of pieces have similarly marked balls. Thus, there are sixteen sets of balls appropriated to the eight men and eight pawns of each color. To designate the sets of balls, and show to what Piece each belongs, those of the King, King's Pawn, and the Pieces and Pawns on the King's side, may be of one color, those of the Queen, and Pieces and Pawns on the Queen's side, of another. The balls appropriated to the Pawns may be of a different material from those of the Pieces, but all of the same size. The balls for each particular Piece or Pawn are to be further designated by a particular mark. Thus the King, King's Pawn, Queen and Queen's Pawn, may have a single dot; the color and material of the ball further designating to which of the four it belongs. The Bishops and their Pawns, *two* dots, Knights and their Pawns, *three* dots, Rooks and their Pawns, *four* dots. The simple inspection of a ball will thus determine the Piece it represents. The balls are retained in the Pieces by a simple escapement, operated by a spring, by which they may be dropped one at a time, when the pieces are taken up and

set down upon the board in playing. The board has a perforation in the centre of each square, somewhat larger than the balls, and a slight inclined plane below it, upon which when the balls fall, they will run to one side, and be conducted to a properly prepared groove, in which they will take their places in succession in the order in which they are dropped.

The method of operation will then be as follows:—A Piece when taken up and set down upon the square to which it is moved in the game, will, when pressed down (a small stud projecting from the bottom of the piece operating the escapement) cause a single ball to drop through the perforation in the square, and pass to its place in the groove. When the Piece is again taken up, a spring attached to the escapement, causes another ball to pass to a position on the lower pallet of the escapement, ready to be dropped when again pressed down upon a square. The record thus obtained of the game, by simple inspection of the balls in the groove, will then consist of a *designation of the Pieces*, and of *the order in which they were played*, the *alternate ball designating the color of the Pieces*. Thus, if White played first, all the odd numbered balls would designate a White Piece, and the even numbered a Black. This, it is obvious, does not give all that is desirable; but enough, it is presumed, to enable players to recover and record a game, some time after it was played. The simplicity of the plan, and its little liability to get out of order, if anything, must be its recommendation; while all plans for mechanical recording that aim to designate not only the pieces and the order in which played, but also the square to which they are played, must necessarily be so complicated, as to render them objectionable, and any application of electricity or magnetism for the purpose, would be too expensive and troublesome to keep in order.

J.

[Another communication was received from the same author, in which he described a still more ingenious and elaborate invention for the purpose of recording games, and which was worked, like the telegraph, by means of electromagnetism. For want of the necessary wood-cuts the letter is here omitted.]

## NEW SYSTEMS OF CHESS NOTATION.

## I.

The undersigned respectfully submits for the consideration of the members of the First National Chess Congress, the following new method of recording games and positions.

This Notation, it is believed, furnishes a method of expressing all the operations of the game of chess in the most symmetrical and concise form. By the aid of devices familiar in the notation of mathematics, the smallest possible number of independent arbitrary symbols are employed; and the most complicated operation requires no more and no less space for its expression than the most simple. It is thus admirably adapted for the tabular arrangement of games and analyses. It can be as easily learned as the English notation, of which it retains several important features. It can be written with care and rapidity, and can be printed wherever mathematical printing can be done, and with as little liability of error.

The Pieces are denoted by the Capital Initial Letters.

The Pawns are denoted by the Small Initial Letters.

The Squares are denoted by the Small Initial Letters with the Numbers.

The Queen's Rook, Bishop, and Knight, with their respective Pawns, are distinguished from the King's by the accent.

<b>K</b>	King.	<b>k</b>	King's Pawn.
<b>Q</b>	Queen.	<b>q</b>	Queen's Pawn.
<b>R</b>	King's Rook.	<b>r</b>	King's Rook's Pawn.
<b>B</b>	King's Bishop.	<b>b</b>	King's Bishop's Pawn.
<b>K'</b>	King's Knight.	<b>k'</b>	King's Knight's Pawn.
' <b>R</b>	Queen's Rook.	' <b>r</b>	Queen's Rook's Pawn.
' <b>B</b>	Queen's Bishop.	' <b>b</b>	Queen's Bishop's Pawn.
' <b>K'</b>	Queen's Knight.	' <b>k'</b>	Queen's Knight's Pawn.

**!** denotes best move.

**-** " takes.

**:** " check.

**::** " double check.

$\therefore$	denotes discovered check.
$\infty$	perpetual check.
$\odot - \odot$	castles.
$'\odot - '\odot$	castles on Queen's side.
$*(p - p)$	Pawn takes Pawn in passing.
$\delta$	checkmate.
$\divideontimes$	stalemate.
$\divideontimes$	drawn game.
$=$	game is equal.
$W$	wins.
$W > B$	white has the best: which may be expressed without the letters, with the symbol in either column, $>$ $<$
$W < B$	black has the best.
$b^2$	Bishop's double Pawn.
$b^3$	Bishop's third Pawn.
$'b 'b8$	Q's B's Pawn to Q's B's 8th square, becoming Queen.
$\dagger a^{10}$	variation of game $A$ , at the 10th move.
$\dagger a_{19}^{10}$	variation of $a^{10}$ , at the 19th move.
$\dagger_{21} a_{19}^{10}$	variation of game $a_{19}^{10}$ at the 21st move.

The squares are designated in the usual English method, White's *first* squares are Black's *eighth*, and *vice versa*.

8r,	8k,	8q,	8b	8k	8q	8k,	8r
□	□	□	□	□	□	□	□
'r1	'k'1	'b1	q1	k1	b1	k'1	r1

W.

In the following manner the position of a game can be given in a very small space.

Situation of the pieces  $a_{19}^{10}$ .

W. R b1,  $\mathbb{K}$  r1, 'r, 'k<sup>t</sup>, 'b, k<sup>t</sup>, r, 'B b8, q q8, Q r5, 'K<sup>t</sup> b6.  
B. 'R, 'B,  $\mathbb{K}$ , R, 'r, 'k<sup>t</sup>, b, r, 'K<sup>t</sup> 'b8, Q k'3, B r8, b<sup>2</sup> b5.

which reads, situation of the pieces at the 19th move, of the variation commencing at the 10th move.

White.—K. R. on K. B. square, K. on K. R. square,

\* ('b—q) Queen's Bishop's pawn takes Queen's pawn in passing.

† Used as heads for columns, or notes.

Q's. R. P., Q's. Kt. P., Q's. B. P., K's. Kt. P., K's. R. P. on their respective squares, Q. B. on K's. B's. 3d square, P. on Q's. 3d square, Q. on K. R's. 5th square, Q. Kt. on K. B's 6th square.

*Black*.—Q. R., Q. B., K., K. R., Q. R. P., Q. Kt. P., K. B. P., K. R. P., on their squares. Q. Kt. on Q. B. 3d square, Q. on K. Kt. 3d square, K. B. on K. R. 3d square, double pawn on K. B. 5th square.

Game illustrative of the New Notation.				The Corresponding English Notation.			
	W.	B.		W.	B.		
1	k k4	k k4		P. to K. 4th.		P. to K. 4th.	
2	K' b3	'K' 'b3		K. Kt to B. 3rd.		Q. Kt. to B. 3rd.	
3	B 'b4	B 'b4		K. B. to Q. B. 4th.		K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	
4	'k' 'k'4	B-'k'!		P. to Q. Kt. 4th.		B. takes Q. Kt. P.*	
5	'b 'b3	B 'r4		P. to Q. B. 3rd.		B. to Q. R. 4th.	
6	⊖-⊖	B 'k'3		Castles.		B. to Q. Kt. 3rd.	
7	q q4	k - q		P. to Q. 4th.		P. takes P.	
8	k k5	q q4		P. to K. 5th.		P. to Q. 4th.	
9	(k - q)	Q - k		P. takes P. in passing.		Q. takes P.	
10	R 'k1:	'B k3		R. to K. sq. (ch.)		Q. B. to K. 3rd.	
11	'B 'r3	Q q2		Q. B. to Q. R. 3rd.		Q. to her 2nd.	
12	K' k'5	q - b		Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.		P. takes P.	
13	K'-'B	Q - Q		Kt. takes Q. B.		Q. takes Q.	
14	'K'-'k'::	⊗ q2	>	Kt. takes Kt. P. (doub' ch.)	White has the best game.	K. to Q. 2nd.	* Best.

JOHN BARTLETT.

CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS, October, 1857.

[The system of Chess Notation described in the above communication was printed shortly after the adjournment of the National Congress, in a folio form, of four pages, and bearing the following title:—*A new Method of Chess Notation, by JOHN BARTLETT. Cambridge, December 1857.* It was accompanied with a full illustration of the method, consisting of the whole of the analysis of the Muzio Gambit, taken from Staunton's *Handbook*, and written out in accordance with Mr. Bartlett's system.]

## II.

The following new style of Chess Notation, I take the liberty of submitting to the consideration of the Members of the First National Chess Congress :

BLACK.

$\frac{7}{1}$	$\frac{6}{2}$	$\frac{5}{3}$	$\frac{4}{4}$	$\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{2}{6}$	$\frac{1}{7}$	<b>S</b>
$\frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	<b>7</b>	$\frac{8}{1}$
$\frac{5}{1}$	$\frac{4}{2}$	$\frac{3}{3}$	$\frac{2}{4}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	<b>6</b>	$\frac{7}{1}$	$\frac{8}{2}$
$\frac{4}{1}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	<b>5</b>	$\frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{7}{2}$	$\frac{8}{3}$
$\frac{3}{1}$	$\frac{2}{2}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	<b>4</b>	$\frac{5}{1}$	$\frac{6}{2}$	$\frac{7}{3}$	$\frac{8}{4}$
$\frac{2}{1}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	<b>3</b>	$\frac{4}{1}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{6}{3}$	$\frac{7}{4}$	$\frac{8}{5}$
$\frac{1}{1}$	<b>2</b>	$\frac{3}{1}$	$\frac{4}{2}$	$\frac{5}{3}$	$\frac{6}{4}$	$\frac{7}{5}$	$\frac{8}{6}$
<b>1</b>	$\frac{2}{1}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{5}{4}$	$\frac{6}{5}$	$\frac{7}{6}$	$\frac{8}{7}$

WHITE.

In this, as in all other systems of Chess Notation, the side of the board whereon the white men are placed, is supposed to face the player.

Then, according to this style, the dark square in the left corner of the board is numbered 1. The dark square touching 1 is No. 2, and so on, through the diagonal to the opposite corner No. 8. The square next above 1 is  $\frac{1}{1}$ , or as read 1 above 1.

The square immediately above 4 is  $\frac{1}{4}$ ; that immediately below 4 is  $\underline{\frac{4}{1}}$ ; read in this manner:

- $\frac{1}{1}$ . Four.
- $\frac{1}{4}$ . One above four.
- $\frac{2}{4}$ . Two above four.
- $\frac{3}{4}$ . Three below four.
- $\frac{3}{8}$ . Eight.
- $\frac{5}{8}$ . Five below eight.

Taking this system in its most simple form, we are not required to give any letter or other sign, to designate whether a Piece or Pawn has been moved, as nothing can be more readily believed than the fact that no two men can be in one position at the same time; therefore, if the person, playing over a game, from the record, finds a move  $\frac{3}{5}$  to 8, three above five to three below eight, he may, with the utmost confidence, move a Bishop from one square to the other, should he find one on the former square.

The following Game, between the Duke of R. and Mr. S. Dubois, of Rome, will more fully exhibit the merits of the proposed plan; those wishing to see it in another form may find it in the *Chess Monthly*, Vol. II. p. 302.

WHITE. Dubois.	BLACK. Duke R.	WHITE. Dubois.	BLACK. Duke R.
1. 5 5 3 1	5 5 2	7. 4 4 2	4 4 2 2
2. 6 6 4 2	5 6 2	8. 5 4 1	6 6 2 3
3. 7 6 6 3	7 7 2	9. 7 7 5 4	6 3 2 3
4. 8 8 6 4	7 7 2 3	10. 4 6 1 2	8 1 2 7
5. 6 5 3	8 8 1 3	11. 3 5 2 2	6 7 1 3
6. 6 1 5 3	7 8 2	12. 2 3 1	5 4 3 2

WHITE. Dubois.	BLACK. Duke R.	WHITE. Dubois.	BLACK. Duke R.
13. $\frac{6}{2} \frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{3} \frac{4}{1}$	31. $\frac{1}{5} \frac{2}{2}$	$\frac{6}{3} \frac{6}{4}$
14. $\frac{4}{3} \frac{4}{1}$	$\frac{4}{3} \frac{3}{3}$	32. $\frac{5}{4} \frac{6}{5}$	$\frac{7}{2} \frac{6}{1}$
15. $\frac{5}{2} \frac{7}{2}$	$\frac{1}{6} \frac{6}{6}$	33. $\frac{2}{2} \frac{5}{3}$	$\frac{7}{7} \frac{1}{7}$
16. $\frac{5}{1} \frac{5}{5}$	$\frac{4}{1} \frac{1}{3}$	34. $\frac{5}{5} \frac{7}{3}$	$\frac{1}{1} \frac{6}{2}$
17. $\frac{4}{1} \frac{7}{1}$	$\frac{3}{5} \frac{2}{6}$	35. $\frac{7}{3} \frac{8}{2}$	$\frac{1}{7} \frac{6}{6}$
18. 5 6	$\frac{1}{7} \frac{6}{6}$	36. $\frac{5}{2} \frac{8}{1}$	$\frac{6}{1} \frac{6}{3}$
19. $\frac{1}{4} 6$	$\frac{7}{7} \frac{6}{6}$	37. $\frac{8}{1} \frac{8}{8}$	$\frac{2}{6} \frac{5}{5}$
20. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{5}{4} \frac{2}{1} \\ \frac{1}{1} \end{array} \right.$	$\frac{6}{1} \frac{7}{2}$	38. 8 5	$\frac{2}{5} \frac{3}{4}$
21. $\frac{8}{4} \frac{7}{2}$	$\frac{8}{7} \frac{1}{7}$	39. $\frac{8}{7} \frac{8}{3}$	$\frac{3}{5} \frac{5}{5}$
22. $\frac{7}{1} \frac{8}{2}$	$\frac{1}{7} \frac{7}{7}$	40. $\frac{8}{3} \frac{5}{5}$	$\frac{6}{2} \frac{8}{8}$
23. $\frac{3}{1} \frac{5}{1}$	$\frac{1}{3} \frac{4}{2}$	41. $\frac{8}{2} \frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{8}{8} \frac{8}{8}$
24. $\frac{5}{1} \frac{4}{2}$	$\frac{4}{2} \frac{7}{2}$	42. 8 3	$\frac{6}{6} \frac{5}{5}$
25. $\frac{8}{2} \frac{2}{4}$	$\frac{2}{6} \frac{1}{7}$	43. $\frac{2}{1} \frac{3}{1}$	$\frac{7}{5} \frac{7}{6}$
26. $\frac{4}{2} \frac{5}{1}$	$\frac{7}{2} \frac{4}{4}$	44. $\frac{6}{1} \frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{6}{3} \frac{5}{2}$
27. $\frac{5}{1} \frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{1}{7} \frac{6}{6}$	45. 5 5	$\frac{7}{6} \frac{6}{5}$
28. $\frac{6}{1} \frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{2} \frac{7}{2}$	46. $\frac{5}{2} \frac{6}{3}$	$\frac{3}{4} \frac{4}{4}$
29. $\frac{3}{4} \frac{5}{1}$	$\frac{1}{6} \frac{7}{7}$	47. $\frac{7}{4} \frac{7}{3}$	$\frac{2}{4} \frac{1}{4}$
30. $\frac{2}{4} \frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{4}{4} \frac{3}{5}$	48. $\frac{6}{3} \frac{6}{2}$	$\frac{6}{5} \frac{7}{6}$
		49. $\frac{6}{2} \frac{6}{4}$	

In this mode of recording Games, if any doubt should arise as to the position of any Piece, it is quite easy to follow it from its starting, to any desired point, without the confusion which often arises from the Knights and Rooks, either King's or Queen's, being miscalled. As tracing the White King's Knight, we have at home on  $\frac{7}{6} - \frac{3}{3} = \frac{6}{3} = 5 - 5 = 8 \frac{4}{1} = 10 - \frac{6}{2} = 13 \frac{1}{4} = 19 - 6 = 28$   $\frac{3}{4} = 29 - 5 = 34 - \frac{7}{3} = 35 - \frac{8}{2} = 41 - \frac{6}{1} = 44 - \frac{5}{2}$

when he at last yields to the Rook, with the satisfaction of having survived nearly all his brethren.

If the person, recording a game or copying one, is hurried, it will be simpler to surround the figure intended to be large, by a circle.

A style very similar to the one under consideration, may be examined in connexion, the difference consisting in numbering the rank nearest the player of the White men from the left to the right. A short part of a game is here presented in both this and what has been called the Germano-American Notation.

WHITE.			BLACK.		
G. A.			G. A.		
1. e2-e4	5	3	e7-e5	5	4
2. g1-f3	7	6	b8-c6	2	5
3. f1-e4	6	3	f7-f5	6	4
4. d2-d4	4	4	f5-e4	6	3
5. f3-e5	6	4	c6-e5	3	5
6. d4-e5	4	5	d7-d6	4	5
7. e5-d6	5	5	d8-d6	4	5
8. d1-e2	4	1	g8-f6	7	6

NEW YORK, October, 1857.

ROBERT J. DODGE.

### III.

#### TO THE SECRETARY OF THE NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS.

As the subject of Chess Notation is occupying the attention of the Chess Congress, I desire to submit the remarks which follow, and the scheme annexed, as it may have some interest among matters and propositions of a similar kind. It is proper to premise that what follows was written out, and the method was applied to exemplifying games, several months ago.

The various systems of notation may be resolved into methods of naming the squares. The names of all the other squares are derived from those of the first rank, and as these are taken from the King and Queen, the designations of every square of the board, dependulti-

mately upon those two royal Pieces. Hence, every square has two names,—one on the part of the White King and Queen, and the other relating to the opposite colour.

In looking at the different modes of notation we recognize a marked disposition to designate by counting—the squares are numbered in some established series. The sound philosophical cause of this tendency, we may here pass over, and we may almost assume, *a priori*, that the most general form of expression will finally be adopted. The tendency hitherto agrees with the antecedent presumption, and both announce that Chess Notation will determine its form as numeral, and its numeral form as cardinal.

The existing English system of notation is not pure in character, but allows the employment of symbols of operation—such as when a piece “takes,” “interposes,” “checks,” &c. If its superiority may be inferred from the fact of its adoption, we may discover a property which it possesses in the fact that it names the squares in accordance with the directions of the lines on the board. Its names are, obviously, based upon the ranks and files of the chess-board. But this system is a combination of *two* kinds of lines, which are relatively opposed the one to the other. Now the board offers another kind of line, which permits a unity in the mode of counting the squares, and avoids the clumsy consequence of a double name for a single thing.

The other kind of line—as the reader will have anticipated—is the *diagonal*, and a method of notation is easily based upon it as follows: The diagonal lines, counted from left to right, or from right to left, are *fifteen*, or thirty, in all. But, one way is sufficient, and taken in relation to one of the players, is enough. Let, then, the method of counting diagonals, proceed from *White's* side, and begin at his *right*. His right hand corner square is 1, the left corner square is 8, and its opposite corner square, *i. e.*, Queen's Rook's eighth square, is 15. The other squares along these two lines fill up the intermediate numbers. The foregoing basis squares of the system, which number the diagonals, may be expressed by co-efficient numbers, and the others which are related to them, may be put as indices. According to this, we should write K. R.'s 2nd sqr.  $2^2$ , his third,  $3^3$ , his eighth would be  $8^8$ : King's eighth would be  $11^5$ , &c., &c., all of which is seen at once, almost without the aid of a diagram, or chess-board.

It is apparent that a system may be complete, when the *squares* only are denoted; in such a case the piece to be moved is implied by designating its square. In fact the name, or number, of the first square,

serves as a name of the piece which occupies it. This, however, is somewhat too indirect, and there seems some reason and necessity for mentioning, in the system, the names of the chess-men as well as the squares of the board. If this be just, it will then be found requisite to generalize the names of the pieces as well as those of the squares. As to the pawns, they could be left to the general provision of stating the numbers of the two squares affected by their move. *Castling* could be expressed perfectly by stating the moves of the two pieces which compose it, and the promotion of pawn could be indicated in a similar manner. In an advanced system we may anticipate the elimination of that whole class of records which, in signifying the effect of a move, mentions *two* things where *one* would suffice—whether they relate to the taking of a piece, the covering or uncovering a check, the giving direct check, or check-mate.

At once the most simple and general mode of putting the piece in the record, is to employ its natural symbol—as now on chess diagrams. The needed changes for contradistinction's sake are most readily effected. As one method, for an example, to distinguish the King's Knight from the Queen, let the horse's head be turned contrary ways; upon the King's Bishop's mitre engrave a Latin cross, and a Greek cross upon the Queen's; and let the turret of the Queen's Rook be dovetailed, while the King's is embattled. By any of a multitude of such modes, the due distinction can be reached. The result of all would be to render the record of chess play as general as the knowledge of the game itself. And apparently this is the proper end in view, unless facility and clearness be found to be incompatible with it.

As a scarcely-needed illustration of the method, I add a little game of Greco's, using the usual contractions for the names of the pieces.

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P — 7 <sup>4</sup>	1. P — 8 <sup>6</sup>
2. Kt — 5 <sup>3</sup>	2. P — 10 <sup>4</sup>
3. B — 9 <sup>3</sup>	3. B — 5 <sup>4</sup>
4. P — 3 <sup>3</sup>	4. B — 5 <sup>3</sup>
5. Q — 5 <sup>3</sup>	5. Q — 8 <sup>6</sup>
6. Q — 9 <sup>2</sup>	6. P — 12 <sup>2</sup>
7. Kt — 8 <sup>3</sup>	7. Kt — 10 <sup>5</sup>
8. Kt — 11 <sup>2</sup>	8. Kt — 13
9. Q — 11	9. Kt — 10 <sup>3</sup>

White gives mate in two moves.

YORKVILLE, October 15th, 1857.

JAMES MUNROE.

[In addition to the above, a petition, signed by all the chess-editors of New York, by a large number of the members of the New York Cl<sup>t</sup>b, and by several leading amateurs from different parts of the country, was laid before the Congress, requesting that body to give its influence in favor of the system of notation invented by Stamma, and now known as the Continental or German method. It was referred to the Committee on the Code.

Letters regretting their inability to attend the Congress were received, among others, from Mr. James Morgan, and Mr. J. S. Turner, of Chicago, Ill.; Mr. W. W. Montgomery, of Augusta, Geo.; Mr. Ernest Morphy, of Quincy, Ill.; Mr. G. N. Cheney, of Syracuse, N. Y.; Mr. J. A. Potter, of Salem, Mass.; Mr. W. G. Thomas, of Philadelphia; Professor H. R. Agnel; of West Point, N. Y.; Mr. T. Loyd, and Mr. S. Loyd, of Florence, N. J.; Mr. E. J. Weller, of Boston; and Mr. J. Ferguson, of Lockport, N. Y.]

## CHAPTER VI.

### GAMES IN THE GRAND TOURNAMENT.

#### FIRST SECTION.

##### C O M B A T A N T S .

MORPHY AND THOMPSON,  
KENNICOTT AND RAPHAEL,  
MONTGOMERY AND ALLISON,  
MEEK AND FULLER,

FISKE AND MARACHE,  
LICHENHEIN AND STANLEY,  
PAULSEN AND CALTHROP,  
PERRIN AND KNOTT.

#### GAME I.—GIUOCO PIANO.

*First Game between MORPHY and THOMPSON.*

Thompson.\*

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.†
7. P. to Q. B. 3d.
8. P. to K. R. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
10. Q. to Q. B. 2d.‡

Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.†
5. P. to K. R. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. Castles.
8. K. to R. sq.
9. K. Kt. to R. 2d.
10. P. to K. B. 4th.

\* In all the games in this book the first player is supposed to use the White pieces.

† This is, perhaps, a little better than the usual move of 4. P. to Q. 3d.

‡ A manœuvre first introduced by Mr. Stanley.

§ He played this with the idea of preventing Black's move of 10. P. to K. B. 4th; White probably overlooked the move of 11. P. to Q. 4th.

## Thompson.

11. K. P. takes P.
12. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
13. Q. P. takes P.
14. K. Kt. to Kt. sq.
15. Q. B. to K. 3d.
16. K. to K. 2d.
17. B. P. takes B.
18. Q. Kt. takes K. P
19. Q. takes Q. Kt.
20. K. to Q. sq.
21. Q. to K. 2d.

## Morphy.

11. P. to Q. 4th.
12. P. to K. 5th.
13. Q. P. takes P.
14. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
15. Q. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)
16. K. B. takes Q. B.
17. Q. to K. R. 5th.
18. Q. takes Q. Kt.
19. Q. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
20. Q. B. takes B. P.
21. Q. takes K. R.

And White resigns.\*

---

## GAME II.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Second Game between MORPHY and THOMPSON.*

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
9. K. P. takes P.
10. Q. Kt. takes P.
11. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt. (ch.)
12. P. to Q. B. 3d.
13. Castles.
14. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
15. Q. R. to Q. sq.

## Thompson.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. B. P. takes P.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. B. to K. 2d.
6. P. to K. R. 3d.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. Q. B. to Q. 2d.†
9. K. P. takes P.
10. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
12. Castles.
13. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
14. K. R. to K. sq.
15. K. R. to K. 5th.

\* The time occupied in playing this game was one hour.

† This loses a Pawn. The only way to avoid this loss was to play 8. Q. to Q. 3d; White would probably have played, in that case, 9. P. to K. 5th, with the better game.

## Morphy.

16. K. B. takes Kt.
17. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
18. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
19. B. P. takes B.
20. P. to Q. 5th.
21. B. to Q. B. 5th.
22. B. takes Q.
23. B. to Q. R. 3d.
24. K. R. to K. sq.
25. P. to K. B. 3d.
26. R. takes K. R.
27. P. to Q. 6th.
28. B. to Q. B. 5th.
29. R. to K. 7th.
30. B. takes Kt. P.
31. R. takes B.
32. R. to Q. Kt. 7th.
33. K. to B. 2d.
34. R. takes Q. Kt. P.
35. K. to K. 3d.
36. P. to Q. R. 4th.
37. P. to Q. R. 5th:
38. R. to Q. R. 4th.
39. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
40. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
41. P. to Q. R. 6th.
42. P. to Q. Kt. 6th.
43. P. to Q. Kt. 7th.
44. P. to Q. R. 7th.†
45. K. to B. 4th.
46. P. to R. 8th. (Q.)
47. R. takes R.
48. K. takes B. P.

## Thompson.

16. Q. B. takes K. B.
17. K. B. to K. 4th.
18. K. B. takes Kt.
19. Q. to K. 2d.
20. B. to Q. 2d.
21. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
22. Q. R. takes Q.
23. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
24. P. to K. B. 4th.
25. K. R. takes K. R.
26. R. to Q. 7th.
27. P. to Q. R. 4th.
28. P. to Q. Kt. 5th
29. R. to Q. 4th.
30. R. P. takes B.
31. K. to B. sq.
32. R. to Q. 5th.
33. R. takes Q. P.
34. R. to Q. 7th. (ch.)
35. R. takes K. R. P.\*
36. R. to Q. B. 7th.
37. R. to Q. B. 4th.
38. K. to K. 2d.
39. R. to Q. B. sq.
40. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
41. K. to Q. 2d.
42. K. to B. 3d.
43. K. to Kt. 3d.
44. R. to K. sq. (ch.)
45. K. takes Kt. P.
46. R. takes Q.
47. K. takes R.

And White wins.‡

\* White could well afford to gain time by the sacrifice of this Pawn.

† All this is sure to win in the end.

‡ The time occupied by this game was two hours and fifty minutes.

## GAME III.—GIUOCO PIANO.

*Third Game between MORPHY and THOMPSON.*

Thompson.	Morphy.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.	4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.*	5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to K. R. 3d.	6. Q. B. to K. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.†	7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. K. P. takes P.	8. Q. B. takes Q. P.‡
9. Castles.	9. Castles.
10. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.	10. Q. B. takes K. B.
11. R. P. takes Q. B.	11. P. to K. R. 3d.
12. B. to K. R. 4th.	12. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
13. B. to Kt. 3d.	13. P. to K. 5th.
14. K. Kt. to K. 5th.	14. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
15. B. takes Q. Kt.	15. K. P. takes P.
16. B. takes Kt.	16. Q. takes B.
17. Q. takes Q. P.	17. Q. R. to Q. sq.
18. Q. to Q. B. 2d.	18. K. R. to K. sq.
19. P. to Q. Kt 4th.	19. B. to Kt. 3d.
20. Kt. to Q. R. 3d.	20. Q. to K. B. 5th.
21. Q. R. to Q. sq.	21. P. to Q. B. 3d.
22. Q. R. to Q. 3d.§	22. B. takes B. P. (ch.)
23. K. to R. sq.	23. Q. R. takes Q. R.
24. Q. takes Q. R.	24. R. to K. 6th.
25. Q. to Q. 8th (ch.)	25. K. to Kt. 2d.
26. Q. to Q. 4th (ch.)	26. Q. takes Q.
27. B. P. takes Q.	27. R. to K. 7th.
28. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.	28. R. to K. 8th.

\* Lewis is undecided whether this or 5. P. to Q. 4th be the better move the *Handbuch* says that the centre Pawns obtained by 5. P. to Q. 4th cannot be maintained.

† This seems to lose time; he ought rather to have exchanged Bishops.

‡ 8. K. Kt. takes Q. P. would have been equally good.

§ This is not a good move; Black, however, has already the better game let White play as he may.

## Games in the Grand Tournament.

151

Thompson.

29. R. takes R.
30. Kt. to Q. R. 5th.
31. Kt. takes Kt. P.
32. Kt. to Q. 8th.
33. Kt. to Q. B. 6th.
34. P. takes P.
35. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
36. Kt. to Q. 8th.
37. K. to Kt. 2d.
38. K. to B. 3d.
39. K. to K. 2d.
40. K. to Q. 3d.
41. Kt. to K. B. 7th.
42. K. to Q. B. 2d.\*
43. Kt. to Q. 8th.
44. Kt. to Q. Kt. 7th.
45. Kt. to Q. R. 5th (ch.)
46. Kt. to Q. Kt. 3d.

Morphy.

29. B. takes R.
30. B. takes Kt. P.
31. K. to B. 3d.
32. P. to Q. B. 4th.
33. K. to K. 3d.
34. B. takes P.
35. K. to Q. 4th.
36. P. to K. B. 3d.
37. P. to Q. R. 4th.
38. P. to Q. R. 5th.
39. B. to Q. 5th.
40. B. takes Kt. P.
41. B. to K. 4th.
42. K. to Q. B. 5th.
43. P. to Q. R. 6th.
44. P. to Q. R. 7th.
45. K. to Q. Kt. 5th.
46. K. to Q. R. 6th.

And Mr. MORPHY wins in the First Section.†

---

## GAME IV.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*First Game between KENNICOTT AND RAPHAEL.*

Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Castles.‡

Kennicott.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to Q. 3d.

\* It is evident that he cannot capture the King's Rook's Pawn.

† Time, two hours and a half.

‡ This is less advisable than 5. P. to Q. B. 3d since Black can now retain the Gambit Pawn with safety.

## Raphael.

6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
8. Q. takes Q. P.
9. K. B. takes Q. B.
10. P. to Q. R. 4th.
11. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
12. Q. Kt. to B. 4th.
13. Q. B. to K. 3d.
14. B. takes B.
15. Q. R. to Q. sq.
16. Q. to K. 3d.
17. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
18. R. P. takes P.
19. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
20. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
21. P. to K. B. 4th.
22. K. R. to B. 3d.
23. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
24. B. P. takes P.
25. P. to Q. B. 4th.
26. K. Kt. to B. 2d.
27. P. to K. R. 3d.
28. Q. R. to K. B. sq.

## Kennicott.

6. P. to Q. 6th.\*
7. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.
9. B. P. takes K. B.
10. P. to Q. R. 3d.
11. P. to K. 4th.
12. B. to Q. R. 2d.
13. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
14. Q. R. takes B.
15. K. Kt. to Q. 2d.†
16. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
17. R. P. takes P.
18. Q. Kt. to Kt. sq.
19. P. to K. R. 3d.
20. Castles.
21. Q. to K. 2d.
22. Q. R. to R. 5th.
23. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
24. Q. takes P.
25. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
26. K. R. to K. square.
27. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
28. P. to Q. 4th.‡

\* We should have preferred 6. Q. P. takes B. P. which would probably have led to the following variation :

7. Q. Kt. takes P.
8. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
9. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.

And Black has the better game.

† If

16. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
17. R. P. takes P.
18. Q. Kt. takes K. P., etc.

‡ Well played.

6. Q. P. takes B. P.
7. K. Kt. to K. 2d (best).
8. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. Castles.

15. Castles.
16. R. P. takes P.
17. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.

## Games in the Grand Tournament.

153

Raphael.

29. K. R. to K. B. 5th.\*
30. K. Kt. to Q. 3d.
31. K. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
32. K. Kt. to Kt. 6th.
33. Q. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
34. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
35. K. R. takes Kt.
36. Kt. to K. 7th (ch.)

Kennicott.

29. Q. takes R.
30. Q. to K. 3d.
31. Q. to Q. 2d.
32. Q. Kt. takes K. P.
33. K. R. takes Q. Kt.
34. Q. R. takes B. P.
35. Kt. P. takes R.
36. K. to B. 2d.

And White resigns.†

---

### GAME V.—PETROFF DEFENCE.

*Second Game between KENNICOTT AND RAPHAEL.*

Kennicott

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. takes K. P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. P. to Q. B. 4th.
8. Castles.
9. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
10. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
11. P. to K. B. 4th.
12. Q. B. to K. 3d.
13. P. to Q. 5th.‡
14. Q. to Q. 2d.
15. Q. takes Kt.
16. B. to Q. 4th.
17. B. takes K. B.
18. R. to B. 3d.

Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes K. P.
5. K. B. to K. 2d.
6. P. to K. B. 4th
7. Castles.
8. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. K. Kt. to Kt. 4th.
10. K. B. takes K. Kt.
11. K. B. to K. B. 3d.
12. Kt. to B. 3d.
13. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
14. Kt. takes K. B.
15. K. B. takes Q. Kt. P.
16. K. B. takes Q. R.
17. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
18. Q. to Q. 2d.

\* An unaccountable blunder.

† Time, six and a quarter hours.

‡ This loses the Exchange and a Pawn: 13. Q. to B. 3d was the only means of avoiding the immediate loss of a Pawn.

154 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Kennicott.

19. Kt. to Q. 2d.
20. K. to B. 2d.
21. R. to K. 3d.
22. Q. takes Q.
23. K. takes R.
24. K. to B. 2d.
25. P. to Q. R. 4th.
26. Q. P. takes P.
27. K. to K. 3d.
28. K. to Q. 4th.
29. B. to B. 3d.
30. K. to Q. 5th.
31. K. takes Q. P.
32. K. to Q. 7th.
33. B. takes K. Kt. P.
34. B. to Q. 4th.

Raphael.

19. Q. R. to K. sq.
20. Q. to K. 2d.
21. Q. takes R. (ch.)
22. Q. R. takes Q.
23. R. to K. sq. (ch.)
24. B. to R. 3d.
25. P. to Q. B. 3d.
26. R. to Q. B. sq.
27. R. takes B. P.
28. R. to Q. B. sq
29. K. to B. 2d.
30. B. to Kt. 2d. (ch.)
31. B. takes Kt. P.
32. R. to K. sq.
33. R. to K. 6th.
34. R. to Q. 6th.

And White resigns.\*

GAME VI.—QUEEN'S GAMBIT REFUSED.

*Third Game between KENNICOTT and RAPHAEL.*

Raphael.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
7. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
8. K. B. to K. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. Q. B. takes K. B.
11. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
12. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
13. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
14. B. P. takes P.
15. K. B. to Q. 3d.
16. Q. to Kt. sq.
17. Q. R. takes Q. R.

Kennicott.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to K. 2d.
5. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
7. Castles.
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
9. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
10. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
11. P. to K. B. 4th.
12. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
13. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
14. K. P. takes P.
15. P. to Q. B. 4th.
16. B. P. takes P.
17. B. takes Q. R.

\* Time, two hours and ten minutes.

## Raphael.

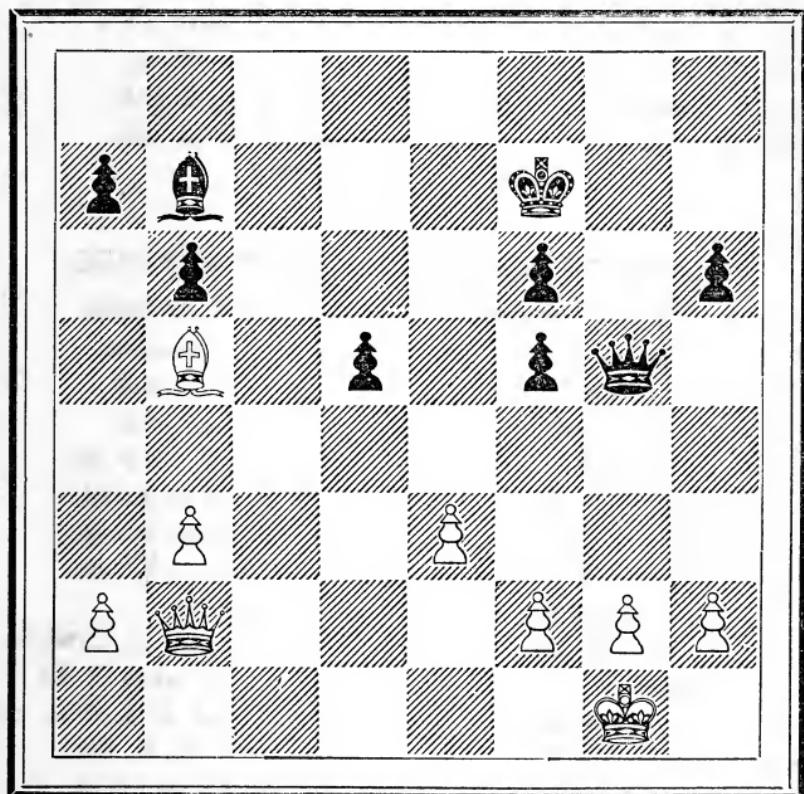
18. Q. B. takes Q. P.
19. R. to Q. B. sq.
20. Q. to Kt. 2d.
21. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
22. Kt. takes K. Kt.
23. R. to Q. B. 7th.
24. Q. B. takes Kt.
25. R. takes R.
26. Q. to Q. 4th.\*

## Kennicott.

18. B. to Kt. 2d.
19. P. to K. R. 3d.
20. R. to B. 2d.
21. K. Kt. to Kt. 4th.
22. Q. takes Kt.
23. Kt. to B. 3d.
24. Kt. P. takes B.
25. K. takes R.
26. Q. to Kt. 5th.

\* White should rather have played 26. Q. to Q. B. 3d. The following is the position of the forces:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

If now White move 26. Q. to Q. B. 3d Black cannot play 26. Q. takes P. (ch.) for

26. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
27. K. takes Q.
28. Q. to Q. B. 6th.
29. B. takes B.

Winning a piece.

26. Q. takes K. Kt. P. (ch.)
27. P. to Q. 5th (ch.)
28. B. takes Q. (ch.)

156 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Raphael.

27. B. to Q. 7th.
28. Q. to Q. R. sq.
29. K. P. takes P.
30. Q. to K. B. sq.
31. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
32. P. to K. R. 3d.
33. K. to R. 2d.
34. Q. to K. 6th.
35. Q. to K. Kt. 4th (ch.)
36. Q. to K. Kt. 6th.
37. B. to B. 5th.
38. K. to Kt. sq.
39. B. takes Q.
40. B. to B. 2d.
41. B. takes Q. P.
42. B. to Q. R. 6th.
43. P. to K. B. 3d.
44. K. to B. 2d.
45. K. to K. 3d.
46. P. to Kt. 4th.
47. P. to R. 4th.
48. P. to Kt. 5th.
49. B. P. takes P.
50. R. P. takes P.
51. P. to B. 4th.
52. P. to B. 5th.
53. P. to Kt. 6th.
54. B. to Q. 3d.
55. B. to Q. B. 4th.
56. P. to Kt. 7th.
57. B. takes B.
58. P. to K. B. 6th.
59. K. to Q. 3d.
60. K. to B. 4th.
61. K. to Kt. 3d.

Kennicott.

27. Q. to K. 7th.
28. P. to K. B. 5th.
29. P. to Q. 5th.
30. Q. takes Q. R. P.
31. K. to Kt. 2d.
32. Q. to Q. R. 8th (ch.)
33. Q. to Q. B. 6th.
34. Q. to Q. B. 4th.
35. K. to R. sq.
36. Q. to K. B. sq.
37. Q. to Kt. 2d.
38. Q. takes Q.
39. B. to Q. 4th.
40. P. to Q. 6th.
41. B. takes Q. Kt. P.
42. K. to Kt. 2d.
43. K. to B. 2d.
44. K. to K. 3d.
45. K. to Q. 3d.
46. B. to K. 3d.
47. B. to B. 2d.
48. B. P. takes P.
49. R. P. takes P.
50. K. to B. 4th.
51. P. to Kt. 4th.
52. P. to Kt. 5th.
53. B. to K. sq.
54. K. to Q. 3d.
55. K. to K. 2d.
56. B. to B. 2d.
57. K. takes B.
58. P. to Q. R. 4th.
59. P. to R. 5th.
60. P. to R. 6th.

And the game was drawn.\*

\* Time, six hours and a half.

## GAME VII.—BISHOP'S GAMBIT.

*Fourth Game between KENNICOTT and RAPHAEL.*

Raphael.	Kennicott.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.	2. P. takes P.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	3. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
4. K. to B. sq.	4. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	5. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
6. P. to K. Kt. 3d.	6. P. takes P.
7. K. to Kt. 2d.	7. Q. to R. 3d.
8. R. P. takes P.	8. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
9. P. to Q. 4th.	9. P. to Q. 3d.
10. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.	11. K. to Q. sq.
12. K. R. to K. sq.	12. P. to Q. B. 3d.
13. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	13. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
14. P. to K. 5th.	14. Q. B. takes K. Kt. (ch.)
15. Q. takes B.	15. P. to Q. 4th.
16. K. B. to Q. 3d.	16. Q. to K. 3d.
17. K. B. to K. B. 5th.	17. Q. to K. 2d.
18. Kt. to Q. R. 4th.	18. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
19. Q. B. to Q. 2d.	19. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
20. Kt. to Q. B. 5th.*	20. Q. Kt. takes Kt.
21. Q. B. to Kt. 4th.	21. B. to B. sq.
22. Q. B. takes Kt.	22. Q. to K. sq.
23. Q. B. to Q. 6th.	23. Kt. to K. 2d.
24. K. B. to R. 3d.	24. B. to Kt. 2d.
25. Q. to R. 3d.	25. P. to Q. R. 4th.
26. Q. to Q. B. 5th.	26. Kt. to Q. B. sq.
27. P. to K. 6th.	27. B. P. takes P.
28. K. R. takes P.	28. Q. to Q. 2d.
29. Q. R. to K. sq.	29. Q. R. to R. 3d.
30. K. R. to K. 8th (ch.)	30. Q. takes K. R.
31. R. takes Q.	31. K. R. takes R.
32. K. B. takes Kt.	32. K. takes B.
33. B. to K. 5th.	33. B. takes B.

\* We should have preferred 26. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.

158 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Raphael.	Kennicott.
34. P. takes B.	34. K. to Kt. 2d.
35. Q. to Q. 6th.	35. K. to Kt. 3d.
36. Q. takes K. R. P.	36. K. R. takes K. P.
37. K. to B. 3d.	37. Q. R. to R. 2d.
38. Q. to Q. 6th.	38. Q. R. to K. 2d.
39. P. to Q. B. 3d.	39. P. to Q. R. 5th.
40. Q. to Q. 8th (ch.)	40. K. to B. 4th.
41. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.	41. R. P. takes P.
42. R. P. takes P.	42. K. R. to K. 5th.
43. Q. to K. R. 8th.	

Black mates in four moves.\*

GAME VIII.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Fifth Game between KENNICOTT and RAPHAEL.*

Kennicott.	Raphael.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.	3. B. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.	5. P. to Q. R. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)	6. K. B. takes Kt.
7. Q. takes K. B.	7. Q. to K. 2d.
8. P. to K. 5th.	8. P. to K. B. 3d.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.	9. B. P. takes P.
10. Q. to Q. B. 7th.†	10. P. to Q. 4th.
11. Q. takes Q. (ch.)	11. K. Kt. takes Q.
12. B. P. takes P.	12. Q. Kt. takes P.
13. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.	13. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
14. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.	14. K. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
15. Kt. to Q. 2d.	15. Castles.
16. K. B. to K. 2d.	16. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
17. P. to Q. B. 3d.	17. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
18. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.	18. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.

\* Time, five hours and ten minutes.

† If 10. B. P. takes P. Black would play 11. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.) etc.

## Kennicott.

19. K. B. to B. 3d.
20. K. to K. 2d.
21. K. to K. 3d.
22. Kt. P. takes Kt.
23. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
24. P. takes P.

## Raphael.

19. K. Kt. to K. 4th.
20. Q. Kt. to B. 5th (ch).
21. K. Kt. takes B.
22. P. to K. 4th.
23. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
24. P. to Q. 5th (ch.)

And Black wins.\*

---

## GAME IX.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Sixth Game between KENNICOTT and RAPHAEL.*

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. P. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. 4th.
6. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
7. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
8. B. P. takes P.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. K. B. to K. 2d.
11. K. Kt. takes K. B.
12. Q. takes P.
13. Castles (K. R.)
14. Q. to K. B. 4th.
15. Q. takes Q.
16. P. to K. B. 4th.
17. Kt. to Q. 5th.
18. P. to K. R. 3d.
19. B. to Q. B. 4th.
20. Kt. to K. 7th (ch.)
21. B. takes B. (ch.)
22. K. R. to K. sq. (ch.)
23. K. R. to K. 5th.

## Kennicott.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. P. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. B. to K. 2d.
7. K. B. takes Q. B.
8. Q. takes P.
9. Q. to K. 3d (ch.)
10. K. B. takes P.
11. P. takes K. Kt.
12. Castles.
13. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
14. Q. to K. 4th.
15. Kt. takes Q.
16. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
17. P. to K. B. 4th.
18. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
19. B. to K. 3d.
20. K. to B. 2d.
21. K. takes B.
22. K. to B. 2d.
23. P. to K. Kt. 3d.

\* Time, one hour and forty minutes.

160 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Raphael.

24. Kt. to Q. 5th.
25. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
26. R. P. takes P.
27. Q. R. to K. sq.
28. K. R. takes K. R.
29. R. takes R.
30. K. to B. 2d.
31. K. to B. 3d.
32. Kt. to K. 3d.
33. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
34. Kt. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
35. Kt. to K. 5th.
36. K. to K. 4th.
37. P. to Q. R. 3d.
38. Kt. to Q. 3d.
39. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
40. P. to Q. R. 4th.
41. K. to B. 3d.
42. Kt. to K. 5th.
43. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
44. Kt. to Q. 7th (ch.)
45. Kt. to K. B. 8th.
46. Kt. takes R. P.
47. Kt. to K. B. 8th.
48. Kt. takes P.†
49. P. to K. B. 5th.
50. K. to Kt. 4th.
51. K. takes Kt.
52. P. to K. Kt. 6th.
53. P. to Kt. 7th.
54. P. to Kt. 8th (Q.)

Kennicott.

24. Kt. to Kt. sq
25. B. P. takes P.
26. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
27. K. R. to K. sq.
28. Q. R. takes K. R.
29. K. takes R.
30. K. to Q. 2d.
31. K. to Q. 3d.
32. Kt. to B. 3d.
33. Kt. to Q. 4th.
34. K. to B. 4th.
35. K. to Q. 3d.
36. K. to K. 3d.
37. Kt. to K. 2d.
38. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
39. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
40. Kt. to Q. 3d (ch.)
41. K. to Q. 4th.
42. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
43. K. to B. 4th.\*
44. K. to Q. Kt. 5th.
45. K. takes R. P.
46. K. takes Kt. P.
47. Kt. to K. 2d.
48. Kt. takes Kt.
49. Kt. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
50. Kt. takes P.
51. P. to Q. R. 4th.
52. P. to R. 5th.
53. P. to R. 6th.

And Dr. RAPHAEL wins in the First Section.‡

\* This loses a game which should have been drawn.

† From this point White proceeds to finish the game with a good deal of spirit.

‡ Time, four hours.

## GAME X.—GIUOCO PIANO.

*First Game between MONTGOMERY and ALLISON.*

Allison.	Montgomery.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.	4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.	5. Castles.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.*	6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. K. P. takes P.	7. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
8. Castles.	8. K. to R. sq.
9. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.	9. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.	10. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
11. K. Kt. takes K. P.	11. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
12. Q. to K. R. 5th.	12. Q. B. to K. 3d.
13. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt. (ch.)	13. B. P. takes Kt.
14. Q. to K. 5th.	14. Q. to Q. 2d.
15. Q. B. to K. R. 6th.	15. K. R. to B. 3d.
16. Q. B. to K. 3d.	16. Kt. takes Q. B.
17. B. P. takes Kt.	17. K. R. takes K. R. (ch.)
18. K. takes R.	18. Q. B. takes B.
19. Q. P. takes Q. B.	19. Q. to Q. 6th (ch.)
20. K. to K. sq.	20. R. to K. B. sq.†

And White resigns.‡

## GAME XI.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Second Game between MONTGOMERY and ALLISON.*

Montgomery.	Allison.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.	3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

\* Too tame; he should have Castled instead.

† The whole termination is conducted with vigor and accuracy by the second player.

‡ Time, two hours.

# 162 Games in the Grand Tournament.

## Montgomery.

5. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.\*
6. K. Kt. takes B. P.
7. K. B. takes K. Kt. (ch.)
8. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
9. Q. takes K. B.
10. Q. to Q. R. 3d.
11. Castles.
12. Kt. to Q. 2d.
13. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
14. Q. to Q. 3d.
15. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
16. Kt. takes Q. P.
17. Kt. takes Kt.‡
18. Kt. takes Q.
19. B. P. takes P.
20. B. to Kt. 2d (ch.)
21. P. to K. R. 3d.
22. K. R. to K. sq.
23. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
24. Q. R. to Q. B. 6th.
25. K. R. to Q. B. sq.
26. K. R. to Q. B. 2d.
27. Q. R. takes Q. R.
28. P. to K. B. 4th.
29. K. to B. 2d.
30. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
31. R. to K. 2d (ch.)
32. B. to K. 5th.
33. K. to K. 3d.
34. K. to Q. 4th.
35. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
36. P. to Q. R. 3d.
37. R. to K. B. 2d.
38. K. to B. 3d.

## Allison.

5. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
6. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
7. K. takes K. B.
8. P. to Kt. 3d.
9. P. to Q. 3d.
10. P. to Q. R. 3d.†
11. K. R. to K. sq.
12. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
13. K. to Kt. 2d.
14. B. to K. 3d.
15. P. to Q. 4th.
16. Q. P. takes P.
17. P. takes Q.
18. Q. R. takes Kt.
19. Q. R. takes P.
20. K. to Kt. sq.
21. K. R. to Q. sq.
22. K. to B. 2d.
23. K. R. to Q. 2d.
24. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
25. Q. R. to Q. 7th.
26. Q. R. takes K. R.
27. B. to Q. 4th.
28. P. to Q. B. 3d.
29. K. to K. 3d.
30. R. to K. B. 2d.
31. K. to Q. 2d.
32. P. to Q. B. 4th.
33. P. to Q. B. 5th.
34. K. to Q. B. 3d.
35. P. to Q. R. 4th.
36. P. to Q. R. 5th.
37. B. to K. R. 8th.
38. R. to Q. 2d.

\* The best analysts consider this attack slightly weaker than the move of  
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.

† He should have played Rook to King's square.

‡ 17. Kt. takes B. (ch.) followed by 18. Q. to K. R. 3d would have been better chess.

## Montgomery.

39. B. to Q. 4th.\*
40. P. to K. B. 5th.
41. R. takes P.†
42. B. to K. 5th.
43. R. to B. 6th (ch.)
44. B. to K. B. 4th.
45. R. to Q. Kt. 6th.
46. B. to K. R. 2d.
47. P. to K. R. 4th.
48. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
49. K. to Q. 4th.‡
50. P. to K. R. 5th.
51. K. to Q. B. 5th.
52. B. to K. 5th.
53. R. to Q. 3d.
54. K. takes R.
55. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
56. K. to Q. B. 5th.
57. B. to Q. B. sq.
58. K. to Q. 6th.
59. K. to K. 5th.

## Allison.

39. R. to K. 2d.
40. Kt. P. takes P.
41. B. to Q. 4th.
42. B. to K. 5th.
43. K. to Q. 4th.
44. B. to Kt. 3d.
45. K. to K. 5th.
46. B. to K. sq.
47. K. to B. 6th.
48. R. to K. 6th (ch.)
49. R. takes R. P.
50. R. to Q. 6th (ch.)
51. P. to Q. B. 6th.
52. K. to K. 5th.
53. R. takes R.
54. P. to B. 7th.
55. B. takes R. P.
56. B. to K. 7th.
57. B. to Q. B. 5th.
58. K. to Q. 6th.
59. K. to K. 7th.

And White resigned.§

---

## GAME XII.—GIUOCO PIANO.

*Third Game between MONTGOMERY and ALLISON.*

## Allison.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

## Montgomery.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

\* It would not answer to allow Black to post his Rook at Queen's sixth; and if he had played 39. R. to Q. 2d, Black's proper policy would have been, not to exchange Rooks, but to move 39. R. to Q. 4th.

† 41. P. takes P. was assuredly preferable; for White might have followed it up with the advance of the Pawn to Bishop's sixth, where it would have been supported both by the Rook and Bishop.

‡ If 49. K. to Kt. 2d Black could play 49. P. to Q. B. 6th winning immediately.

§ Time, three hours and a quarter.

## Allison.

3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. Castles.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. P. to Q. R. 4th.
8. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
9. P. to Q. R. 5th.
10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. P. to K. R. 3d.
12. K. to R. sq.\*
13. K. P. takes P.
14. K. Kt. takes K. P.
15. Q. takes B. P.
16. Q. to K. B. 4th.
17. Q. to K. R. 2d.
18. Q. takes Kt.
19. Q. to K. 2d.
20. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
21. P. to K. B. 3d.
22. K. R. to K. B. 2d.†
23. Q. to Q. 2d.

## Montgomery.

3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to K. R. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. P. to Q. R. 3d.
8. K. B. to Q. R. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
11. P. to Q. B. 3d.
12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. B. P. takes P.
14. P. takes K. B.
15. Q. B. to K. 3d.
16. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
17. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
18. K. B. to Q. Kt. sq.
19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. Q. to Q. 2d.
21. Kt. to K. R. 4th.
22. Q. B. to Q. Kt. 6th.
23. K. B. to K. B. 5th.‡

And White resigned.§

## GAME XIII.—EVANS GAMBIT.

*Fourth Game between MONTGOMERY and ALLISON.*

## Montgomery.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

## Allison.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

\* White seems to play this game with uniform weakness throughout. This move loses a piece at once; he should have advanced 12. P. to Q. 4th.

† This is immediately fatal; 22. K. R. to K. sq. would have been vastly better, but in any case Black's attack and extra piece must have won in the end.

‡ Black's last half-dozen moves could hardly be improved.

§ Time, one hour.

Montgomery.

3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. B. P. takes P.
9. P. to Q. 5th.
10. P. to K. 5th.
11. Q. to Q. R. 4th (ch.)
12. Q. takes Q. Kt.
13. P. to K. 6th.
14. Q. P. takes P.
15. B. to K. Kt. 5th.†
16. Q. to K. R. 4th.‡
17. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.

Allison.

3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to Q. R. 4th.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. K. P. takes P.
8. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.\*
10. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
11. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
12. Kt. to K. 2d.
13. B. P. takes P.
14. Q. B. to B. 3d.
15. Castles.‡
16. K. R. to K. sq.
17. P. to K. R. 3d.||

\* Not a good move, although frequently adopted at this point by M'Donnell in his games with La Bourdonnais. Black's play was to retreat his Queen's Knight to King's second.

† 15. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th strikes us as preferable. The move in the text afforded Black an opportunity (which he very injudiciously neglected) of exchanging his Queen's Bishop for White's King's Knight.

‡ He should have taken off the King's Knight, thus—

16. Kt. P. takes B.
17. Q. to K. R. 4th (best).
18. B. takes Kt. (A.)
19. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
20. Q. takes K. R. P.

and Black has a fine game.

15. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
16. P. to K. R. 3d.
17. K. R. to Kt. sq.
18. Q. takes B.
19. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
20. Castles.

A.

18. B. to Q. 2d.  
and Black's game is good.

§ From this point to the end the first player conducts the attack with great vigor and determination.

|| Black seems to have no better move on the board; 17. Q. B. to Q. Kt. 4th would simply advance his adversary's game, while the capture of the King's Knight would now be utterly useless.

## Montgomery.

18. K. R. to K. sq.\*
19. K. Kt. takes P.
20. Q. to K. R. 7th (ch.)
21. Q. to K. R. 8th (ch.)
22. P. to K. 7th (ch.)
23. K. R. takes K. R.
24. Q. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
25. Q. takes Kt. ch.
26. R. to K. sq.
27. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
28. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
29. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
30. R. to K. 6th (ch.)

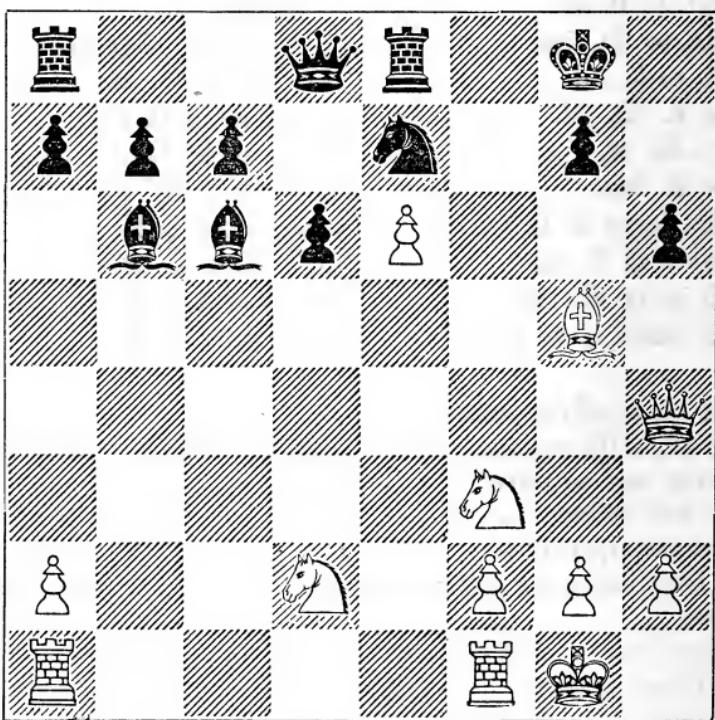
## Allison.

18. R. P. takes B.
19. Q. to Q. B. sq.
20. K. to B. sq.
21. Kt. to Kt. sq.
22. K. R. takes P.
23. K. takes K. R.
24. K. to Q. sq.
25. Q. B. to K. sq.
26. K. to Q. 2d.
27. K. to Q. B. 3d.
28. K. B. to B. 4th.
29. P. takes Q. Kt.

And Mr. MONTGOMERY wins in the First Section.

\* We give a diagram of the position previous to this move, by which the reader will see that White made the proper play at this point.

BLACK.



WHITE.

## GAME XIV.—QUEEN'S BISHOP'S PAWN'S OPENING.

*First Game between MEEK and FULLER.*

## Meek.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 3d.\*
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. P. takes P.
5. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
6. Q. takes K. Kt. P.
7. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
8. K. P. takes P.
9. Q. to K. Kt. 8th (ch.)
10. K. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
12. Q. R. to K. sq. (ch.)
13. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.||
14. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
15. Q. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
16. Q. B. to K. 3d.
17. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
18. K. to Kt. sq.
19. Q. to K. 5th.
20. Q. Kt. takes R. P. (ch.)
21. Q. takes Q. B. (ch.)
22. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
23. K. B. takes Q. R. (ch.)

## Fuller.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.†
3. K. Kt. takes K. P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.‡
5. K. Kt. takes K. B. P.
6. K. R. to K. B. sq.
7. P. to K. B. 3d.
8. K. R. to B. 2d.§
9. K. B. to B. sq.
10. P. to Q. 4th.
11. Q. to Q. 3d
12. Q. B. to K. 3d.
13. Kt. to Q. 2d.
14. Castles.
15. Q. to Kt. 3d (ch.)
16. P. to Q. B. 4th.
17. Kt. takes B. P.
18. Kt. to K. 5th.
19. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
20. Q. takes Q. Kt.
21. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
22. B. takes Q. B. P.
23. R. takes K. B.

\* A safe but not attacking opening.

† 2. P. to Q. 4th is the strongest reply at Black's command. The move in the text, however, may be played without disadvantage.

‡ He should have advanced his Queen's Pawn two squares, and the position would have been quite even.

§ This was not making the best of a bad position, but Black's game was past redemption.

|| The *coup juste* was to bring out the King's Knight to Bishop's third, and on the Black Queen checking at Knight's third (the move anticipated by White, we presume, when he threw forward his Queen's Knight's Pawn) to move Knight to Queen's fourth with a forced won game.

Meek.

24. Kt. to K. 5th.
25. Q. takes B.
26. Q. R. to R. sq.

Fuller.

24. B. takes Kt.
25. Q. takes Q. R. P.

And Black resigns.\*

---

### GAME XV.—KING'S KNIGHT'S GAMBIT.

*Third Game between MEEK and FULLER.*

Meek.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. Castles.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.†
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.
9. K. B. takes Q. B.
10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. Q. takes K. P. (ch.)
12. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
13. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
14. Q. Kt. to B. 4th.
15. P. to K. R. 3d.
16. P. to K. 5th.
17. K. Kt. takes K. P.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
19. K. Kt. to Q. B. 6th (ch.)
20. B. to Q. R. 3d.
21. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.

Fuller.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
4. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. Q. B. to K. 3d.†
7. P. to K. R. 3d.
8. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
9. B. P. takes B.
10. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. Q. to K. 2d.
12. K. takes Q.
13. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
14. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
15. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
16. Q. P. takes P.
17. K. R. to K. sq.
18. K. to Q. sq.
19. K. to Q. B. sq.
20. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
21. K. to Kt. 2d.

\* Time, one hour. The second game between these players was not recorded. It was won by Judge Meek.

† 6. P. to K. R. 3d, the move recommended by all the leading authors, would have been far preferable.

‡ White neglects to profit by his adversary's mistake. His proper course was to exchange Bishops, then advance Pawn to Queen's Bishop's third, and follow with Queen to Knight's third, having an excellent game.

# Games in the Grand Tournament. 169

Meek.

22. K. Kt. to Kt. 4th.
23. B. P. takes B.
24. Kt. to K. 5th.\*
25. P. takes Q. Kt.
26. B. to B. 3d.
27. B. takes Kt.
28. Q. R. to Q. sq.
29. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
30. K. R. to Q. sq.
31. K. R. takes K. R.
32. K. to B. 2d.
33. K. to B. 3d.
34. R. to K. 2d.
35. R. P. takes P.
36. K. to B. 2d.
37. K. takes R.
38. K. to Q. 3d.
39. P. to Q. R. 4th.
40. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
41. Kt. P. takes P.

Fuller.

22. B. takes Q. P. (ch.)
23. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
24. Q. Kt. takes Kt.
25. Kt. to Q. 6th.
26. Kt. takes K. P.
27. K. R. takes B.
28. Q. R. to K. sq.
29. K. R. to K. 7th.
30. K. R. to K. 8th (ch.)
31. Q. R. takes K. R. (ch.)
32. R. to K. 3d.
33. P. to K. R. 4th.
34. P. to Kt. 5th (ch.)
35. R. P. takes P. (ch.)
36. R. takes R. (ch.)
37. K. to B. 3d.
38. K. to Q. 4th.
39. K. to K. 4th.
40. P. to B. 6th.
41. Kt. P. takes P.

And Black wins.†

---

## GAME XVI.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Fourth Game between MEEK and FULLER.*

Meek.‡

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. to K. 5th.
4. P. to K. B. 4th.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.

Fuller.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. to Q. B. 4th.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. Q. to Kt. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to R. 3d.

\* Had White reflected for one moment, he surely would not have committed so glaring an error.

† Time, one hour and a half.

‡ We do not understand how one of the players retains the first move through the whole of these games (XIV. to XVII.), but we follow the record.

## Meek.

7. Q. to Kt. 3d.
8. Q. takes Q.
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
10. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
11. B. P. takes K. Kt.
12. K. B. takes Kt.<sup>†</sup>
13. B. to Q. 2d.
14. B. to B. 3d.
15. Castles.
16. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
17. R. P. takes P.
18. B. takes Q. R.
19. B. to B. 3d.
20. Kt. takes K. B.
21. R. to Q. R. sq.
22. R. to R. 7th.
23. R. takes B.
24. R. to Kt. 7th.

## Fuller.

7. K. Kt. to B. 4th.\*
8. R. P. takes Q.
9. B. P. takes P.
10. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
12. Kt. P. takes B.
13. P. to Q. B. 4th.
14. P. to Q. B. 5th.
15. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
16. B. P. takes P. (in pas.)‡
17. Q. R. takes Q. R.
18. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
19. K. B. takes B.
20. Castles.
21. R. to Q. B. sq.
22. R. takes Kt.
23. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
24. R. takes Kt. P.

And Black ultimately won.§

## GAME XVII.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Fifth Game between MEEK and FULLER.*

## Meek.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.

## Fuller.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.

\* Black should have made an exchange of Queens and Pawns, in order to leave his antagonist with two doubled and isolated Pawns on the Queen's Knight's file.

† The only move to avoid the loss of a Pawn, for if White play 12. Q. B. to K. 3d Black follows with 12. Kt. takes K. P.

‡ The necessity of Black's thus getting rid of his passed Pawn is not at all obvious. We willingly confess that we cannot fathom the object of a manœuvre so singular.

§ Time, half an hour.

## Meek.

4. P. to Q. B. 3d.\*
5. P. to K. 5th.
6. B. P. takes P.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th
8. Castles.
9. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
10. K. Kt. takes K. P.
11. K. R. to K. sq.
12. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
13. B. to K. 3d.
14. Q. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
15. Q. Kt. to Q. R. 7th (ch.)

## Fuller.

4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.†
5. Q. to K. 2d.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
8. Q. P. takes P.
9. Q. B. takes K. B.
10. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
11. Q. B. to K. 3d.
12. Castles.
13. Kt. to Q. 4th.
14. P. to Q. R. 3d.‡

And Judge MEEK wins in the First Section.§

## GAME XVIII.—SICILIAN OPENING

*First Game between FISKE and MARACHE.*

## Marache.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. Castles.
8. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. K. to R. sq.
10. K. P. takes P.
11. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
12. P. to Q. B. 3d.
13. Q. Kt. takes K. B.||

## Fiske.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. B. P. takes P.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
7. Castles.
8. P. to K. R. 3d.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. K. Kt. takes P.
11. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. Kt. P. takes Q. Kt.

\* This method of conducting the Scotch Gambit is very seldom adopted.

† 4. P. takes B. P. was probably the best move at his command.

‡ White must now win Queen. § Time, half an hour.

|| Injudicious, we think; the three united Pawns must soon become powerful.

172 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Marache.

14. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
15. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
16. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
17. Kt. to K. 5th.
18. B. P. takes Kt.
19. B. to Q. 3d.
20. Kt. to Q. B. 6th.
21. Kt. takes Kt. (ch.)
22. Q. to Q. B. 6th.
23. Q. P. takes P.
24. Q. R. to K. sq.
25. Q. takes Q. P.
26. Q. to K. 4th.
27. Q. to K. R. 7th (ch.)
28. Q. R. to K. 3d.
29. Q. R. to B. 3d. (ch.)
30. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
31. Q. R. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
32. Q. R. to Kt. 8th.
33. P. to K. B. 4th. .
34. Q. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
35. B. to K. 4th.
36. B. to Q. 3d.
37. Q. to K. 4th.
38. Q. R. takes B. (ch.)
39. Q. takes K. R. (ch.)
40. Q. to K. 4th.
41. P. to K. R. 3d.
42. Q. to Q. Kt. 4th (ch.)
43. P. to Q. R. 4th.
44. R. to K. B. 3d.
45. P. to Kt. 4th.†
46. P. to K. B. 5th (ch.)
47. B. P. takes P. (ch.)
48. Q. to K. sq. (ch.)

Fiske.

14. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
15. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
16. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
17. K. Kt. to Q. 5th.
18. K. R. takes Q. B.
19. Q. to Q. sq.\*
20. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
21. Q. takes Kt.
22. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
23. K. R. to Q. Kt. 5th.
24. B. to Q. 2d.
25. K. R. takes Kt. P.
26. Q. takes B. P.
27. K. to B. sq.
28. Q. to Q. 5th.
29. K. to K. 2d.
30. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
31. K. to Q. sq.
32. Q. to K. B. 3d.
33. K. R. to Q. 7th.
34. B. to Q. B. 3d.
35. B. to Q. Kt. 4th.
36. Q. R. to K. B. 2d.
37. B. takes B.
38. K. R. takes Q. R.
39. R. to Q. 2d.
40. K. to K. 2d.
41. Q. to K. B. 4th.
42. K. to B. 2d.
43. K. to Kt. 3d.
44. R. to Q. 6th.
45. Q. to Q. 4th.
46. K. to B. 2d.
47. K. takes P.
48. K. to Q. 2d.

And White resigns.†

\* It will be seen that Black could not take the Queen's Pawn with Rook.

† This loses a game which White ought at least to have drawn.

‡ Time, five hours.

## GAME XIX.—QUEEN'S GAMBIT REFUSED.

*Second Game between FISKE and MARACHE.*

## Fiske.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to K. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.
7. B. P. takes P.
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
9. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
10. Q. to R. 4th.
11. Q. takes R. P.
12. K. B. takes Q. Kt. (ch.)
13. Q. takes Q. R. (ch.)
14. K. Kt. takes Q.
15. Castles.
16. K. R. to Q. sq.
17. P. to K. B. 3d.
18. P. to K. 4th.
19. P. to Q. 5th.
20. B. P. takes P.
21. K. R. to K. sq.
22. P. to K. R. 3d.
23. B. to Q. 2d.
24. K. R. to K. B. sq.
25. Q. R. to K. sq. §
26. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

## Marache.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.\*
7. K. P. takes P.
8. Q. B. to Kt. 2d. †
9. Q. to B. 2d.
10. Q. R. to B. sq.
11. Q. R. to R. sq. ‡
12. Q. takes K. B.
13. Q. B. takes Q.
14. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
15. K. B. to Q. 3d.
16. P. to Q. B. 5th.
17. Castles.
18. Q. P. takes P.
19. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
20. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
21. Kt. to Q. 2d.
22. Q. B. to K. R. 4th.
23. K. B. to K. Kt. 6th.
24. K. B. to Q. 3d.
25. P. to K. B. 3d.
26. Q. B. to Kt. 3d.

\* See a game in the match between Staunton and St. Amant (*Chess Player's Companion*, p. 342), where St. Amant moves this Pawn prematurely.

† 8. Q. B. to Q. 2d, though slightly disadvantageous in other respects, would have saved the Pawn.

‡ St. Amant, in the game alluded to, here played 11. K. B. to K. 2d. By thus moving the Rook Black loses the exchange.

§ 25. B. to K. B. 4th would have been at least as strong.

## Fiske.

27. K. to Kt. 2d.
28. Q. R. to K. 2d.
29. B. to K. B. 4th.
30. K. R. takes K. B.
31. K. R. to B. sq.
32. K. to B. 3d.
33. K. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
34. Q. R. to K. 3d.
35. P. to Q. R. 4th.
36. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
37. K. R. takes P.
38. Q. R. takes Kt.
39. Q. R. to B. 7th (ch.)
40. P. to Q. 6th.
41. P. to Q. 7th.
42. P. to Q. 8th (Q.)

## Marache.

27. R. to K. sq.
28. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
29. K. B. takes B.
30. Kt. to Q. 6th.
31. R. to K. 4th.
32. B. to K. sq.
33. K. to B. 2d.
34. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
35. Kt. takes R. P.
36. B. P. takes P.
37. Kt. takes Kt.
38. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
39. K. to Kt. 3d.
40. B. to K. B. 2d.
41. B. takes K. R.

And White wins.\*

## GAME XX.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Third Game between FISKE and MARACHE.*

## Marache.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. B. 4th.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. K. B. takes B. P.
10. Kt. P. takes K. B.
11. Q. B. to R. 3d.
12. Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.
13. Kt. takes B.
14. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.

## Fiske.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)
6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. B. 4th.†
8. Q. P. takes P.
9. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
10. B. P. takes P.
11. K. R. to K. sq.
12. B. to K. 3d.
13. B. P. takes Kt.
14. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.

\* Time, four hours and a half.

† Weak; he should rather have played 7. Q. B. to K. 3d.

## Marache.

15. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
16. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
17. B. P. takes P.
18. Q. to K. B. 3d.
19. K. B. to Q. 3d.
20. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
21. Q. B. to Q. 6th.
22. K. B. to Q. B. 2d.
23. Q. to Q. 3d.
24. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
25. P. to K. B. 3d.
26. B. to Q. R. 4th.
27. B. takes Q. R.

## Fiske.

15. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 3d.
16. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
17. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
18. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
19. Q. to K. R. 5th.
20. Q. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
21. Q. R. to Kt. 2d.
22. Q. R. to K. B. 2d.
23. K. Kt. to B. 5th.
24. Q. takes Q. B.
25. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
26. K. R. to Q. sq.\*
27. R. takes B.

And White ultimately won.

## GAME XXI.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Fourth Game between FISKE and MARACHE.*

## Fiske.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.
7. Kt. P. takes K. B.
8. K. B. to Q. 3d.
9. Castles.
10. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
11. Kt. to K. R. 4th.
12. P. to K. B. 4th.
13. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
14. Q. R. to K. sq.
15. P. to K. 4th.

## Marache.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
6. K. B. takes Q. Kt. (ch.)
7. Castles.
8. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
11. P. to Q. 3d.
12. Q. to Q. 2d.
13. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
14. K. R. to B. 3d.
15. K. R. to R. 3d.

\* If the position be correctly recorded why did not Black take the Queen's Pawn with Rook?

## Fiske.

16. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
17. P. to K. R. 3d.
18. K. P. takes P.
19. P. to Q. 5th.
20. Q. to K. 2d.\*
21. Q. P. takes P.
22. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
23. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
24. K. B. takes B. P.†
25. Q. to K. 8th.
26. Q. to K. 2d.
27. Q. to K. 7th.

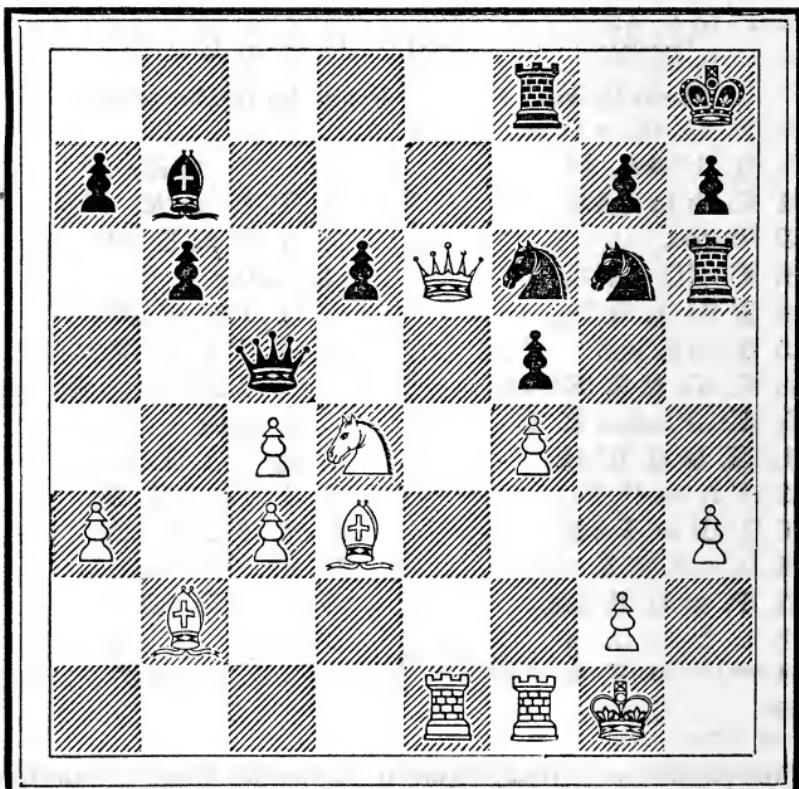
## Marache.

16. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
17. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
18. K. P. takes P.
19. P. to Q. B. 3d.
20. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
21. Q. takes P.
22. Q. to Q. B. 4th.
23. K. to R. sq.
24. K. Kt. to R. 4th.
25. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
26. Q. Kt. to K. R. 5th.
27. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.

\* 20. Q. R. to Q. 6th would have been better, we believe.

† He should have played 20. Q. takes B. P., having the better game, as may be seen from the following diagram

BLACK.



WHITE.

Fiske.	Marache.
28. K. B. to Q. 3d.*	28. B. takes K. Kt. P.
29. K. R. to B. 2d.	29. B. takes R. P.
30. P. to K. B. 5th.	30. K. R. to R. 4th.
31. Q. B. to B. sq.	31. B. takes P.
32. K. B. takes B.	32. Kt. takes B.
33. Q. Kt. takes Kt.	33. K. R. takes Kt.
34. B. to K. 3d.	34. Q. to K. 4th.
35. Q. takes R. P.	35. Q. to Kt. 6th (ch.)

And White resigns.†

---

### GAME XXII.—SICILIAN OPENING.

#### *Fifth Game between FISKE and MARACHE.*

Marache.	Fiske.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. B. P. takes P.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes Q. P.	4. P. to K. 3d.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.	5. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.	6. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
7. Castles.	7. K. B. to K. 2d.
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.	8. Castles.
9. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.	9. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
10. K. to R. sq.	10. K. B. to Q. 3d.‡
11. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.	11. Q. to Kt. sq.
12. K. Kt. takes K. B.	12. Q. takes K. Kt.
13. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.	13. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
14. Q. B. to B. 5th.	14. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
15. Q. B. to Q. 6th.	15. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
16. P. to K. 5th.	16. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
17. Kt. to Q. R. 5th.	17. Q. to Kt. 3d.

\* We are inclined to think that 28. K. B. to Kt. 4th would still have saved the game.

† Time, three hours.

‡ Very bad, bringing with it a chain of immediate disasters, which virtually gave White a won game at the outset.

# 178 Games in the Grand Tournament.

## Marache.

18. K. B. to K. 4th.
19. Q. B. takes R.
20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. B. to Q. B. 2d.
22. Q. to Q. 4th.
23. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
24. K. R. to B. 2d.
25. Q. to Q. 2d.
26. Kt. to Q. 4th.
27. Kt. takes Q. Kt. P.
28. Kt. to Q. 6th.
29. P. to Q. B. 4th.
30. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
31. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
32. Q. R. to K. sq.
33. Q. R. to K. 3d.
34. P. to K. R. 3d.
35. K. to R. 2d.
36. Q. R. to K. 2d.
37. Q. takes Q. Kt.
38. R. takes K. P.
39. P. to Q. B. 5th.
40. P. to Q. R. 4th.
41. P. to R. 5th.
42. P. to Kt. 6th.
43. R. P. takes P.
44. Q. to Q. 2d.
45. Q. to K. 3d.
46. Q. to K. B. 2d.
47. Q. to K. R. 4th.
48. R. to K. B. 2d.
49. Q. takes Q.
50. B. to Q. R. 4th.
51. B. takes B.
52. P. to Kt. 7th.
53. R. to K. 2d.
54. K. to Kt. 3d.
55. K. to B. 4th.
56. R. to K. 3d.

## Fiske.

18. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
19. Q. takes Q. B.
20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. Q. Kt. to Q. 4th.
22. Q. to B. 2d.
23. B. to Kt. 2d.
24. B. to B. 3d.
25. Q. to Q. sq.
26. B. to Kt. 2d.
27. K. Kt. to R. 5th.
28. B. to Q. B. 3d.
29. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
30. K. to R. sq.
31. B. to Q. R. sq.
32. Q. Kt. to Kt. sq.
33. Q. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
34. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
35. Kt. P. takes P.
36. P. to K. B. 6th.
37. P. takes R.
38. Q. to K. 2d.
39. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
40. B. to Q. 4th.
41. Q. to Q. sq.
42. R. P. takes P.
43. Q. to Q. R. sq.
44. Q. to R. 6th.
45. Q. to Kt. 5th.
46. Kt. to K. B. 5th.
47. Q. to Q. 5th.
48. Kt. to K. 7th.
49. Kt. takes Q.
50. B. to Q. B. 3d.
51. Kt. takes B.
52. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
53. K. to Kt. 2d.
54. K. to B. sq.
55. K. to K. 2d.
56. Kt. to Q. R. 4th.

## Marache.

57. R. to K. Kt. 3d.  
 58. K. to Kt. 5th.  
 59. K. to R. 6th.  
 60. R. to Kt. 8th (ch.)

## Fiske.

57. K. to B. sq.  
 58. K. to K. 2d.  
 59. K. to Q. sq.

And Mr. MARACHE wins in the First Section.

---

## GAME XXIII.—GIUOCO PIANO.

*First Game between LICHTENHEIN and STANLEY.*

## Stanley.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.  
 4. P. to Q. 3d.  
 5. P. to K. R. 3d.  
 6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 7. Q. B. to K. 3d.  
 8. Castles.  
 9. K. B. to Kt. 3d.  
 10. Q. to K. 2d.  
 11. K. Kt. to R. 2d.\*  
 12. Q. to Q. 2d.  
 13. R. P. takes B.  
 14. K. P. takes P.  
 15. K. Kt. to Kt. 4th.  
 16. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.  
 17. Q. Kt. takes B.  
 18. B. takes Q. Kt.  
 19. Q. R. to K. sq.

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.  
 4. P. to Q. 3d.  
 5. P. to K. R. 3d.  
 6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 7. K. B. to Kt. 3d.  
 8. Q. B. to K. 3d.  
 9. Castles.  
 10. K. Kt. to R. 2d.  
 11. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.  
 12. Q. B. takes K. B.  
 13. P. to K. B. 4th.  
 14. K. R. takes P.  
 15. Q. to K. R. 5th.  
 16. Q. R. to K. B. sq.  
 17. R. P. takes Q. Kt.  
 18. K. P. takes B.  
 19. Kt. to Kt. 4th.†

\* White appears to weaken his position, and lose time by this move, since it allows his adversary to play at once 11. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.

† Black now threatens to win a Pawn by

21. Kt. P. takes Q.  
 22. K. to Kt. 2d.

20. Q. takes R. P.  
 21. Kt. to K. B. 6th (ch.).  
 22. Kt. takes Q.

and can afterwards extricate his Knight by playing it to King's Bishop's sixth.

180 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Stanley.

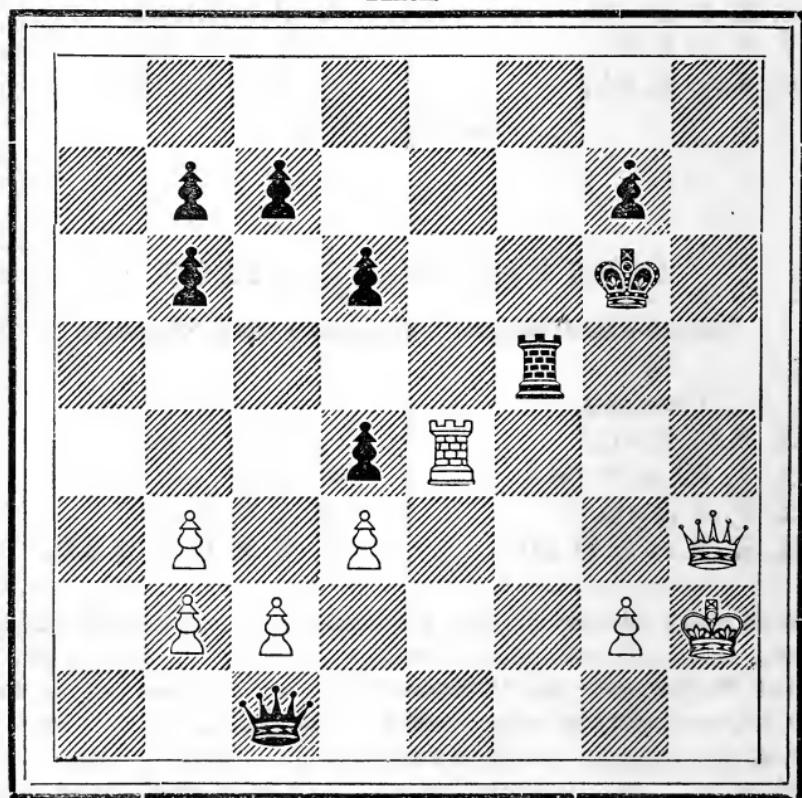
20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. B. P. takes Kt.
22. R. P. takes P.
23. K. R. takes K. R.
24. Q. to K. 2d.
25. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
26. Q. to K. 8th (ch.)
27. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
28. Q. to R. 3d (ch.)
29. R. to K. 4th.
30. K. to R. 2d.
31. R. takes Q. P.\*

Lichtenhein.

20. P. to K. R. 4th.
21. R. P. takes Kt.
22. Q. takes P. at Kt. 5th.
23. Q. takes K. R.
24. Q. takes Kt. P.
25. R. to K. B. 2d.
26. R. to K. B. sq.
27. K. to R. 2d.
28. K. to Kt. 3d.
29. Q. to B. 8th (ch.)
30. R. to K. B. 4th.
31. Q. takes B. P.

\* We think that in this position

BLACK.



WHITE.

White would have done better to check with the Rook at King's sixth, by which he probably could at least have drawn the game.

## Stanley.

32. Q. to K. Kt. 4th (ch.)
33. R. to Q. B. 4th.
34. R. takes Q. B. P.
35. Q. to K. R. 4th (ch.)
36. Q. to K. R. 8th (ch.)
37. R. to K. B. 7th.
38. Q. to K. 8th (ch.)
39. R. takes R.
40. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)
41. Q. takes P.
42. K. to Kt. sq.\*
43. Q. takes Q.
44. K. to B. 2d.
45. K. to B. 3d.
46. K. to Kt. 3d.
47. K. to B. 3d.
48. K. to K. 2d.†

## Lichtenhein.

32. K. to B. 3d.
33. Q. takes Q. P.
34. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
35. K. to K. 4th.
36. R. to K. B. 3d.
37. Q. to K. B. 8th.
38. K. to Q. 4th.
39. Q. takes R.
40. K. to K. 3d.
41. Q. to K. 4th (ch.)
42. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.) †
43. Q. P. takes Q.
44. K. to B. 4th.
45. K. to Kt. 4th.
46. P. to Kt. 3d.
47. K. to R. 5th.
48. K. to Kt. 6th.

And Black wins.§

---

## GAME XXIV.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Second Game between LICHENHEIN and STANLEY.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

## Stanley.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

\* 42. K. to Kt. 3d was certainly preferable, as it prevented the exchange of Queens, and would have made it extremely difficult for Black to win.

† Black, by the hasty play of his adversary, not only thus effects an exchange of Queens, but also unites his two isolated Pawns on the Queen's side. With such an advantage victory was sure to follow sooner or later.

‡ This is bad, but any other move would not have affected the ultimate result. If 48. K. to B. 2d Black finally wins by being able, at the proper time, to gain a move with his Queen's Knight's Pawn.

§ Time, two hours and a half.

## 182 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Lichtenhein.

5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.†
7. Q. to K. R. 5th.‡
8. K. B. takes B. P. (ch.)
9. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
10. K. takes K. B.
11. K. R. to K. B.
12. K. to Kt. sq.
13. B. to K. 3d.
14. Kt. to Q. 2d.
15. Q. R. to K. sq.
16. P. to K. R. 3d.
17. P. to Q. R. 4th.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
19. Kt. takes B. P.
20. Kt. P. takes B.
21. B. to Q. 4th.
22. P. to Q. B. 5th.
23. K. R. takes K. R. (ch.)§
24. R. to Q. sq.

Stanley.

5. P. to Q. 6th. \*
6. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
7. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
8. K. Kt. takes B.
9. K. B. takes B. P. (ch.)
10. Kt. takes K. Kt.
11. Castles.
12. P. to Q. B. 3d.
13. P. to Q. 3d.
14. B. to K. 3d.
15. Q. to Q. 2d.
16. P. to Q. R. 4th.
17. P. to Q. B. 4th.
18. P. to Q. B. 5th.
19. B. takes Kt.
20. Kt. to K. 4th.
21. Q. takes Q. R. P.
22. P. to Q. 7th.
23. Q. R. takes K. R.
24. Kt. to K. B. 6th (ch.)

And Black wins.||

\* Not positively bad, but inferior to the move first suggested by Jænisch, of 5. K. Kt. to B. 3d, reducing the game to a well-known position of the Giuoco Piano. The object of Black's fifth move is to prevent White from uniting his two Pawns in the centre of the board, and by leaving White's Queen's Bishop's Pawn where it now stands, to hinder the movements of the adverse Queen's Knight. He also appears to gain time by this move, for White must capture the Queen's Pawn within a few moves. But, notwithstanding this, we consider the line of play recommended by the distinguished Russian analyst as eminently safer for Black. It has, in fact, rendered the Scotch Gambit a much less popular game for the attack than formerly.

† 6. P. to Q. Kt. 4th, followed by 7. P. to Q. Kt. 5th was the proper play.

‡ If 7. Kt. takes K. B. P.      7. B. takes K. B. P. (ch.)  
 8. K. takes B.      8. Kt. takes Kt.  
 9. B. takes Kt. (ch.)      9. K. takes B.

White may now move 10. R. to K. B. sq., or 10. Q. takes P., with an even game. If he play 10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d (ch.) Black replies 10. K. to Kt. 3d, with a superior game.

§ 23. Q. R. to Q. sq. was the proper play.

|| Time, one hour and forty-five minutes.

## GAME XXV.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Third Game between LICHENHEIN and STANLEY.*

Stanley	Lichtenhein.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. B. P. takes P.
3. Q. takes Q. P.	3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. Q. to Q. sq.*	4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.†
7. Castles.	7. Castles.
8. P. to Q. R. 3d.	8. P. to Q. R. 4th.
9. K. B. to Q. 3d.‡	9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. K. P. takes P.	10. K. Kt. takes P.
11. K. B. takes K. Kt.	11. K. R. takes K. B.
12. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.	13. P. to K. 4th.
14. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.	14. K. R. to B. 2d.
15. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.	15. K. R. to B. 3d.
16. Q. to Q. 3d.	16. K. R. to Kt. 3d.
17. B. to Q. 2d.	17. Kt. to Q. 5th.§
18. P. to K. R. 4th.	18. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.

\* Although there is not much difference, we slightly prefer the following method of conducting the attack:—

1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. B. P. takes P.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to K. 3d.

and so on. The Sicilian Game, after having been a universal favorite in the German, French, and English schools for a score of years, seems now to be gradually losing its hold on the esteem of practical players. There is a growing and healthy tendency towards open games.

† 6. K. Kt. to B. 3d would have been at least as good.

‡ 9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d was better.

§ Black, of course, cannot take the King's Knight with Rook on account of White's move (after capturing the Rook with Bishop) of Q. takes K. P (ch.) etc.

184 Games in the Grand Tournament.

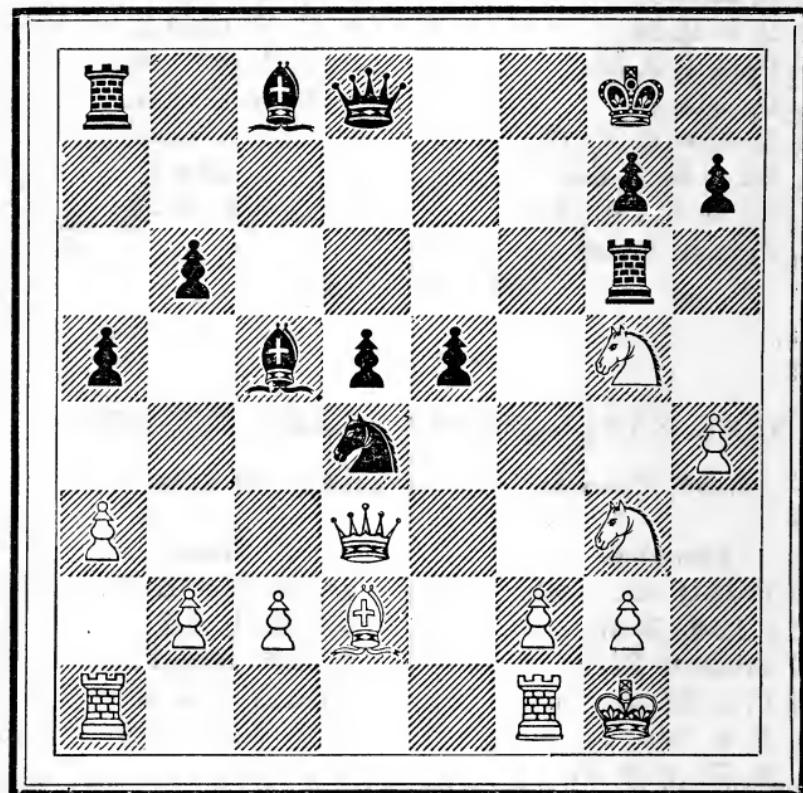
Stanley.

19. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.\*  
20. Q. to Q. B. 3d.

Lichtenhein.

19. Q. B. to R. 3d.  
20. R. P. takes P.

\* At this point White could not play 19. P. to Q. B. 4th with safety; suppose  
BLACK.



WHITE.

19. P. to Q. B. 4th.  
20. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.  
21. Q. to Kt. sq. (A.)  
22. K. Kt. to R. 3d.

19. Q. B. to R. 3d.  
20. P. to K. 5th.  
21. P. to K. R. 3d.

If 22. K. Kt. to B. 3d then Black plays 22. K. R. takes Q. Kt., followed, upon White's capturing the Rook, by 23. Kt. takes Kt. (ch.)

24. B. P. takes R.  
25. K. moves

and Black must win.

21. Q. to Q. B. 3d.  
22. K. Kt. to R. 3d.  
23. Q. or B. P. takes K. R.

A.

23. K. R. takes Q. Kt.  
24. Kt. takes Q. Kt. P. (ch.)  
25. Kt. takes B.

21. P. to K. R. 3d.  
22. K. R. takes Q. Kt.  
23. Kt. to K. 7th (ch.)

winning the Queen.

## Stanley.

21. R. P. takes P.
22. R. takes Q. B.
23. Kt. P. takes B.
24. B. takes P.
25. Q. to Q. 3d.
26. P. to Q. B. 3d.
27. Q. to Q. 2d.
28. Q. takes Q. P. (ch.)
29. Kt. to K. B. 5th.
30. Kt. to K. 7th (ch.)†
31. P. to K. B. 4th.

## Lichtenhein.

21. Q. B. takes K. R.
22. P. to K. R. 3d.\*
23. R. P. takes K. Kt.
24. Q. to K. sq.
25. Kt. P. takes P.
26. Q. R. to R. 6th.
27. Kt. to Kt. 4th.
28. K. R. to K. 3d.
29. Q. R. takes B. P.
30. K. to K. B. 2d.

And White wins.‡

---

## GAME XXVI.—QUEEN'S GAMBIT REFUSED.

*Fourth Game between LICHTENHEIN and STANLEY.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. B. takes P.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. Castles.
8. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. Kt. P. takes Kt.
10. K. B. to Q. 3d.
11. P. to Q. R. 4th.
12. K. B. to K. 4th.
13. Q. to B. 2d.
14. K. B. takes Kt.
15. Kt. to K. 5th.
16. P. to K. B. 4th.

## Stanley.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. Q. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to K. 2d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
8. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. P. to Q. R. 4th.
11. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
12. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
13. P. to K. B. 4th.
14. Q. B. takes K. B.
15. Q. to Q. 4th.
16. Q. to K. 5th.

\* A bad move; 22. B. to K. 2d was the correct play, and Black would have had, in our opinion, the better position.

† White plays the end-game in good style.

‡ Time, two hours.

186 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Lichtenhein.

17. Q. takes Q.
18. B. to R. 3d.
19. Q. R. takes K. B.
20. K. R. to K. B. 2d.
21. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
22. B. P. takes P.
23. K. R. to Q. Kt. 2d.
24. K. to B. 2d.
25. K. to Kt. 3d.
26. Q. R. takes Kt. P.
27. Q. R. takes K. R.
28. R. to Q. Kt. 5th.
29. R. takes R. P.
30. R. to Q. B. 5th.
31. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
32. Kt. to Q. Kt. 6th.
33. R. to Kt. 5th.
34. K. to R. 4th.
35. R. to K. 5th.
36. R. to Kt. 5th.
37. R. to Kt. 2d.
38. P. to K. R. 3d.
39. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
40. R. P. takes P.
41. P. to K. 4th.
42. P. to K. B. 5th.
43. Q. P. takes P. (ch.)
44. Kt. to Q. 7th. (ch.)
45. P. to K. 5th.
46. R. takes B.

Stanley.

17. Q. B. takes Q.
18. K. B. takes B.
19. K. R. to Q. sq.
20. P. to Q. B. 4th.
21. B. P. takes P.
22. K. R. to Q. B. sq.\*
23. K. R. to B. 8th (ch.)
24. K. R. to B. 7th (ch.)
25. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
26. K. R. takes K. R.
27. B. to Q. B. 7th.
28. B. takes R. P.
29. B. to Q. Kt. 6th.
30. R. to Q. R. sq.
31. P. to K. R. 3d.
32. R. to R. 3d.
33. R. to R. 6th.
34. B. to R. 7th.
35. R. to R. 3d.
36. R. to R. 6th.
37. B. to Kt. 6th.
38. K. to B. 2d.
39. B. P. takes P.
40. K. to K. 2d.
41. K. to Q. 3d.
42. P. to K. 4th.
43. K. takes P.
44. K. to B. 5th.
45. R. to Q. R. 7th.†

And Black resigned.‡

\* The Queen's Knight's Pawn cannot be saved.

† Black evidently committed this error under the supposition that if White captured the Bishop he would mate with Rook at King's Rook's seventh. We think, however, that, in any case, the passed Pawn of White would have won in the end.

‡ Time, four hours.

## GAME XXVII.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Fifth Game between LICHTENHEIN and STANLEY.*

Stanley.	Lichtenhein.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.	3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to K. 2d.*	5. K. B. to Q. 3d.
6. Castles.	6. P. to K. R. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to K. 5th.	7. Castles.
8. P. to K. B. 4th.	8. P. to Q. B. 4th.
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.	9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Q. B. to K. 3d.	10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.	11. Kt. P. takes K. Kt.
12. Q. P. takes P.	12. K. B. takes B. P.
13. Q. B. takes K. B.	13. Q. takes Q. B. (ch.)
14. Q. to Q. 4th.	14. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
15. B. P. takes Q.	15. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
16. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.	16. Kt. to K. 5th.
17. Kt. to R. 3d.	17. P. to K. B. 4th.
18. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.	18. B. to Q. 2d.
19. K. R. to Q. sq.	19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. K. R. to K. sq.	20. K. R. to K. 3d.
21. B. to Q. 3d.	21. Q. R. to K. sq.
22. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.	22. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
23. Kt. to B. 2d.	23. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
24. P. to Q. R. 3d.	24. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
25. Kt. to K. 3d.	25. P. to Q. R. 3d.
26. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.	26. K. R. to K. sq.
27. Kt. to R. sq.	27. K. R. to Q. R. sq.
28. Kt. to Kt. 3d.	28. K. to B. 2d.
29. Q. R. to Q. B. 2d.	29. K. R. to K. sq.
30. Q. R. to K. 2d.	30. K. R. to K. 3d.
31. Kt. to B. 5th.	31. Kt. takes Kt.
32. Q. P. takes Kt.	32. K. R. takes Q. R.
33. K. R. takes K. R.	33. R. to Kt. 2d.

\* The proper play is 5. K. B. to Q. 3d.

188 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Stanley.	Lichtenhein.
34. R. to Kt. 2d.	34. P. to Q. R. 4th.
35. R. to Kt. sq.	35. R. P. takes P.
36. R. P. takes P.	36. K. to K. 2d.
37. K. to B. 2d.	37. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
38. K. to K. 3d.	38. K. to K. B. 3d.
39. K. to Q. 4th.	39. B. to K. sq.
40. K. to Q. B. 3d.	40. R. to Q. R. sq.
41. K. to Q. Kt. 3d.	41. B. to K. B. 2d.
42. K. to B. 3d.	42. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
43. R. to Q. R. sq.	43. P. to Q. 5th (ch.)
44. K. takes Q. P.	44. R. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
45. K. to K. 3d.	45. B. to Q. 4th.
46. R. to Q. B. sq.	46. R. to Q. Kt. 7th.
47. B. to K. 2d.	47. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
48. B. P. takes P.	48. R. P. takes P.
49. P. to Kt. 3d.	49. K. to K. 4th.
50. P. to R. 4th.	50. P. to B. 5th (ch.)

And Mr. LICHTENHEIN wins in the First Section.\*

GAME XXVIII.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*First Game between PAULSEN and CALTHROP.*

Calthrop.	Paulsen.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.†	2. P. to K. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)	4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. takes Q. Kt. (ch.)	5. Kt. P. takes B.
6. P. to K. 5th.	6. Q. B. to R. 3d.
7. P. to Q. 3d.	7. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.	8. K. Kt. to B. 4th.

\* Time, six and a quarter hours.

† This was M'Donnell's favorite method of conducting the attack in the Sicilian Opening, but it is weaker than the ordinary move of 2. P. to Q. 4th.

## Calthrop.

9. Castles.
10. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
11. K. Kt. to R. 4th.
12. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
13. K. Kt. takes Kt.
14. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.\*
15. K. R. to B. 2d.
16. R. P. takes Q.
17. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
18. B. to K. 3d.
19. B. to Q. B. 5th.
20. Kt. P. takes K. B.
21. Kt. to R. 3d.
22. Q. R. to K. sq.
23. P. to K. R. 4th.
24. P. to K. R. 5th.
25. K. to R. 2d.
26. Q. R. to K. Kt. sq.
27. P. to K. Kt. 6th.
28. R. P. takes P.
29. Kt. to Kt. sq.
30. Kt. to Q. 2d.

## Paulsen.

9. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
11. K. B. to K. 2d.
12. Kt. to B. 4th.
13. K. P. takes K. Kt.
14. Q. B. takes Q. P.
15. Q. takes Q.
16. P. to Q. B. 5th.
17. Castles (K. R.)
18. P. to Q. R. 4th.
19. K. B. takes B.
20. K. R. to Kt. sq.
21. P. to Q. R. 5th.
22. B. to K. 5th.
23. Q. R. to R. 4th.
24. Q. R. takes B. P.
25. Q. R. to R. 4th.
26. Q. R. to R. 2d.
27. B. P. takes P.
28. P. to K. R. 3d.
29. Q. R. to Kt. 2d.
30. Q. R. takes Kt. P.

And Black wins.†

---

## GAME XXIX.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Second Game between PAULSEN and CALTHROP.*

## Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

## Calthrop.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

\* This carelessness loses an important Pawn at once.

† Time, three hours and a half.

## Paulsen.

5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. Castles.†
7. B. P. takes P.
8. Q. P. takes K. B.
9. B. P. takes P. (in pas.)
10. P. to K. 5th.
11. K. R. takes Q.
12. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
13. B. to Q. R. 3d.
14. B. takes K. Kt.
15. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
16. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
17. Q. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)
18. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
21. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
22. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
23. Q. Kt. to R. 5th.
24. P. to K. 6th.
25. P. to Q. R. 3d.
26. Q. R. to B. sq.
27. K. R. to Q. sq.
28. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 3d.
29. K. Kt. to Q. B. 5th.
30. K. Kt. to Q. 7th.
31. K. Kt. takes Q. R.
32. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
33. K. R. to K. sq.
34. R. takes R.

## Calthrop.

5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
6. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.‡
7. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
8. P. to Q. 4th.
9. Q. takes P.
10. Q. takes Q.
11. K. Kt. to Q. 2d.
12. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
13. K. Kt. to K. B. sq.
14. K. R. takes B.
15. P. to Q. B. 3d.
16. Kt. to Q. 4th.
17. K. to K. 2d.
18. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
19. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
20. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
21. P. to K. B. 3d.
22. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
23. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
24. B. to K. sq.
25. K. to Q. 3d.
26. Kt. to K. 2d.
27. K. to Q. B. 2d.
28. P. to K. B. 4th.
29. K. R. to B. 3d.
30. K. R. takes K. P.
31. R. P. takes K. Kt.
32. R. to K. 4th.
33. R. takes K. R.
34. K. to Q. 3d.

\* The proper play; the same position arises in the Giuoco Piano, thus:—

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 4th.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. P. takes P.

† Not so strong as 6. P. to K. 5th.

‡ We are inclined to think that 6. P. to Q. 3d, though more quiet, would have been better in the end. White could not then play P. to K. 5th.

Paulsen.

35. Kt. to Q. 4th.
36. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.
37. R. to Q. sq. (ch.)
38. Kt. to K. 3d.
39. Kt. takes Kt.
40. P. to K. B. 4th.
41. R. to Q. B. sq.
42. R. takes B. P.

Calthrop.

35. P. to Q. B. 4th.
36. B. to K. B. 2d.
37. Kt. to Q. 4th.
38. P. to Q. B. 5th.
39. B. takes Kt.
40. P. to Q. B. 6th.\*
41. B. to Q. B. 5th.

And White wins.†

### GAME XXX.—CENTRE COUNTER GAMBIT IN THE KNIGHT'S GAME.

*Third Game between PAULSEN and CALTHROP.*

Calthrop.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)§
5. Q. P. takes P.

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.‡
3. P. to K. 5th.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.
5. Kt. P. takes P.

\* Bad; he should have played 40. K. to B. 3d, and then B. to K. 5th, and his chances of a draw would have been very fair.

† Time, four hours.

‡ This move allows White, with good play, to develop his pieces rapidly, and gives Black a disadvantageous position.

§ This loses a piece; his proper course was to play 4. Q. to K. 2d, leading to the following (*Handbuch* 3d Ed. p. 62, and *Handbook* p. 100):—

4. Q. to K. 2d.	4. Q. to K. 2d.
5. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.	5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

If Black play 5. Q. to K. 4th, White would reply with 6. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th, in order to play afterwards P. to Q. 4th.

6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	6. Q. to K. 4th.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	7. Q. to K. 2d.
8. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.	8. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
9. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)	

and White has the better game.

192 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Calthrop.	Paulsen.
6. Q. to K. 2d.	6. P. takes B.
7. Q. takes K. P. (ch.)	7. Q. to K. 2d.
8. Q. takes Q.	8. K. B. takes Q.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	9. P. to Q. R. 3d.
10. Castles.	10. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. P. to Q. 4th.	11. Castles.
12. B. to K. Kt. 5th.	12. Q. R. to R. 2d.
13. K. R. to K. sq.	13. Q. B. to K. 3d.
14. Q. R. to Q. sq.	14. P. to K. R. 3d.
15. B. takes K. Kt.	15. K. B. takes B.
16. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.	16. K. B. to Q. sq.
17. P. to K. R. 3d.	17. Q. B. to Q. 4th.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.	18. Q. R. to K. 2d.
19. K. Kt. to Q. 2d.	19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. P. to K. B. 3d.	20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. P. to Q. B. 4th.	21. Q. B. to Q. R. sq.
22. P. to Q. 5th.	22. B. P. takes Kt.

And Mr. PAULSEN wins in the First Section.\*

GAME XXXI.—FRENCH OPENING.

*First Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.*

Perrin.	Knott.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.	3. K. P. takes P.
4. Q. B. to K. 3d.	4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. 3d.	5. K. B. to Q. 3d.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	7. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
8. P. to K. R. 3d.	8. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
9. Q. takes Q. B.	9. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
10. Castles (K. R.)	10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. K. R. to K. sq.	11. Castles.
12. Q. to K. B. 5th.	12. P. to K. Kt. 3d.

\* Time, three hours.

## Perrin.

13. Q. to K. B. 3d.
14. Q. to K. 2d.
15. Q. to Q. 2d.
16. Kt. to K. 2d.
17. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
18. K. to R. sq.<sup>†</sup>
19. K. B. takes K. Kt.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. P. to K. B. 3d.
22. K. to Kt. 2d.
23. Kt. takes Q. P.<sup>‡</sup>
24. B. takes K. R. P. (ch.)
25. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
26. Q. R. takes Q. R.<sup>§</sup>
27. B. to K. 3d.
28. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
29. P. to Q. B. 4th.
30. P. to Q. B. 5th.
31. B. to B. 2d.
32. B. takes R.
33. B. to B. 2d.
34. Q. to Q. Kt. 4th.
35. B. P. takes P.
36. Q. to Q. 2d.
37. Q. to K. sq.
38. P. to Q. R. 4th.
39. Q. to Q. 2d.

## Knott.

13. K. to Kt. 2d.
14. K. Kt. to R. 2d.
15. Q. to K. R. 5th.
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. K. Kt. to Kt. 4th.\*
18. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
19. Q. R. takes K. B.
20. Q. to B. 3d.
21. Q. R. to K. 2d.
22. K. R. to K. sq.
23. B. P. takes Kt.
24. K. to R. 2d.
25. Q. R. takes K. R.
26. Q. to K. R. sq.
27. R. to K. 3d.
28. Q. to K. sq.
29. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
30. B. to B. 2d.
31. R. takes R.
32. Q. to K. 3d.
33. Kt. to R. 4th.
34. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
35. R. P. takes P.
36. Q. to Q. 3d.
37. Kt. to Kt. 2d.
38. Kt. to B. 4th.

And Black finally won.||

\* If Black play either 17. Q. Kt. to B. 3d, or 17. P. to K. Kt. 4th, White wins the Queen at once.

† To enable him to play P. to K. Kt. 3d, for if he do so now Black would capture the Rook's Pawn with Knight, giving check.

‡ This combination is altogether unsound. White evidently overlooked, in examining the position, Black's twenty-fifth move. He should have played 23. K. R. to K. 2d, or, perhaps, 23. P. to K. R. 4th.

§ If he had captured the Queen, Black would simply have checked with the Queen's Rook, regaining the Queen, and having a piece ahead.

|| Time, three hours and forty minutes.

## GAME XXXII.—QUEEN'S GAMBIT REFUSED.

*Second Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.*

## Knott.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.
7. Q. P. takes P.\*
8. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
9. K. B. to K. 2d.
10. Castles.
11. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
12. B. P. takes P.
13. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
14. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
15. K. B. to B. 3d.
16. Kt. to K. 2d.
17. B. takes Kt.
18. Kt. to Q. 4th.†
19. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
20. Q. to Q. 3d.
21. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
22. Kt. to K. 2d.
23. K. R. to Q. sq.
24. Q. to Q. 4th.
25. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
26. Q. R. to Q. B. 2d.

## Perrin.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.
7. K. B. takes P.
8. K. B. to K. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
12. K. P. takes P.
13. K. B. to Q. 3d.
14. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
15. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
16. K. B. to Q. Kt. sq.
17. Q. takes B.
18. Q. to K. 4th.
19. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
22. Q. R. to Q. sq.
23. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
24. Q. to K. 2d.
25. K. R. to Q. sq.
26. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

\* This is sometimes played, but the more usual move is 7. P. to Q. Kt. 3d, succeeded by 8. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.

† White cannot safely capture the Queen's Pawn; for suppose

18. B. takes Q. P.
19. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
20. B. takes Q. B.
21. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.

18. Q. to K. 4th.
19. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
20. Q. R. takes B.
21. K. to R. sq.

and Black must win a piece.

Knott.	Perrin.
27. Kt. to K. 2d.	27. Q. to K. 3d.
28. Q. R. to Q. 2d.	28. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
29. Q. to Q. 3d.	29. K. B. to K. 4th.
30. Kt. to Q. 4th.	30. Q. to K. B. 3d.
31. Kt. takes P.	31. Q. R. to K. B. 2d.
32. P. to K. Kt. 4th.	32. P. to K. R. 4th.
33. P. to K. R. 3d.	33. P. takes P.
34. B. takes P.	34. K. R. to K. B. sq.
35. Kt. to Q. 4th.	35. K. B. to Q. B. 2d.
36. B. to K. 6th.	36. K. to R. sq.
37. B. takes Q. R.	37. R. takes B.
38. P. to K. B. 3d.	38. Q. B. to B. sq.
39. Q. to K. B. 5th.*	39. B. takes Q.

And White resigns.†

---

### GAME XXXIII.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Third Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.*

Perrin.	Knott.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.	3. K. P. takes P.
4. P. to Q. B. 4th.	4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	5. Q. to K. 2d (ch.)
6. Q. B. to K. 3d.	6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.	7. Q. B. to K. 3d.
8. P. to Q. B. 5th.	8. Castles.
9. P. to K. R. 3d.	9. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. Q. R. to B. sq.	10. Kt. P. takes P.
11. Q. P. takes P.	11. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
12. K. Kt. to K. 2d.	12. K. R. to Q. sq.
13. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.	13. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
14. Q. B. takes Q. Kt.	14. Q. B. to Kt. 5th (ch.)

\* After such a gross oversight Black of course wins with ease.

† Time, four hours and fifteen minutes.

196 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Perrin.

15. K. B. to K. 2d.
16. Q. takes B.
17. Q. takes Q.
18. K. to Q. sq.
19. Kt. P. takes B.
20. K. to Q. 2d.
21. K. to Q. 3d.
22. K. R. to K. sq.
23. B. takes Kt.
24. K. to Q. 4th.
25. K. R. to K. 2d.
26. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
27. K. to Q. 3d.
28. Q. R. to Kt. 7th.
29. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
30. P. to Q. B. 4th.
31. K. R. to K. 7th.
32. Q. R. to Kt. 7th.

Knott.

15. Q. B. takes K. B.
16. K. R. to K. sq.
17. K. R. takes Q. (ch.)
18. B. takes Kt.
19. K. R. to K. 3d.
20. Kt. to K. 5th (ch.)
21. K. R. to Q. B. 3d.
22. Kt. takes Q. B. P. (ch.)
23. R. takes B.
24. K. R. to Q. R. 4th.
25. Q. R. to Q. sq.
26. P. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
27. P. to Q. 5th.
28. K. R. to R. 6th.
29. K. R. to R. 5th.
30. P. to K. B. 3d.
31. K. to R. sq.
32. K. R. to R. 6th (ch.)

And the game was finally drawn.\*

GAME XXXIV.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Fourth Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.*

Perrin.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. Q. to K. 2d.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.
9. P. to Q. B. 4th.
10. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

Knott.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. 3d.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. P. to K. R. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.

\* The game was only recorded to this point.

## Perrin.

11. Q. R. to B. sq.
12. P. to K. R. 3d.
13. K. B. takes K. Kt.
14. P. to Q. B. 5th.
15. Q. B. takes K. R. P.
16. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
17. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
18. Q. P. takes B.
19. Kt. takes Kt.
20. Q. to K. 3d.
21. B. to Q. B. 3d.
22. Q. R. to Q. sq.
23. P. to K. B. 3d.\*
24. Kt. P. takes P.
25. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
26. Q. R. to K. Kt. 2d.

## Knott.

11. Q. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
12. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
13. B. P. takes B.
14. K. B. to Q. B. 2d.
15. Q. to Q. 2d.
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. K. B. takes K. Kt.
18. Kt. to K. 5th.
19. Q. P. takes Kt.
20. B. to Q. 4th.
21. K. R. to K. B. 4th.
22. Q. to K. 3d.
23. K. P. takes P.
24. K. R. to R. 4th.
25. Q. takes Q. R. P.
26. Q. R. to K. B. sq.

And Black finally won.†

## GAME XXXV.—FIANCHETTO OPENING.

*Sixth Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.‡*

## Knott.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to K. 4th.
3. K. B. to Q. 3d.
4. P. to Q. B. 4th.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. R. 4th.
8. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. Q. takes Kt.
10. B. to K. 3d.

## Perrin.

1. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
2. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. Q. to Q. 2d.
7. Q. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
8. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
9. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
10. K. B. to Kt. 2d.

\* This move leads to the immediate loss of the game.

† Time, one hour and a half.

‡ The fifth game between these players was recorded in such a way as to be wholly unintelligible. It was drawn.

198 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Knott.

11. K. R. to Q. sq.
12. P. to Q. 5th.
13. B. to K. B. 4th.\*
14. B. to Kt. 3d.
15. K. P. takes P.
16. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
17. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
18. B. P. takes P.
19. K. Kt. to K. 6th.
20. K. Kt. takes K. R.
21. B. to K. R. 4th.
22. Q. takes Q. B.
23. Q. to R. 8th (ch.)
24. Q. to K. 4th.
25. B. takes Kt.
26. Q. takes Q. P. (ch.)
27. Q. R. to R. 3d.
28. Q. R. to K. B. 3d.
29. Q. R. takes R. (ch.)
30. Q. to K. B. 7th.
31. P. to K. R. 3d.
32. Q. takes Q.
33. R. to Q. 7th.
34. R. takes Q. R. P.
35. K. to B. sq.
36. P. to B. 3d.
37. K. to K. 2d.
38. K. to Q. 3d.
39. K. to Q. B. 4th.§
40. K. takes P.

Perrin.

11. Kt. to K. 2d.
12. Castles (K. R.)
13. P. to K. 4th.
14. P. to K. B. 4th.
15. Kt. takes P.
16. P. to Q. B. 3d.
17. B. P. takes P.
18. Kt. to K. 2d. .
19. Q. B. takes P.†
20. Q. R. takes K. Kt.
21. Q. B. takes Kt.
22. R. to K. B. 5th.
23. R. to B. sq.
24. P. to Q. 4th.‡
25. Q. takes B.
26. K. to R. sq.
27. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th.
28. Q. takes Kt. P.
29. B. takes R.
30. Q. to Kt. 5th.
31. Q. to K. 2d.
32. B. takes Q.
33. B. to Q. B. 4th.
34. B. to Q. 5th.
35. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
36. P. to R. 3d.
37. K. to Kt. sq.
38. P. to R. 4th.
39. P. to Q. Kt. 4th (ch.)
40. B. takes R.

And White resigns.||

\* This was scarcely advisable.

† We do not see the necessity of thus giving up the exchange.

‡ This move loses a Pawn outright.

§ Throwing away a game which he ought to have won without much difficulty.

|| Time, three hours and a half.

## GAME XXXVI.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Seventh Game between PERRIN and KNOTT.*

Perrin.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. B. P. takes P.
10. P. to K. B. 3d.
11. K. Kt. to B. 4th.
12. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
13. K. to R. sq.
14. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
15. K. Kt. to B. 4th.
16. B. P. takes P.
17. Q. to K. B. 3d.
18. P. to K. R. 3d.
19. Q. takes B.
20. Q. takes Q.
21. P. to K. 4th.\*
22. K. B. takes K. P.
23. K. B. takes Q. R.
24. B. takes Kt.
25. B. to K. B. 4th.

Knott.

1. P. to K. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to K. 2d.
5. Castles.
6. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.
9. B. P. takes P.
10. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
11. Q. B. to B. sq.
12. K. to R. sq.
13. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
14. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
15. K. B. to Q. 3d.
16. K. Kt. takes P.
17. Q. to K. R. 5th.
18. K. B. takes K. Kt.
19. Q. to K. R. 3d.
20. K. Kt. takes Q.
21. Q. P. takes P.
22. B. to Q. R. 3d.
23. B. takes K. R.
24. R. to K. B. 3d.

And Mr. PERRIN wins in the First Section.†

\* The correct play.

† Time, three hours.

## SECOND SECTION.

## C O M B A T A N T S.

MORPHY AND MEEK.

PAULSEN AND MONTGOMERY,

RAPHAEL AND MARACHE.

LICHENHEIN AND PERRIN.

## GAME XXXVII.—RUY LOPEZ OPENING.

*First Game between MORPHY and MEEK.*

## Meek.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.†
7. P. to Q. R. 4th.
8. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
9. K. B. takes Q. B.
10. Castles.
11. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
12. K. to R. sq.
13. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
14. B. to Q. R. 3d.
15. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
16. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to Q. 3d.\*
6. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
7. P. to Q. R. 3d.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.
9. B. P. takes K. B.
10. Castles.
11. Q. to K. 2d.
12. P. to K. R. 3d.
13. P. to Q. 4th.
14. Q. Kt. to Q. sq.
15. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
16. Q. P. takes P.

\* The *Leitfaden* (p. 101) correctly remarks that this move is not so strong as 5. Q. to K. 2d, which leads to the following:—

6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. 4th.

and the game is perfectly even.

† He should have played 6. P. to Q. 4th, and the game would probably have been carried on in the following manner:—

6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. B. P. takes P.
8. K. to K. B. sq.

and White has the better game.

5. Q. to K. 2d.
6. Castles.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.

6. K. P. takes P.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)

Meek.

17. P. to Q. 4th.
18. B. P. takes P.
19. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
20. R. P. takes P.
21. Q. to K. 2d.
22. Q. Kt. takes K. P.
23. Q. takes K. Kt.
24. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq
25. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
26. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
27. B. to B. sq.
28. B. takes B.
29. Q. to K. R. 3d.

Morphy.

17. K. P. takes P.
18. B. to Q. 3d.
19. R. P. takes P.
20. Q. Kt. to K. B. 2d.
21. Q. to Q. 2d.
22. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
23. Q. takes Kt. P.
24. Q. to Q. 4th.
25. Q. R. to R. 5th.
26. Q. to K. 5th.
27. B. takes Kt.\*
28. Q. R. takes Q. P.
29. Q. takes B.

And Black wins.†

### GAME XXXVIII.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Second Game between MORPHY and MEEK.*

Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. B. to Q. 3d.
4. Q. B. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
6. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
7. Castles.
8. P. to K. 5th.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. K. to R. 2d.
12. P. to Q. B. 3d.
13. K. B. to Q. B. 2d.
14. Q. Kt. to K. B. 3d.

Meek.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to K. Kt. 3d.‡
3. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
4. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
5. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. Castles.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
11. P. to Q. B. 4th.
12. P. to Q. B. 5th.
13. P. to Q. R. 3d.§
14. P. to K. R. 3d.

\* Black might also have played 27. Q. takes Q. R. with perfect safety.

† Time, one hour.

‡ This transformation of the French Opening into a sort of irregular Fianchetto is hardly so commendable as the usual move of 2. P. to Q. 4th.

§ Uncalled for, and therefore a loss of time.

Morphy.

15. P. to K. Kt. 4th.\*
16. K. R. to Kt. sq.
17. Q. to K. sq.
18. Q. Kt. to K. R. 4th.
19. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt. P.†

Meek.

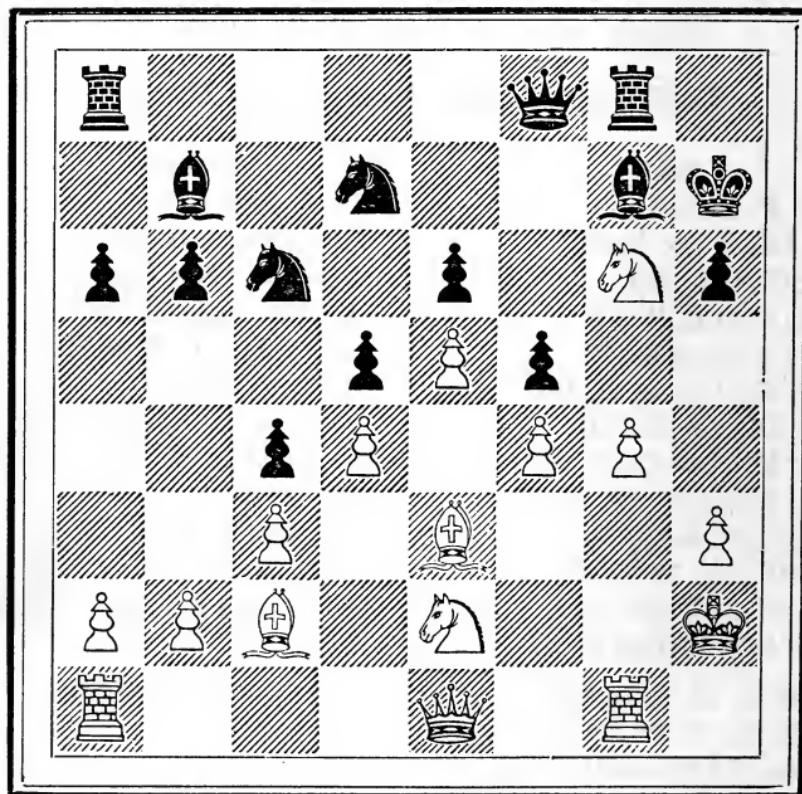
15. K. to R. 2d.
16. K. R. to Kt. sq.
17. K. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
18. Q. to K. B. sq.†
19. K. takes Kt.‡

\* Perfectly safe, and, in our opinion, the best move on the board. It is too much the fashion to denounce this move as risky.

† White's attack undoubtedly looks threatening, and, with correct after-play on both sides, should determine the day in his favor. Black might, however, have opposed a much firmer and longer resistance. 18. Q. Kt. to B. sq. was probably the best move at his command.

‡ From this point White's game is, to all intents and purposes, won. The forces, after White's nineteenth move, present this appearance:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

§ If

20. Kt. P. takes P.
21. Q. Kt. to K. R. 4th.

19. Q. to K. B. 2d.

20. K. P. takes P.

21. K. Kt. to K. 2d.

## Morphy.

20. K. Kt. P. takes P. (ch.)
21. B. P. takes P. (ch.)
22. P. to K. B. 5th (ch.)
23. Q. to K. R. 4th (ch.)
24. P. to K. B. 6th.
25. K. P. takes B.
26. Q. R. takes K. R.
27. K. B. to Kt. 6th (ch.)
28. K. B. to B. 5th (ch.)
29. Q. B. takes R. P.
30. R. to Kt. 7th.

## Meek.

20. K. to B. 2d.
21. K. takes P.
22. K. to K. 2d.
23. K. to K. sq.
24. K. B. takes P.
25. K. R. takes K. R.
26. Q. Kt. takes B. P.
27. K. to Q. 2d.
28. K. to K. sq.
29. Q. to R. sq.
30. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. sq.

And White mates in three moves.\*

## GAME XXXIX.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Third Game between MORPHY and MEEK.*

## Meek.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.
5. Q. Kt. takes P.
6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
7. P. to K. R. 3d.‡
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
9. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
10. Q. to K. R. 5th.
11. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
12. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
13. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.

22. Q. Kt. takes B. P.
23. Kt. to Kt. 3d.

and White will win easily.

\* Time, one hour and three quarters.

† A much better move is 5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.

‡ White neglected to profit by his adversary's hasty play; he should have moved 7. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. Q. P. takes P.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.†
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. Q. B. to K. 3d.
8. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
12. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
13. P. takes K. Kt.

22. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.

Meek.

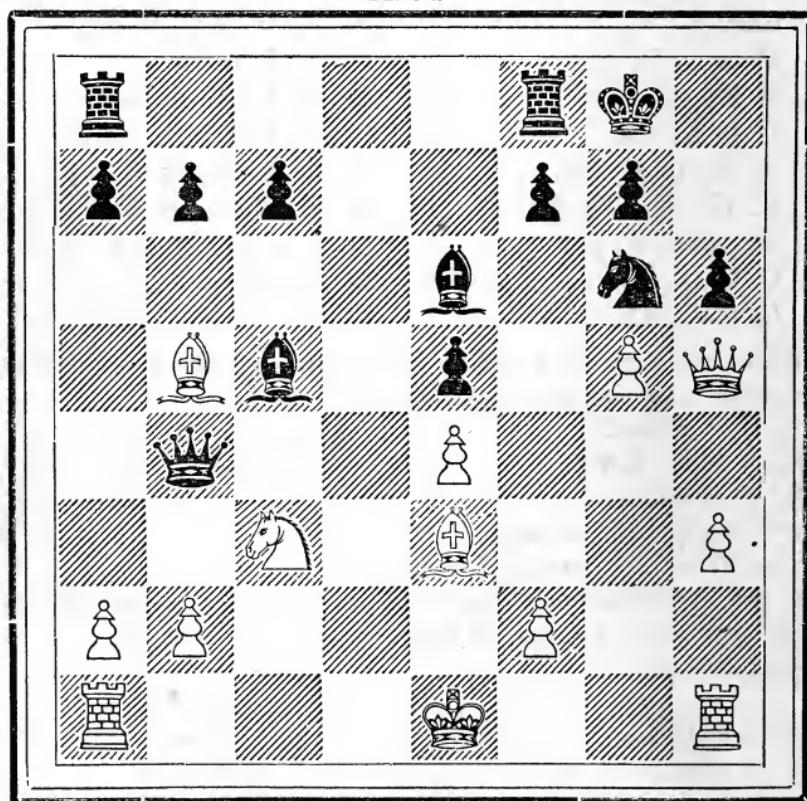
14. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
15. Q. B. to K. 3d.
16. Q. B. takes K. B.\*
17. Castles.
18. Q. B. takes K. R.
19. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
20. B. to Q. B. 4th.
21. Q. to Q. sq.
22. K. to Kt. 2d.
23. K. to R. sq.
24. Kt. P. takes P.
25. P. to R. 7th (ch.)

Morphy.

14. Q. to Q. 5th.
15. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th.
16. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
17. Q. takes Kt.
18. Q. R. takes Q. B.
19. Q. to Kt. 7th.
20. Kt. to K. B. 5th.
21. Kt. takes K. R. P. (ch.)
22. Kt. to B. 5th (ch.)
23. Q. to Kt. 3d.
24. B. takes B.
25. K. takes P.

\* We give a diagram of the situation, by which the reader can judge whether White had any better move at this point:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

## Meek.

26. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.\*
27. K. to Kt. sq.
28. R. takes B.
29. P. to R. 4th.
30. P. to B. 3d.
31. K. to B. 2d.

## Morphy.

26. Q. to K. R. 3d (ch.)
27. B. takes K. R.
28. R. to Q. sq.
29. R. to Q. 3d.
30. R. to K. Kt. 3d.

And Mr. MORPHY mates in three moves, and wins in the Second Section.

## GAME XL.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*First Game between PAULSEN and MONTGOMERY.*

## Montgomery.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Castles.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. Q. Kt. takes P.
8. P. to K. 5th.
9. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
10. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
11. Kt. takes K. B.
12. Q. to Q. 4th.
13. Q. takes Kt.

## Paulsen.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. B. P. takes P.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. Q. P. takes P.
7. K. Kt. to K. 2d.†
8. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.‡
9. Q. Kt. takes K. P. §
10. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. to Q. B. 2d.||
12. Kt. takes K. B.
13. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.

\* If White had ventured to capture the Bishop on this or the preceding move he would have been check-mated in four moves, thus—

26. Q. R. takes B.
27. Q. to K. R. 5th.
28. K. to Kt. sq.

26. Q. to K. R. 3d (ch.)
27. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
28. Q. to K. R. 6th.

mating with the Queen next move.

† We should certainly have preferred 7. P. to Q. 3d.

‡ 8. P. to Q. 4th would have been better chess, freeing his game at once.

§ Black ought to have played, at this stage, 9. K. B. to K. 2d.

|| If Black now play

12. Q. to Q. 4th.
13. Q. takes K. Kt. P.
14. B. to K. R. 6th.

11. Kt. takes K. B.
12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. K. R. to B. sq.

and White must win.

Montgomery.

14. Kt. to K. 4th.\*  
 15. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)  
 16. Kt. takes Q.  
 17. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.  
 18. B. to Q. R. 3d (ch.)  
 19. Kt. to Q. 6th.†

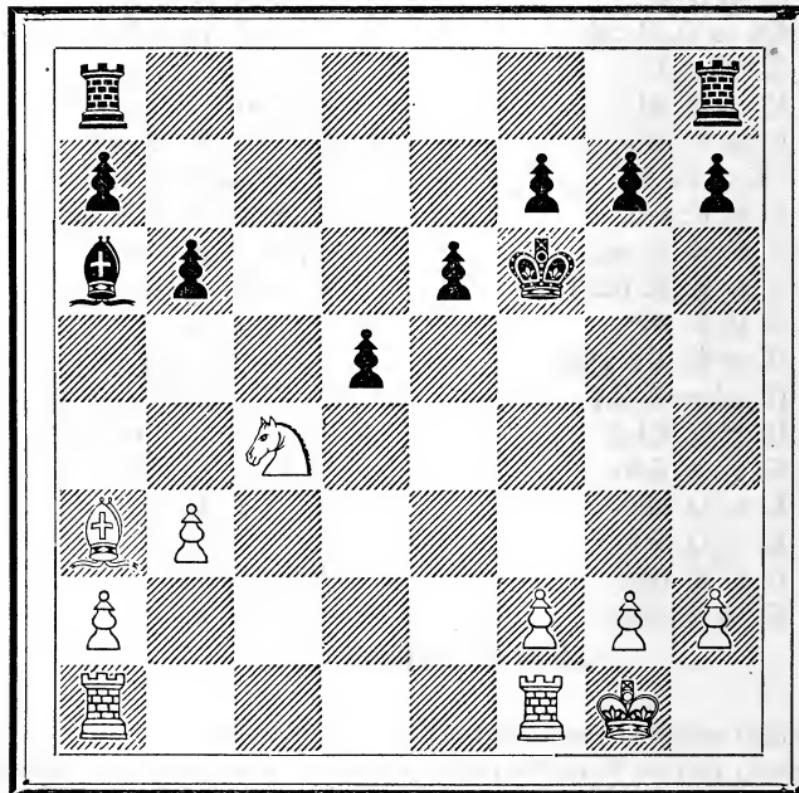
Paulsen.

14. Q. takes Q.  
 15. K. to K. 2d.  
 16. B. to Q. R. 3d.  
 17. P. to Q. 4th.  
 18. K. to B. 3d.  
 19. B. takes K. R.

\* By simply playing 14. Q. to K. 4th White would have preserved his advantage in position. If Black then moved 14. P. to Q. 4th White would have answered with 15. Q. to Q. R. 4th (ch.)

† The position is an instructive one.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White should now have availed himself of the opportunity presented for drawing the game, thus—

19. B. to Kt. 2d (ch.)	19. K. to K. 2d (best).
20. B. to R. 3d (ch.)	20. K. to B. 3d (best).

and the game is drawn by perpetual check. If the Black King moves to any other squares than those indicated, White frees his Knight and Rook.

## Montgomery.

20. R. takes B.
21. R. to Q. B. sq.
22. R. to Q. B. 3d.
23. R. to K. B. 3d (ch.)
24. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
25. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.
26. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
27. Kt. to Q. R. 3d.
28. R. to Q. 3d.
29. R. to Q. sq.
30. K. to B. sq.
31. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.
32. K. takes P.
33. K. to B. 3d.
34. K. to K. 4th.
35. Kt. to K. 3d.
36. B. to K. 5th.
37. R. to K. B. sq.
38. R. to K. B. 6th (ch.)
39. R. to K. 6th.
40. B. to K. Kt. 7th.
41. R. takes Q. R.‡
42. B. to Q. 4th.§
43. K. to K. 5th.
44. K. to Q. 6th.
45. K. to Q. 5th.
46. R. to K. 6th.
47. K. to K. 5th.

## Paulsen.

20. K. R. to Q. sq.
21. K. R. to Q. 2d.
22. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
23. K. to K. Kt. 3d.
24. Q. R. to Q. sq.
25. P. to Q. 5th.
26. P. to K. 4th.
27. K. R. to Q. 4th.
28. P. to K. 5th.
29. P. to K. 6th.
30. P. to K. B. 4th.
31. P. to K. 7th (ch.)
32. P. to Q. 6th (ch.)
33. B. P. takes P. (ch.)\*
34. K. R. to K. B. 4th.
35. K. R. takes B. P.
36. K. R. takes Q. R. P.
37. K. R. to K. 7th.
38. K. to K. R. 4th.
39. P. to Q. 7th.
40. Q. R. to K. sq.†
41. P. to Q. 8th (Q.)
42. Q. to K. R. 8th (ch.)
43. Q. to K. B. 6th.
44. Q. to K. B. 5th (ch.)
45. Q. to K. B. 2d. (ch.)
46. R. to Q. 7th.
47. R. takes B.

And White resigns.||

\* He ought rather to have captured the Knight at once.

† Elegantly played; from this point to the end the second player conducts the attack with great vigor and accuracy.

‡ White has no better move.

§ If 42. R. to K. 6th, Black would play 42. Q. to Q. B. 7th (ch.), and either win both Rook and Knight or mate in a few moves.

|| Time, six hours.

## GAME XLI.—CENTRE COUNTER GAMBIT.

*Second Game between PAULSEN and MONTGOMERY.*

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. P. takes P.
3. P. to Q. 4th.\*
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. B. 4th.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. P. to Q. R. 3d.
9. Castles.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
11. Q. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
12. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
13. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
14. K. R. to K. sq.
15. Kt. P. takes P.
16. P. to Q. 5th.
17. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
18. K. B. takes K. Kt.
19. Kt. to K. 5th.
20. Q. to K. R. 5th.
21. Q. to K. R. 6th.
22. K. B. to Q. Kt. sq.
23. Q. R. to Q. sq.
24. Kt. to Kt. 4th.
25. Q. takes B.
26. Kt. takes B. P. (ch.)
27. B. takes K. P.

Montgomery.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. takes P.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. Q. to Q. sq.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
8. K. B. to K. 2d.
9. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. Q. Kt. to Kt. sq.†
12. P. to Q. R. 4th
13. Castles.
14. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
15. Q. B. takes P.
16. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
17. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
18. Q. R. to R. 2d.
19. K. B. to B. 3d.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. Q. B. to B. sq.
22. Q. to Q. sq.
23. K. B. to Kt. 4th.
24. P. to K. B. 3d.‡
25. P. to K. 4th.
26. K. R. takes Kt.
27. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.

\* This can hardly be considered an improvement upon the usual move of 3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.) followed, after Black has played 3. Q. B. to Q. 2d, by 4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

† Black has certainly lost valuable time by some of his later moves.

‡ No reader need be told that if Black take the Queen he is mated at once. But would not 24. P. to K. B. 4th have relieved his game somewhat?

## Paulsen.

28. Q. B. takes K. R.
29. P. to K. R. 4th.
30. P. to Q. 6th.
31. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th.

## Montgomery.

28. Kt. takes Q. B.
29. Q. to K. B. sq.
30. P. to K. R. 3d.

And Mr. PAULSEN wins in the Second Section.\*

---

## GAME XLII.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*First Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.†
7. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
8. B. to Q. B. 4th.
9. Castles.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
12. P. to K. R. 3d.
13. B. takes Q. B.
14. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
15. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
16. Q. to K. 2d.
17. Q. Kt. to K. R. 5th.

## Marache.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. B. P. takes P
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 4th.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. B. to K. 2d.
7. K. B. takes Q. B.
8. Castles.
9. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. Kt. to K. 2d.
11. P. to Q. 3d.
12. Q. B. to K. 3d.
13. B. P. takes B.
14. P. to Q. 4th.
15. Q. R. to Q. sq.
16. P. to Q. 5th.
17. Kt. to Kt. 3d.

\* Time, six hours and a half. The second player being obliged to return to Philadelphia, was compelled to resign the match upon the conclusion of this game. We learn from him that this game should properly be considered a drawn contest, such being the agreement between the two combatants when hostilities were suspended on the evening of October 14th, just after the twenty-first move. But not leaving the city the next morning at the hour he anticipated, he consented to play the game out in a hasty and experimental manner.

† This is not so strong as the usual method on the part of White of 6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th, and 7. Castles.

## Raphael.

18. Q. R. to Q. sq.
19. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
20. K. R. to Q. B. sq.
21. K. R. to Q. sq.
22. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
23. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
24. Q. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
25. Q. Kt. takes K. R.
26. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
27. Q. takes B. P.
28. B. P. takes Kt.
29. Kt. to B. 3d.
30. Q. takes Q.
31. P. to K. 5th.
32. Kt. takes K. P.
33. P. to K. B. 4th.
34. R. to Q. B. sq.
35. R. to Q. B. 2d.
36. K. to B. 2d.
37. K. to B. 3d.
38. K. to K. 4th.
39. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
40. R. P. takes P.
41. P. to Kt. 5th (ch.)
42. Kt. to Q. B. 6th.
43. R. to K. B. 2d.†
44. Kt. takes Q. P.
45. Kt. takes K. P. (ch.)
46. R. to B. sq.

## Marache.

18. B. to K. 2d.
19. Q. to B. 2d.
20. B. to Q. R. 6th.
21. B. to Kt. 5th.
22. Q. to K. 2d.
23. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
24. K. R. to B. 5th.\*
25. K. P. takes Q. Kt.
26. Kt. to K. 4th.
27. Kt. takes Q. R.
28. P. to K. R. 3d.
29. Q. to B. 3d.†
30. Kt. P. takes Q.
31. B. P. takes P.
32. K. to Kt. 2d.
33. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
34. B. to B. 6th.
35. P. to K. R. 4th.
36. R. to Q. sq.
37. K. to B. 3d.
38. P. to Q. R. 4th.
39. R. P. takes P.
40. R. to K. R. sq.
41. K. to Kt. 2d.
42. R. to K. R. 5th.
43. P. to Q. R. 5th.
44. B. to K. 8th.
45. K. to B. 2d.

And White wins.§

\* This only gives up the exchange for the moment, but the move, nevertheless, was not correct, Black losing a Pawn by the combination.

† Unwise, considering that Black's position is certainly no better than White's, while his forces are a Pawn less. Nor can he derive any advantage from uniting his Pawns in the centre, since his opponent's thirty-first move forces him to exchange one of them.

‡ In order to be able to capture the Queen's Pawn with Knight.

§ Time, three hours and a half.

## GAME XLIII.—QUEEN'S BISHOP'S PAWN'S OPENING.

*Second Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

## Marache.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
6. K. P. takes P.
7. Q. to K. B. 3d.
8. K. B. takes K. Kt.
9. K. B. takes Kt. (ch.)†
10. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
11. P. to Q. 3d.
12. P. to Q. B. 4th.
13. K. to K. 2d.‡
14. Q. P. takes P.
15. K. to B. 3d.
16. Kt. to B. 3d.
17. K. R. to K. sq.
18. B. to K. B. 4th.
19. K. takes K. B.
20. Kt. to R. 4th.
21. K. to B. 3d.
22. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
23. Q. R. takes B. P.
24. Kt. takes Q. R.
25. P. to K. 5th.
26. K. to Kt. 3d.
27. P. to B. 3d.

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.\*
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
7. Q. takes K. Kt.
8. Q. to K. B. 3d.
9. Q. takes K. B.
10. Kt. P. takes Q.
11. Q. B. to R. 3d.
12. Castles.
13. P. to K. 5th.
14. Q. B. takes B. P. (ch.)
15. K. B. to Q. 3d.
16. K. R. to K. B. sq.
17. Q. R. to K. sq.
18. K. B. takes B.
19. P. to K. B. 3d.
20. P. to K. Kt. 4th (ch.)
21. Q. R. to K. 4th.
22. B. takes R. P.
23. Q. R. takes Q. R.
24. P. to K. B. 4th.
25. B. to Q. 4th (ch.)
26. P. to K. R. 4th.
27. P. to K. B. 5th (ch.)

\* Weak, since it effectually cramps the movements of his King's Bishop; the correct move is 2. P. to Q. 4th.

† Since he intended to exchange Queens, why not have done it thus?—

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. Q. takes Q.</li> <li>10. K. B. takes Kt. (ch.)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. Kt. P. takes Q.</li> <li>10. Kt. P. takes K. B.</li> </ol>
---	--

doubling Black's Pawns in an awkward manner on the Bishops' files.

‡ White has no better way of defending the Pawn.

## Marache.

- 28. K. to B. 2d.
- 29. R. to Q. R. sq.
- 30. R. to R. 6th.
- 31. R. to R. 4th.
- 32. R. to Q. 4th.
- 33. P. to K. 6th.
- 34. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
- 35. Kt. to Q. 7th (ch.)
- 36. R. to K. 4th.
- 37. Kt. to B. 6th.
- 38. Kt. to Kt. 8th.
- 39. Kt. to B. 6th.

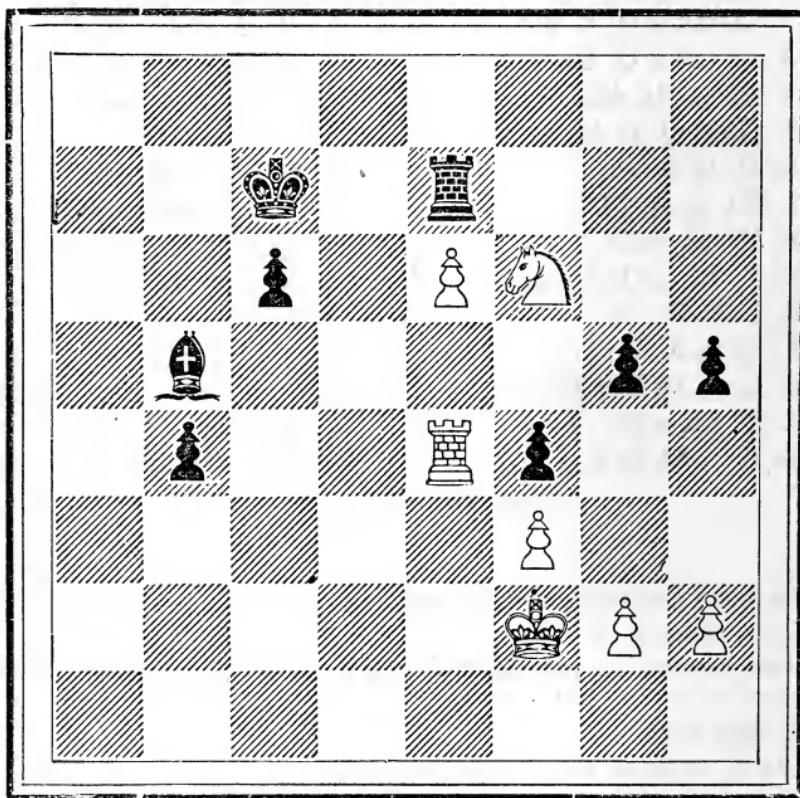
## Raphael.

- 28. K. to B. 2d.
- 29. R. to Q. R. sq.
- 30. B. to B. 5th.
- 31. B. to Kt. 4th.
- 32. R. to K. sq.
- 33. K. to Kt. 3d.
- 34. P. to Q. R. 4th.
- 35. K. to B. 2d.
- 36. R. P. takes P.
- 37. R. to K. 2d.
- 38. R. to K. sq.
- 39. R. to K. 2d.\*

And the game was drawn.†

\* The subjoined diagram represents the situation at the termination of the game:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

† Time, two hours.

## GAME XLIV.—PETROFF DEFENCE.

*Third Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

## Marache.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. P. takes K. B.
6. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
7. Q. to Q. 3d.
8. Q. B. to R. 4th.
9. Castles (Q. R.)
10. K. B. takes B.
11. Q. to Q. B. 4th.
12. Q. takes Q. B. P.
13. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.†
14. Q. to Kt. 4th.
15. Q. to Q. B. 4th.
16. Q. to K. 2d.
17. Kt. to Q. 2d.
18. K. takes Kt.
19. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
20. B. to Kt. 3d.
21. Q. to K. B. 3d.
22. Q. R. to K. sq
23. K. takes R.
24. K. to Q. sq.‡

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
4. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
5. Castles.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. P. to K. R. 3d.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
10. B. P. takes B.
11. Q. to K. sq.
12. K. Kt. takes K. P.
13. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
14. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
15. P. to Q. 4th.
16. Q. Kt. to R. 5th.
17. K. Kt. takes Kt.
18. Q. R. takes Kt. P.
19. K. R. to B. 5th.
20. K. R. to K. 5th.
21. Q. to Q. Kt. 4th.
22. Q. R. takes B. P. (ch.)†
23. Q. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
24. Kt. takes Q. B. P. (ch.)

And White resigns.||

\* This seems less strong than the customary way of carrying on the attack by 3. K. Kt. takes K. P.

† White is made to pay dearly in the end for the acquisition of these Pawns.

‡ The right style.

§ If 24. K. to K. 3d Black mates on the move.

|| Time, two hours.

## GAME XLV.—FRENCH OPENING.

*Fourth Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

Raphael.	Marache.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.	3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. 3d.	5. K. B. to Q. 3d.
6. Castles.	6. Castles.
7. P. to K. R. 3d.	7. P. to K. R. 3d.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.	8. Q. B. to K. 3d.*
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.†	9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.	10. Q. to Q. 2d.
11. K. Kt. to R. 2d.	11. Q. B. takes R. P.‡
12. Kt. P. takes Q. B.	12. Q. takes R. P.
13. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	13. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
14. K. to R. sq.	14. P. to Kt. 5th.
15. K. R. to Kt. sq.	15. K. to R. sq.
16. Q. Kt. to K. 5th.	16. Q. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
17. K. R. to Kt. 3d.	17. Q. to R. 5th.
18. P. takes Q. Kt.	18. B. takes P.
19. K. R. to Kt. 2d.	19. Q. R. to K. sq.
20. K. R. takes Kt. P.§	

And Black mates.||

## GAME XLVI.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Fifth Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

Marache.	Raphael.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.	2. B. P. takes P.

\* It will be observed that the positions are exactly alike; White has only the advantage of the move.

† 9. K. Kt. to K. 5th looks more to the purpose.

‡ This sacrifice certainly gives Black a great attack for the moment, but we very much doubt its soundness.

§ Certainly an astounding oversight; he ought to have played 20. Q. to Q. 2d, and Black's attack would soon be completely thwarted.

|| Time, three quarters of an hour.

## Marache.

3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. K. P. takes P.
8. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
9. Kt. to Q. 2d.
10. Castles.
11. P. to Q. R. 3d.
12. Q. to K. R. 5th.
13. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
14. B. P. takes Kt.
15. Q. to R. 4th.
16. Q. to B. 2d.
17. Kt. to Q. 4th.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
19. B. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
20. P. takes K. B.
21. Q. takes Q.
22. Q. R. to Q. sq.
23. Kt. P. takes P.
24. Q. R. takes Q. P.
25. K. R. to Q. sq.
26. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
27. Q. R. to Q. 7th.
28. K. R. to Q. 2d.
29. K. to B. 2d.
30. K. R. takes K. R.
31. R. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
32. R. takes Kt. P.
33. B. takes B.
34. K. to K. sq.
35. R. takes R. P.
36. R. to Q. R. 7th.
37. K. to B. sq.
38. P. to K. R. 4th.
39. P. to K. R. 5th.

## Raphael.

3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
8. Kt. P. takes Kt.
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
10. Castles.
11. K. B. to Q. 3d.
12. P. to K. B. 4th.
13. Kt. takes Q. B.
14. K. R. to B. 3d.
15. Q. to Kt. 3d.
16. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
17. P. to K. 4th.\*
18. K. B. takes Kt.
19. K. to B. sq.
20. Q. takes Q. P.
21. K. P. takes Q.
22. P. to Q. B. 4th.
23. B. to Kt. 2d.
24. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
25. B. to K. 5th.
26. K. R. to Q. B. 3d.
27. K. R. to Q. B. 2d.
28. P. to Q. R. 4th.
29. K. R. takes Q. R.
30. R. takes B. P.
31. K. to K. sq.
32. B. takes B. P.
33. R. takes B. (ch.)
34. R. to Q. B. 6th.
35. R. takes R. P.
36. R. to Q. R. 7th.
37. P. to K. R. 5th.
38. K. to B. sq.
39. K. to Kt. sq.

\* 17. P. to K. B. 5th would also have been a good move.

246 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Marache.

40. P. to K. R. 6th.
41. R. to K. B. 7th.
42. R. takes B. P.
43. R. to K. B. 6th.
44. R. to Q. R. 6th.
45. K. to B. 2d.
46. K. to Kt. 3d.†
47. K. to Kt. 4th.
48. R. takes P.
49. K. to Kt. 5th.
50. R. to Q. R. 7th.
51. P. to Kt. 4th.
52. K. to R. 5th.
53. P. to Kt. 5th.
54. K. to R. 6th.
55. K. to Kt. 6th.
56. R. to R. 8th (ch.)
57. K. to Kt. 7th.
58. P. to Kt. 6th.
59. R. to Q. R. 6th (ch.)
60. R. to K. B. 6th.
61. R. to K. B. 3d.
62. K. to Kt. 8th.
63. K. to Kt. 7th.
64. R. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
65. K. to Kt. 8th.
66. P. to Kt. 7th.
67. R. to K. B. 2d.
68. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
69. K. to R. 7th.
70. K. to Kt. 6th.

Raphael.

40. K. to R. sq.\*
41. P. to K. B. 5th.
42. K. to K. R. 2d.
43. P. to K. R. 6th.
44. R. to R. 8th (ch.)
45. P. to R. 7th.
46. K. to R. sq.
47. R. to K. R. 8th.
48. R. takes P.
49. R. to Q. Kt. 3d.
50. K. to Kt. sq.
51. K. to B. sq.
52. K. to Kt. sq.
53. R. to Kt. 8th.
54. R. to K. R. 8th (ch.)
55. K. to B. sq.
56. K. to K. 2d.
57. R. to K. Kt. 8th.
58. K. to K. 3d.
59. K. to K. 2d.
60. R. to K. Kt. 7th.
61. R. to K. 7th.
62. R. to K. Kt. 7th.
63. R. to K. 7th.
64. K. to K. sq.
65. R. to K. Kt. 7th.
66. R. to K. Kt. 6th.
67. R. to K. 6th.
68. R. to K. 5th.‡
69. R. to K. R. 5th (ch.)

And White wins.§

\* We should have preferred 40. P. to R. 6th.

† White plays the whole of this difficult end-game with great care and accuracy.

‡ R. to K. R. 6th would have been better.

§ Time, five and a quarter hours.

## GAME XLVII.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Sixth Game between RAPHAEL and MARACHE.*

Raphael.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
5. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
6. P. to K. 4th.
7. Q. Kt. takes K. P.
8. B. to Q. 3d.
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.
10. Q. to B. 2d.
11. Castles (Q. R.)
12. P. to K. R. 4th.†
13. P. to Q. 5th.
14. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.‡
15. B. to B. 4th.
16. B. takes Kt.
17. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
18. Q. Kt. takes Q. P.
19. R. P. takes P. (ch.)
20. P. to K. B. 4th.
21. Kt. to K. 3d.
22. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
23. Q. R. takes Q. P.
24. P. to K. Kt. 6th.

Marache.

1. P. to K. B. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. K. B. to K. 2d.
5. K. B. takes Q. B.
6. B. P. takes P.
7. Castles.
8. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. P. to Q. 3d.
10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. K. to R. sq.
12. P. to K. 4th.
13. Kt. to K. 2d.
14. Kt. takes Q. P.§
15. P. to Q. B. 3d.
16. B. P. takes B.
17. P. to K. 5th.
18. R. P. takes K. Kt.
19. K. to Kt. sq.
20. B. to K. B. 4th.
21. B. to Kt. 3d.
22. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
23. B. to K. B. 2d.
24. B. takes Kt. P.||

\* 2. P. to K. 4th, introduced by Mr. Staunton, is a good move.

† The whole of this game is conducted with much spirit and judgment by the first player.

‡ An excellent move; White purposely leaves his Queen's Pawn unprotected, foreseeing that to take it will entail serious loss upon Black.

§ This is, in fact, playing his adversary's game.

|| Black must submit to the loss of the Bishop; any attempt to save it would shorten the contest, thus—

25. K. R. to R. 8th (ch.)
26. Q. to R. 2d (ch.)
27. Q. mates.

24. B. anywhere.
25. K. takes K. R.
26. K. to Kt. sq.

Raphael.

25. Q. R. takes B.  
26. Q. takes K. P.  
27. K. to B. 2d.

Marache.

25. Q. takes Q. R. P.  
26. Q. to R. 8th (ch.)  
27. Q. to R. 4th.\*

And Dr. RAPHAEL mates in three moves, and wins in the Second Section.†

---

## GAME XLVIII.—RUY LOPEZ OPENING.

*First Game between LICHTENHEIN and PERRIN.*

Lichtenhein.

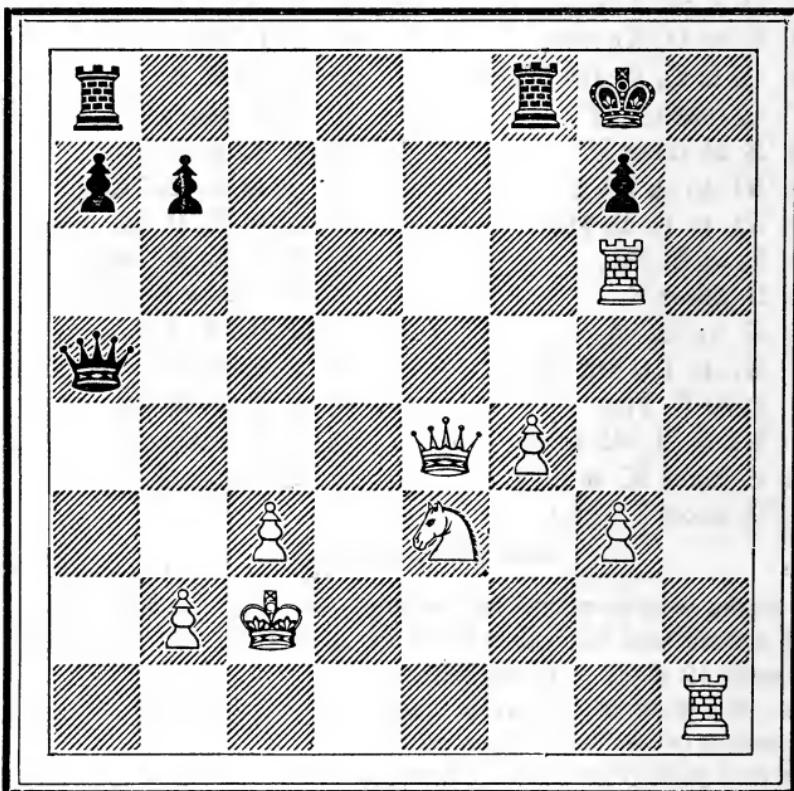
1. P. to K. 4th.  
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

Perrin.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

\* The mate that follows, as the reader may observe, is a pretty one.

BLACK.



WHITE.

† Time, two hours.

## Lichtenhein.

3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. Castles.\*
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
8. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
9. K. Kt. takes Q. B.
10. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
11. B. to K. R. 4th.
12. Q. to K. B. 3d.
13. B. to Kt. 3d.
14. Q. to Q. 3d.
15. K. to R. sq.
16. P. to K. B. 4th.
17. P. to K. 5th.
18. Q. R. to K. sq.
19. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
20. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
21. Q. takes B. P.
22. B. P. takes P.
23. Kt. to Q. 5th.†
24. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
25. P. to K. 6th.
26. B. takes B.
27. K. to Kt. sq.
28. Kt. to Kt. 6th (ch.)
29. P. to K. 7th.
30. Kt. to B. 8th (ch.)
31. P. takes K. R. (Q.)
32. Q. takes P. (ch.)

## Perrin.

3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. K. P. takes P.
7. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
8. Q. B. takes K. B.
9. Kt. P. takes K. Kt.
10. P. to K. R. 3d.
11. Q. to K. 2d.
12. Q. to K. 4th.
13. Q. to K. R. 4th.
14. Castles (K. R.)
15. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
16. P. to K. B. 4th.
17. Q. R. to Q. sq.
18. K. R. to K. sq.†
19. B. to Kt. 3d.
20. K. to R. sq.
21. Q. P. takes P.
22. Q. R. to Q. 7th.
23. B. to K. B. 7th.
24. Q. to K. B. 2d.
25. Q. to K. Kt. sq.‡
26. Kt. takes B. (ch.)
27. Kt. to K. 5th.
28. K. to R. 2d.
29. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
30. K. R. takes Kt.
31. R. takes Q.||

And Black resigns. ¶

\* He might, with as much effect, have played 5. K. B. takes Q. Kt.

† It is evident that he cannot move 18. Q. P. takes K. P. on account of White's reply 19. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)

‡ From this point to the end the game is very lively; the termination is well conducted by the winning player.

§ The only place of retreat to protect the Rook.

|| If 31. Q. takes Q. then White would play 32. Q. takes Kt.

¶ Time, two and a half hours.

## GAME XLIX.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Second Game between LICHTENHEIN and PERRIN.*

## Perrin.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. Castles.
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
10. P. takes Q. Kt.
11. K. P. takes P.
12. P. to K. B. 4th.
13. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
14. Kt. to K. 5th.
15. B. P. takes Kt.
16. Q. to Q. 2d.
17. Q. takes K. B.
18. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
19. Q. R. to B. 3d.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. B. to Q. B. 2d.
22. Kt. P. takes P.
23. Q. to K. B. 3d.
24. Q. to K. B. 2d.\*
25. K. to R. sq.
26. Q. R. takes K. B. P.†
27. Q. to K. Kt. 2d (ch.)
28. R. to K. Kt. sq.
29. P. to Q. R. 3d.

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. B. P. takes P.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
6. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
7. K. B. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
10. P. to K. B. 4th.
11. K. P. takes P.
12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. Q. B. to K. 3d.
14. Kt. takes Kt.
15. K. B. to K. Kt. 4th.
16. K. B. takes Q. B. (ch.)
17. K. R. to B. 2d.
18. Q. to K. 2d.
19. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
20. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
21. P. to K. B. 5th.
22. Kt. P. takes P.
23. Q. to Q. Kt. 5th.
24. P. to K. B. 6th.
25. K. R. to B. 5th.
26. K. R. takes Q. R.
27. K. to R. sq.
28. Q. to K. 2d.
29. K. R. to B. 7th.

And Black wins.‡

\* The only method of protecting both the attacked Pawns.

† Wholly unsound; White omitted to observe that after 27. Q. to K. Kt. 2d (ch.), he could not play 28. R. takes K. R. on account of Black's move of 28. Q. to K. 8th (ch.).

‡ Time, two hours.

## GAME L.—FIANCHETTO OPENING.

*Third Game between LICHTENHEIN and PERRIN.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. B. to Q. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
5. Castles.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. P. to K. B. 4th.
8. P. to K. 5th.
9. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
10. B. P. takes P.
11. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
12. K. B. takes K. P.
13. K. B. takes Q. B.
14. Q. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
15. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
16. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
17. B. to K. R. 4th.
18. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
19. Q. to Q. 3d.
20. R. takes K. Kt.
21. B. to K. Kt. 3d.
22. Q. to K. 4th (ch.)

## Perrin.

1. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
2. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
5. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
7. P. to K. B. 4th.
8. P. to Q. 3d.
9. Q. P. takes P.
10. K. B. takes K. P.\*
11. K. B. to Q. 3d.
12. Q. B. to Q. 4th.†
13. K. Kt. takes K. B.
14. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
15. Q. to Q. 2d.
16. P. to K. R. 3d.
17. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.
18. K. Kt. to K. 6th.
19. K. Kt. takes K. R.
20. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
21. P. to K. B. 5th.‡
22. K. to B. 2d.

\* Unwise, since White immediately regains the Pawn with an improved position.

† If

13. K. takes B.
14. K. Kt. to B. 4th.
15. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
16. K. B. takes B. P.

and White ought to win.

‡ Fatal; 21. K. R. to B. sq., followed by Castling (Q. R.), seems to be his most plausible line of play.

12. B. takes R. P. (ch.)
13. Q. to Q. 3d (ch.)
14. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
15. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.

## Lichtenhein.

23. B. takes B. P.\*
24. B. to K. 5th (ch.)
25. Q. Kt. takes B.
26. R. to B. 7th (ch.)
27. Kt. takes Q.
28. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
29. Q. to B. 3d (ch.)
30. Kt. P. takes Kt.

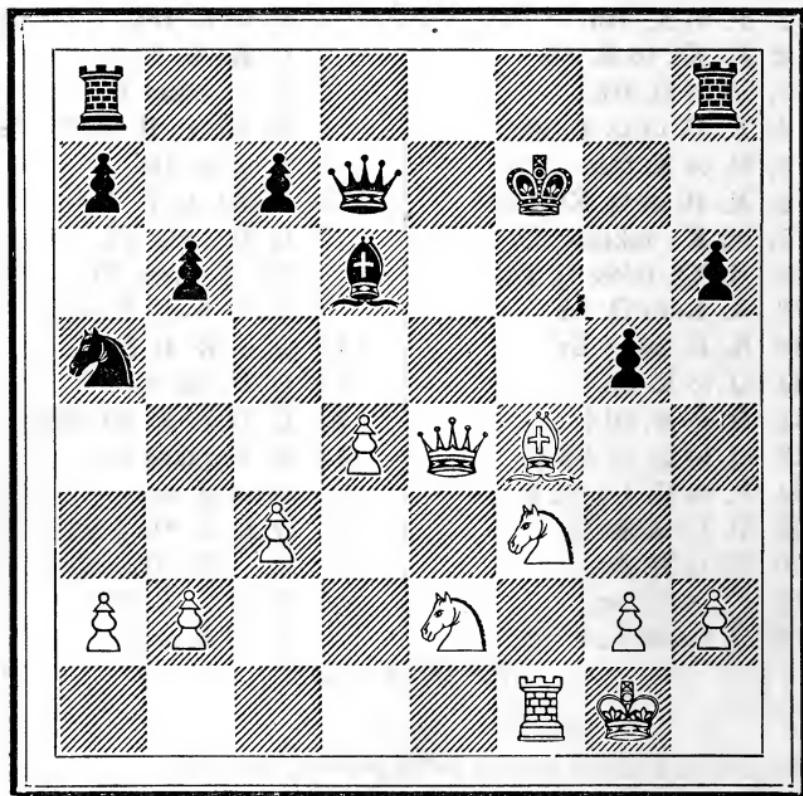
## Perrin.

23. K. to Kt. 2d.†
24. B. takes B.‡
25. Q. to K. 3d.
26. Q. takes R.§
27. K. takes Kt.
28. Q. R. to K. sq.
29. K. to Kt. sq.

And Mr. LICHTENHEIN wins in the Second Section.

\* The following is the position of the men after White's twenty-third move:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

† If 23. Kt. P. takes B., White moves 24. K. Kt. takes B. P., and must win; if 23. B. takes B., White would play 24. Q. Kt. to K. 5th (ch.), gaining the Queen.

‡ Forced, for if 24. K. to Kt. sq., then his adversary would check with the Queen at Knight's sixth, and if 24. K. to B. 2d or B. sq., White would reply with 25. Kt. takes Kt. P. (ch.), etc.

§ Otherwise mate ensues in two moves.

|| It is evident that he cannot save the Knight.

## THIRD SECTION.

## C O M B A T A N T S.

MORPHY AND LICHTENHEIN.

PAULSEN AND RAPHAEL.

## GAME LI.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*First Game between MORPHY and LICHTENHEIN.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to K. 5th.
6. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
7. K. Kt. takes Q. P.
8. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
9. K. B. to Q. 3d.
10. K. B. takes Kt.
11. Q. to K. 2d.
12. B. to K. 3d.†
13. Q. to Q. B. 4th.‡
14. P. to K. Kt. 3d.§
15. B. P. takes B.
16. K. to B. 2d.
17. K. to Kt. sq.
18. Q. takes B. P. (ch.)

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
7. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
8. Kt. P. takes Kt.
9. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
10. Q. to K. R. 5th.
11. Q. P. takes B.
12. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
13. K. B. takes B.
14. Q. to Q. sq.
15. Q. to Q. 8th (ch.)
16. Q. to B. 6th (ch.)
17. B. to K. R. 6th.
18. K. to B. sq.||

And Black wins.¶

\* Not a very common defence, but a perfectly safe one.

† He should have Castled at once.

‡ If 13. Q. to Q. 2d, Black would of course play 13. Q. R. to Q. sq.

§ If 14. Q. takes B. P. (ch.)

14. K. to B. sq.

15. Q. takes Q. R. (ch.)

15. K. to K. 2d.

and Black must win.

|| White cannot delay the mate longer than three moves.

¶ Time, forty-five minutes.

## GAME LII.—PETROFF DEFENCE.

*Second Game between MORPHY and LICHTENHEIN.*

Morphy.	Lichtenhein.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.	3. K. Kt. takes P.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	4. P. to Q. 4th.*
5. K. B. takes Q. P.	5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.	6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. P. to Q. 3d.	7. Castles.
8. P. to K. R. 3d.	8. P. to K. R. 3d.
9. Q. B. to K. 3d.	9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Q. to Q. 2d.	10. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.†
11. P. to K. Kt. 4th.	11. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
12. R. P. takes Q. Kt.	12. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
13. K. R. to Kt. sq.	13. Kt. to K. R. 2d.
14. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.	14. K. to R. sq.
15. P. to K. Kt. 5th.	15. P. to K. R. 4th.
16. K. Kt. to R. 4th.	16. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
17. Q. to K. 2d.	17. Q. B. to B. 3d.‡
18. P. to K. B. 4th.§	18. K. P. takes P.
19. B. to Q. 4th (ch.)	19. K. to Kt. sq.
20. K. Kt. to B. 5th.	20. K. R. to K. sq.
21. K. Kt. to R. 6th (ch.)	21. K. to B. sq.
22. Castles.	22. Q. B. takes Q. Kt.
23. Q. P. takes B.	23. Q. to K. 2d.
24. P. to K. 5th.	24. B. takes P.
25. B. takes B.	25. Q. takes B.

\* This is unusual, but it appears to be good.

† Well-played.

‡ This was incorrect; he should not have abandoned the command of his Queen's Bishop's diagonal.

§ White at once takes advantage of Black's error.

|| The only move; if 20. Kt. P. takes Kt., White wins immediately by 21. Kt. to K. B. 6th check, followed by the capture of the Rook's Pawn with the Queen.

Morphy.

26. Q. R. to Q. 7th.\*  
 27. Q. to Q. B. 4th.

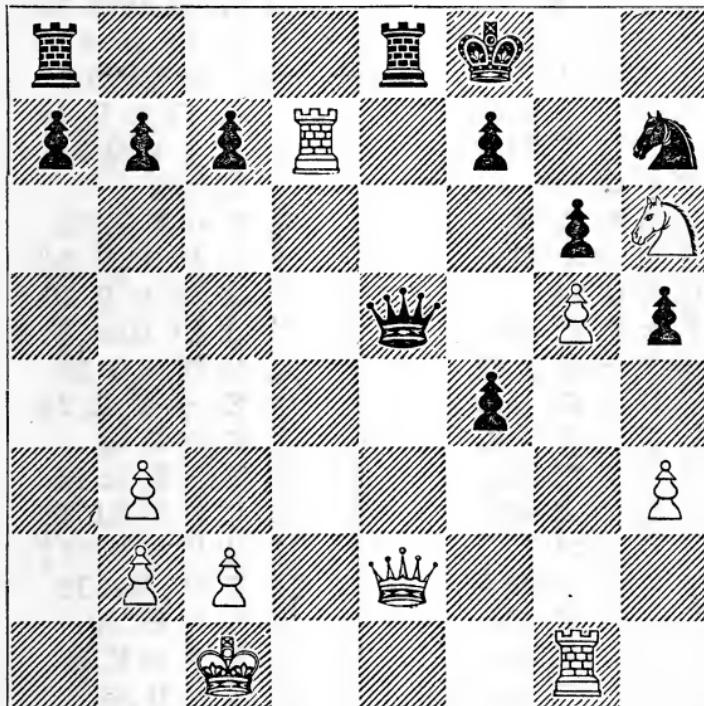
Lichtenhein.

26. Q. to K. Kt. 2d.†  
 27. K. R. to K. 2d.

\* The winning move.

† The position is eminently worthy of examination:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

We see no better move for Black than the one he made. If the Queen be taken White mates. If 26: Kt. takes Kt. P., then 27. K. R. takes Kt. If he play 26. Q. to K. B. 4th, then 27. Q. to Q. 3d. Finally, if

27. Q. R. takes K. B. P. (ch.)  
 28. Q. R to B. 8th (ch.)

26. K. to Kt. 2d.  
 27. K. to R. sq.  
 28. K. to Kt. 2d.

Should he play 28. K. R. takes Q. R., then White 29. Q. takes Q. (ch.) and wins; if 28. Kt. takes Q. R., White would answer with 29. Kt. to B. 7th (ch.), winning the Queen.

29. Q. R. to Kt. 8th (ch.)  
 30. Q. takes Q. (ch.)

29. K. R. takes Q. R.

and wins at once.

226 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Morphy.	Lichtenhein.
28. Q. R. takes K. R.	28. K. takes Q. R.
29. R. to K. sq. (ch.)	

And White wins.\*

---

GAME LIII.—QUEEN'S GAMBIT REFUSED

*Third Game between MORPHY and LICHTENHEIN.*

Lichtenhein.	Morphy.
1. P. to Q. 4th.	1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. B. 4th.	2. P. to K. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	4. P. to Q. B. 4th.
5. P. to K. 3d.	5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. R. 3d.	6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. Q. P. takes P.	7. K. B. takes P.
8. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.	8. K. B. to Q. 3d.
9. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.	9. Castles.
10. Q. Kt. to Kt. 5th.	10. K. B. to K. 2d.
11. Q. Kt. to Q. 4th.	11. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
12. Q. Kt. takes Q. Kt.	12. Kt. P. takes Q. Kt.
13. K. B. to Q. 3d.	13. P. to Q. B. 4th.
14. Kt. to Q. 2d.	14. Kt. takes Kt.
15. Q. takes Kt.	15. Q. P. takes P.
16. K. B. to K. 4th.	16. Q. takes Q.
17. K. takes Q.	17. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
18. Q. B. to K. 5th.†	18. Q. R. to Kt. 4th.
19. K. B. to Q. B. 6th.	19. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
20. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.	20. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
21. Q. B. to B. 7th.	21. P. to B. 6th (ch.)
22. K. takes P.	22. Q. B. takes K. B.
23. Q. B. takes R.	23. K. B. to B. 3d (ch.)
24. K. to Q. 2d.	24. R. P. takes B.
25. Kt. P. takes Q. B.	25. B. takes Q. R.

\* Time, three hours.

† He would have done better in the end if he had now taken measures to bring his Rooks into play.

## Lichtenhein.

26. R. takes B.
27. P. to Q. R. 4th.
28. P. to Q. R. 5th.
29. R. takes P.
30. P. to K. B. 3d.
31. R. takes B. P.

## Morphy.

26. R. to Q. B. sq.
27. R. takes B. P.
28. Kt. P. takes P.
29. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
30. R. to Q. Kt. 3d.\*

And the game was eventually drawn.†

## GAME LIV.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Fourth Game between MORPHY and LICHTENHEIN.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
4. P. to K. 4th.
5. Q. Kt. takes P.
6. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
7. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
8. Q. Kt. takes K. B. (ch.)
9. Q. to K. 5th.
10. Q. P. takes Q.
11. Castles.
12. K. Kt. to R. 3d.
13. K. R. to Kt. sq.
14. P. to K. B. 4th.
15. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
16. B. to Kt. 2d.
17. B. P. takes P.
18. K. R. to K. sq.
19. P. to K. Kt. 4th.‡
20. K. takes Q. R.

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. B. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. B. P. takes P.
5. K. B. to K. 2d.
6. K. B. takes Q. B.
7. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
8. Q. takes Q. Kt.
9. Q. takes Q.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. B. to Kt. 2d.
12. K. R. to B. sq.
13. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
14. K. to K. 2d.
15. P. to Q. 3d.
16. Q. P. takes P.
17. K. R. to B. 4th.
18. Q. R. to Q. sq.
19. Q. R. takes Q. R. (ch.)
20. R. to K. B. sq.

\* Failing by an oversight to score a game which his extra Pawn ought to have insured him.

† Time, four hours and a half.

‡ Apparently the best move.

## Lichtenhein.

21. B. takes Kt.
22. K. to Q. 2d.
23. R. to K. 3d.
24. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
25. R. to K. sq.
26. K. takes R.
27. K. to Q. 2d.†
28. P. to Q. B. 4th.
29. Kt. to B. 2d.
30. Kt. to Q. sq.‡
31. K. to B. 2d.
32. Kt. to B. 3d.
33. K. takes B.
34. Kt. to K. 2d.

## Morphy.

21. B. takes B.
22. P. to K. R. 3d.
23. P. to K. Kt. 4th.\*
24. R. to K. B. 8th.
25. R. takes R.
26. B. to K. 5th.
27. K. to Q. 2d.
28. K. to Q. B. 3d.
29. B. to Q. Kt. 8th.
30. B. takes R. P.§
31. K. to B. 4th.
32. B. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
33. P. to Q. B. 3d.

And Mr. MORPHY wins in the Third Section.||

## GAME LV.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*First Game between PAULSEN and RAPHAEL.*

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes P.

## Paulsen.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. B. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

\* This confines the Knight until Black is enabled to make an advantageous exchange of Rooks.

† If he moves 27. P. to B. 4th, Black plays 27. B. to Kt. 8th, etc.

‡ White, who has thus far conducted the game with commendable prudence and circumspection, fails to see his adversary's intention of sacrificing the Bishop.

§ It would require a lengthy analysis to determine whether, in thus giving up the Bishop for two Pawns, Black opened a certain path to victory. White, at any rate, could not hope for more than a drawn game. The two combatants afterwards played several back games from this point, some of which were won by Black, and some drawn.

|| Time, five hours.

Raphael.

5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.\*
7. P. to Q. B. 3d.
8. Q. takes K. B.
9. P. to K. B. 3d.†
10. Q. to Q. sq.
11. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
12. K. B. to Q. 3d.‡
13. B. P. takes Q. Kt. §
14. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
15. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
16. K. to Q. sq.
17. Q. B. to B. sq.
18. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
19. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
20. Q. to K. B. 2d.
21. K. B. takes Kt.
22. Q. Kt. takes P.
23. B. to Q. 2d.
24. R. to K. sq.
25. Q. to K. 3d.

Paulsen.

5. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. Q. to Q. R. 4th (ch.)
7. K. B. takes K. Kt.
8. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Castles.
11. Q. to K. 4th.
12. Q. Kt. takes Kt. P.
13. Q. takes Q. R.
14. Q. to Q. 5th.
15. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
16. Q. to K. R. 3d.
17. Q. to K. R. 5th.
18. P. to Q. 4th.
19. Q. to K. R. 4th.
20. Kt. takes K. P.
21. K. P. takes K. B.
22. Q. to Q. 4th (ch.)
23. Q. takes R. P.
24. B. to Q. 2d.
25. B. to Q. Kt. 4th.||

And White resigns ¶.

\* He might now have played 6. Q. B. to K. 3d with safety, since Black could not, in that case, capture the Knight's Pawn without a loss of position. See two of the games between the winners of the first and second prizes in the fourth section.

† His only move to save the King's Pawn; he cannot play 9. K. B. to Q. 3d, because when Black attacks the Queen with Queen's Knight he must retreat the Queen to Queen's square, in order to protect the Knight at Rook's fourth.

‡ This was a most unfortunate error; he should have brought his Queen's Bishop to King's 3d, in which case Black could not capture the Knight's Pawn.

§ Why should he, in addition to the loss of the Pawn, also give up the exchange? Perhaps as good a move as he had was to Castle at once.

|| Although there is no prospect of an immediate mate, Black's great superiority in force must ultimately win.

¶ Time, six hours.

## GAME LVI.—QUEEN'S KNIGHT'S OPENING.

*Second Game between PAULSEN and RAPHAEL.*

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 4th.
5. P. to Q. 5th.
6. K. Kt. takes K. P.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. Q. to Q. 4th.
9. Kt. P. takes B.
10. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
11. Castles.
12. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
13. P. to Q. R. 4th.
14. Q. B. to R. 3d.
15. K. R. to K. sq.
16. Kt. to Q. 2d.
17. P. to Q. B. 4th.
18. P. to Q. B. 5th.
19. B. P. takes P.
20. P. to Q. B. 4th.

Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
5. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.\*
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. K. Kt. takes K. P.
8. K. B. takes Q. Kt. (ch.)
9. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Castles.
11. P. to K. R. 3d.
12. P. to Q. R. 4th.
13. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
14. K. R. to K. sq.
15. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
16. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
17. K. R. to K. 2d.†
18. Q. to Q. 2d.
19. B. P. takes P.
20. Q. R. to K. sq.

\* In a game of less importance we should have been tempted to try the following:—

6. Q. P. takes Kt.
7. B. P. takes P. (ch.)
8. Kt. P. takes Kt.
9. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
10. Q. takes K. B.

5. K. Kt. takes K. P.
6. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
7. Q. B. takes P.
8. K. B. takes P. (ch.)
9. K. B. takes Q. R.
10. Castles.

and it is a question whether the extra Rook and two Pawns will compensate Black for the loss of two minor pieces. White, we believe, cannot now capture the King's Pawn with safety.

† 17. P. to Q. Kt. 3d would have parried the attack which White threatens to obtain by the advance of the Queen's Bishop's Pawns.

Paulsen.

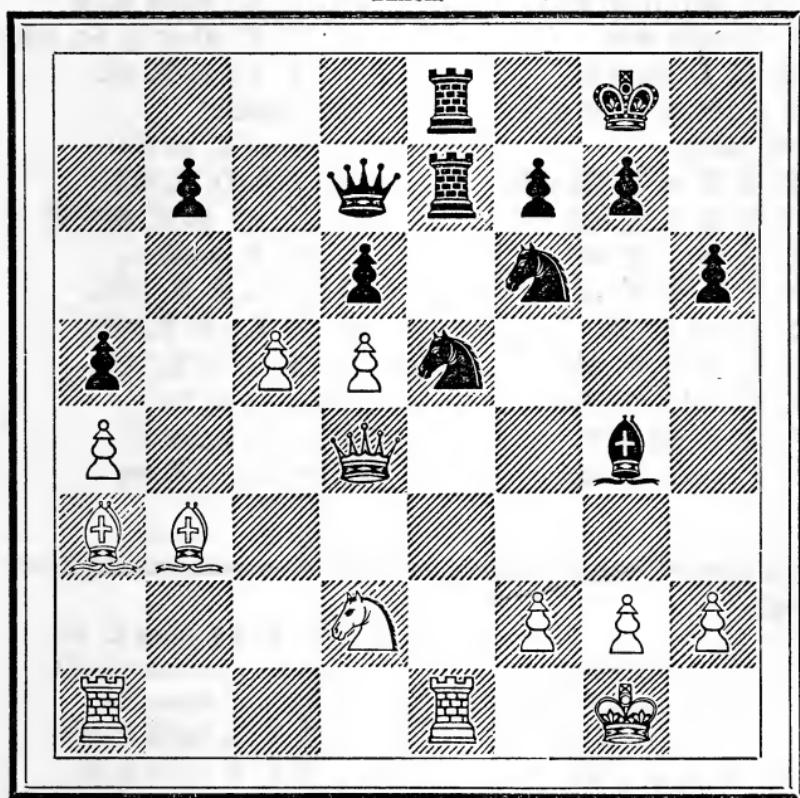
21. P. to Q. B. 5th.
22. K. R. takes K. R.
23. K. R. takes Q.
24. P. to K. B. 3d.
25. R. to Q. sq.
26. P. to Q. B. 6th.
27. K. to R. sq.
28. Q. P. takes P.

Raphael.

21. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.\*
22. Q. Kt. takes Q.
23. K. Kt. takes K. R.
24. R. to K. 7th.
25. B. to K. R. 6th.†
26. R. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
27. Kt. P. takes P.
28. K. Kt. to K. 4th.

\* This seems to be his best move. The situation is one of considerable interest.

BLACK.



WHITE.

† Prettily played; if

26. Kt. P. takes B.
27. R. takes R.
28. K. moves.

with the better game.

26. R. takes Kt.
27. Kt. takes B. P. (ch.)
28. Kt. takes R.

## Paulsen.

29. Q. B. takes Q. P.
30. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.<sup>†</sup>
31. Q. B. to K. Kt. 3d.
32. Kt. to K. 4th.
33. R. to Q. B. sq.
34. K. to Kt. sq.
35. B. to Q. 3d.
36. Kt. to Q. 6th.
37. R. to Q. B. 5th.
38. R. takes R. P.
39. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
40. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
41. K. takes P.
42. R. to R. 7th.
43. P. to R. 5th.
44. R. to R. 6th.
45. R. to K. B. 6th (ch.)

## Raphael.

29. K. Kt. takes Q. B. P.\*
30. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
31. Q. Kt. to K. B. 4th.<sup>‡</sup>
32. Q. Kt. to K. 6th.
33. B. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
34. B. takes B. P.
35. P. to K. B. 4th.<sup>§</sup>
36. K. Kt. to Q. 5th.
37. R. to K. B. 3d.
38. P. to B. 5th.
39. P. takes Q. B.
40. P. takes P. (ch.)
41. P. to Kt. 4th.
42. K. to B. sq.
43. R. to K. B. 2d.
44. R. to K. 2d.
45. K. to K. sq.

\* This appears to us the safest move; if

30. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
31. K. B. to Q. 5th.

and White has a good game. But if

30. K. B. takes B. P. (ch.) (A.)
31. Kt. takes K. Kt.
32. R. to K. B. sq.

and Black will win. White's mistake, in this variation, consists in capturing the Bishop's Pawn at the thirtieth move. He should have played as in the variation.

## A.

30. Kt. takes K. Kt.
31. Kt. to Kt. sq.

and White must win. The situation affords an opportunity for many interesting variations.

<sup>†</sup> To prevent 30. Q. Kt. to K. 7th.

<sup>‡</sup> He ought to have played 31. P. to K. R. 4th.

<sup>§</sup> We should have preferred 35. K. Kt. to K. 4th or Q. 5th.

Paulsen.

46. Kt. to K. B. 5th.  
47. B. takes Kt.

Raphael.

46. Kt. takes Kt.

And the game was drawn.\*

---

### GAME LVII.—KING'S GAMBIT REFUSED.

*Third Game between PAULSEN and RAPHAEL.*

Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.†
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. K. to B. sq.
7. P. to Q. 3d.
8. Q. B. takes B. P.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Q. to Q. 2d.
11. Kt. P. takes B.
12. Kt. to K. 4th.
13. Q. B. takes Q. Kt.

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. P. takes P.†
4. K. B. to K. 2d.‡
5. K. B. to R. 5th (ch.)
6. Q. B. to Kt. 5th.
7. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
10. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
12. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
13. Kt. takes Q. B.

\* Time, fourteen hours.

† This is better than 3. Q. takes Q. P.

‡ The correct move.

§ The proper play at this stage of the opening is 4. K. B. to Q. 3d, and the game is perfectly even. But if he had played 4. Q. takes Q. P. the following variation would probably have occurred:—

5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. to B. 2d.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. K. B. to Q. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
10. K. R. to K. sq.
11. Q. Kt. takes K. B. (ch.)
12. Q. B. takes P.

4. Q. takes Q. P.
5. Q. to K. 3d (ch.)
6. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
9. P. to K. B. 3d.
10. Q. to K. B. 2d.
11. B. P. takes Q. Kt.

and White's game is preferable (See *Leifaden*, 1857, p. 204).

## Raphael.

14. Q. to Kt. 2d.
15. K. R. to Kt. sq.
16. K. to K. 2d.
17. Q. takes Kt.†
18. K. to Q. 2d.
19. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
20. Q. takes Q.
21. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
22. Q. R. takes B. P.‡
23. K. R. takes B.
24. R. to Kt. 2d.
25. P. to Q. 6th.
26. B. to Q. 5th.
27. B. takes Kt. P.
28. B. to Q. 5th.
29. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
30. K. to Q. B. 3d.
31. K. to Q. 4th.
32. P. to Q. R. 4th.
33. B. to Q. 5th.
34. P. to Q. B. 4th.
35. R. to Q. Kt. 2d.
36. B. to K. 4th.
37. K. to Q. 5th.
38. P. to Q. 4th.
39. P. to B. 5th.
40. Q. P. takes P.
41. P. to B. 6th.

## Paulsen.

14. P. to K. B. 4th.
15. Kt. to Kt. 5th.\*
16. B. P. takes Kt.
17. P. takes B. P. (ch.)
18. Q. to K. B. 3d.
19. K. to R. sq.
20. B. takes Q.
21. Q. R. to K. sq.
22. B. to Kt. 4th (ch.)
23. K. R. takes Q. R.
24. P. to K. R. 3d.
25. B. P. takes P.
26. K. R. to K. B. 3d.
27. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
28. Q. R. takes Kt. P.
29. R. to Kt. 8th.§
30. Q. R. to K. 8th.
31. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
32. P. to Q. R. 4th.
33. Q. R. to K. 4th.
34. K. to Kt. 2d.
35. Q. R. to K. 2d.
36. Q. R. to R. 2d.
37. Q. R. to R. 3d.
38. K. R. to B. 2d.
39. Q. P. takes P.
40. Q. R. to R. sq.
41. Q. R. to Q. sq. (ch.)

\* Well played, for if White capture the Knight with Pawn, Black will win the Queen.

† Should he play

17. Q. P. takes P.
18. Q. takes Kt.
19. R. takes B.

17. B. to B. 7th.
18. B. takes K. R.
19. Q. to K. B. 3d.

and White, although he has a minor piece and two Pawns for the Rook, would hardly be able to win.

‡ This loses the exchange, but there was nothing better.

§ Necessary; otherwise White wins the Rook by 30. R. to Kt. sq., followed by 31. K. to B. 3d.

## Raphael.

42. K. to B. 5th.  
 43. R. to Kt. 7th (ch.)  
 44. P. to B. 7th.  
 45. B. to Q. B. 6th.  
 46. R. to Q. R. 7th.\*  
 47. K. to Kt. 6th.  
 48. R. to R. 8th.  
 49. B. takes Q. R.  
 50. B. to K. B. 3d.  
 51. K. takes P.  
 52. K. to R. 6th.  
 53. B. to Kt. 4th.

## Paulsen.

42. K. R. to B. 5th.  
 43. K. to B. 3d.  
 44. R. to Q. B. sq.  
 45. K. to K. 2d.  
 46. K. R. to B. 4th (ch.)  
 47. K. to Q. 3d.  
 48. Q. R. takes R.  
 49. R. to Q. B. 4th.  
 50. R. takes B. P.  
 51. K. to B. 4th.  
 52. R. to K. B. 2d.  
 53. K. to Kt. 5th.

And Mr. PAULSEN wins in the Third Section.†

## FOURTH SECTION.‡

## C O M B A T A N T S .

LICHTENHEIN AND RAPHAEL. | MORPHY AND PAULSEN.

## GAME LVIII.—RUY LOPEZ OPENING.

*First Game between LICHTENHEIN and RAPHAEL.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 \* 46. K. to Kt. 6th would not have been much better; suppose  
 46. K. to Kt. 6th.  
 47. R. to Kt. 8th.

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 46. K. to Q. 3d.

Black cannot take the Bishop's Pawn on account of White's playing 48. R. to Q. 8th (ch.), etc., therefore

48. R. to Kt. 7th.  
 and Black should win.

47. K. R. to K. B. sq.  
 48. K. R. to B. 2d.

† Time, seven hours and a half. The second player, although his opponent had only scored two games, resigned the match at this stage.

‡ In this Section Lichtenhein and Raphael play to decide who shall take the third and who the fourth prize; Morphy and Paulsen to ascertain who shall be entitled to the first and who to the second prize.

## Lichtenhein.

3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. takes P.
7. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
8. Castles.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. P. to K. 5th.
11. Q. to K. B. 3d.
12. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
13. Q. to Q. 5th (ch.)
14. P. to K. 6th.
15. Q. to K. B. 5th.
16. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
17. Q. to K. 4th.
18. Q. to R. 4th.
19. P. to K. B. 5th.
20. B. to R. 6th.
21. K. Kt. takes P.
22. Q. R. to K. sq.
23. B. to B. 4th.
24. K. Kt. takes K. B.
25. Kt. to K. 4th.

## Raphael.

3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 3d.†
5. K. P. takes P.
6. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
7. Kt. P. takes K. B.
8. K. B. to K. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. Kt. to K. sq.‡
11. P. to Q. B. 4th.
12. P. to K. B. 3d.§
13. K. to R. sq.
14. P. to Q. B. 3d.
15. Q. B. to B. sq.
16. P. to Kt. 3d.
17. P. to Q. 4th.
18. Q. to Q. 3d.||
19. Kt. P. takes P.
20. K. R. to Kt. sq.
21. Q. to B. 2d.
22. P. to Q. 5th.
23. K. B. to Q. 3d.
24. Kt. takes K. Kt.
25. Q. to K. Kt. 2d.

\* Von der Lasa seems to favor 4. Q. to K. 2d, although he does not consider the move in the text a bad one; Lange (*Sammlung neuer Schachpartien*, p. 55) decidedly prefers 4. Castles, or 4. P. to Q. 4th.

† Very weak; he should have played 4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

‡ If

11. P. to K. 6th.
12. Q. to B. 3d.
13. K. P. takes Q. B.

and wins two pieces for the Rook.

§ Very bad; although Black's position, in consequence of his erroneous fourth move, is already so confined that it is difficult to say what he could have done better. Perhaps his best course was to play 12. P. to K. Kt. 3d, with a view of freeing his Knight, now so unfortunately placed.

|| If he take the King's Pawn with Bishop, White will capture the Bishop's Pawn.

10. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
11. Kt. to K. 6th.
12. Kt. takes K. R.

## Lichtenhein.

26. B. to Kt. 3d.  
 27. Q. R. takes Kt.  
 28. K. R. takes B. P.\*  
 29. K. R. to B. 7th.

## Raphael.

26. Kt. takes Kt.  
 27. P. to K. R. 3d.  
 28. K. to R. 2d.

And Black resigns.†

## GAME LIX.—BISHOP'S GAMBIT.

*Second Game between LICHTENHEIN and RAPHAEL.*

## Raphael.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. P. to K. B. 4th.  
 3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.  
 4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.§  
 5. Q. to K. B. 3d.  
 6. Q. P. takes K. B.  
 7. Q. B. takes P.  
 8. Q. B. takes B. P.||  
 9. Q. takes K. Kt.  
 10. Castles.  
 11. Q. R. to K. B. sq.  
 12. B. to Kt. 3d.  
 13. Kt. to B. 3d.  
 14. B. P. takes B.  
 15. P. to K. R. 4th.  
 16. Q. takes Kt.  
 17. P. to K. Kt. 4th.  
 18. P. to K. R. 5th.  
 19. Q. to B. 2d.  
 20. P. to R. 6th.  
 21. Q. to B. 4th.

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. K. P. takes P.  
 3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.†  
 4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.  
 5. K. B. takes Q. Kt.  
 6. Castles.  
 7. K. Kt. takes P.  
 8. Q. takes Q. B.  
 9. P. to Q. 3d.  
 10. Kt. to Q. 2d.  
 11. Kt. to K. 4th.  
 12. B. to K. 3d.  
 13. B. takes B.  
 14. Q. R. to K. sq.  
 15. Kt. takes Kt.  
 16. Q. R. to K. 3d.  
 17. K. R. to K. sq.  
 18. Q. R. to K. 6th.  
 19. Q. to K. 2d.  
 20. Q. R. to K. 7th.  
 21. Q. R. to K. 5th.

\* Well conceived; Black cannot now escape some immediate loss.

† Time, two hours and three quarters.

‡ A favorite defence of the first player, who has used it for several years; it seems to be good.

§ Perhaps as good a reply as any to Black's third move.

|| Well played.

## Raphael.

22. Q. to Q. 2d.
23. Q. to K. B. 2d.
24. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
25. Q. to K. B. 4th.
26. Q. to B. 5th.
27. Q. R. takes Q.
28. K. R. takes P.
29. K. to Q. 2d.
30. K. to Q. 3d.
31. K. R. to B. 6th.
32. K. R. takes K. P.

## Lichtenhein.

22. Q. R. to K. 6th.
23. Q. to K. 3d.
24. Q. R. to K. 7th.
25. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.\*
26. Q. takes Q.
27. Kt. P. takes P.
28. Q. R. to K. 8th (ch.)
29. K. R. to K. 7th (ch.)
30. K. R. takes Kt. P.
31. Q. R. to K. 2d.
32. K. R. takes R. P.

And, after a few moves, White resigns.†

---

## GAME LX.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Third Game between LICHTENHEIN and RAPHAEL.*

## Lichtenhein.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 5th.§

## Raphael.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.†
2. P. to K. B. 4th.||

\* Black is now enabled to accomplish what he has evidently been so long endeavoring to bring about—an exchange of Queens.

† Time, four hours.

‡ This defence is first given by Reinganum (*Ben-Oni oder die Vertheidigungen gegen die Gambitzüge*, p. 100), and was adopted by St. Amant in two of his games against Staunton. It is not so good as 1. P. to Q. 4th, or 1. P. to K. B. 4th.

§ Much better than 2. P. to K. 4th, or 2. P. takes P.

|| The move given by the authors is 2. P. to K. 4th, but even then White gets the advantage, as may be seen from the following:—

3. P. to K. 4th.
4. P. to K. B. 4th.

2. P. to K. 4th.
3. P. to Q. 3d.

Preferable to the move 4. P. to Q. B. 4th, given in Staunton's *Handbook*—

5. K. B. to Q. 3d.

4. P. to K. B. 4th.
5. B. P. takes P.

## Lichtenhein.

3. P. to K. 4th.
4. K. B. to Q. 3d.
5. K. B. takes P.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
12. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
13. Castles.
14. K. Kt. to R. 4th.
15. Q. Kt. takes Q. B.
16. B. to Q. 2d.
17. B. to B. 3d.
18. Q. to K. R. 5th.
19. Q. to Kt. 6th (ch.)
20. K. R. to B. 3d.
21. K. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
22. Q. P. takes P. (in pass.)

## Raphael.

3. P. to Q. 3d.
4. B. P. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
7. K. B. to Kt. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. P. to K. R. 3d.
10. K. Kt. takes K. B.
11. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
12. Q. to Q. 2d.\*
13. Kt. to R. 3d.
14. K. R. to B. 3d.
15. Kt. P. takes Q. Kt.
16. K. R. to B. 2d.†
17. K. to R. 2d.‡
18. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
19. K. to Kt. sq.§
20. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.||
21. P. to K. 4th.
22. Q. takes P.¶

6. K. B. takes P.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. B. P. takes P.
10. Castles.

6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. Q. P. takes P.

and White has a better developed game.

\* We should have preferred 12. Q. to R. 4th (ch.), followed, if White played 13. K. to B. 2d, by 13. Q. to Kt. 5th, and if White moved 13. B. to Q. 2d, by 13. Q. to Kt. 4th.

† If 16. P. to K. 4th, White's proper reply would be 17. B. P. takes Q. P.

‡ He should have taken off the Bishop.

§ If 19. K. to R. sq., White could at once capture the Rook's Pawn, giving check.

|| There appears to be really nothing better; he cannot advance his King's Pawn without losing it, and in order to drive the White Queen from her threatening position he would be compelled to sacrifice the exchange.

¶ Affording White an opportunity of which he does not hesitate to take advantage.

Lichtenhein.

23. Q. takes B. (ch.)\*  
 24. K. R. takes K. R. (ch.)  
 25. Kt. to Kt. 6th. (ch.)

Raphael.

23. K. R. takes Q.  
 24. K. to R. sq.

And Mr. LICHTENHEIN wins the Third Prize.†

---

## GAME LXI.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*First Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

Morphy.

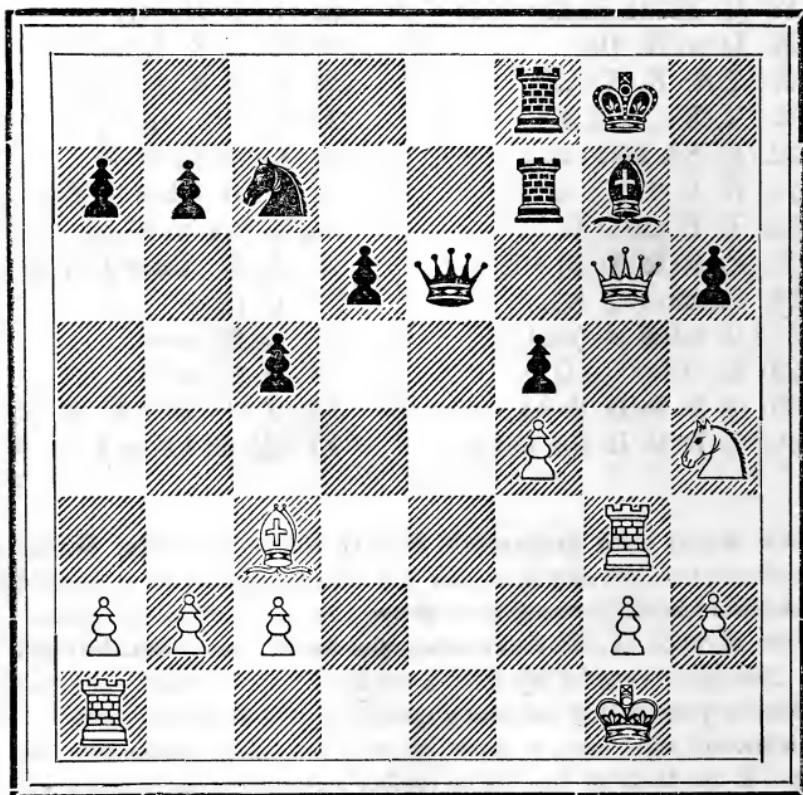
1. P. to K. 4th.  
 2. P. to Q. 4th.

Paulsen.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.  
 2. B. P. takes P.

\* The terminating moves are elegantly played:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

† Time, three hours. Dr. Raphael, of course, takes the Fourth Prize.

Morphy.

3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
8. Q. B. to Q. 6th.
9. P. to K. 5th.
10. K. B. to K. 2d.
11. Castles.
12. K. to R. sq.
13. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
14. K. B. to R. 5th.
15. K. B. to Kt. 4th.
16. Q. to K. B. 3d.
17. K. B. to R. 3d.
18. Q. Kt. to B. 6th (ch.)
19. Q. to K. 4th.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. K. Kt. to Q. 2d.
22. K. Kt. takes B. P.
23. K. R. to Kt. sq.
24. K. P. takes B.
25. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
26. Q. takes Q. Kt.
27. Q. takes B. (ch.)
28. Kt. P. takes Q.
29. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
30. Q. R. to B. 8th (ch.)

Paulsen.

3. P. to K. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
7. Castles.\*
8. P. to K. B. 4th.
9. P. to Q. R. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. K. R. to B. 2d.
12. P. to K. B. 5th.†
13. K. Kt. to B. 4th.
14. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
15. K. Kt. to Kt. 2d.
16. P. to K. R. 4th.
17. Q. to K. R. 5th.
18. K. to R. sq.
19. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.‡
20. P. to K. B. 6th.
21. K. B. to Q. sq.
22. Q. to K. R. 3d.
23. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
24. K. Kt. to K. sq.
25. K. Kt. takes B. P.§
26. Q. takes Q. B.
27. Q. R. takes Q.
28. Q. R. takes B. P.
29. Q. R. takes K. B. P.
30. Kt. to Kt. sq.||

\* We should have preferred 7. P. to Q. 4th. By Castling at this point Black allows the first player to post his Queen's Bishop in a position which cramps his adversary's movements during the remainder of the game.

† The advance of this Pawn was unadvisable, and ultimately led to its loss. Besides, it permits White to move his Queen's Knight advantageously.

‡ The only method of defending the threatened Knight's Pawn.

§ Although this loses a piece at once, he had no move that was much better. If 25. Q. to R. 2d, White replies with 26. Kt. to Kt. 5th, and if 25. Q. to K. B. sq., White would capture the Knight's Pawn.

|| His best move, bad as it is.

242 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Morphy.

31. Kt. to K. 5th.
32. Kt. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
33. Kt. to B. 8th (ch.)
34. Kt. takes Q. P.
35. Q. R. takes Kt.
36. B. takes K. P.

Paulsen.

31. K. R. to Kt. 2d.
32. K. to R. 2d.
33. K. to R. 3d.\*
34. K. R. takes Kt.
35. Q. R. takes B. P.
36. K. R. to K. 2d.

And White mates in four moves.†

GAME LXII.—RUY LOPEZ OPENING.

*Second Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
4. Castles.
5. P. to Q. 4th.‡
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. K. Kt. takes K. P.
8. K. R. to K. sq.¶

Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. takes K. P.
5. P. to Q. R. 3d.§
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Q. Kt. takes Q. P.||
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.

\* If 33. K. to R. sq., White would still play 34. Kt. takes Q. P.

† Time, five hours and a half.

‡ The move usually given here is 5. K. R. to K. sq. Lange, however, commends the method of play adopted in the text.

§ Lange thinks that both of the following replies to White's fifth move, 5. Q. Kt. takes P., and 5. K. P. takes P., give the first player an advantage; he therefore recommends 5. K. B. to K. 2d. 5. P. to Q. R. 3d seems as good as any, since whether White retreat the Bishop to Rook's fourth, or Queen's third, Black will equally accomplish his object, namely, the advance of the Queen's Pawn.

|| If Black, instead of capturing the Queen's Pawn, should take the King's Knight with Queen's Knight, White, after the exchange of pieces, would have a slightly preferable position.

¶ This appears to be the correct play.

## Paulsen.

9. P. to Q. B. 3d.\*
10. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
11. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
12. K. B. takes Kt.
13. Q. takes K. P.
14. Kt. to Q. 2d.
15. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
16. Q. to Q. 3d.
17. B. to Kt. 5th. ‡
18. P. to K. R. 3d.
19. B. to Q. 2d. §
20. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
21. Kt. to K. 4th. ||
22. K. takes R.
23. P. to K. B. 3d.

## Morphy.

9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Kt. P. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. to Q. 2d.
12. Q. P. takes K. B.
13. K. B. to Q. 3d.
14. Castles (K. R.)
15. Q. B. to Q. 4th. †
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. Q. to Kt. 5th.
18. Q. to K. R. 4th.
19. Q. R. to K. 3d.
20. Q. R. to Kt. 3d.
21. Q. R. takes Kt. P. (ch.) ¶
22. P. to K. B. 4th.
23. Q. to Kt. 3d (ch.) \*\*

\* If 9. K. B. takes K. Kt.  
 10. K. R. takes K. P.  
 11. Q. to K. B. 3d (best).  
 12. K. Kt. takes B. P.  
 13. K. Kt. takes K. R.

9. Q. P. takes K. B.  
 10. Kt. to Kt. 6th.  
 11. Kt. takes R.  
 12. Q. to Q. 2d.  
 13. Castles.

with a good game.

† Black has already obtained an undeniable advantage in position; his Bishops occupy a very threatening situation.

‡ 17. B. to Q. 2d at once would have saved time.

§ If 19. B. to R. 4th, he would obviously lose a piece; if 19. B. to K. 3d, Black would get a great attack by 19. Q. B. takes Kt., and 20. Q. takes R. P.

|| Any other move would have lost the Knight, or led equally to a winning attack.

¶ This sacrifice is perfectly sound, and should, with correct after-play, have resulted in an immediate victory; White, by refusing to capture the proffered Rook, would only hasten his defeat.

\*\* A most unfortunate slip. As soon as the second player had touched the Queen he remarked that had he taken the Knight the contest could not have been prolonged a dozen moves. And that he had the winning combination in his mind he proved by playing over the following variations immediately after the close of the game. Black's error consisted in reversing what

244 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Paulsen.

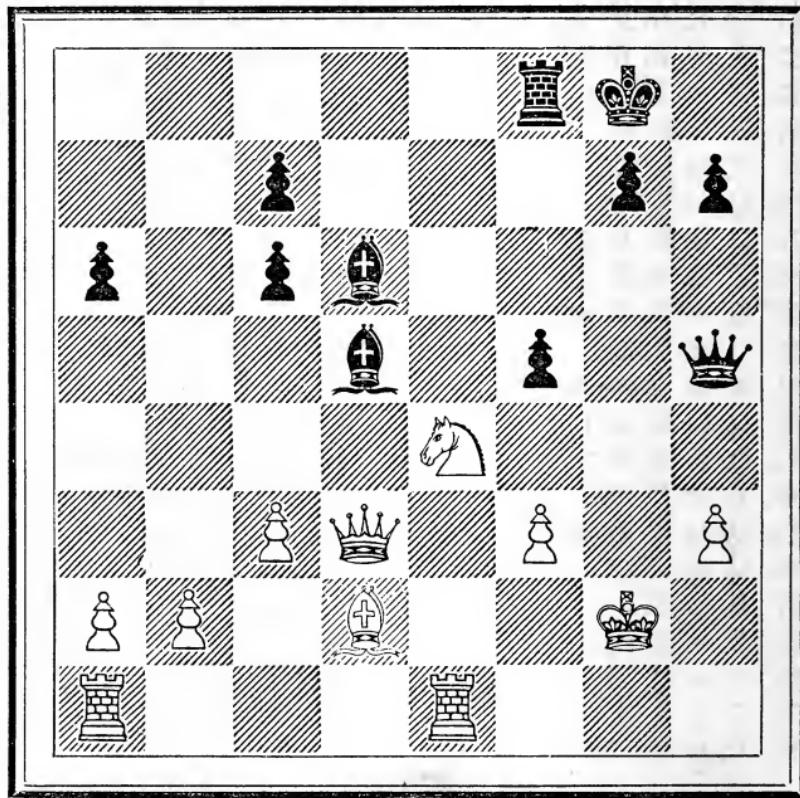
24. Kt. to Kt. 5th.  
25. P. to Q. B. 4th.

Morphy.

24. P. to K. R. 3d.  
25. Q. B. to B. 2d.

should have been his twenty-third and twenty-fourth moves.

BLACK.



WHITE.

The second player should now have moved thus:—

24. K. R. takes P. (A.)

23. B. P. takes Kt.

24. Q. to Kt. 3d (ch.)

If now White move 25. K. to B. sq. or B. 2d, Black plays 25. Q. B. takes K. R., winning, and if 25. K. R. to Kt. 4th, Black gains the Queen; therefore

25. K. to R. sq.

25. R. takes B. P.

26. K. R. to K. 8th (ch.)

26. R. to B. sq. (ch.)

and wins. If White venture at his twenty-sixth move to capture the Rook Black will play 26. Q. B. takes R., winning the Queen.

A.

24. P. takes P.

24. Q. to Kt. 3d. (ch.)

## Paulsen.

26. P. to K. R. 4th.
27. Q. to B. 2d.
28. R. P. takes P.
29. K. R. to R. sq.
30. P. to K. B. 4th.
31. Q. R. to K. sq.
32. K. R. to R. 3d.
33. K. to Kt. sq.
34. B. to B. sq.
35. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
36. Q. to K. 2d.
37. Q. to K. B. 2d.\*
38. K. R. to K. 3d.
39. Q. to K. R. 4th.
40. Q. to R. 3d.
41. K. R. takes R.
42. Q. to K. 3d.†
43. Q. to R. 3d.‡
44. B. to K. 3d.
45. Q. to K. B. sq.
46. Q. to B. 2d.
47. R. to K. 2d.
48. B. to B. sq.
49. R. to Q. 2d.
50. Q. to K. 3d.
51. B. to Kt. 2d.

## Morphy.

26. R. to Q. sq.
27. R. P. takes Kt.
28. Q. B. to K. 3d.
29. K. B. to K. 2d.
30. P. to Q. B. 4th.
31. K. to B. 2d.
32. Q. B. to B. sq.
33. Q. B. to Kt. 2d.
34. R. to Q. 5th.
35. K. B. to Q. 3d.
36. R. to K. 5th.
37. Q. to K. 3d.
38. Q. to Q. 2d.
39. K. to Kt. 3d.
40. K. B. to K. 2d.
41. Q. B. takes K. R.
42. Q. to Q. sq.
43. Q. to Q. 5th (ch.)
44. Q. to Q. B. 6th
45. Q. to R. 4th.
46. Q. to Kt. 3d.
47. Q. to B. 3d.
48. Q. to Q. 2d.
49. Q. to K. 3d.
50. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
51. K. to B. 2d.

25. K. to R. sq.

26. K. R. to Kt. sq.

25. R. to B. 7th.

26. Q. B. takes K. P. (ch.)

and wins. Or Black might have played 24. Q. to K. 4th, mating or winning Queen directly. If White should play 24. Q. to K. B. sq., Black gains at once by 24. R. takes B. P.

\* He cannot afford to lose the King's Bishop's Pawn, since, if he gives it up, the Knight's Pawn must ultimately fall, and Black with his two passed Pawns on the King's flank would stand a very good chance of winning.

† If he had taken the Bishop, Black would have checked with the Queen at Queen's eighth, and afterwards captured the Rook.

‡ Fearful of Black's threatened move of 43. Q. to K. R. sq.

246 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Paulsen.	Morphy.
52. Q. to R. 3d.	52. Q. to Kt. 3d.
53. R. to K. R. 2d.	53. Q. to Q. 3d.
And the game was finally drawn.*	

---

GAME LXIII.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Third Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

Paulsen.	Morphy.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.†	3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.‡

\* The game was prolonged to the fifty-sixth move, but was not recorded farther. It lasted three sittings, and consumed fifteen hours. The time occupied by each player on every move was accurately taken down, and we give here the moves which exceeded five minutes.

The first player considered

On move 6.... 9 minutes.	On move 38.... 24 minutes.
" 8....15 "	" 39....23 "
" 9....11 "	" 40....14 "
" 16....11 "	" 41....17 "
" 17....25 "	" 42....22 "
" 20....11 "	" 43....41 "
" 22....10 "	" 46....12 "
" 23....35 "	" 47....14 "
" 27....15 "	" 48....36 "
" 29....10 "	" 50.... 9 "
" 31....12 "	" 51....13 "
" 32....24 "	" 52....75 "
" 33.... 9 "	" 53....35 "
" 36....26 "	" 54....49 "
" 37....22 "	" 55....27 "

The second player considered

On move 45....6 minutes.	On move 51....10 minutes.
" 49....9 "	

† This seems to be a favorite débüt with the first player. It leads either to a sort of irregular Ruy Lopez Opening, or to the Queen's Knight's Opening.

‡ 3. K. Kt. to B. 3d is the proper play.

## Paulsen.

4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. takes P.
7. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
8. K. B. to R. 4th.
9. Castles.
10. Q. to B. 3d.
11. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
12. Q. to Kt. 3d.
13. Q. R. to Q. sq.
14. K. to R. sq.
15. Q. B. takes Kt.
16. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.†
17. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
18. K. R. to Q. sq.
19. Kt. to K. 2d.
20. P. to Q. R. 3d.
21. P. to Q. B. 4th.
22. P. to Q. B. 5th.
23. Q. to K. 3d.
24. P. to K. B. 4th.
25. Q. takes P.
26. Kt. takes Q.
27. Kt. to K. 2d.

## Morphy.

4. P. to Q. 3d.\*
5. K. P. takes P.
6. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
7. Kt. P. takes K. Kt.
8. Q. to K. R. 5th.
9. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
11. Kt. to K. 4th.
12. Q. to K. B. 3d.
13. P. to K. R. 3d.
14. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
15. Q. P. takes Q. B.
16. K. B. to Q. 3d.‡
17. P. to K. R. 4th.
18. P. to Q. R. 3d.
19. Q. R. to Q. sq.
20. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
21. Q. to R. 3d.
22. P. to K. R. 5th.
23. K. B. to K. 2d.
24. K. P. takes P.
25. Q. takes Q.
26. K. R. to R. 3d.
27. P. to K. B. 4th.§

\* Again he should have played out the King's Knight.

† Very finely played.

‡ Black cannot take the Pawn; for if

17. Q. R. takes Q. B.
18. Kt. to Q. 5th.
19. Q. to K. R. 3d (ch.)
20. Kt. takes B.
21. B. takes B. P.

16. K. B. takes Kt. P.
17. K. takes R. (A.)
18. Q. to Q. 3d.
19. K. moves.
20. Q. takes Kt.

and White must win the exchange back with a fine position.

A.

17. K. B. takes Kt.

18. Q. R. takes Q. B. P.

having a much superior game.

§ He scarcely has any move much better; his position is very crowded.

## 248 Games in the Grand Tournament.

**Paulsen.**

28. P. to K. 5th.
29. K. Kt. to B. 4th.
30. Q. R. takes Q. B.\*
31. B. takes B. P.
32. P. takes B.
33. K. to Kt. sq.
34. B. takes Q. R.

**Morphy.**

28. K. R. to K. 3d.
29. R. takes K. P.
30. Q. R. takes Q. R.
31. B. to Q. 3d.
32. B. P. takes P.
33. K. to Q. sq.
34. K. takes B.

And White wins.†

---

### GAME LXIV.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Fifth Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.‡*

**Morphy.**

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

**Paulsen.**

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.

\* White vigorously avails himself of his advantage in position.

† Time, eleven hours, of which the moves exceeding five minutes in length were divided as follows:—

The first player considered

On move 9....12 minutes.

- " 10 ...10 "
- " 12....14 "
- " 14....27 "
- " 15....36 "
- " 16....19 "
- " 17....20 "
- " 18....18 "

On move 19....28 minutes.

- " 21....10 "
- " 24....25 "
- " 27....15 "
- " 28.... 6 "
- " 29... .11 "
- " 30.... 8 "
- " 33.... 6 "

The second player considered

On move 14....11 minutes.

- " 21.... 8 "

On move 27....7 minutes.

- " 29.... 6 "

‡ Upon annotating the parties in this Section, it was found that the fourth encounter—a drawn game—between these players was not among the papers of the Congress. It was not considered advisable, however, to delay the printer until a copy could be obtained from Mr. Morphy. It is also very doubtful whether the present game was actually played in the tournament. It was found, however, among the documents of the Congress, but simply endorsed "Game between Morphy and Paulsen."

## Morphy.

3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.
7. Q. B. takes K. B.
8. K. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)
9. K. Kt. takes B. (ch.)
10. K. B. to Q. 3d.
11. Castles.
12. Kt. to Q. 2d.
13. P. to K. R. 3d.
14. P. to Q. R. 3d.
15. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
16. Kt. to Q. B. 4th.
17. P. to K. B. 3d.‡
18. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
19. Q. to Q. 2d.
20. Q. R. to Q. sq.
21. Q. to K. B. 2d.
22. P. to K. B. 4th.
23. Q. takes B. P.
24. K. R. to B. 2d.
25. K. R. takes Q.
26. Q. R. to Q. 2d.||
27. P. to K. 5th.
28. K. R. to Q. 4th.
29. K. P. takes P. (ch.)
30. K. R. to Q. B. 4th.\*\*

## Paulsen.

3. B. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.\*
7. Q. takes Q. B.
8. K. to K. 2d.
9. K. R. takes K. Kt.
10. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. P. to K. R. 4th.
12. P. to K. R. 5th.
13. P. to K. Kt. 4th.†
14. K. R. to Kt. sq.
15. Q. to Kt. 3d.
16. Q. to B. 2d.
17. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
18. Q. takes Kt.
19. K. R. to Kt. 2d.§
20. Q. R. to Q. sq.
21. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
22. Kt. P. takes P.
23. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
24. Q. takes Q.
25. Q. R. to K. Kt. sq.
26. Q. R. to K. R. sq.
27. Kt. to Q. 4th.
28. P. to K. B. 3d.¶
29. Kt. takes B. P.
30. K. to Q. sq.

\* If he had played 6. K. B. takes Q. B., White would have obtained a good game by 7. K. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)

† Black's proper course undoubtedly is to commence an attack on the Castled King.

‡ Necessary, in order to prevent the further advance of the adverse King's Knight's Pawn.

§ We should have preferred 19. Kt. to R. 4th.

|| Much better than 26. K. R. to B. 2d, since this forces him to defend disadvantageously his King's Rook's Pawn.

¶ His best move.

\*\* If 30. B. to Q. Kt. 5th, Black would simply advance 30. P. to Q. 4th.

250 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Morphy.

31. P. to Q. R. 4th.
32. B. to K. 4th.
33. B. to B. 3d.
34. K. R. to B. 6th.
35. B. to Kt. 4th.
36. Q. R. to K. 2d.
37. K. to R. 2d.\*
38. P. to Kt. 3d.
39. K. takes P.
40. P. to K. R. 4th.
41. P. to K. R. 5th.
42. K. R. takes P.
43. B. takes K. R. (ch.)
44. B. to Kt. 4th.
45. B. takes Kt.
46. R. to K. 7th (ch.)
47. R. takes R. P.
48. R. to R. 6th.
49. K. to B. 3d.
50. K. to K. 2d.
51. R. P. takes P.
52. P. to B. 3d.
53. P. to B. 4th.§
54. P. to B. 5th.
55. K. to Q. 3d.
56. K. to B. 2d.

Paulsen.

31. Kt. to Q. 4th.
32. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.
33. P. to Q. 4th.
34. K. R. to Q. 2d.
35. Q. R. to K. R. 3d.
36. K. to K. 2d.
37. K. to B. 2d.
38. R. P. takes P. (ch.)
39. R. to K. 2d.
40. Kt. to K. sq.
41. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
42. K. R. takes K. R.
43. K. to Kt. 2d.†
44. Kt. takes R. P. (ch.)
45. R. takes B.
46. K. to B. 3d.
47. K. to K. 4th.
48. R. to Kt. 4th (ch.)
49. R. to B. 4th (ch.)
50. P. to Kt. 4th.‡
51. R. to B. 5th.
52. P. to Q. 5th.
53. R. to R. 5th.
54. R. to R. 7th (ch.)
55. R. to R. 6th (ch.)
56. R. to R. 7th (ch.)

\* Black's centre Pawns are so strongly guarded that it was not possible with the forces now in action to make any impression upon his position. It was necessary, therefore, to make the King and King's Rook's Pawn operative.

† He would have avoided the loss of a Pawn by playing his King to Bishop's square.

‡ This Pawn cannot be rescued; if

51. P. to R. 5th.
52. R. takes R.
53. P. takes P.

and wins easily.

§ Much better, of course, than taking the Pawn.

50. R. to B. 3d.
51. P. takes P.
52. K. takes R.

## Morphy.

57. K. to Kt. 3d.  
 58. K. to R. 4th.  
 59. R. to Q. 6th (ch.)  
 60. P. to B. 6th.  
 61. R. takes P. (ch.)  
 62. P. to B. 7th.  
 63. P. to Kt. 6th.  
 64. P. to Kt. 7th.

## Paulsen.

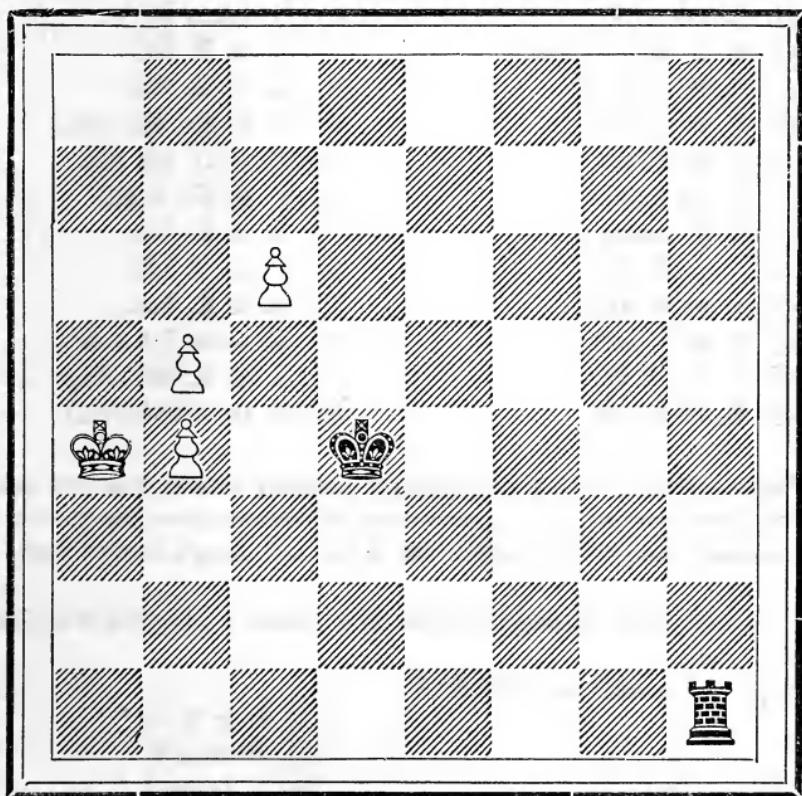
57. R. to R. 6th (ch.)  
 58. K. to Q. 4th.  
 59. K. to B. 5th.  
 60. R. to R. 8th.\*  
 61. K. takes R.†  
 62. R. to K. R. sq.  
 63. K. to B. 5th.

And Black resigns.‡

\* The advance of the Pawn would amount to nothing.

† By the accompanying diagram, the reader will see that the march of the Pawns cannot be arrested.

BLACK.



WHITE.

‡ Time, ten hours.

## GAME LXV.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Sixth Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

Paulsen.	Morphy.
1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.*
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.	4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Castles.	5. Castles.
6. K. Kt. takes K. P.	6. K. R. to K. sq.†
7. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.‡	7. Q. P. takes K. Kt.
8. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.§	8. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.

\* This irregular débüt amounts to the same as the Queen's Knight's Opening, which is usually played as follows:—

1. P. to K. 4th.	1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

and the position is the same as in the text. This method of commencing a game has, as is well known, grown into great favor, within the last few years, among the players of continental Europe. It has been much elaborated by Mr. Hampe of Vienna, from whom it has been sometimes styled the *Hampe Opening*. Lange calls it, very properly, the *Vienna Game*. It is treated of at length in the third edition (Berlin, 1858) of the *Handbuch* of Bilguer and Von der Lasa. A briefer analysis will be found in the second volume of the *Chess Monthly* (New York, 1858).

† Better than 6. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt., in which case White would have advanced 7. P. to Q. 4th, regaining the piece with the better position.

‡ By retreating 7. K. Kt. to Q. 3d, White might have preserved his Pawn, but the cramped situation of his game would have amply compensated Black for its loss.

§ Indirectly protecting his King's Pawn, for suppose

9. Kt. takes Kt.	8. Kt. takes K. P.
10. K. B. takes B. P. (ch.)	9. K. R. takes Kt.

and White would keep his Pawn, since if 10. K. takes B., White would win the Rook by 11. Q. to K. B. 3d (ch.).

|| Black might also have played 8. Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.

Paulsen.

9. K. B. to K. 2d.\*
10. Kt. takes Kt.†
11. K. B. to B. 3d.
12. P. to Q. B. 3d.‡
13. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
14. P. to Q. R. 4th.
15. Q. takes R. P.
16. Q. R. to R. 2d.||
17. Q. to R. 6th.\*\*

Morphy.

9. Kt. takes K. P.
10. K. R. takes Kt.
11. K. R. to K. 3d.
12. Q. to Q. 6th.
13. K. B. to Kt. 3d.·
14. Kt. P. takes P.
15. Q. B. to Q. 2d.§
16. Q. R. to K. sq.¶
17. Q. takes K. B.||†

\* If White had now moved

9. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
10. Q. to K. sq.

9. Q. B. to Kt. 5th.
10. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.

Black would have had a decided advantage.

† If instead of this White had played 10. K. B. to B. 3d he would have lost directly.

10. K. B. to B. 3d.
11. K. R. takes Kt.
12. Q. to K. B. sq. (A.)
13. Q. takes Q.

10. Kt. takes K. B. P
11. Q. to Q. 5th.
12. Q. takes R. (ch.)
13. K. R. to K. 8th (mate).

A.

12. Kt. to K. 4th.
13. K. B. takes K. R.
14. K. to R. sq.
15. K. B. to K. 3d.

12. K. R. takes Kt.
13. Q. takes K. R. (ch.)
14. Q. B. to Kt. 5th.
15. R. to K. sq.

and wins.

‡ With the idea of playing 13. P. to Q. 4th; 12. P. to Q. 3d would have been preferable, since Black is now enabled, by his next move, to completely shut in White's pieces on the Queen's side.

§ 15. K. R. to Kt. 3d promises more than it would yield.

|| Intending to proffer the exchange of Queens by 17. Q. to Q. B. 2d; 16. Q. to R. 6th, however, would here have been far more to the point, compelling the second player to exchange or retreat his Queen.

¶ Threatening mate in two moves by 17. Q. takes K. R. (ch.), followed by 18. K. R. to K. 8th. The real object of this move, however, was to enable Black, if possible, to take the King's Bishop with Queen.

\*\* 17. Q. to Q. sq. was the proper reply to Black's sixteenth move, preventing both the threatened mate and the sacrifice of the Queen.

†† The winning move; for play as White may Black must now score the

Paulsen.

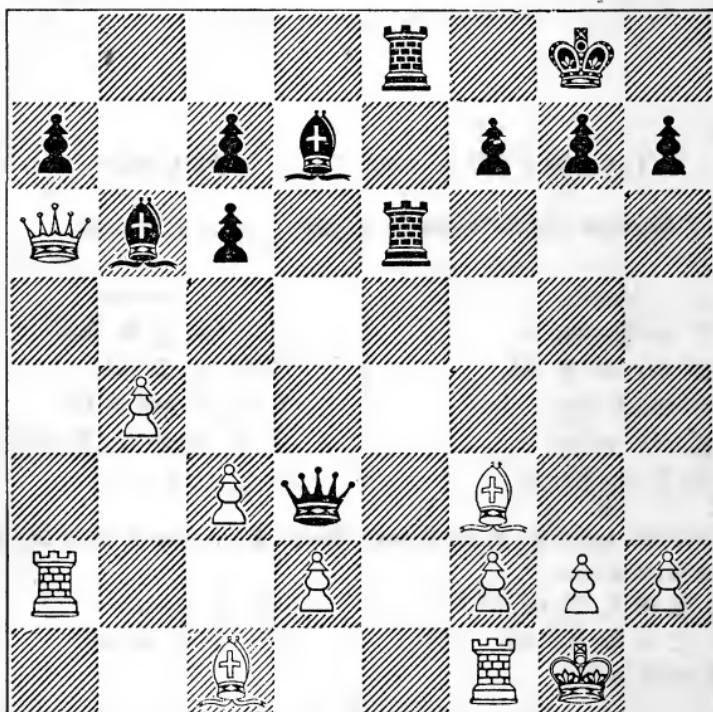
18. Kt. P. takes Q.  
19. K. to R. sq.  
20. K. R. to Q. sq.\*

Morphy.

18. K. R. to Kt. 3d (ch.)  
19. Q. B. to K. R. 6th.  
20. Q. B. to Kt. 7th (ch.)

game. The appended diagram represents the position of the forces before Black's seventeenth move:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

\* This, or 20. Q. to Q. 3d (see A) was the only method of avoiding Black's threatened mate in two moves by 20. Q. B. to Kt. 7th (ch.), followed by 21. Q. B. takes B. P. (mate). If

20. K. R. to Kt. sq.  
21. K. takes K. R.  
22. Q. to K. B. sq.

20. K. R. takes K. R. (ch.)  
21. R. to K. 8th (ch.)  
22. R. takes Q. (mate).

A.

20. Q. to Q. 3d.

20. P. to K. B. 4th.

Again threatening mate in two moves.

21. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)

21. K. to B. sq. (best).

## Paulsen.

21. K. to Kt. sq.
22. K. to B. sq.
23. K. to Kt. sq.
24. K. to R. sq.
25. Q. to K. B. sq.\*
26. K. R. takes Q. B.
27. Q. R. to R. sq.†
28. P. to Q. 4th.

## Morphy.

21. Q. B. takes B. P. (ch.)
22. Q. B. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
23. Q. B. to R. 6th (ch.)
24. K. B. takes B. P.
25. Q. B. takes Q.
26. Q. R. to K. 7th.
27. K. R. to R. 3d.
28. B. to K. 6th.‡

And White resigns.§

---

## GAME LXVI.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Seventh Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.

## Paulsen.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. B. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. to Kt. 3d.

If Black should play 21. K. to R. sq., White would reply with 22. Q. to K. B. 7th, and would win.

22. Q. to K. B. 4th (B.)
23. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.

22. K. B. takes B. P.
23. K. B. takes Q.

and Black must win.

## B.

22. Q. to K. R. 4th.
23. P. to K. R. 3d (best).
24. K. to R. 2d.

22. Q. B. takes K. R. (best).
23. Q. B. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
24. Q. B. takes B. P.

and White loses.

\* The only move.

† In order to be able to advance the Queen's Pawn.

‡ White cannot, except by the sacrifice of a piece, delay the mate longer than two moves.

§ Time, four hours. A record of the time consumed was only kept through a portion of the game. The first player's longest move was his sixteenth, thirty-eight minutes. None of the second player's moves exceeded five minutes, except his seventeenth, on which he considered twelve minutes.

## 256 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Morphy.

6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.
8. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
9. Q. Kt. takes Q.
10. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
11. P. takes K. B.
12. Kt. to B. 3d.
13. Kt. takes Kt. P.
14. Kt. to Q. 6th.
15. K. R. to Kt. sq.
16. P. to K. B. 5th.
17. B. to Q. B. 4th.
18. P. to K. B. 4th.
19. B. P. takes P.
20. Kt. takes B.
21. B. takes K. P. (ch.)
22. B. takes K. Kt.
23. Q. to Q. 7th.
24. Q. takes Kt.
25. K. to B. 2d.
26. K. to K. 3d.§

Paulsen.

6. Q. takes Kt. P.\*
7. K. B. takes Q. B.†
8. Q. takes Q. R.
9. K. B. to B. 5th.
10. P. to Q. R. 3d.
11. P. takes K. Kt.
12. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
13. Castles.
14. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
15. Q. R. takes R. P.
16. P. to K. B. 3d.
17. Q. R. to R. 5th.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
19. Q. P. takes P.
20. K. Kt. takes Kt.
21. K. to R. sq.
22. K. R. takes B.
23. Kt. to K. 2d.‡
24. Q. R. to R. 8th (ch.)
25. K. R. takes B. P. (ch.)

And Black resigns.||

\* Altogether unwise, since it must result in at least the loss of a piece.

† If he play instead

8. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
9. Q. B. takes K. B.

7. Q. to Kt. 5th.
8. Q. to R. 4th.

having a piece more, and a better position; or if

8. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
9. Q. B. takes K. B.

7. K. B. to Kt. 5th.
8. K. B. takes Q. Kt.

winning the Queen. If, instead of 8. K. B. takes Q. Kt., Black attempt to ring out any of his pieces, White would move 9. Q. R. to Kt. sq., equally gaining the Queen.

‡ If 23. Q. R. to R. 8th (ch.), he will lose a piece. 23. K. R. to K. Kt. sq. would have prolonged the contest somewhat, but without affecting the ultimate result.

§ Black must now submit to the loss of one of his Rooks, or allow himself to be mated.

|| Time, four hours and a quarter. White's longest move was his seven-

## GAME LXVII.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Eighth Game between MORPHY and PAULSEN.*

## Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 4th.\*
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
6. Q. to Q. 3d.
7. K. Kt. takes K. P.
8. Castles.
9. Q. P. takes Q. Kt.
10. Kt. P. takes K. B.
11. K. B. to R. 4th.
12. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
13. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
14. Q. R. to B. sq.
15. Q. takes Q.‡
16. Q. B. takes Kt. P.
17. K. to R. sq.
18. R. takes Kt.
19. Q. B. to B. 6th.
20. P. to K. B. 3d.
21. P. to Q. R. 3d.
22. R. to Q. sq.
23. R. P. takes P.

## Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
5. K. Kt. takes K. P.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Castles.
8. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
9. K. B. takes Kt.
10. P. to Q. B. 3d.†
11. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
12. Q. takes B. P.
13. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
14. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
15. Kt. takes Q.
16. Kt. to K. 7th (ch.)
17. Kt. takes Q. R.
18. K. R. to K. sq.
19. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
20. P. to Q. R. 4th.
21. B. to K. 3d.§
22. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
23. R. P. takes P.

teenth, upon which he considered five minutes; Black's longest was his sixth, upon which he considered thirty-two minutes. At his fifth move Black took ten minutes, upon his seventh, twenty minutes, upon his fifteenth, fourteen minutes, upon his sixteenth, fifteen minutes, and upon his eighteenth, twenty minutes.

\* We should rather prefer 4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

† Black now has not only gained the attack, but must win a Pawn immediately.

‡ Giving up at least the exchange.

§ In order to advance his Queen's Bishop's Pawn.

## 258 Games in the Grand Tournament.

Paulsen.

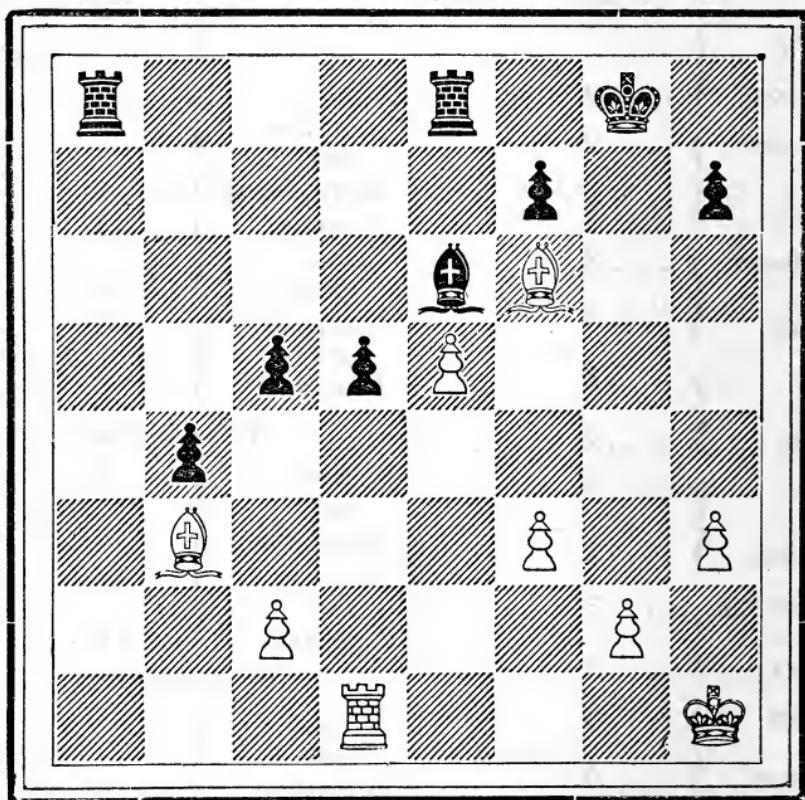
- 24. P. to K. R. 3d.
- 25. P. to Q. B. 3d.†
- 26. K. B. to Q. B. 2d.‡
- 27. R. to Q. B. sq.

Morphy.

- 24. P. to Q. B. 4th.\*
- 25. Kt. P. takes P.
- 26. Q. R. to R. 7th.
- 27. K. R. to Q. R. sq.

\* The reader will see, from the accompanying diagram, that Black, owing to the strength of his Pawns on the Queen's flank, already has a virtually won battle.

BLACK.



WHITE.

† If he venture to take the Queen's Pawn with King's Bishop he must lose a piece.

‡ If he now capture the Queen's Pawn Black wins at once, thus:—

- 26. K. B. takes Q. P.
- 27. R. takes B.
- 28. R. takes B. P.

- 26. B. takes K. B.
- 27. P. to B. 7th.
- 28. Q. R. to R. 8th (ch.)

Queening the Pawn next move.

Paulsen.

28. Q. B. to Kt. 5th.  
29. K. B. to Kt. sq.

Morphy.

28. Q. R. to R. 8th.  
29. P. to B. 7th.\*

And Mr. MORPHY wins the FIRST PRIZE.†

## RESULTS OF THE GRAND TOURNAMENT.

## FIRST SECTION.

	Games won.	Games drawn.
MORPHY and THOMPSON.	{ .... 3	.... 0
KENNICOTT and RAPHAEL.	{ .... 2	.... 1
MONTGOMERY and ALLISON.	{ .... 3	.... 0
MEEK and FULLER.	{ .... 3	.... 0
FISKE and MARACHE.	{ .... 2	.... 0
LICHENHEIN and STANLEY.	{ .... 3	.... 0
PAULSEN and CALTHROP.	{ .... 3	.... 0
PERRIN and KNOTT.	{ .... 3	.... 2

## SECOND SECTION.

	Games won.	Games drawn.
MORPHY and MEEK.	{ .... 3	.... 0
PAULSEN and MONTGOMERY.	{ .... 2	.... 0
RAPHAEL and MARACHE.	{ .... 3	.... 2
LICHENHEIN and PERRIN.	{ .... 3	.... 0

## THIRD SECTION.

MORPHY and LICHENHEIN.	{ .... 3	.... 1
PAULSEN and RAPHAEL.	{ .... 2	.... 1
	{ .... 0	

## FOURTH SECTION.

LICHENHEIN and RAPHAEL.	{ .... 3	.... 0
MORPHY and PAULSEN.	{ .... 5	.... 2
	{ .... 1	

\* Winning a piece by force, for if

30. K. B. takes P.

31. Q. B. takes Q. R.

gaining the Queen's Bishop.

30. Q. R. takes R. (ch.)

31. R. to R. 8th.

† The time of this game was not noted down. It lasted about six hours.

## CHAPTER VII.

### CHESS WITHOUT THE CHESSBOARD.

DURING the continuance of the Congress, Mr. Louis Paulsen, the winner of the Second Prize in the Grand Tournament, very frequently exhibited, both in the rooms of the Congress and elsewhere, his remarkable faculty of playing several simultaneous games of chess without sight of the boards and men. But more especially on two public occasions did he give, in the presence of crowds of wondering spectators, convincing proofs of his powers in this peculiar and uncommon art. On the evenings of October 10th and 12th he conducted four blindfold games at the same time, winning two, drawing one, and losing the fourth ; and again on the evenings of the 21st and 22d of the same month he contended in a similar manner against five players, winning four games and drawing the fifth. It is true that these feats have been, during the time that has elapsed since the days of the chess gathering of 1857, greatly excelled both by Mr. Paulsen himself in Chicago, Pittsburg, and other places, and by Mr. Morphy at New Orleans, Birmingham, and Paris. But the interest which they aroused at the time was so great, and they formed so important a feature of the Congress, that it has been thought advisable to preserve some specimens of these contests. All of the games played upon the second occasion are therefore given below, together with two between Mr. Paulsen and Mr. Morphy, in which neither of the combatants made use of the chessboard. Mr. Paulsen's opponents on the evenings of October 21st and 22d were

First Board . . . . .	Mr. S. Heilbuth of New York.
Second Board . . . . .	Dr. A. C. Hawes of Providence.
Third Board . . . . .	Mr. R. J. Dodge of New York.
Fourth Board . . . . .	Mr. C. Oscanyan of New York.
Fifth Board . . . . .	Mr. T. Frère of Brooklyn.

---

## GAME I.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Between PAULSEN and HEILBUTH.\**

## Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes K. P.
5. Q. P. takes Q. Kt.
6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
7. K. B. takes Q. B.
8. Castles.
9. P. to K. B. 4th.
10. P. to K. B. 5th.
11. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
12. B. takes K. R.
13. K. P. takes P.
14. P. to K. 6th.
15. Kt. to R. 3d.
16. Q. to K. B. 3d.
17. P. to Q. B. 3d.
18. Kt. to B. 2d.
19. Kt. takes P.
20. B. P. takes B.
21. Q. to B. 4th (ch.)
22. Q. R. to K. sq.
23. K. R. takes Q.
24. K. R. to B. 3d.
25. K. R. to Kt. 3d.

## Heilbuth.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. Kt. takes K. Kt.
5. P. to Q. 5th.
6. Q. B. to K. 3d.
7. B. P. takes K. B.
8. Q. to Q. 2d.
9. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
10. Castles.
11. K. P. takes P.
12. K. takes B.
13. Kt. P. takes P.
14. Q. to Q. 3d.
15. B. to Kt. 2d.
16. P. to Q. B. 3d.
17. Kt. to K. 2d.
18. K. to B. 2d.
19. B. takes Kt. (ch.)
20. Q. takes K. P.
21. Q. to Q. 3d.
22. Q. takes Q.
23. K. to Q. 3d.
24. R. to K. B. sq.
25. R. to B. 2d.

\* This was played at the first board. Mr. Paulsen had the first move at the first, second, and fourth boards.

## Paulsen.

26. P. to Q. R. 4th.
27. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
28. K. R. to K. 3d.
29. K. R. to Q. B. 3d.
30. Q. R. to Q. sq.
31. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
32. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
33. K. to R. sq.
34. R. P. takes P.
35. Q. R. to B. 4th.
36. Q. R. to R. 4th.
37. Q. R. takes P
38. Q. R. takes Kt.
39. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
40. R. P. takes P.
41. R. to K. B. 7th.
42. R. takes R. P.
43. K. to R. 2d.

## Heilbuth.

26. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
27. K. to Q. 4th.
28. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
29. P. to K. B. 5th.
30. Kt. to R. 5th.
31. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
32. R. to Kt. 2d.
33. B. P. takes P.
34. Kt. to K. 2d.
35. P. to K. R. 4th.
36. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
37. K. takes Q. P.
38. K. takes K. R.
39. B. P. takes P.
40. R. takes Kt. P.
41. K. to Kt. 5th.
42. K. takes P.
43. R. to Kt. 2d (!).

And White wins.

---

## GAME II.—SICILIAN OPENING.

*Between PAULSEN and HAWES.*

## Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. 3d.
6. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
7. P. to Q. B. 3d.
8. K. B. to K. 2d.
9. Castles.
10. K. P. takes P.
11. Q. to Q. 2d.
12. B. P. takes K. Kt.

## Hawes.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. B. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. to Kt. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. Castles.
9. P. to Q. 4th.
10. K. Kt. takes P.
11. K. Kt. takes Q. B.
12. P. to K. 4th.

Paulsen.

13. K. Kt. to Q. B. 2d.
14. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
15. Q. Kt. to B. 4th.
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. Q. to Q. B. sq.
18. K. to R. sq.
19. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
20. B. P. takes P.
21. Kt. takes B.
22. P. to Q. R. 3d.
23. B. to K. B. 3d.
24. Q. to Q. Kt. 2d.
25. Q. R. to K. 2d.
26. Q. R. takes Q. R.
27. R. takes R. (ch.)
28. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d (ch.)
29. R. to Q. B. sq.
30. Q. takes Kt.
31. Q. to Q. Kt. 6th.

Hawes.

13. P. to Q. R. 4th.
14. B. to K. 3d.
15. Q. to R. 2d.
16. Q. R. to Q. sq.
17. P. to K. B. 3d.
18. Kt. to K. 2d.
19. R. P. takes P.
20. K. B. to Q. 3d.
21. Q. R. takes Kt.
22. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
23. K. R. to Q. B. sq.
24. Q. R. to Q. 7th.
25. Q. R. takes Kt.
26. Kt. takes P.
27. B. takes R.
28. K. to K. R. sq.
29. Q. to Q. Kt. sq.
30. B. to K. 3d.

And Black resigns.

---

### GAME III.—CENTRE COUNTER GAMBIT IN THE KING'S KNIGHT'S OPENING.

*Between PAULSEN and DODGE.*

Dodge

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
5. K. B. takes P.
6. K. Kt. to K. 4th.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. Castles.
9. P. to K. R. 3d.
10. Q. B. to K. 3d.

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. Q. P. takes P.
4. K. P. takes P.
5. P. to K. R. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. Castles.
9. Q. B. to K. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

## Dodge.

11. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
12. Q. to Q. 2d.
13. Q. Kt. takes P.
14. Kt. takes Kt.
15. Kt. takes B.
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. Q. B. to B. 5th.
18. Q. R. takes B.
19. Q. to K. 3d.
20. P. takes Q.
21. P. takes Kt.
22. K. R. to Q. sq.
23. K. R. to Q. 2d.
24. K. to K. B. 2d.
25. K. takes P.
26. R. to K. 4th.
27. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
28. Q. R. to Q. B. 4th.
29. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
30. Q. R. to K. 4th.
31. P. takes R.
32. R. to Q. 8th (ch.)
33. K. to Q. 4th.
34. P. to K. R. 4th.
35. P. to K. R. 5th.
36. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
37. P. to Q. R. 4th.

## Paulsen.

11. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
12. P. to K. 5th.
13. Kt. takes Kt.
14. P. to K. B. 4th.
15. Q. takes Kt.
16. Kt. to Q. 4th.
17. Q. takes B.
18. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
19. Q. takes Q.
20. Kt. takes B.
21. R. to K. B. 2d.
22. Q. R. to Q. sq.
23. P. to K. B. 5th.
24. P. takes P. (ch.)
25. K. R. to Q. 2d.
26. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
27. K. R. to Q. 3d.
28. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
29. K. R. to K. 3d. (ch.)
30. R. takes R. (ch.)
31. R. to K. 2d.
32. K. to K. B. 2d.
33. K. to K. B. 3d.
34. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
35. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
36. R. to R. 2d.
37. K. to K. 3d.

And the game was drawn.

---

## GAME IV.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

*Between PAULSEN and OSCANYAN.*

## Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

## Oscanyan.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.

## Paulsen.

3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. P. takes P.
5. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
7. Q. B. to K. 3d.
8. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. Castles (Q. R.)
10. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
11. K. R. to Q. sq.
12. K. Kt. to K. sq.
13. P. to K. B. 4th.
14. P. takes P.
15. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
16. P. to K. R. 4th.
17. K. B. to Q. 5th.
18. K. B. to Q. B. 6th.
19. Kt. P. takes B.
20. Kt. to Q. 5th.
21. Kt. takes Kt.
22. Q. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
23. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
24. Q. R. to Kt. 6th (ch.)
25. K. R. to Q. sq.
26. P. to K. R. 5th.
27. B. to Q. 5th (ch.)
28. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
29. B. to K. 6th.
30. R. takes K. Kt. P.
31. R. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
32. R. to K. B. 6th.
33. R. takes K. R. P.
34. B. to K. B. 7th.
35. P. takes Kt.
36. R. takes B. (ch.)
37. R. to K. 6th.
38. P. takes R.

## Oscanyan.

3. P. to Q. 3d.
4. Q. P. takes P.
5. K. takes Q.
6. P. to K. B. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
9. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
10. K. Kt. to Q. B. sq.
11. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
12. P. to Q. R. 3d.
13. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
14. P. takes P.
15. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
16. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
17. Q. R. to R. 2d.
18. B. takes Kt.
19. P. to K. R. 3d.
20. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
21. K. takes Kt.
22. K. to K. B. 3d.
23. B. to K. B. sq.
24. K. to K. 2d.
25. K. to B. 2d.
26. B. to Q. 3d.
27. K. to K. B. sq.
28. P. to Q. B. 3d.
29. Kt. to K. 2d.
30. P. to Q. B. 4th.
31. K. to K. sq.
32. K. to Q. sq.
33. R. to K. sq.
34. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
35. R. takes B.
36. K. to Q. B. 2d.
37. R. takes R.

And White wins.

## GAME V.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Between PAULSEN and FRÈRE.*

Frère.	Paulsen.
1. P. to Q. B. 4th.	1. P. to K. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.	2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.	3. P. to K. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 4th.	4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
5. K. Kt. to B. 3d.	5. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
6. Q. B. to Q. 2d.	6. K. Kt. takes Q. B.
7. Q. takes K. Kt.	7. P. to Q. 3d.
8. P. to Q. R. 3d.	8. K. B. takes Kt.
9. Q. takes K. B.	9. Castles.
10. P. to K. Kt. 3d.	10. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. B. to Kt. 2d.	11. B. to Kt. 2d.
12. Castles (K. R.)	12. Kt. to Q. 2d.
13. Q. R. to Q. sq.	13. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
14. Kt. to Q. 2d.	14. B. takes B.
15. K. takes B.	15. Q. to K. 2d.
16. P. to K. B. 4th.	16. P. to Q. B. 4th.
17. Q. to Q. 3d.	17. Q. R. to Q. sq.
18. Q. R. to K. sq.	18. P. to Q. 4th.
19. Kt. to K. B. 3d.	19. Q. to Q. Kt. 2d.
20. K. to Kt. sq.	20. Kt. to K. 5th.
21. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.	21. K. R. to K. sq.
22. Q. R. to K. 2d.	22. P. to K. R. 3d.
23. P. to Q. R. 4th.	23. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
24. Q. R. to K. Kt. 2d.	24. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
25. P. to K. R. 3d.	25. P. takes Q. B. P.
26. Kt. P. takes P.	26. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
27. Q. to Q. B. 2d.	27. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
28. Kt. to K. 5th.	28. Q. to B. 2d.
29. P. to K. Kt. 4th.	29. B. P. takes Q..P.
30. P. takes Q. P.	30. Kt. to K. 5th.
31. P. takes B. P.	31. K. P. takes P.
32. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.	32. K. to R. 2d.
33. Q. R. to Kt. 6th.	33. R. takes Kt.
34. Q. R. takes R. P. (ch.)	34. Kt. P. takes R.
35. B. P. takes R.	35. Kt. to Q. 7th.

Frère.

36. Q. to Q. 3d.
37. K. to R. sq.
38. Q. takes B. P. (ch.)
39. Q. takes Kt.
40. Q. to K. B. 6th.
41. P. takes Q.

Paulsen.

36. R. to K. Kt. sq. (ch.)
37. Kt. takes R.
38. K. to R. sq.
39. Q. to K. Kt. 2d.
40. Q. takes Q.
41. R. to K. Kt. 3d.

And White resigns.

## GAME VI.—IRREGULAR OPENING.

*Between PAULSEN and MORPHY.\**

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. takes P.
7. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
8. K. B. to Q. R. 4th.
9. Castles.
10. Q. B. to K. 3d.
11. B. P. takes B.
12. Q. to Q. 3d.
13. Q. R. to K. sq.
14. Q. to K. 2d.
15. P. to K. R. 3d.
16. Kt. to Q. sq.
17. Kt. to K. B. 2d.
18. Kt. to Q. 3d.
19. Kt. takes Kt.
20. P. takes P.
21. Q. to K. B. 2d.

Morphy.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. K. P. takes P.
6. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
7. Kt. P. takes K. Kt.
8. Q. to K. B. 3d.
9. Kt. to K. 2d.
10. K. B. takes Q. B.
11. Q. to K. R. 3d.
12. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
13. Kt. to K. 4th.
14. Castles (K. R.)
15. K. to K. R. sq.
16. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
17. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
18. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
19. P. takes Kt.
20. B. takes P.
21. K. R. to K. Kt. 3d.

\* This was played during the evening of October 10th, Mr. Paulsen conducting three other games at the same time. Both the combatants, as has been previously stated, played without seeing the board.

Paulsen.

22. Q. takes K. B. P.  
23. Q. takes Q. B. P.

Morphy.

22. B. to K. 3d.

And Black announced mate in five moves.\*

---

GAME VII.—CENTRE COUNTER GAMBIT IN THE KING'S KNIGHT'S OPENING.

*Between PAULSEN and MORPHY.*

Morphy.

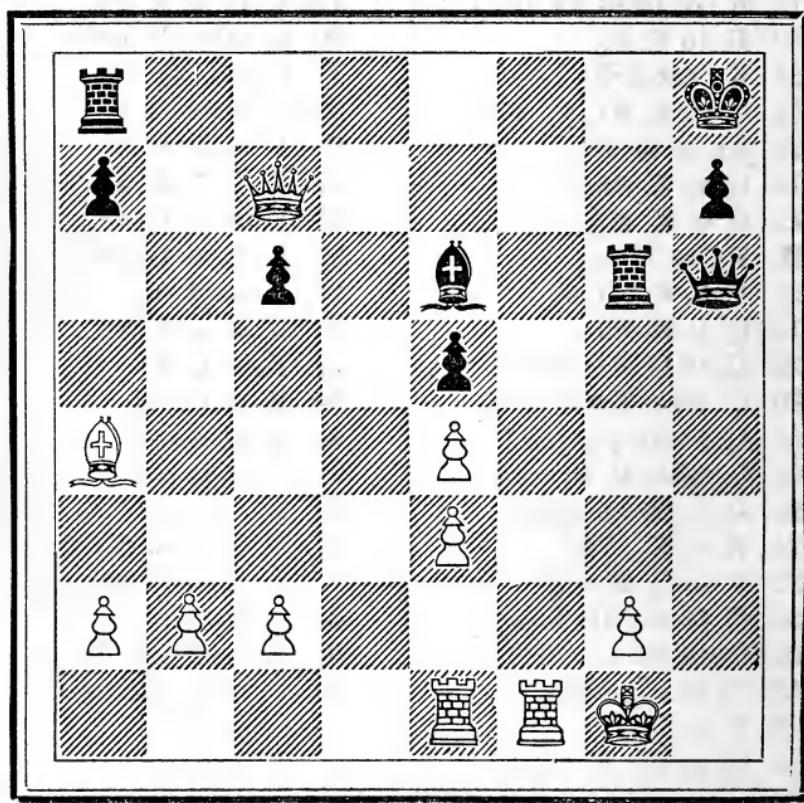
1. P. to K. 4th.  
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.

Paulsen.

1. P. to K. 4th.  
2. P. to Q. 4th.

\* The following diagram represents the position at the close of the game:—

BLACK.



WHITE.

## Morphy.

3. K. P. takes P.
4. Q. to K. 2d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to Q. B. 3d.
7. Q. P. takes P.
8. Q. takes K. P.
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th. (ch.)
10. Q. to K. 2d.
11. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
12. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
13. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
14. Castles (K. R.)
15. K. R. to K. sq.
16. Q. Kt. takes Q. B.
17. Q. takes Q. Kt.
18. B. takes B.
19. K. R. takes Kt. (ch.)
20. R. to K. sq.
21. Kt. takes Q.
22. Q. to K. Kt. 4th (ch.)
23. Kt. to Q. 3d.
24. Q. to K. 6th.
25. Q. to K. 4th.
26. Kt. to K. sq.
27. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
28. Q. to K. 5th.
29. Q. to Q. Kt. 8th (ch.)
30. Q. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
31. Q. to Kt. 8th (ch.)
32. Q. takes R. P. (ch.)
33. Q. to Kt. 8th (ch.)
34. K. to Kt. 2d.
35. P. to Q. R. 4th.
36. Q. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
37. Q. to Kt. 4th (ch.)
38. P. to Q. R. 5th.
39. P. to Q. R. 6th.
40. Q. to Kt. 7th (ch.)
41. Q. to Kt. 8th (ch.)

## Paulsen.

3. P. to K. 5th.
4. P. to K. B. 4th.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)
6. K. B. to K. 2d.
7. B. P. takes P.
8. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
10. K. Kt. takes P.
11. P. to Q. B. 3d.
12. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
13. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
14. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
15. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
16. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
17. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
18. Kt. takes B.
19. Q. takes K. R.
20. Q. takes R. (ch.)
21. Castles (Q. R.)
22. Q. R. to Q. 2d.
23. P. to K. R. 4th.
24. K. R. to R. 3d.
25. K. R. to Q. 3d.
26. K. R. to Q. 8th.
27. K. to Q. sq.
28. Q. R. to K. 2d.
29. K. to Q. 2d.
30. K. to Q. 3d.
31. K. to Q. 2d.
32. K. to Q. 3d.
33. K. to Q. 2d.
34. K. R. takes Kt.
35. K. R. to Q. R. 8th.
36. K. to Q. 3d.
37. K. to Q. 2d.
38. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
39. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
40. K. to Q. 3d.
41. K. to K. 3d.

## Morphy.

42. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
43. P. to Q. B. 4th.
44. Q. to Kt. 7th.
45. P. to K. R. 3d.
46. R. P. takes P.
47. Q. to B. 8th (ch.)
48. Q. takes Kt. P.
49. K. to B. 3d.
50. Q. to K. Kt. 7th. (ch.)
51. Q. to Q. B. 7th.
52. K. to Kt. 4th.
53. K. to Kt. 5th.
54. P. to K. B. 4th.

## Paulsen.

42. P. to K. Kt. 5th.
43. K. to B. 2d.
44. K. to B. sq.
45. Q. R. to K. 8th.
46. R. P. takes P.
47. K. to K. 2d.
48. Q. R. to K. Kt. 8th (ch.)
49. K. R. takes Q. R. P.
50. K. to K. 3d.
51. Q. R. to Q. R. 8th.
52. Q. R. to R. 5th.
53. Q. R. to R. 7th.

And Black resigns.\*

\* This game was played during an excursion party to High Bridge, in the neighborhood of New York, on the 20th of October 1857. It was one of two games played at once, without the use of any boards. The companion partie, unfortunately, remained unfinished and unrecorded.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE PROBLEM TOURNAY.

PROBLEM-MAKING has been very properly denominated the poetry of chess. The same depth of imagination, the same fecundity of invention, the same quick perception of the beautiful, which characterize the poet, belong also to the chess strategist. The alphabet he uses is made up of the thirty-two pieces and pawns, the paper upon which he writes out his thoughts is the chessboard, and every position of the forces, changing with each successive move, is a stanza of more or less elegance. Nor is this art altogether unlike those of the painter and sculptor, which indeed possess so many features in common with that of the bard. An ingenious problem is, in its way, as worthy of praise as a fine picture or a noble statue. When we have arrived, after much study, at its solution—when we have correctly caught, and fairly understood the spirit of the author's design—we contemplate the work of the chess artist with emotions of pleasure and admiration, similar to those with which we gaze upon the finished efforts of a Corregio or a Canova. The problem department of chess, too, has its lyrics and epics, its German and Italian schools, its antiques and its modern productions. A sonnet by Wordsworth and a song by Moore, a Beggar Boy by Murillo and a Flemish Inn by Rubens, a Hebe by Thorwaldsen and an Ariadne by Danneker, do not differ more in style and expression than an end-game by Stamma and a problem by D'Orville. The acute student and true connoisseur of these chess puzzles

will tell us that this man was famous for three-move positions, that another excelled in the composition of stratagems in five moves, while a third was eminent for his problems in twenty moves and upwards, and a fourth displayed much cunning and skill in fabricating self-mates, those curious anomalies of the art. He will point out the fact, that one school betrays a fondness for multifarious and complicated variations, while an equally large class of strategists prefer a single and simple mate, by a series of forced steps, and accompanied by few or no perplexing ramifications. He will explain to us that all composers, previous to this century, may be styled pre-Raphaelites. Their tastes were simple and severe; their themes were naturally and plainly elaborated; they labored in an unexplored mine, where the material at their command was so abundant and accessible that they had no need to search for intricate schemes, nor to deck their designs with florid ornaments.

So zealously has this branch of chess been cultivated of late, and so many distinguished masters have arisen within a short time, that the last twenty years may, with truth, be called the Golden Age of problems. There is scarcely a country which cannot boast of one or more widely-known composers. Fully acknowledging the beauty and utility of the creations of these chess minstrels, and recognising the rapidly increasing favor with which they are regarded by the chess-playing public, the Committee of Management of the Congress determined upon offering the most liberal prizes ever given for specimens of enigmatical skill, and to throw the competition open to the whole world. Notwithstanding the unusually large amount of the premiums, and the wide publicity given to the affair, the number of competitors was not large. Five sets were sent from the Old World, and six from the New. Both the Committee, and those who entered the lists, were fortunate in having at the head of the Examining Committee so able a problem critic as Mr. Eugene B. Cook of Hoboken, New Jersey, who transmitted to the President, not long after the adjournment of the Congress, the following

## REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE ON PROBLEMS.

COL. C. D. MEAD, PRESIDENT OF THE COMMITTEE OF MANAGEMENT OF THE NATIONAL CHESS CONGRESS.

SIR:—At length I have the honor to lay before you a report relative to the Problem Tournay.

A few days after the 1st of November, as the distance between the places of residence of the Committee of Examination and Award precluded the possibility of a general meeting, I dispatched to each member copies of the sets of problems entered. Such of the mottoes as indicated the country of the composer were translated.

Judgment as to the relative merit of problems is greatly aided by a system of grading, based upon a consideration of their originality, beauty, and profundity. Each position being given its mark, by taking the average, the merit of the set can be estimated with greater precision. Of course a position which is radically faulty should be marked zero, as it is no problem. The fact that a set contains faulty positions should not *exclude* it from competition, but only *discount* the set. The idea of marking the problems, taking a certain number as a maximum, occurred to several members of the Committee, and this method was adopted by them in assisting their judgment.

Much time was requisite for examining and testing the positions, and, moreover, considerable delay was occasioned by the necessity of conferring by letter. Exceeding care has been taken in the matter, and it is hoped that no one will have just cause to complain of the decision.

It is the unanimous opinion of the Committee, that the set, "*Strive for honor,*" by RUDOLPH WILLMERS of Vienna, stands first; and that the set, "*Three is the charm,*" by CONRAD BAYER of Vienna, holds the second place. Honorable mention has also been accorded to the set, "*Certum pete finem,*" composed by SAMUEL LOYD of New York.

## The Problem Tournay.

The following table contains the names and residences of the composers who participated in the Tournay, and the mottoes distinguishing their sets of positions:—

Set.	Composer.	Residence.
1. Strive for honor ! . . . .	RUDOLPH WILLMERS,	Vienna, Austria.
2. Three is the charm, . . . .	CONRAD BAYER,	Olmütz, “
3. Certum pete finem, . . . .	SAMUEL LOYD,	Florence, N. J.
4. Non quo, sed quomodo, .	HYACINTH R. AGNEL,	West Point, N. Y.
5. <i>Des Strebendwirth</i> , . . . .	FRANZ DELLA TORRE,	Vienna, Austria.
6. But Washington's a watch-		
word, such as ne'er Shall sink while there's an echo left to air, . . . .	CHARLES WHITE,	Sunbury, England.
7. Quod potui perfeci, . . . .	THEO. M. BROWN,	Newark, N. J.
8. Cedo majori! . . . .	CARL MEIER,	Bremen.
9. When we cannot do as we wish, we must do as we can, . . . .	JOHN TANNER,	New Orleans, La.
10. Les trois Mousquetaires, .	EDWIN J. WELLER,	Boston, Mass.
11. A. B. C., . . . .	T. J. GROTJAN,	San Francisco, Cal.

In the foregoing table I have endeavored, aided by the counsels of the other members of the Committee, to place the sets in the order of merit. Of course there was some disparity of opinion with regard to the precedence of some of the sets; but I think the table presents in all cases the opinion of a majority of the Committee.

There are faulty positions in sets 5, 6, 7, 10, and 11. Unfortunately shoals are more likely to escape the detection of the composer the greater the depth of the conception.

It is to be regretted that so few of our own composers took part in the Tournay. The confidence reposed in us by our foreign chess brethren is very gratifying.

It is necessary to abstain from comment upon the merits of the Prize Stratagems, lest a clue should thereby be furnished to the solutions: each contains a beautiful secret, which, when known, “needs no bush.” Problem No. 3 of set “Certum

pete finem" is wonderfully elaborate. No. 2 of set "Des Strebendwerth" met with especial commendation from several of the Committee. There are problems in various sets which urge their own claims for notice. Among the Tournay Problems are to be found some fine exemplifications of the two chief styles, or schools, of stratagems: the classic, in which a simple *theme* is rendered; and the elaborate, in which a number of themes are united or interwoven—the ramifications of leading and subordinate variations oftentimes rivalling in number the trunks, branches, limbs, and twigs of a banian-tree! A published selection of the problems would form a valuable addition to the literature of the *poetry* of chess.

Respectfully,

EUGENE B. COOK.

On behalf of the Committee { W. G. THOMAS, Esq., of Philadelphia.  
                                   W. J. A. FULLER, Esq., of New York.  
                                   J. FERGUSON, Esq., of Lockport.  
                                   S. R. CALTHROP, Esq., of Bridgeport.

Mr. RUDOLPH WILLMERS, who secured the highest prize in this intellectual joust, is an eminent pianist, occupying a position in the musical profession side by side with the celebrated Liszt. He was born at Copenhagen, Denmark, in the year 1820, pursued the study of music in Germany, and since the year 1838 has given concerts in the leading cities of Europe. He was an unsuccessful competitor for the prize in the Problem Tournament, which was originated some two years since by Mr. Löwenthal, the chess editor of the London *Era*. The winner of the second prize, Mr. CONRAD BAYER, has been known for some years as one of the most ingenious and fertile problem-composers of the day. To the chess journals of Germany, England, and America, he is a frequent and valuable contributor, both of stratagems and literary articles. In 1857 he took the prize in the *Era* Problem Tournay. Mr. SAMUEL LOYD, who holds the third place on the Committee's list,

although still very young, has already gained a high reputation on both sides of the Atlantic for his genius in the strategic art. He was born in Philadelphia in the year 1841, and began to publish chess problems at the age of fifteen. For the last three years no composer has been more prolific. He gained in 1857 the first prize in the *Chess Monthly* Problem Tournay. Professor AGNEL is the author of *Chess for Winter Evenings*; Mr. FRANZ DELLA TORRE is one of the foremost of the many famous problem-makers of Germany; Mr. CHARLES WHITE is a contributor to the British chess organs, in which he has published some fine specimens of his powers, and is about twenty years of age; Dr. CARL MEIER is the author, we believe, of a German work on chess, which appeared in 1844; and Mr. THEODORE M. BROWN has distinguished himself by the composition of a host of beautiful positions, and in the department of suicidal and conditional problems has few superiors.

[Of the problems which follow, I. is a position subsequently received from the winner of the first prize, II.-XX. are the best of the Tournay Problems, the sets being arranged in accordance with the rank given them by the Committee, XXI. is a stratagem contributed by one of the competitors, XXII. is a problem dedicated by the Chairman of the Committee to the three prize-bearers, and XXIII.-LIII. are selections from the most beautiful American compositions, kindly made and arranged by Mr. Cook, at my request. Their authors, Mr. EUGENE B. COOK, Mr. DENIS JULIEN, Mr. SAMUEL LOYD, Mr. NAPOLEON MARACHE, and Mr. J. A. POTTER, have, during the last few years, formed the foremost rank of American composers. The good will with which they acceded to my demand, and placed their best productions at my disposal, deserves my warmest thanks.]

PROBLEM I.

DEDICATED

TO THE

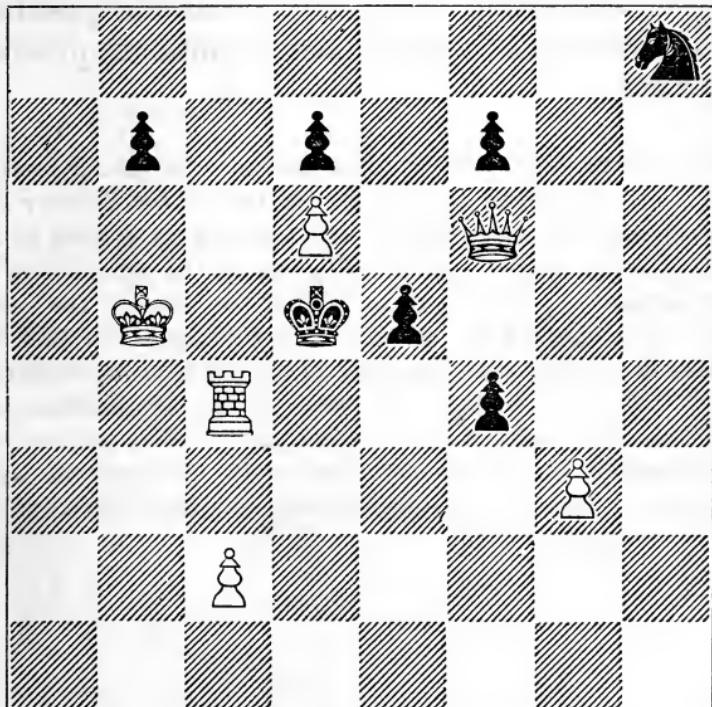
COMMITTEE OF EXAMINATION AND AWARD,  
OF THE

AMERICAN PROBLEM TOURNAY.

BY

RUDOLPH WILLMERS, OF VIENNA.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM II.

SET

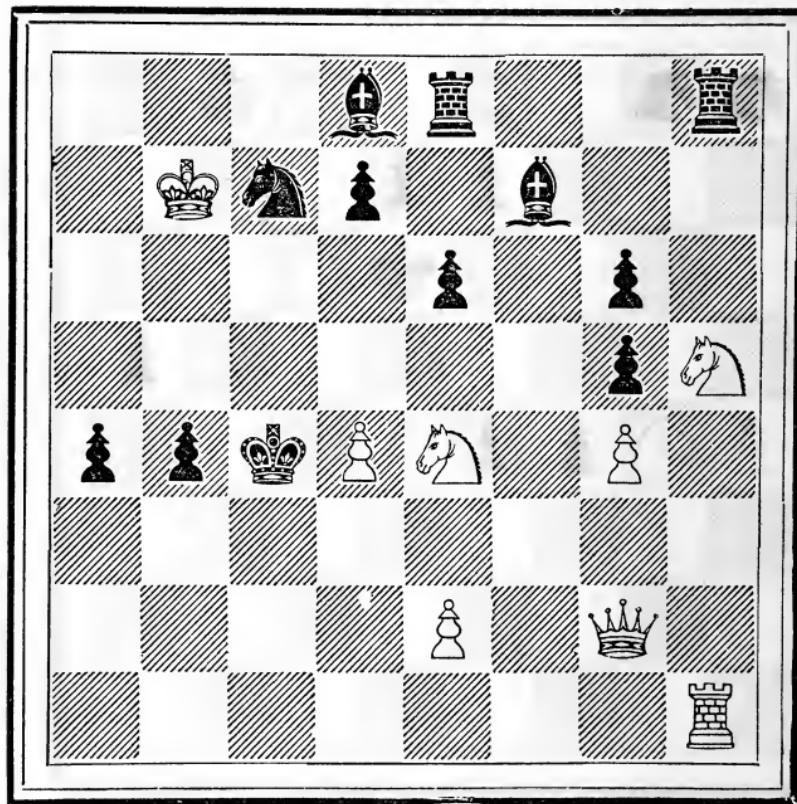
*"STRIVE FOR HONOR!"*

BY

RUDOLPH WILLMERS, OF VIENNA.

No. I.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM III.

SET

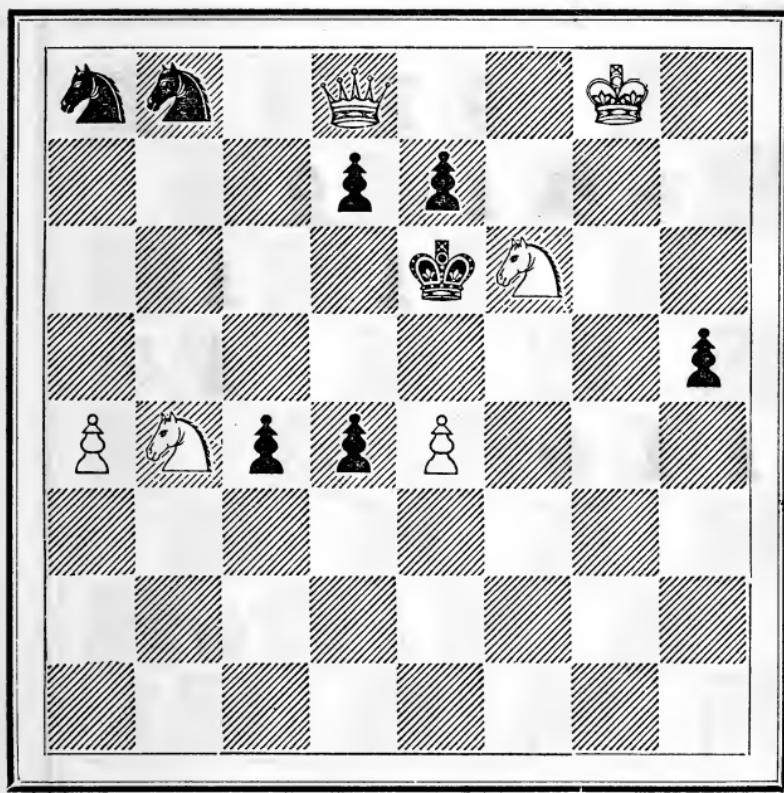
*"STRIVE FOR HONOR!"*

BY

RUDOLPH WILLMERS, OF VIENNA.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM IV.

SET

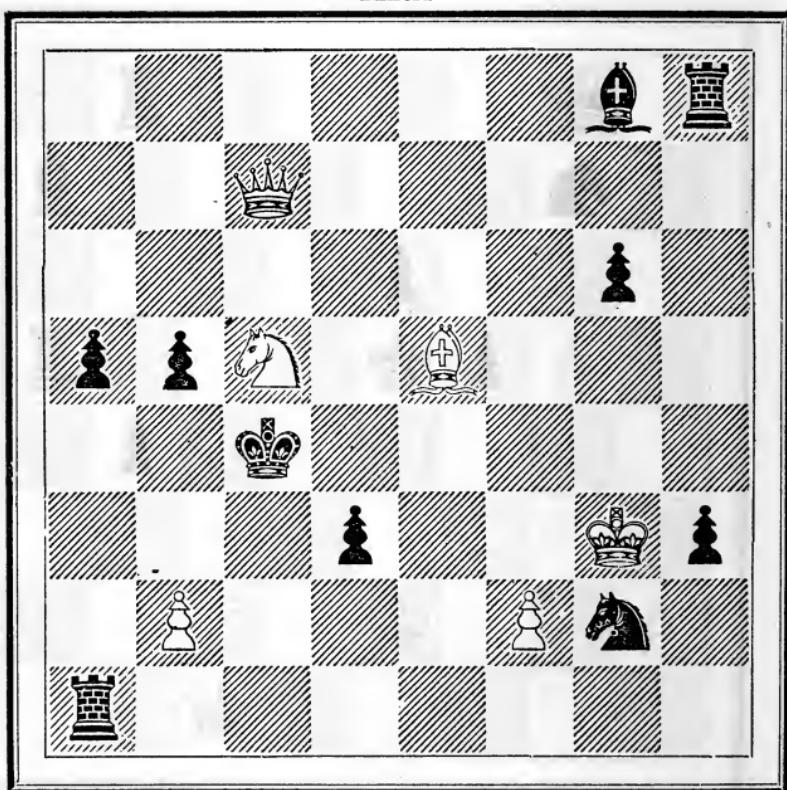
*"STRIVE FOR HONOR!"*

BY

RUDOLPH WILLMERS, OF VIENNA.

No. III.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM V.

SET

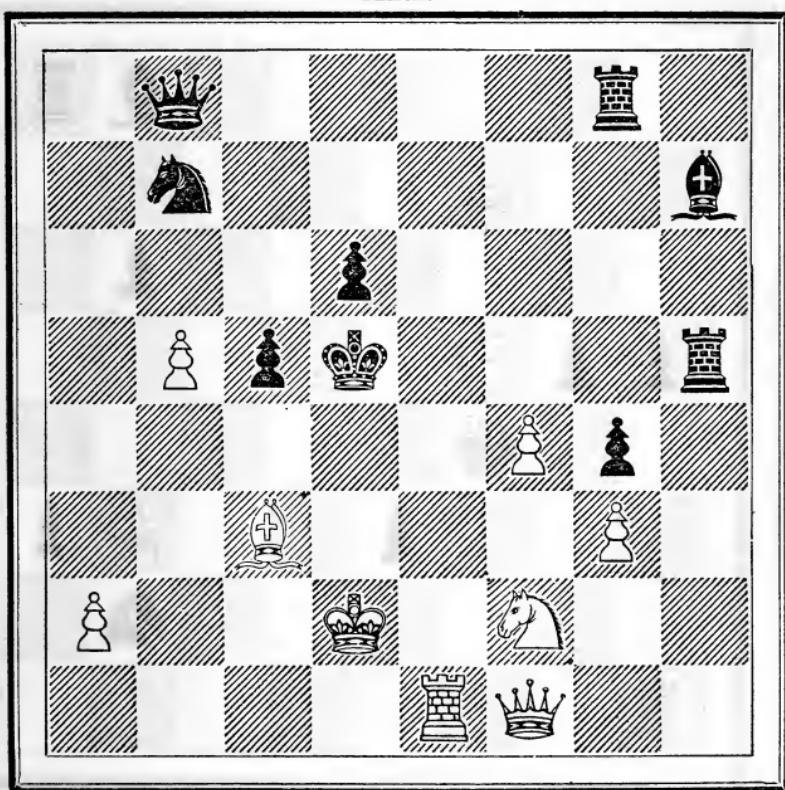
*"THREE IS THE CHARM."*

BY

CONRAD BAYER, OF OLMÜTZ.

No. I.

BLACK.



White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM VI.

SET

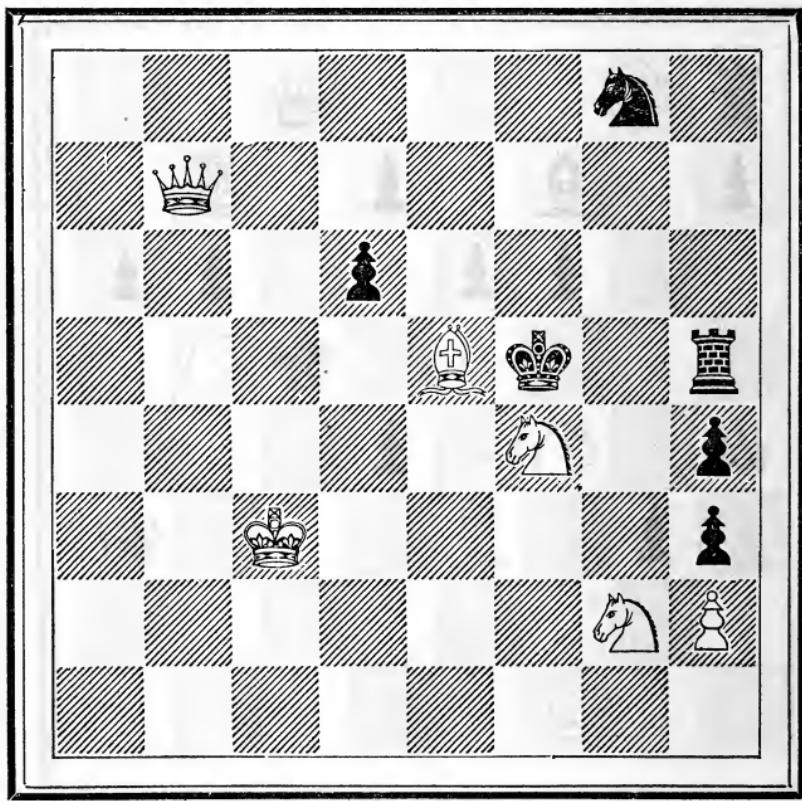
*"THREE IS THE CHARM."*

BY

CONRAD BAYER, OF OLMUTZ.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM VII.

SET

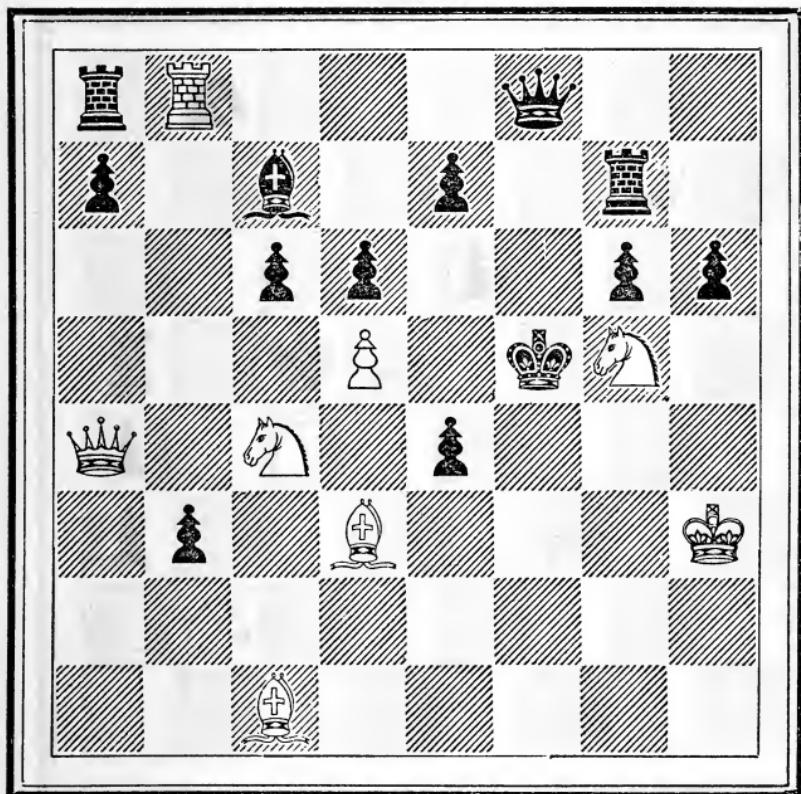
*"THREE IS THE CHARM."*

BY

CONRAD BAYER, OF OLMÜTZ.

No. III.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM VIII.

SET

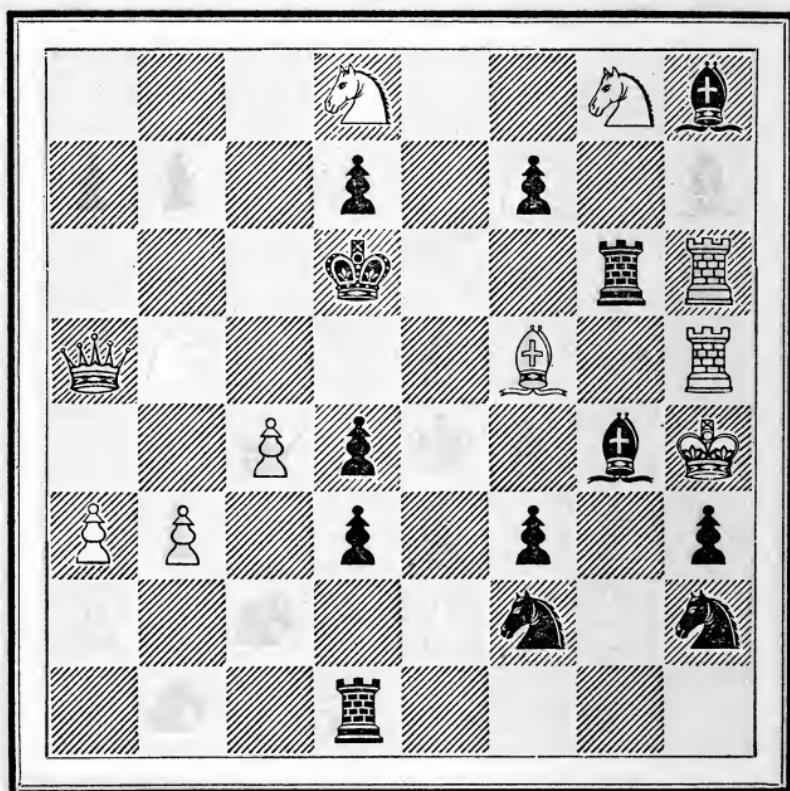
*"CERTUM PETE FINEM."*

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

No. I.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Three moves.

## PROBLEM IX.

SET

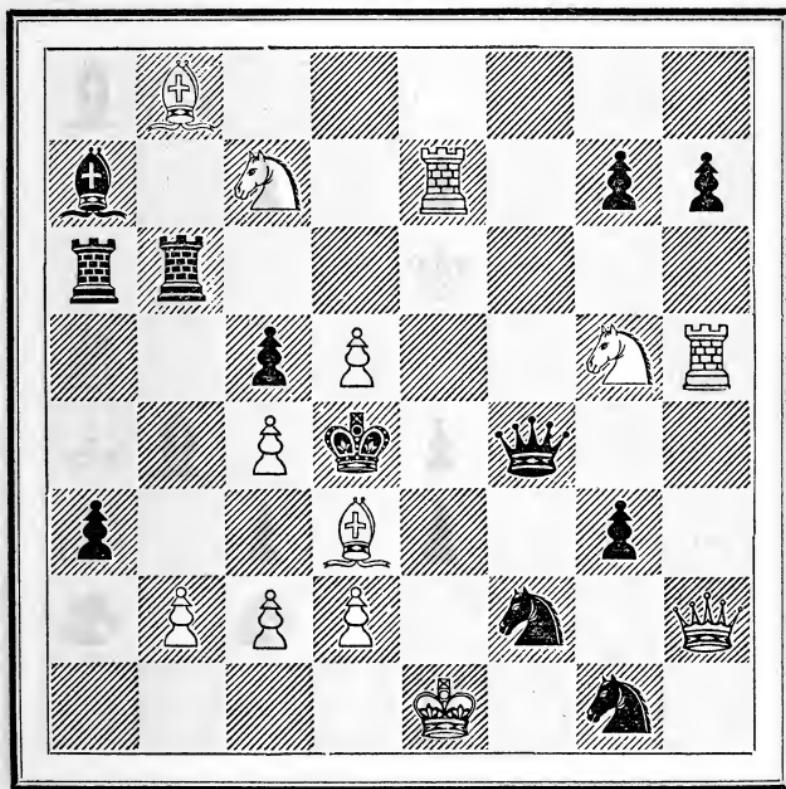
*"CERTUM PETE FINEM."*

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves

## PROBLEM X.

SET

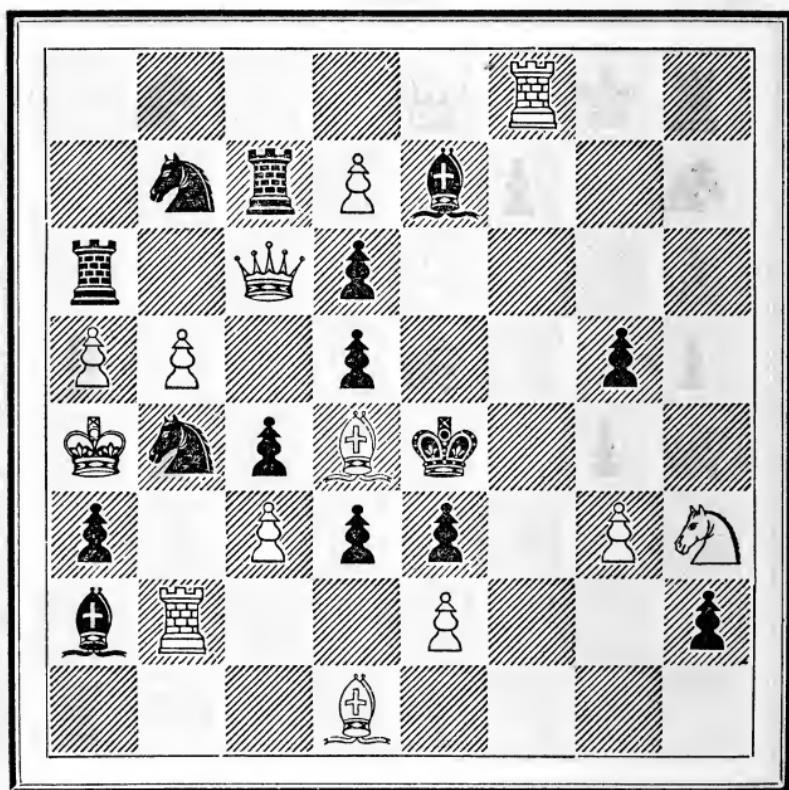
*"CERTUM PETE FINEM."*

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

No. III.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XI.

SET

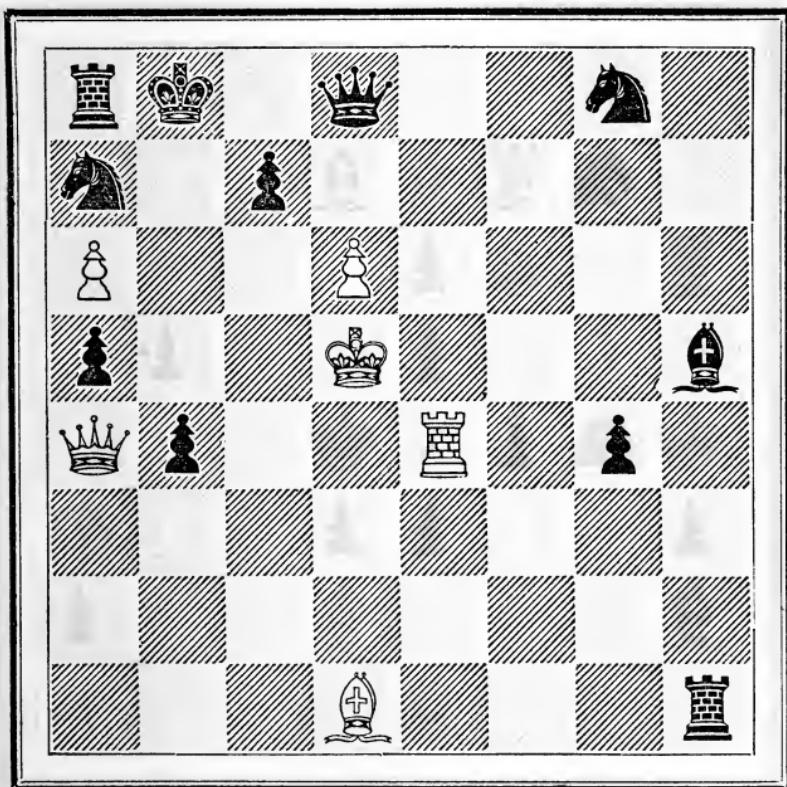
*"NON QUO, SED QUOMODO."*

BY

H. R. AGNEL, OF WEST POINT.

No. I.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Seven moves.

## PROBLEM XII.

SET

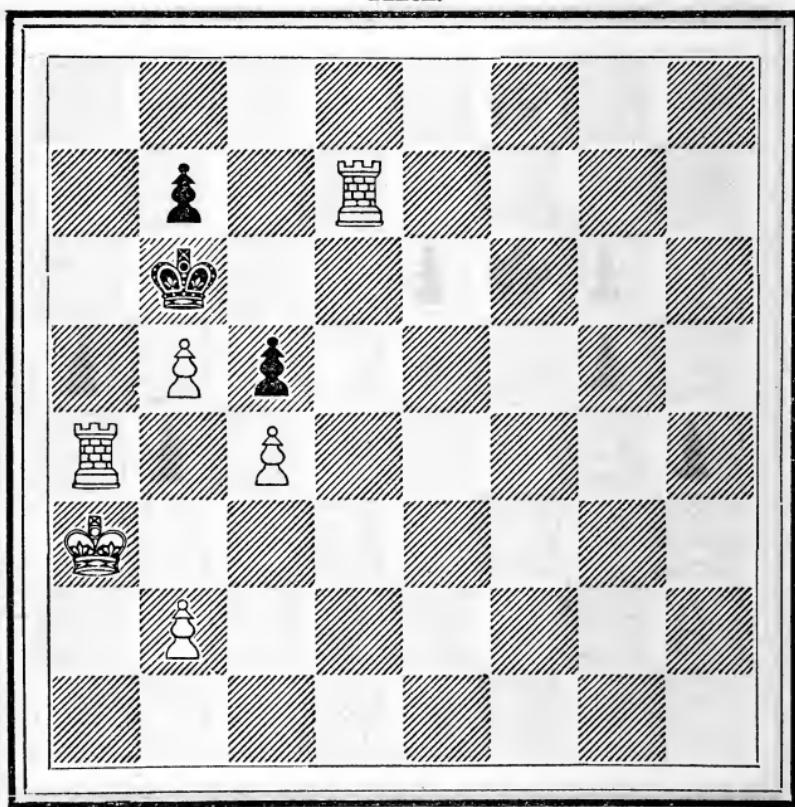
*"NON QUO, SED QUOMODO."*

BY

H. R. AGNEL, OF WEST POINT.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XIII.

SET

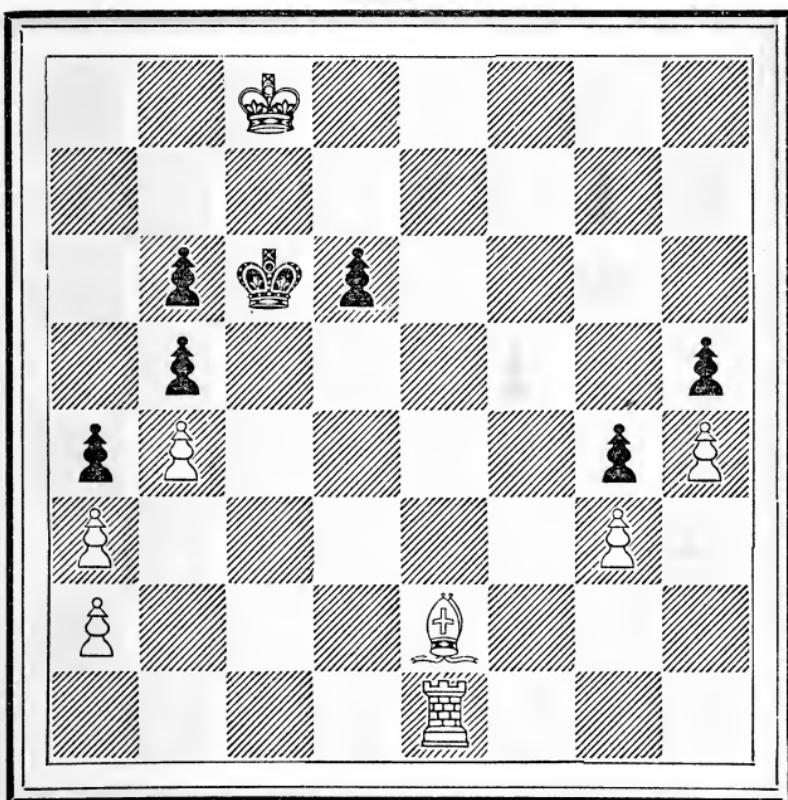
*"NON QUO, SED QUOMODO."*

BY

H. R. AGNEL, OF WEST POINT.

No. III.

BLACK.



White to play, and mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XIV.

SET

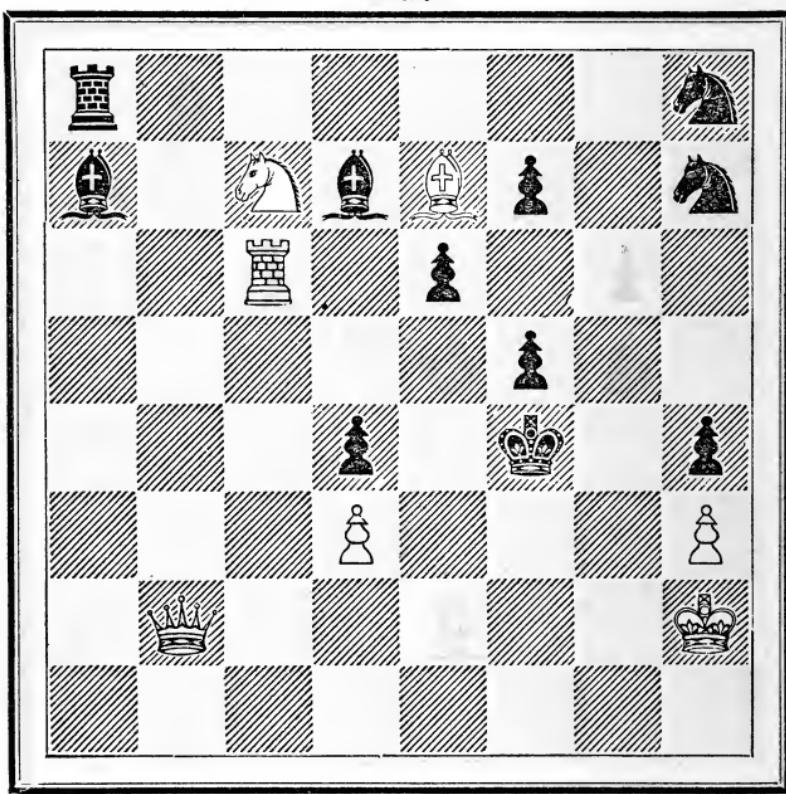
*“Des Strebend werth.”*

BY

FRANZ DELLA TORRE, OF VIENNA.

No. I.

BLACK.



White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XV.

SET

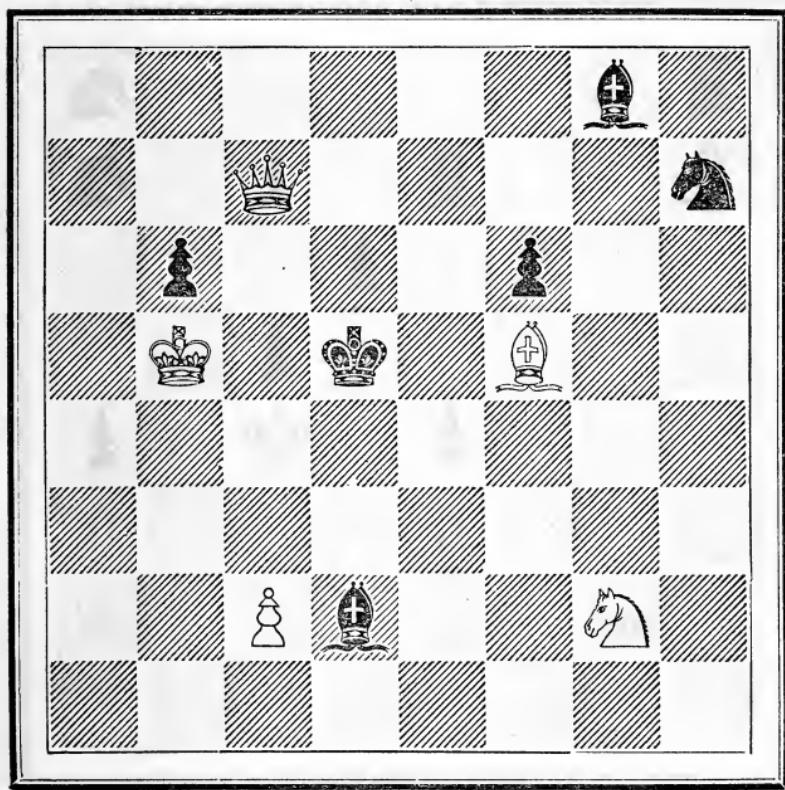
*“Des Strebend werth.”*

BY

FRANZ DELLA TORRE, OF VIENNA.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XVI.

SET

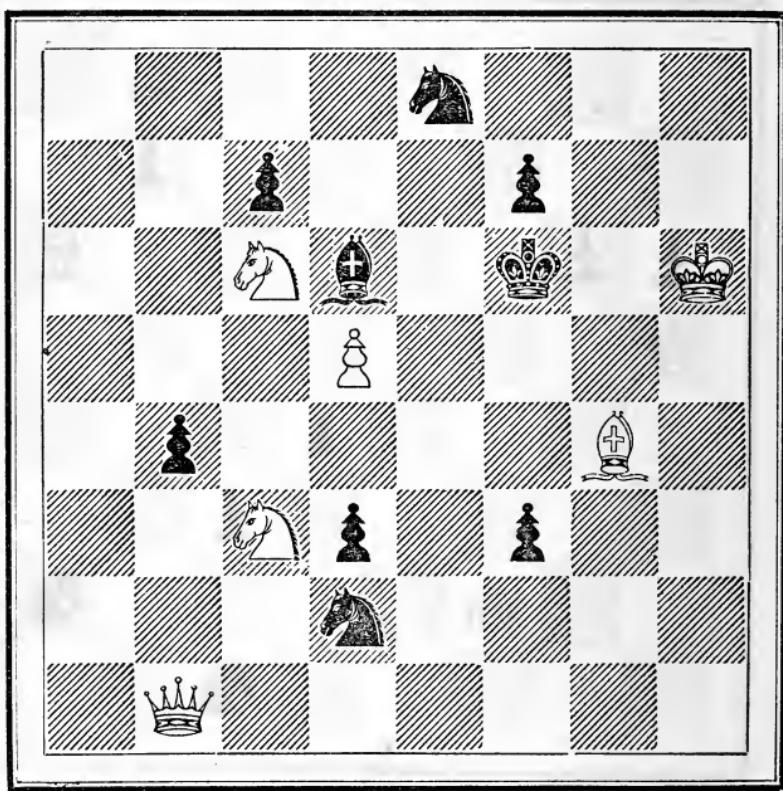
*"But Washington's a watchword, such as ne'er  
Shall sink while there's an echo left to air."*

BY

CHARLES WHITE, OF SUNBURY, ENGLAND

No. I.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XVII.

SET

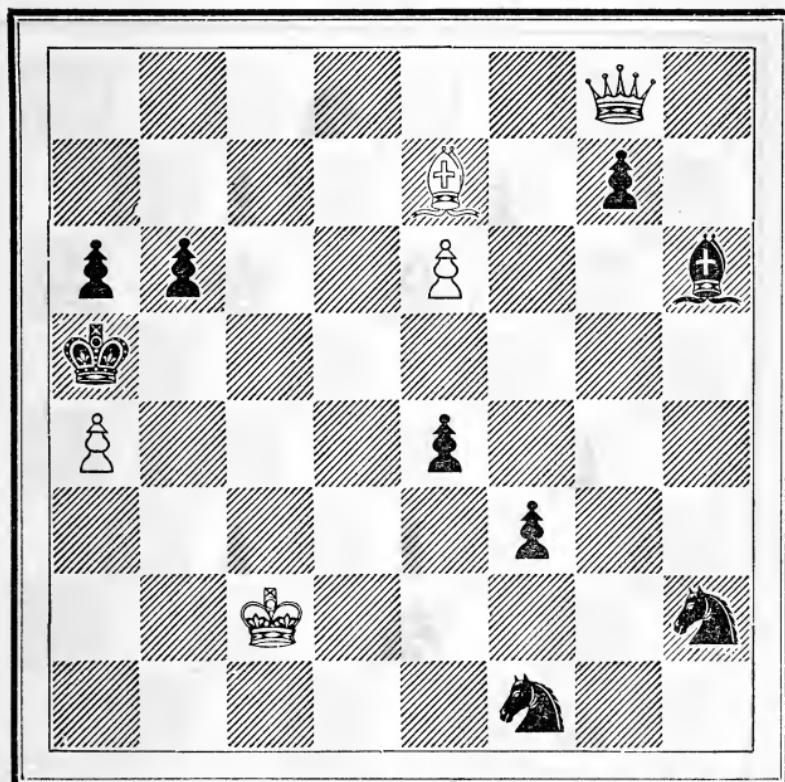
*"But Washington's a watchword, such as ne'er  
Shall sink while there's an echo left to air."*

BY

CHARLES WHITE, OF SUNBURY, ENGLAND.

No. II.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XVIII.

SET

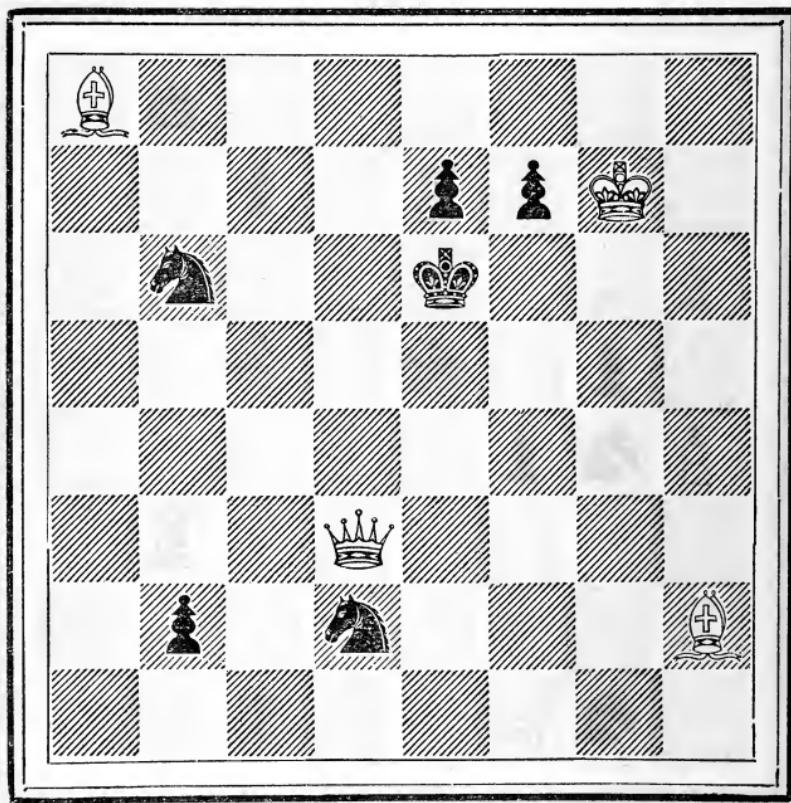
*"QUOD POTUI PERFECI."*

BY

THEO. M. BROWN, OF NEWARK, N. J.

No. I.

BLACK.



White to play, and mate in Three moves.

## PROBLEM XIX.

SET

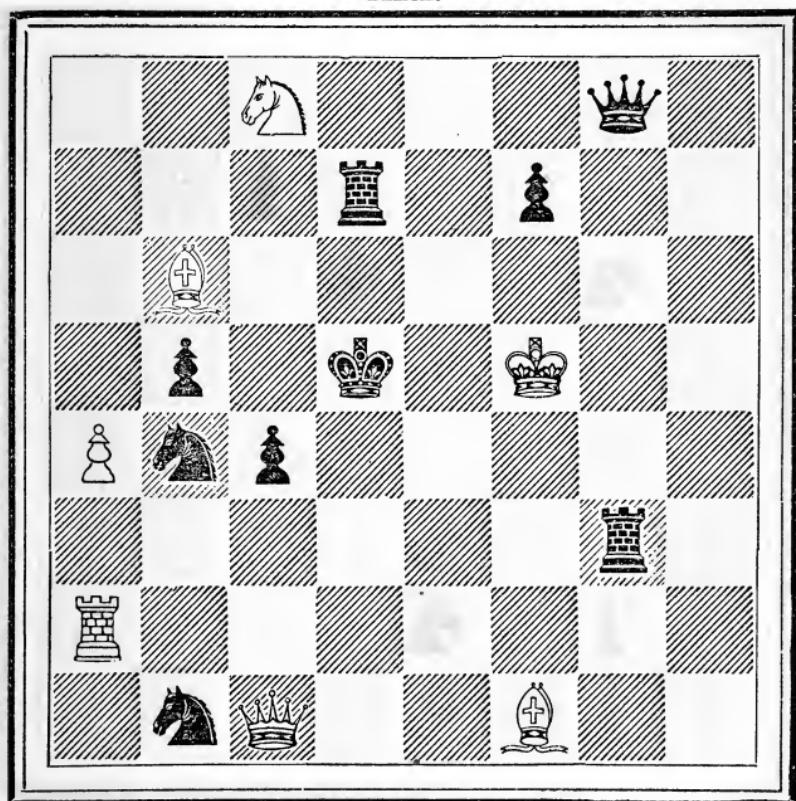
*"QUOD POTUI PERFECI."*

BY

THEO. M. BROWN, OF NEWARK, N. J.

No. III.

BLACK.



White to play, and mate in Six moves.

## PROBLEM XX.

SET

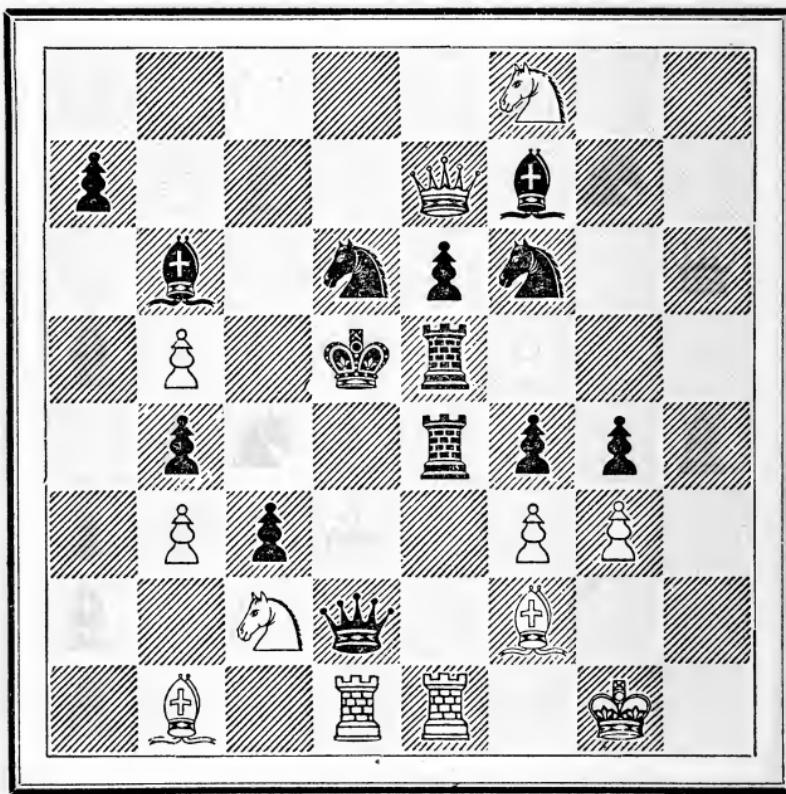
*“ CEDO MAJORI! ”*

BY

CARL MEIER, OF BREMEN.

No. III.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Fifteen moves.

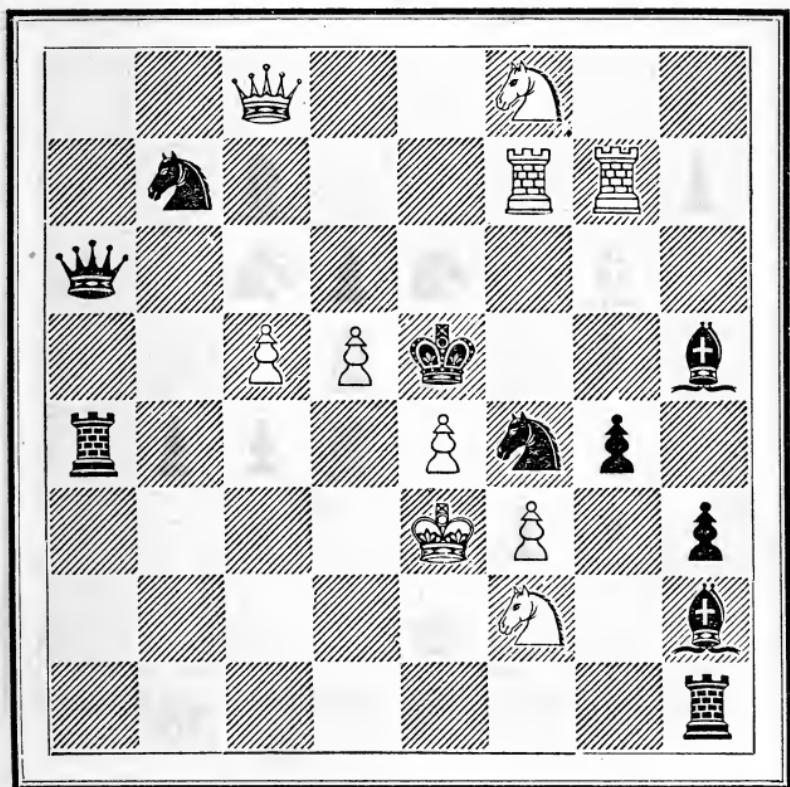
## PROBLEM XXI.

*"CURIOSUM."*

BY

CARL MEIER, OF BREMEN.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate with K. B. P. in Nine moves.

## PROBLEM XXII.

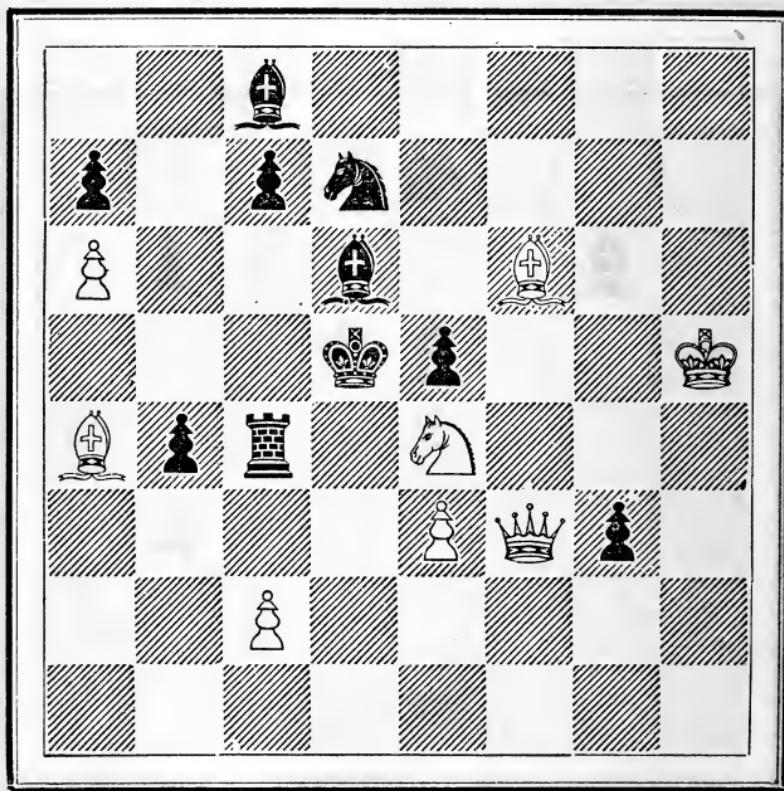
INSCRIBED,

WITH FRIENDLY REGARD,  
TO

RUDOLPH WILLMERS, CONRAD BAYER, AND S. LOYD.

BY  
E. B. C.

BLACK.



WHITE.

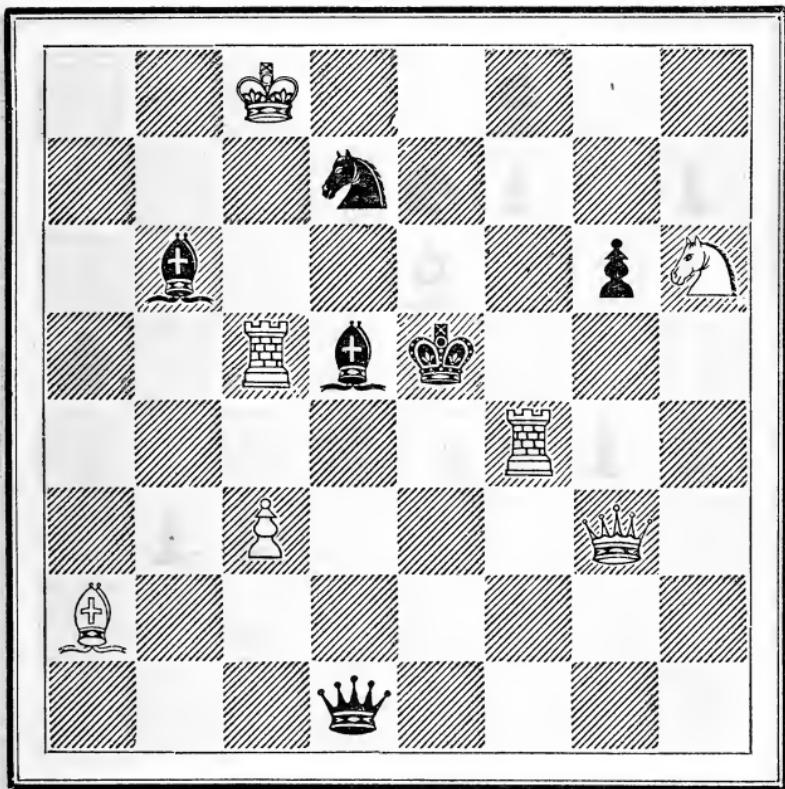
White to play, and mate in Five moves.

PROBLEM XXIII.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



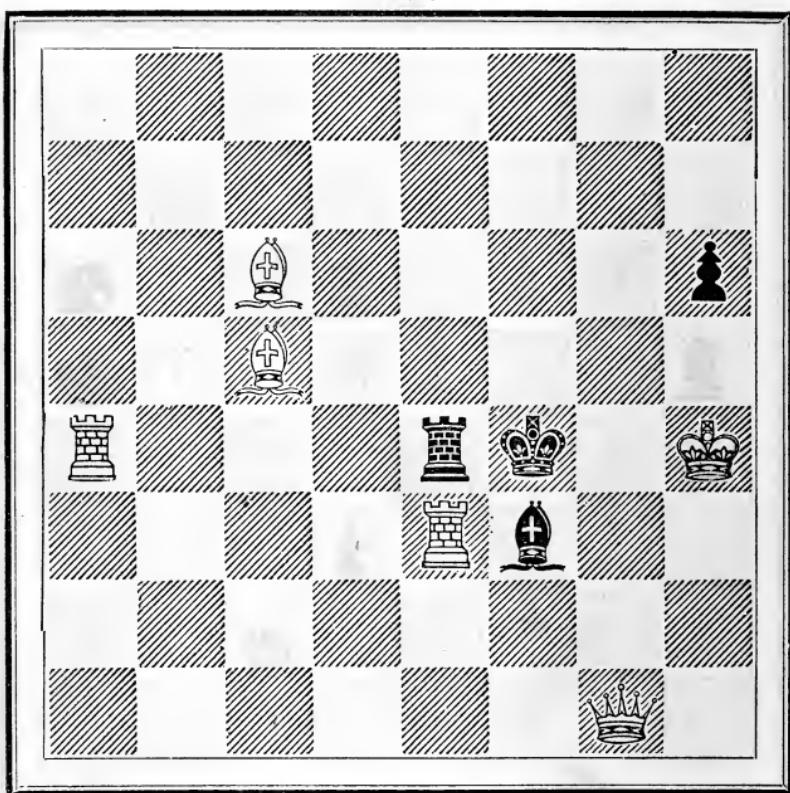
White to play, and mate in Two moves.

## PROBLEM XXIV.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.

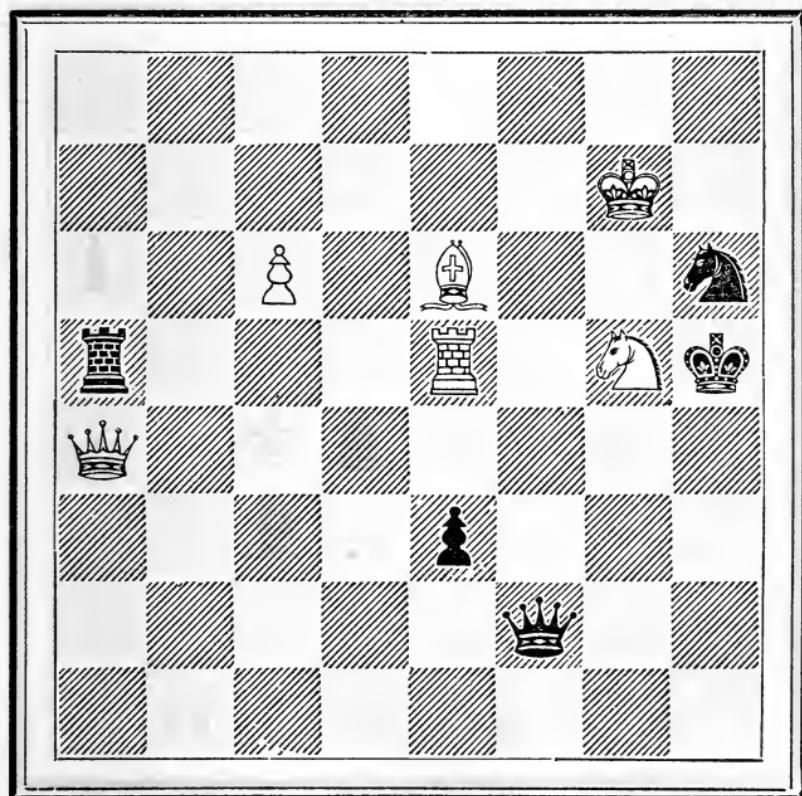
WHITE.  
White to play, and mate in Two moves.

PROBLEM XXV.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

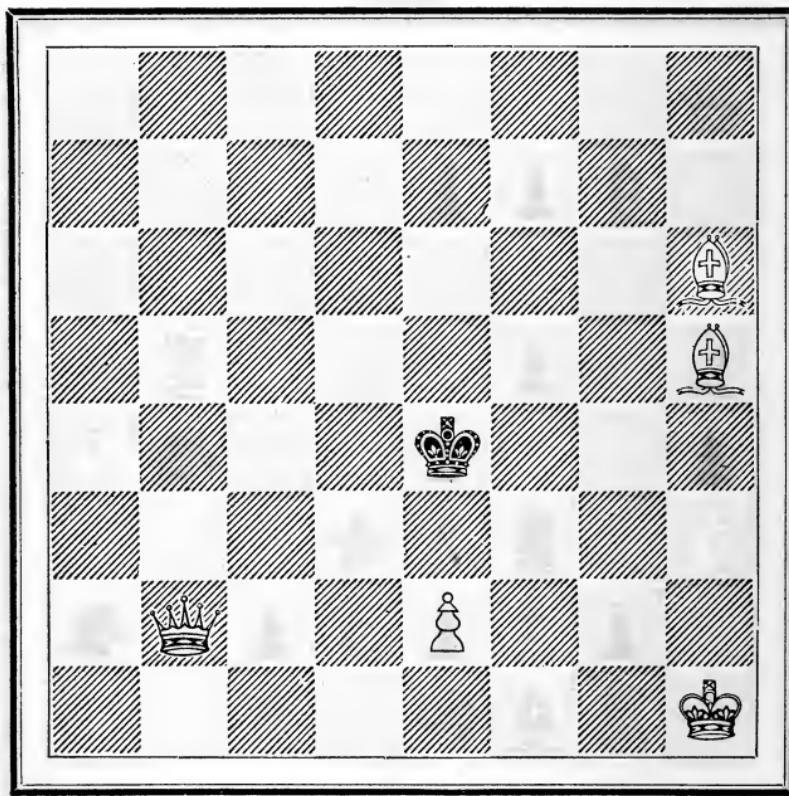
White to play, and mate in Three moves.

## PROBLEM XXVI.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

BLACK.



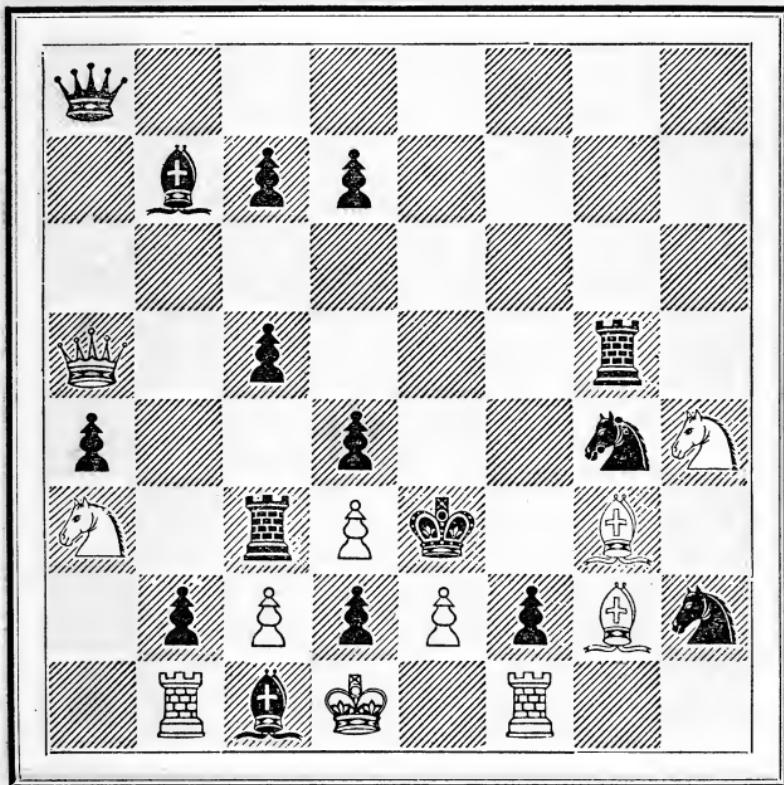
White to play, and mate in Three moves.

## PROBLEM XXVII.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

**BLACK.**



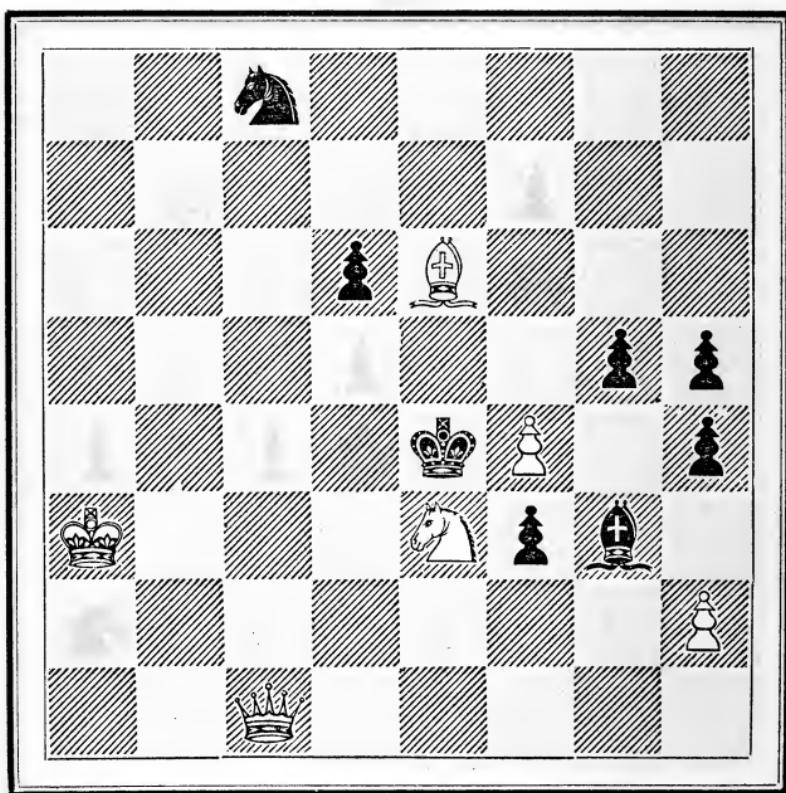
**White to play, and mate in Three moves**

## PROBLEM XXVIII.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

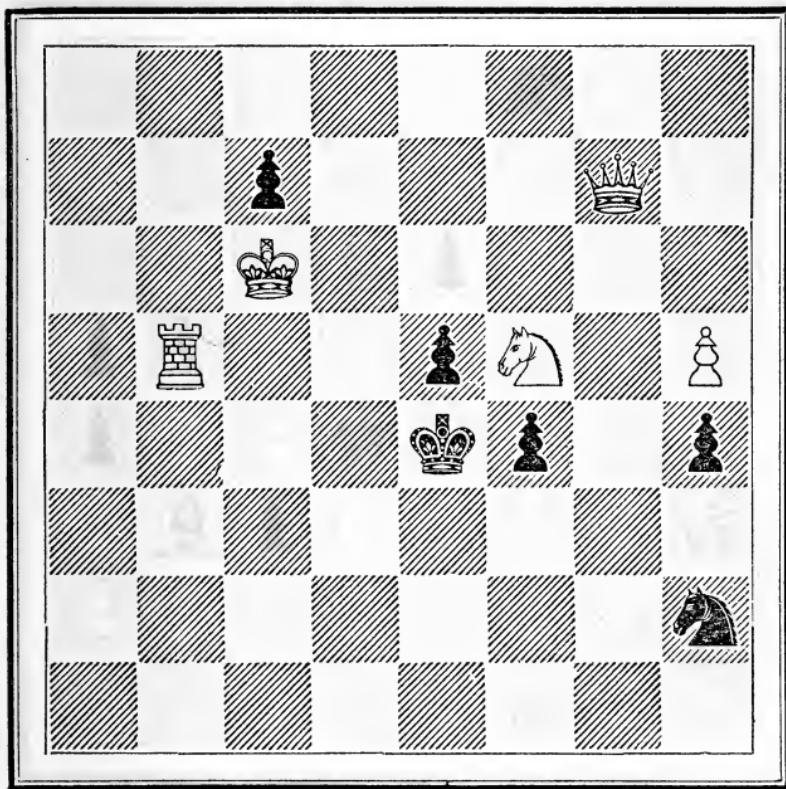
White to play, and mate in Three moves.

PROBLEM XXIX.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

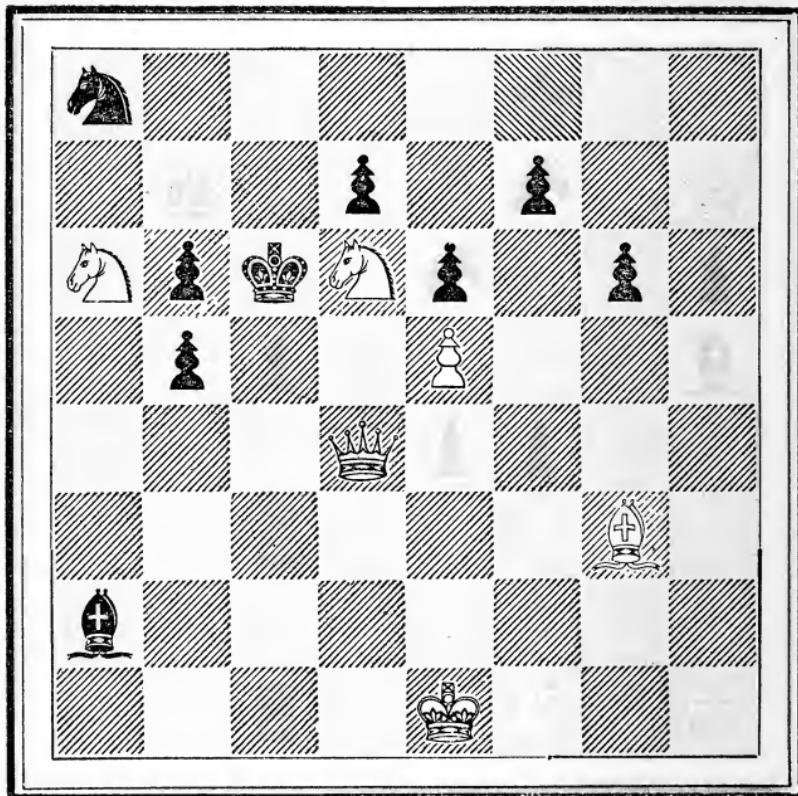
White to play, and mate in Three moves.

## PROBLEM XXX.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

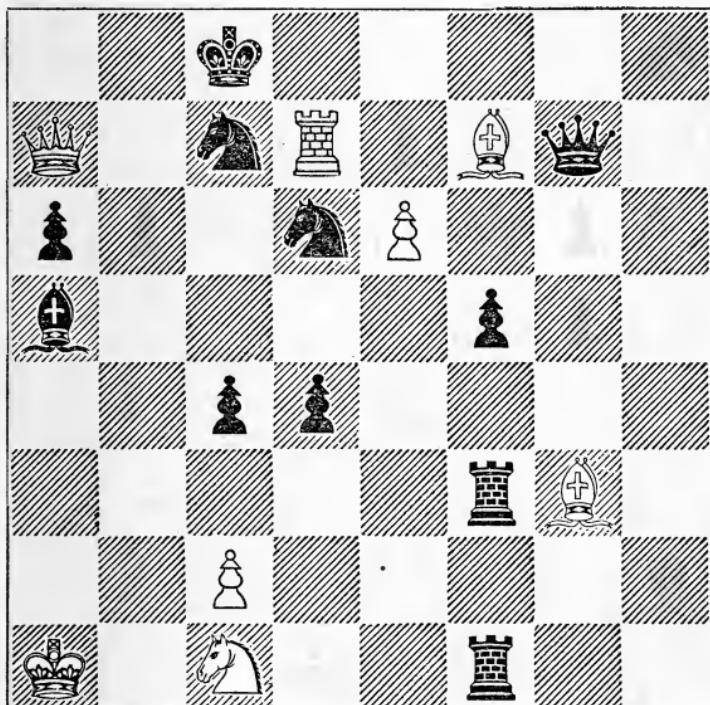
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XXXI.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

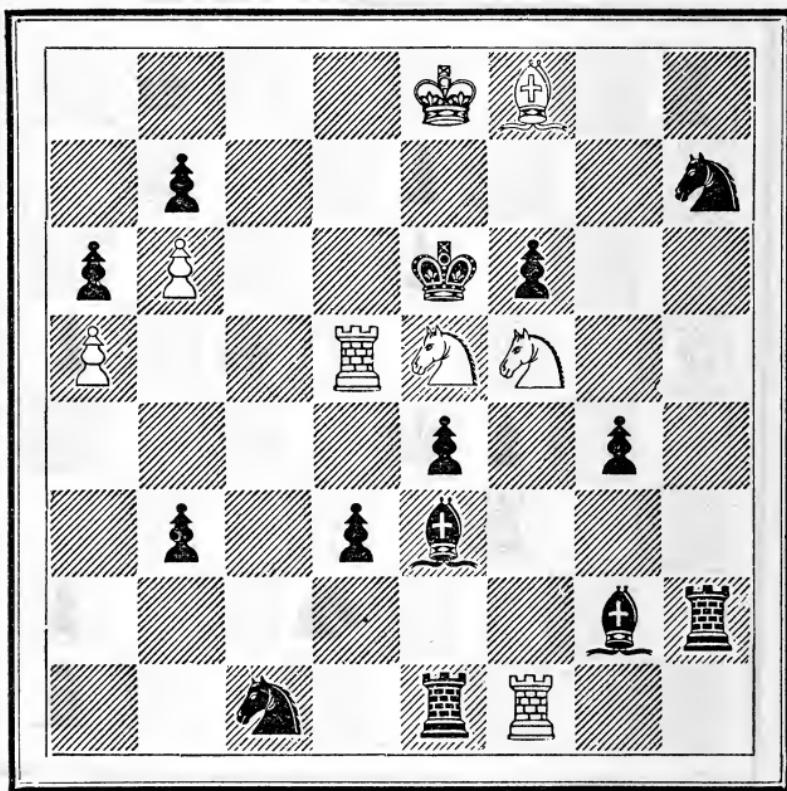
Either party, playing first, to mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XXXII.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

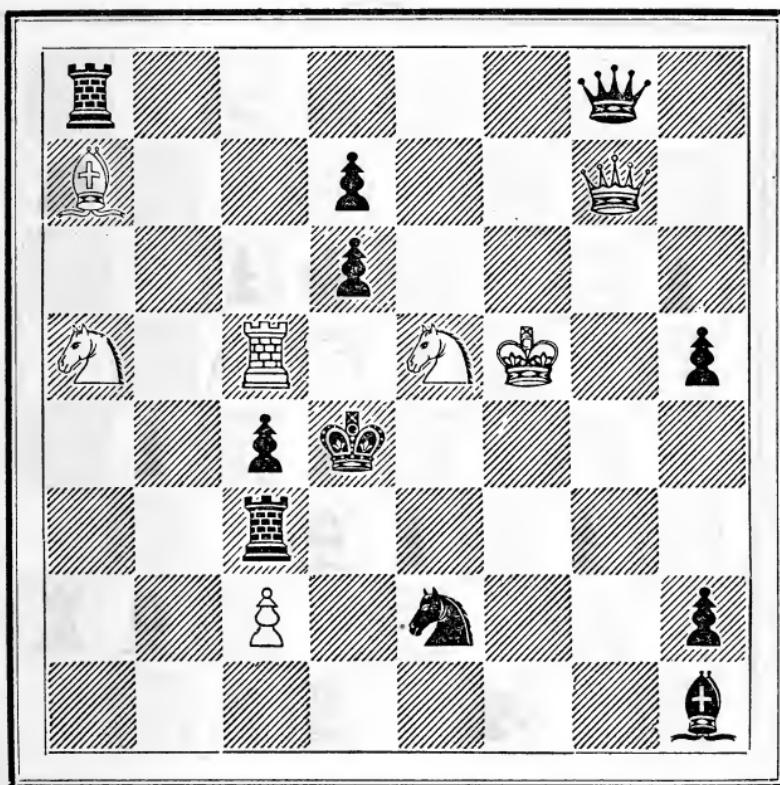
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XXXIII.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

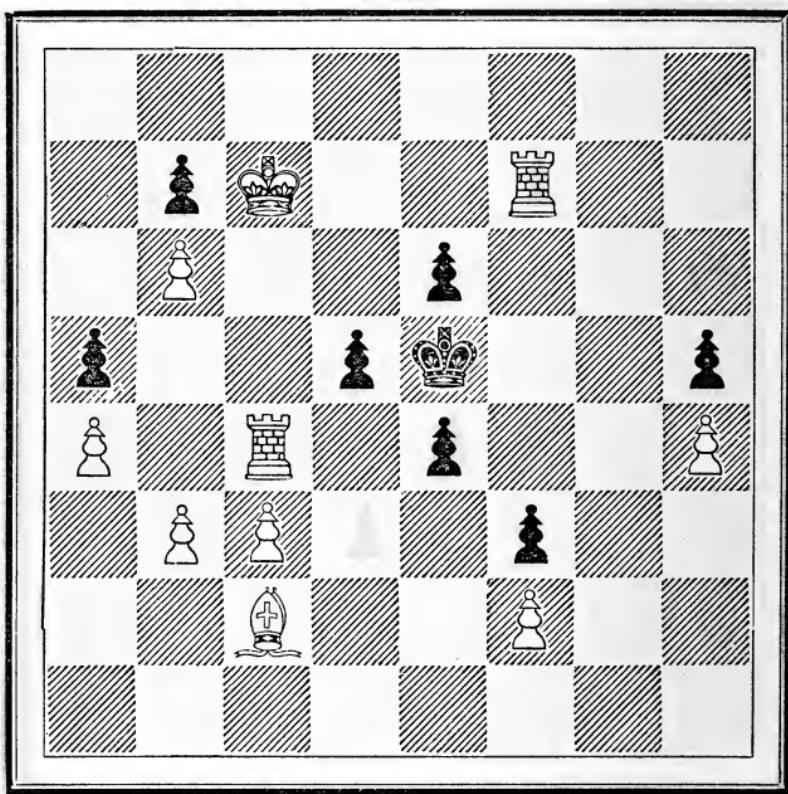
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XXXIV.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

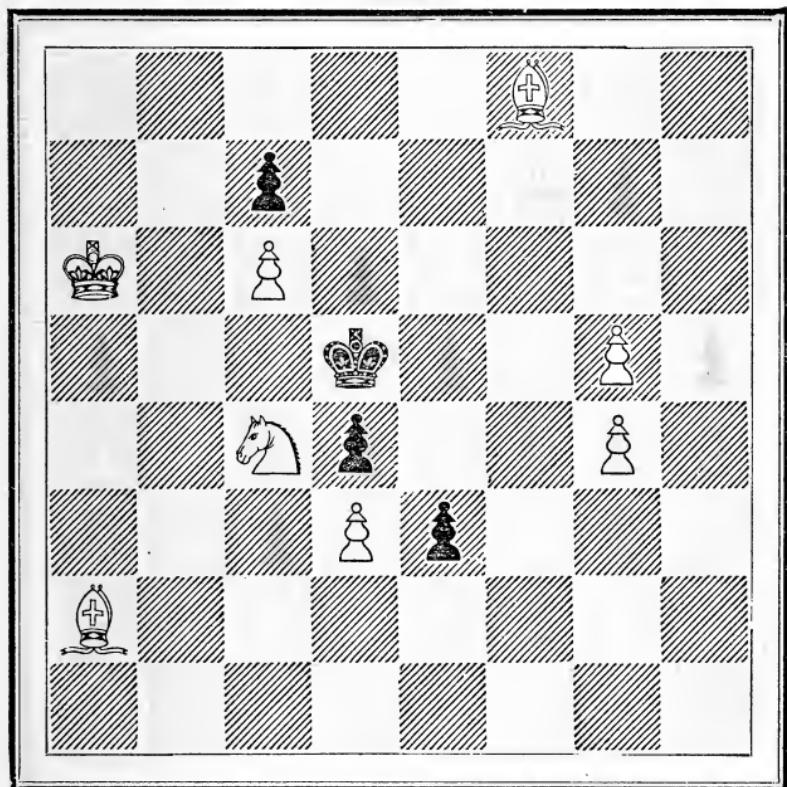
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XXXV.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J.

BLACK.



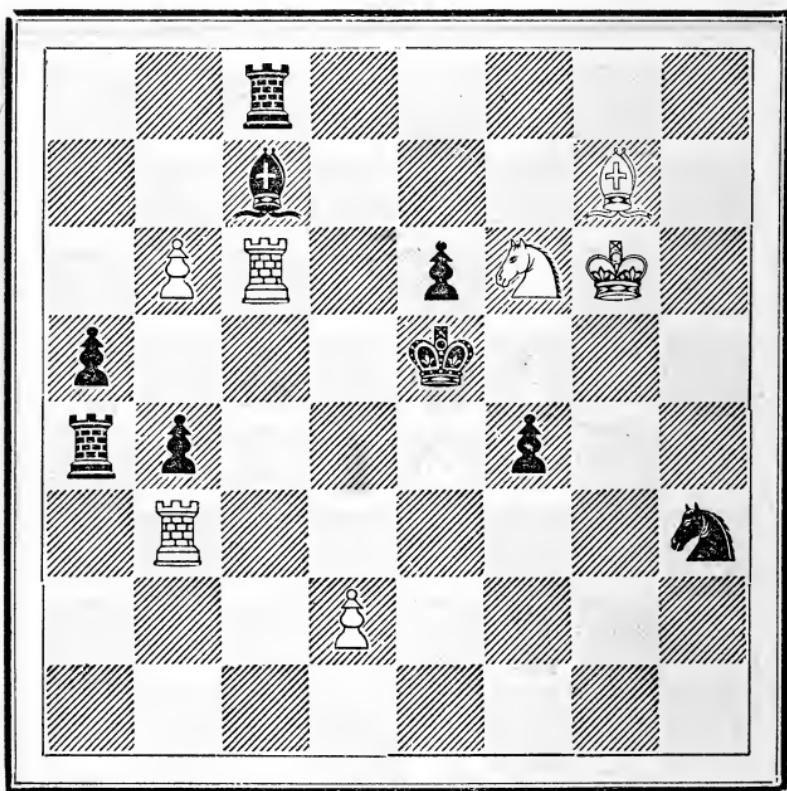
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XXXVI.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J

BLACK.



WHITE.

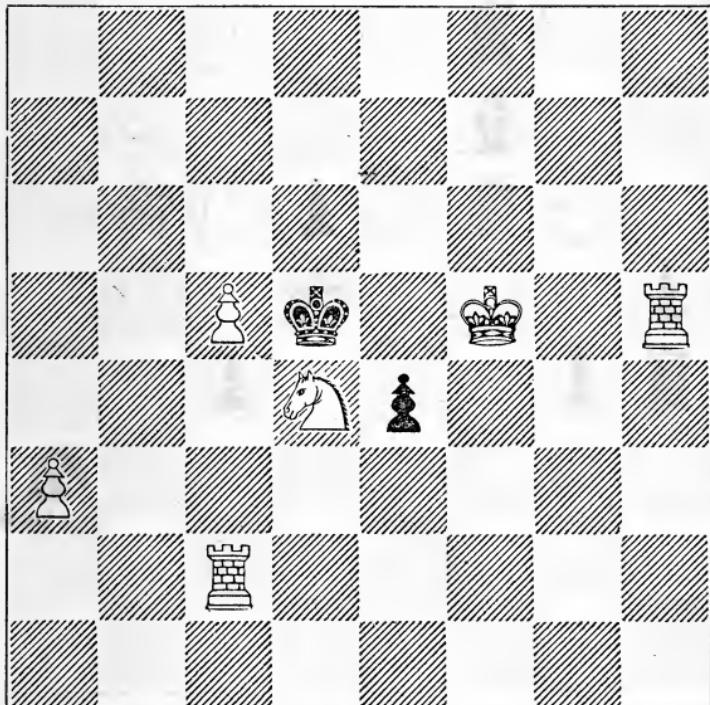
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XXXVII.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

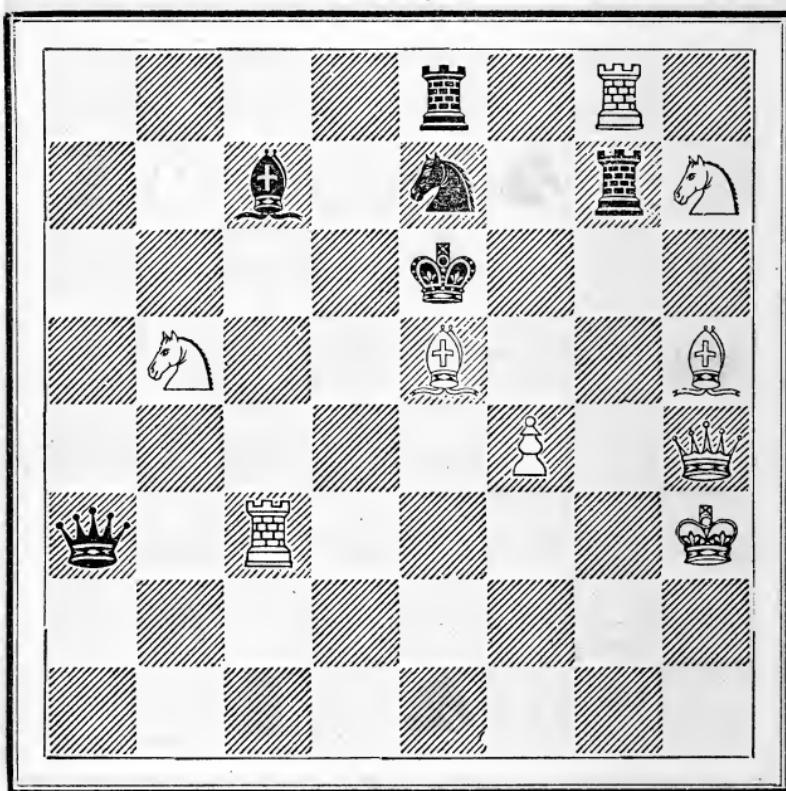
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XXXVIII.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



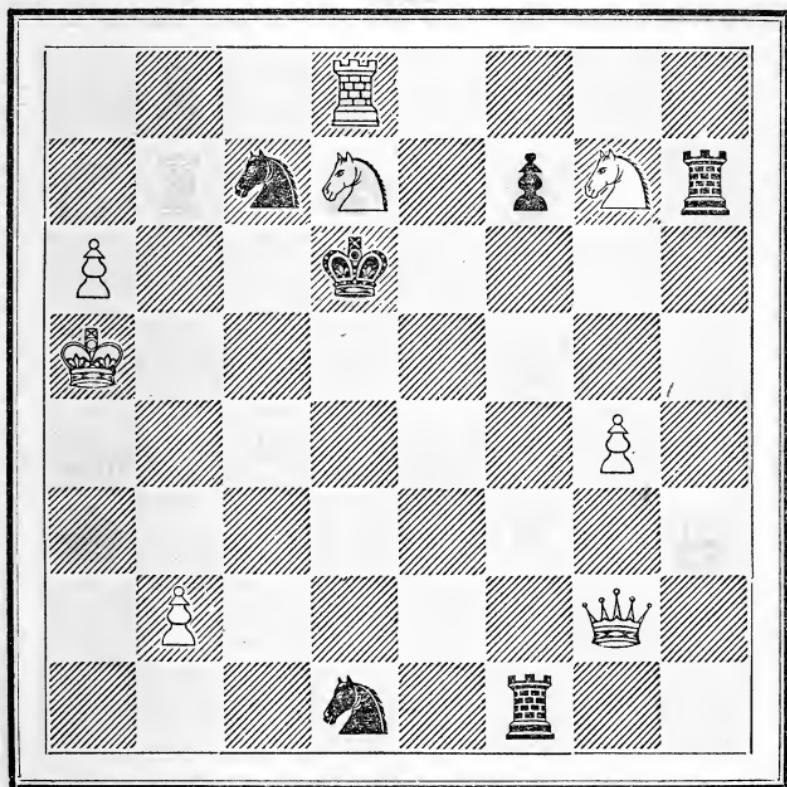
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XXXIX.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

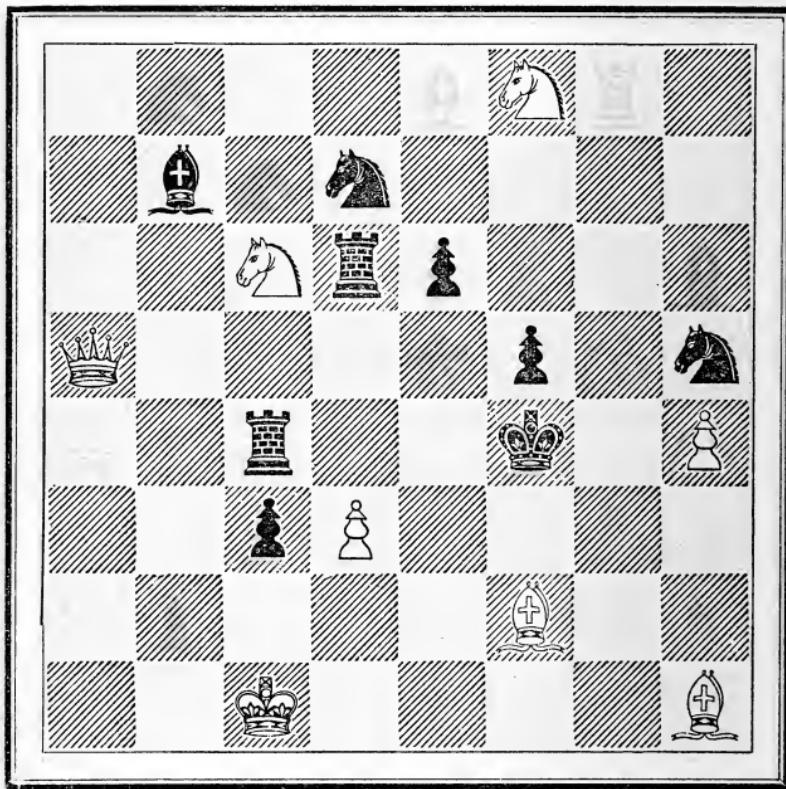
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XL.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



WHITE.

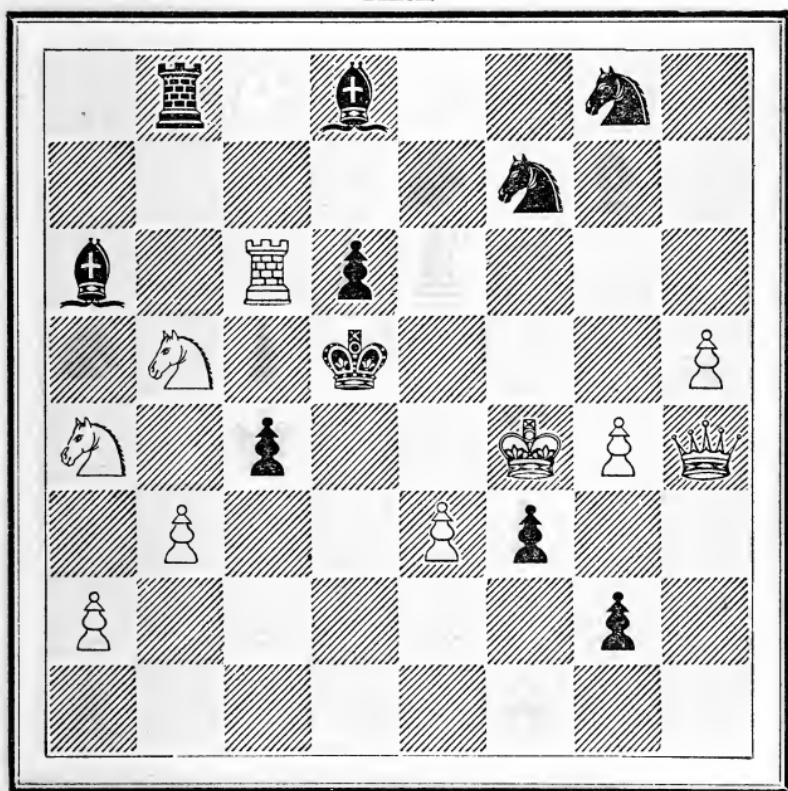
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XLI.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



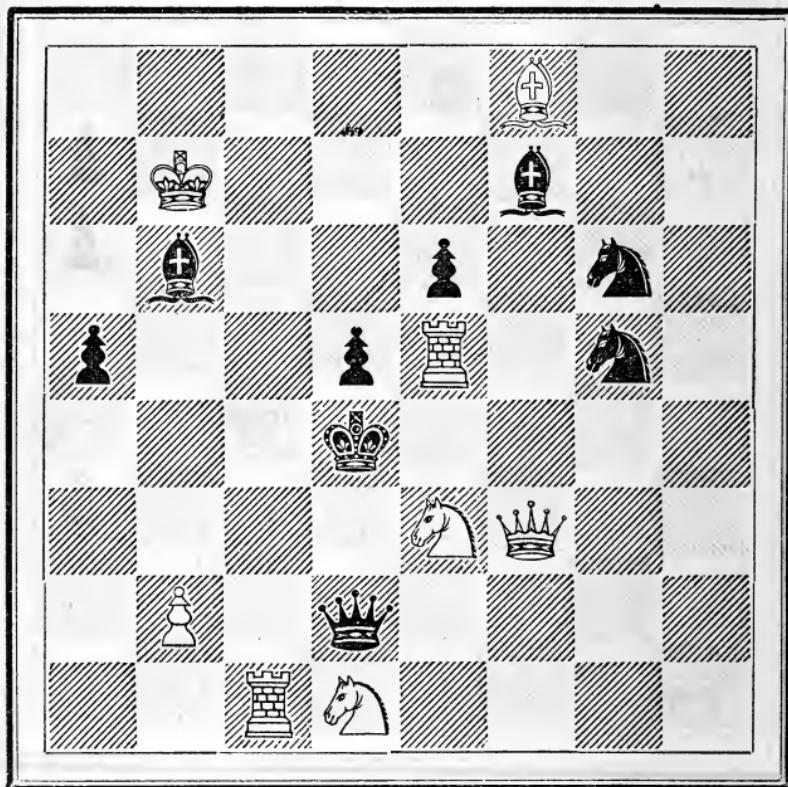
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

## PROBLEM XLII.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



WHITE.

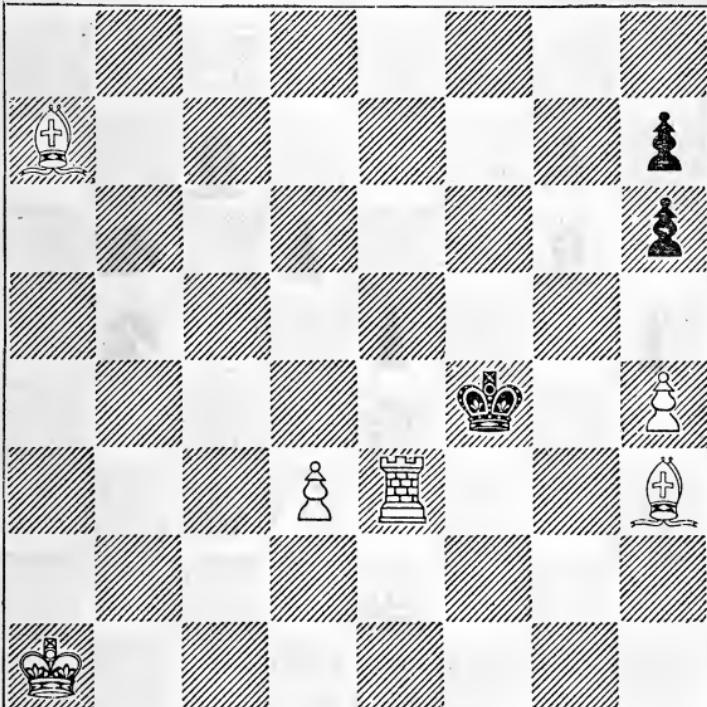
White to play, and mate in Four moves.

PROBLEM XLIII.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

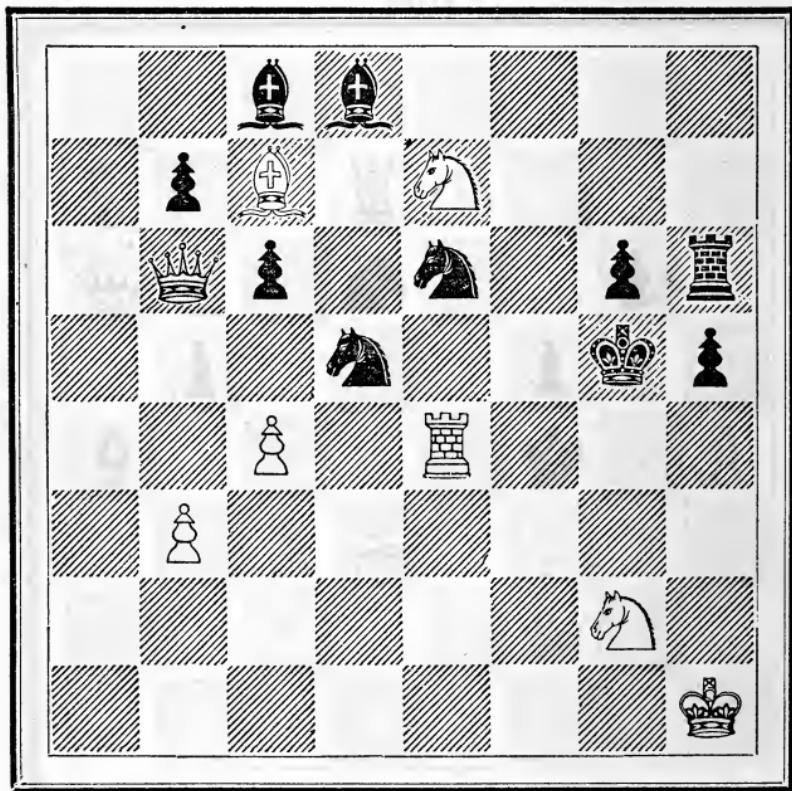
White to play, and mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XLIV.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate in Five moves.

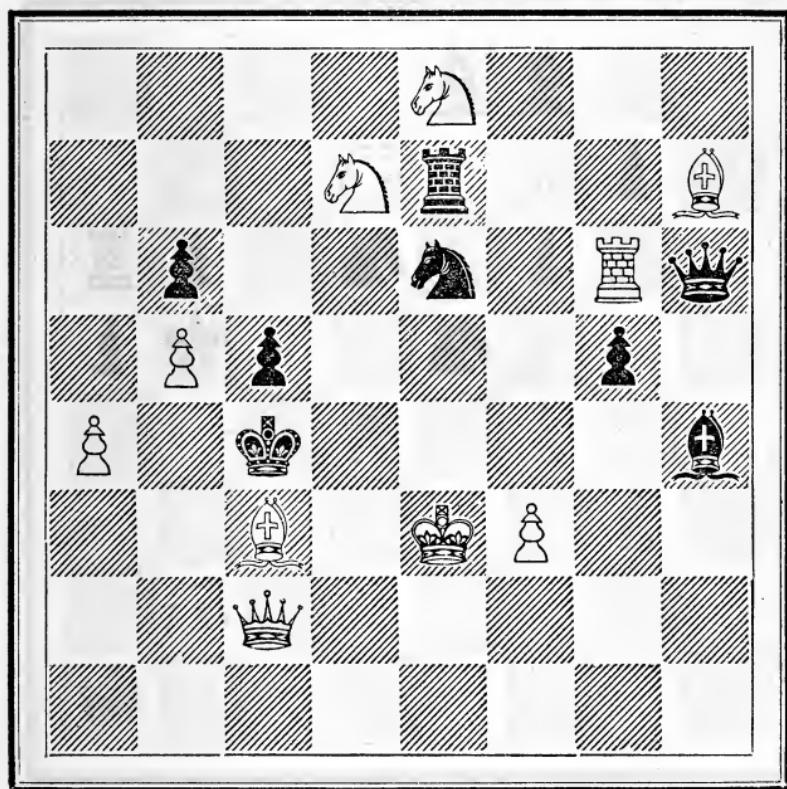
PROBLEM XLV.

SELF-MATE.

BY

J. A. POTTER, OF SALEM, MASS.

BLACK.



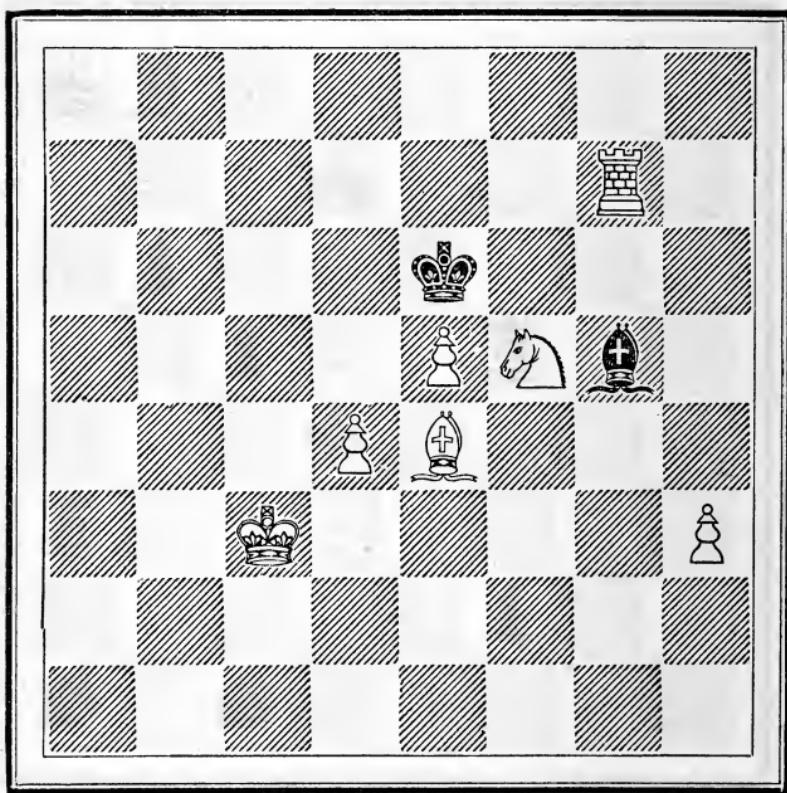
White forces Black to mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XLVI.

BY

DENIS JULIEN, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

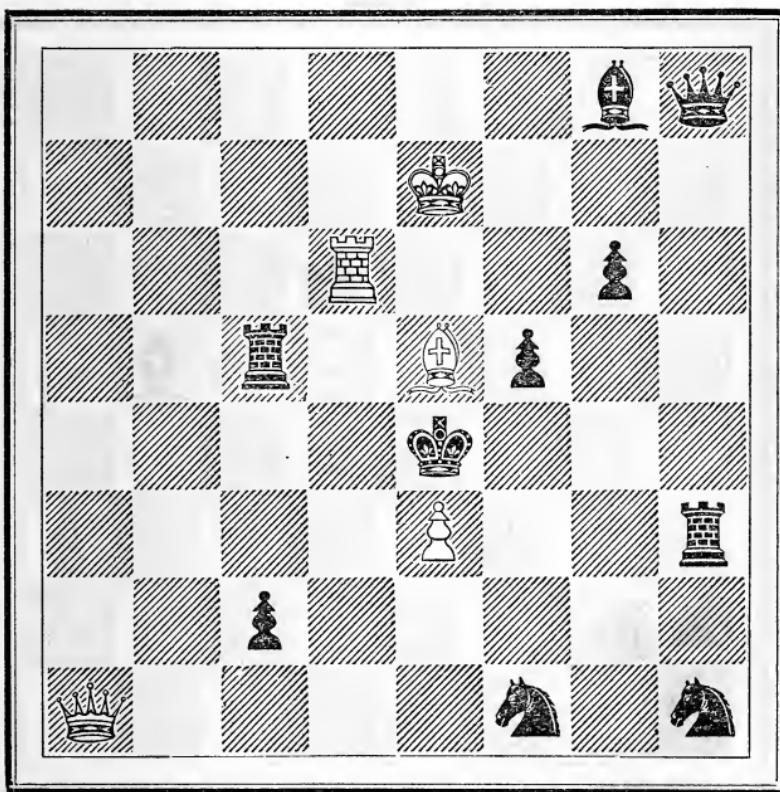
White to play, and mate in Five moves.

PROBLEM XLVII.

BY

S. LOYD, OF FLORENCE, N. J.

BLACK.



WHITE.

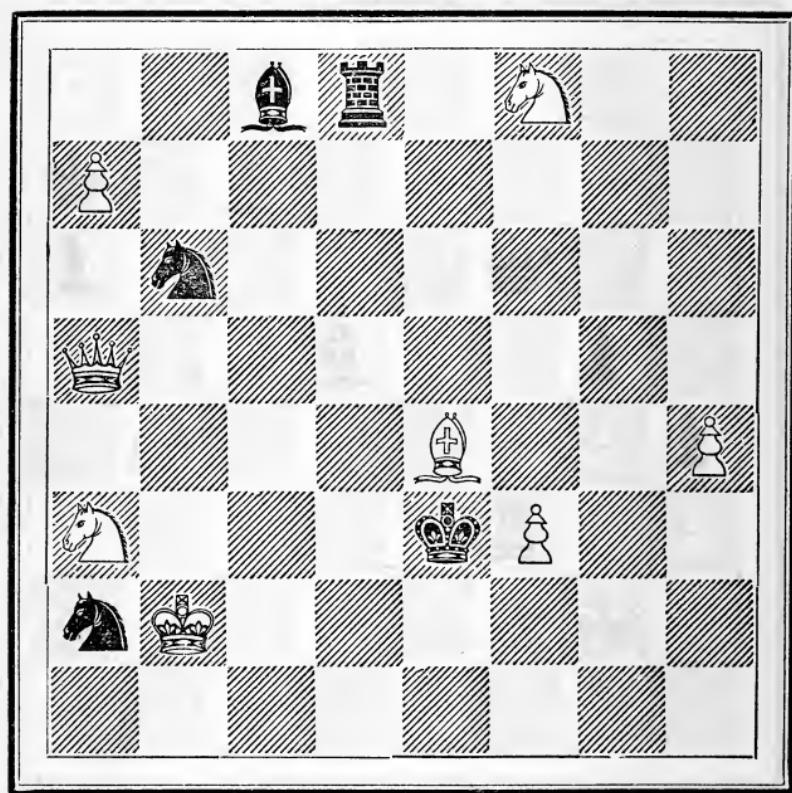
White to play, and mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM XLVIII.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

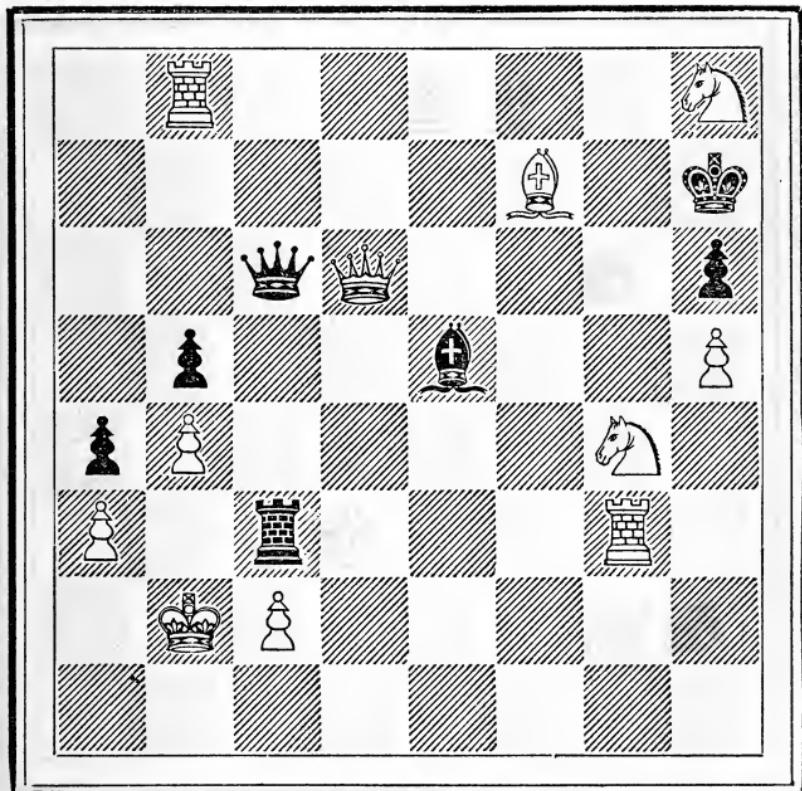
White to play, and mate in Five moves.

PROBLEM XLIX.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

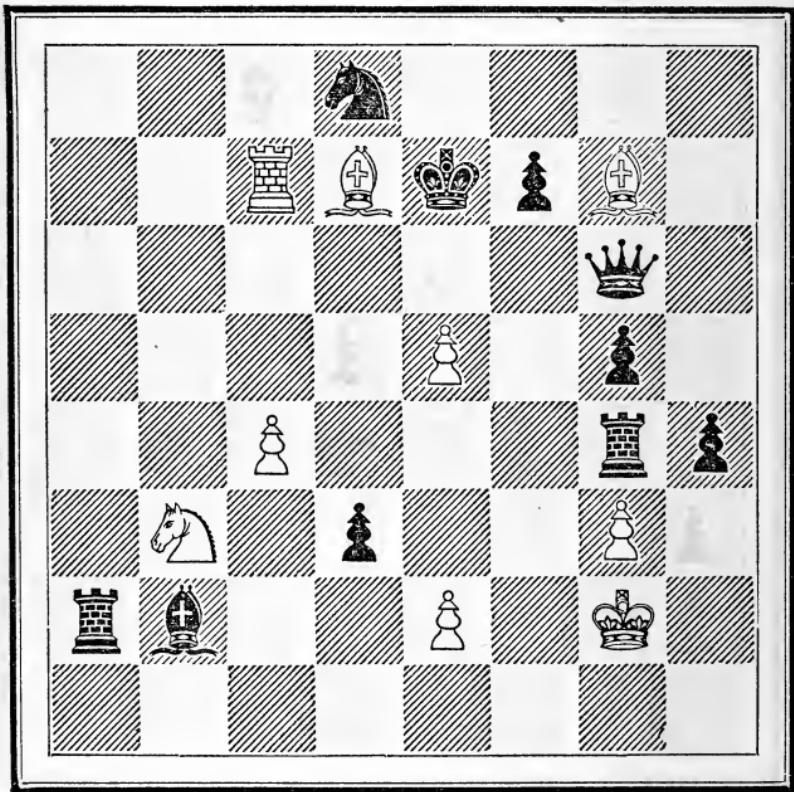
White forces Black to mate in Five moves.

## PROBLEM L.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



WHITE.

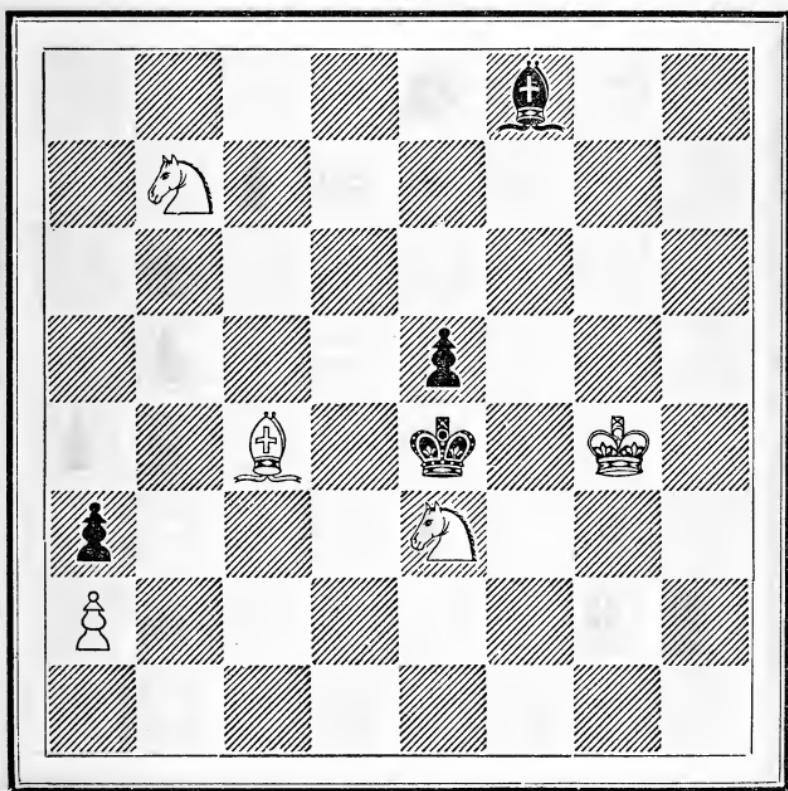
White to play, and mate in Six moves.

PROBLEM LI.

BY

EUGENE B. COOK, OF HOBOKEN, N. J

BLACK.



WHITE.

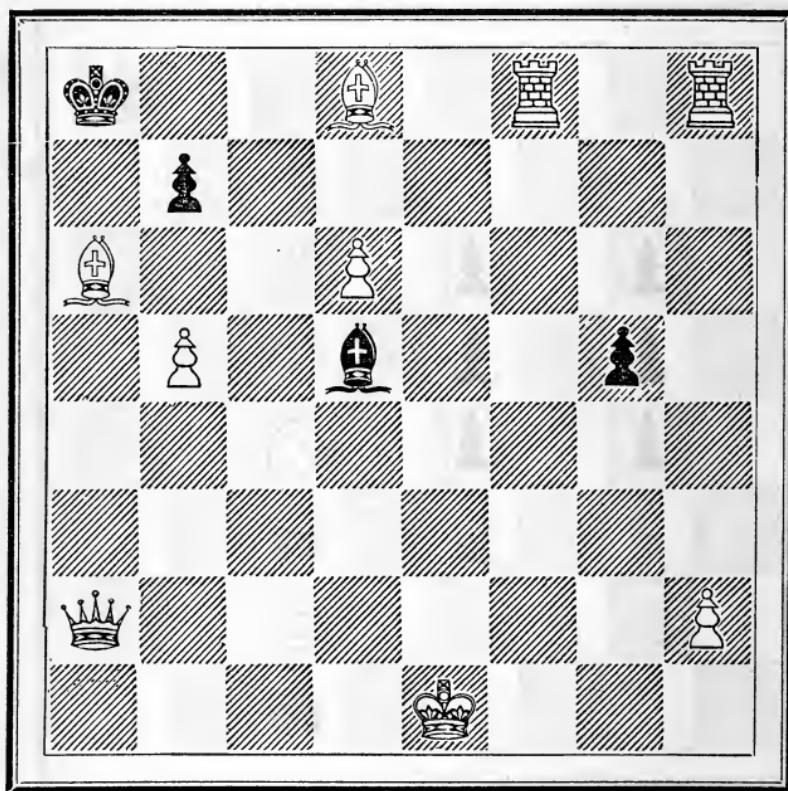
White to play, and mate in Six moves.

## PROBLEM LII.

BY

N. MARACHE, OF NEW YORK.

BLACK.



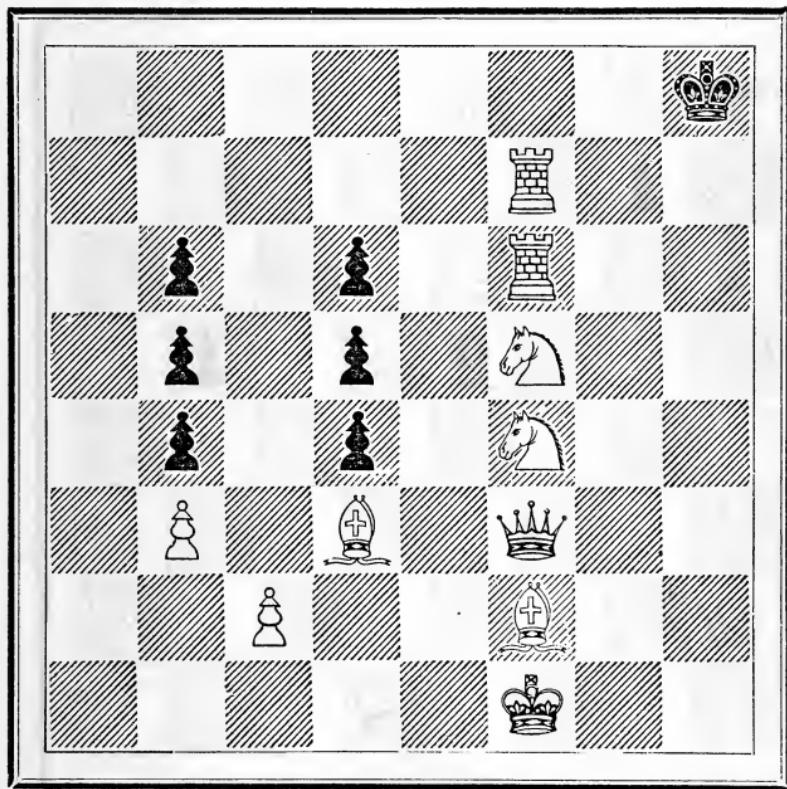
WHITE.

White to force Black to mate in Ten moves.

## PROBLEM LIII.

This position is given by Trevangadacharya Shastree, with the conditions,—“White to mate with Q. B. P. in eighty-one moves, without taking any of the Black Pawns, or suffering them to be moved.” It was solved in thirty-nine moves by the Rev. H. BOLTON. It is now offered by Mr. J. A. POTTER, of Salem, in thirty-two moves.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White to play, and mate with Q. B. P. in thirty-two moves, without capturing any of the Black Pawns, or suffering them to be moved

## CHAPTER IX.

### INCIDENTS IN THE HISTORY OF AMERICAN CHESS.

THE history of the game of Chess in the United States can never be satisfactorily written until some one with ample leisure, and an abundant love of research, devotes himself zealously and patiently to the task. The existence of a Chess press has illuminated the last fifteen years, but previous to that time, or at least beyond the memory of men still living, there is little else than very evident darkness. The materials for the chronicle of our national Chess lie hidden in obscure corners of old newspapers, and in almost inaccessible collections of private letters. Some future explorer will no doubt succeed in drawing these memorials of the past from their long concealment. But my occupations have allowed me to bestow but little time and labor upon the subject. I have, therefore, been enabled to collect only a few scattered incidents, which, it is hoped, will be found not altogether lacking in interest, and which are grouped together, without any attempt at a philosophical arrangement, in the present chapter. And for the best of these I am indebted, not to my own diligence, but to the kindness of several obliging friends. Among these courteously contributed articles the reader will meet with the narratives of several Chess events which have never before been so worthily chronicled. They are prophetic of what industry and investigation will yet do for the annals of the game in this western hemisphere.

## I.—THE CHESS LIFE OF BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

The earliest name in the annals of American Chess is that of BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Previous to his time the history of our game in this country is a Sahara of oblivion, relieved by no oasis of recorded incident or transmitted tradition. Our sturdy forefathers of the old colonial days, engaged as they were in sterner contests with the severities of nature and the passions of savages, would have disdained so mild a warfare as Chess. They were too much occupied with the toils of life to find leisure for its amusements. It is yet possible that a diligent search among the family records of the Virginian cavaliers might result in some trivial trace of the game at an earlier period, but with regard to New England, the austereities of Puritan faith and practice preclude any such hope or belief. Nor can we wish it otherwise. It was fitting that so philosophic a game should find its historic starting-point in so philosophic a man as Franklin. In Europe the Chess-writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, understanding the contemplative character of the sport, endeavored, by the help of uncertain tradition, to trace back its origin to a Grecian philosopher by the name of Xerxes, or to an Indian sage by the name of Sissa. What was fable in the Old World has become fact in the New. As far as we know Chess in America began with Benjamin Franklin.

In the year 1734 was played the first game of American Chess to which we can affix a date. At that time Franklin, then twenty-eight years of age, and a resident of Philadelphia, commenced the study of the Italian language, in company with a friend, whose name it is now impossible to ascertain. The following extract from his autobiography shows the curious way in which he made his passion for the game subservient to the purposes of study :

I had begun in 1733 to study languages; I soon made myself so much a master of the French, as to be able to read the books in that language with ease. I then undertook the Italian. An acquaintance who was also learning it, used often to tempt me to play at Chess with him. Finding this took up too much of the time I had to spare for study, I at length refused to play any more, unless on this condition, that the victor in every game should have the right to impose a task, either of parts of the grammar to be got by heart, or in translations, which tasks the vanquished was to perform upon honor before our next meeting. As we played pretty equally, we thus beat one another into that language.

We fancy that the educational utility of Chess was never so markedly displayed before. Amid the multifarious systems of instruction which are almost weekly proposed by our zealous legislators, or ambitious pedagogues, why has not some bold doctor of the schools conceived the idea of putting the plan of Franklin into a larger practice among the youth of our seminaries and academies? With so high a name as that of its originator in its favor it could not but be popular and successful.

After this we find no mention of Franklin's Chess until the year 1774, when the great patriot was residing in London as the agent of the Colonies. The game was then made the means of a strange political intrigue, the story of which we have not space to recount in full. There seems to have been a little plot concocted by the ministry to entrap the American agent into a scheme for persuading his revolted countrymen to return to their allegiance: but Franklin was too wary to be taken in. His own account of the first steps of this singular attempt is as follows:

The new Parliament was to meet the Twenty-ninth of November, 1774.—About the beginning of that month, being at the Royal Society, Mr. Raper,\* one of our members, told me there was a certain lady who had a desire of playing with me at Chess, fancying she could beat me, and had requested him to bring me to her. It was, he said, a lady with whose acquaintance he was sure I should be pleased, a sister of Lord Howe's,† and he hoped I would not refuse the challenge. I said, I had been long out of practice, but would wait upon the lady when he or she should think fit. He told me where her house was, and would have me call soon, and without further introduction, which I undertook to do; but, thinking it a little awkward, I postponed it; and on

\* Matthew Raper was born in 1705, and died in 1778. He translated Grellman's work on the Gipsies, and was the author of several papers in the Philosophical Transactions. From boyhood he was the intimate friend of John Howe, husband to the lady mentioned in the text.

† This accomplished lady lived until 1814. Franklin says of her that he "had never conceived a higher opinion of the discretion and excellent understanding of any woman on so short an acquaintance." Her house was the resort of the first personages and most distinguished men in the kingdom, and she was on terms of intimacy with all the royal family. Lord Mahon exclaims, in reference to the dispute between America and England, "But how changed both the scene and the temper of negotiation since Lord Howe and Doctor Franklin first met in London, leaning in friendly converse over Mrs. Howe's chessboard."

the Thirteenth, meeting him again at the feast of the Society election, being the day after the Parliament met, he put me in mind of my promise, and that I had not kept it, and would have me name a day when he said he would call for me, and conduct me. I named the Friday following. He called accordingly. I went with him, played a few games with the lady, whom I found of very sensible conversation and pleasing behavior, which induced me to agree most readily to an appointment for another meeting a few days afterwards; though I had not the least apprehension that any political business could have any connexion with this new acquaintance.

Franklin goes on to say that "on the Thursday preceding this Chess party, Mr. David Barclay called on me to have some discourse concerning the meeting of the merchants to petition Parliament." He at length accepts an invitation to meet Mr. Barclay and another gentleman "to confer on American affairs." The day named for this was the Fourth of December.

The time thus appointed was the evening of the day on which I was to have my second Chess party with the agreeable Mrs. Howe, whom I met accordingly. After playing as long as we liked, we fell into a little chat, partly on a mathematical problem,\* and partly about the new Parliament, then just met, when she said, "And what is to be done with this dispute between Great Britain and the Colonies? I hope we are not to have a civil war." "They should kiss and be friends," said I; "what can they do better? Quarrelling can be of service to neither, but is ruin to both." "I have often said," replied she, "that I wished Government would employ you to settle the dispute for them; I am sure nobody could do it so well. Do not you think that the thing is practicable?" "Undoubtedly, madam, if the parties are disposed to reconciliation: for the two countries have really no clashing interests to differ about. It is rather a matter of punctilio, which two or three reasonable people might settle in half an hour. I thank you for the good opinion you are pleased to express of me; but the ministers will never think of employing me in that good work; they choose rather to abuse me." "Ay," said she, "they have behaved shamefully to you. And indeed some of them are now ashamed of it themselves." I looked upon this as accidental conversation, thought no more of it, and went in the evening to the appointed meeting at Dr. Fothergill's, where I found Mr. Barclay with him.

The negotiations with these two last named gentlemen have nothing to do with our story. We therefore turn over until we once more meet the name of Mrs. Howe.

\* This problem may have been the Knight's Tour, or perhaps one of Stamma's positions.

On Christmas evening, visiting Mrs. Howe, she told me as soon as I went in, that her brother, Lord Howe, wished to be acquainted with me; that he was a very good man, and she was sure we should like each other. I said, I had always heard a good character of Lord Howe, and should be proud of the honor of being known to him. "He is but just by," said she, "will you give me leave to send for him?" "By all means, madam, if you think proper." She rang for a servant, wrote a note, and Lord Howe came in a few minutes. After some extremely polite compliments, as to the general motives for his desiring an acquaintance with me, he said he had a particular one at this time, which was the alarming situation of our affairs with America, which, no one, he was persuaded, understood better than myself; that it was the opinion of some friends of his, that no man could do more towards reconciling our differences than I could, if I would undertake it: that he was sensible that I had been very ill treated by the ministry, but he hoped that would not be considered by me in the present case; that he himself, though not in opposition, had much disapproved of their conduct towards me.

The conversation continued in this tone a long while. Franklin finally agreed to draw up propositions expressing his views of what might be made the basis of a satisfactory settlement of the pending difficulties. He used to correspond with Lord Howe through the medium of Mrs. Howe, and sometimes met him at her house, under the pretence of going there to play Chess. We give a specimen of the notes which used to pass between the American agent and his fair adversary. Franklin it appears had made her a New Year's gift of his Philosophical Writings, and on the Third of January, 1775, received the following note:—

Mrs. Howe's compliments to Dr. Franklin; she encloses him a letter she received last night, and returns him many thanks for his very obliging present, which has already given her great entertainment. If the Doctor has any spare time for Chess, she will be exceedingly glad to see him any morning this week, and as often as will be agreeable to him, and rejoices in having so good an excuse for asking the favor of his company.

*Tuesday.*

The obstinacy of the King and his ministers on the one hand, and the honest patriotism of Franklin on the other, prevented, as all the world knows, any pacific arrangement of the difficulties between the mother country and her Colonies. In a final interview Howe expressed his regret that they had been so unsuccessful in their endeavors to reconcile the interests of the two countries; the cautious American

diplomatist replied in the same tone; "and so," says Franklin, "taking my leave, and receiving his good wishes, ended the negotiation with Lord Howe."

With the exception of this remarkable scacco-political episode we find no mention of the Chess of Franklin during the time he spent in England. He was probably too busy with his colonial agency and otherwise to enjoy, more than occasionally, his favorite amusement. But during the diplomatic leisure of his Parisian life he seems to have pursued this pastime with considerable zest. We learn that he more than once visited the Café de la Régence, and in all probability had the pleasure of seeing there the great sovereign of the Chessmen, the renowned Philidor. Here, too, in 1780, he met Mr. Jones, afterwards Sir William Jones, whose extraordinary fondness for the game is well known, and whose *Caissa* is the most successful effort of the English Chess muse. In a letter, dated in October of this same year, and addressed to Miss Georgiana Shipley, daughter of the Bishop of St. Asaph, and subsequently sister-in-law to Sir William Jones, Franklin says—

Mr. Jones tells me he shall have a pleasure in being the bearer of my letter, of which I make no doubt. I learn from him, that to your drawing and music, and painting, and poetry, and Latin, you have added a proficiency in Chess; so that you are, as the French say, *remplie de talents*.

It thus appears that these famous friends of Chess, in their brief intercourse with each other, did not neglect to compare notes on the game, and perhaps engaged in actual combat over the board. It is a pleasant thing to think of, this Chess converse between those two men, each so remarkable in his peculiar way—one of them the author of the most agreeable essay on the morals of the sport, and the other the first bard in all our English tongue, who sang in numbers worthy of the theme—

Of armies on the chequer'd field arrayed,  
And guiltless war in pleasing form displayed.

In Paris Franklin used to play frequently with a certain Madame de Brillon, who resided at no great distance from his dwelling at Passy, and in whose family, as he himself tells us, he spent many delightful hours. Tradition says that the lady was wont to get the better of the philosopher in these mental encounters. A pleasant allusion to their play occurs in his works in the amusing piece, entitled, *Dialogue between Franklin and the Gout*, written the Twenty-second of October, 1780.

But what is your practice after dinner? Walking in the beautiful gardens of those friends, with whom you have dined, would be the choice of a man of sense; yours is to be fixed down to Chess, where you are found engaged for two or three hours. This is your perpetual recreation, which is the least eligible of any for a sedentary man, because, in accelerating the motion of the fluids, the rigid attention it requires helps to retard the circulation and obstruct internal secretions. Wrapped in the speculations of this wretched game, you destroy your constitution. . . . . If it was in some nook or alley in Paris, deprived of walks, that you played a while at Chess after dinner, this might be excusable; but the same taste prevails with you in Passy, Auteuil, Montmartre, or Sanoy, places where there are the finest gardens and walks, a pure air, beautiful women, and most agreeable and instructive conversation; all which you might enjoy by frequenting the walks. But these are rejected for this abominable game of Chess. . . . . You know Mr. Brillon's gardens, and what fine walks they contain. . . . . During the summer you went there at six o'clock. You found the charming lady, with her lovely children and friends, eager to walk with you, and entertain you with their agreeable conversation; and what has been your choice? Why, to sit on the terrace, satisfying yourself with the fine prospect, and passing your eyes over the beauties of the garden below, without taking one step to descend and walk about in them. On the contrary, you call for tea and the chessboard; and lo! you are occupied in your seat till nine o'clock, and that besides two hours' play after dinner.

In the year 1783, Wolfgang von Kempelen, the ingenious inventor of the far-famed Automaton Chess-Player, arrived in Paris. He brought letters from Vienna to Dr. Franklin. M. Valltravers wrote to him as follows:

The occasion of this letter is furnished me by a very ingenious gentleman, M. Kempel, Counsellor of his Imperial Majesty's Finances for the Kingdom of Hungary, who, on a furlough obtained for two years, is ready to set out for Paris, Brussels, and England, attended by his whole family, his lady, two sons, and two daughters; not only to satisfy his own curiosity, but also in a great measure that of the public. Endowed with a peculiar taste and genius for mechanical inventions and improvements, for which he sees no manner of encouragement in these parts, he means to impart several of his most important discoveries and experiments wherever they shall be best received and rewarded. As an amusing specimen of his skill in mechanics, and as a means at the same time of supporting his travelling charges, he intends to exhibit the figure of a Turk playing at Chess with any player; and answering, by pointing at the letters of an alphabet, any questions made to him. I saw him play twice without discovering his intelligent director anywhere in or about

him. If there were nothing but the organization of his arm, hand, and fingers, besides the motions of his head, that alone would entitle him to no small admiration.

Besides his Chess-Player, M. Kempel has amused himself with forming the figure of a child, uttering the first articulate sounds of elocution. Of these I have heard it pronounce distinctly upwards of thirty words and phrases. There remain but five or six letters of the alphabet, the expression of which he intends to complete at Paris.

VIENNA, December 24th, 1782.

The American sage, too, it seems had his bout with that memorable Mussulman who penetrated, a conqueror, into regions whither neither Abderahman nor Mahomet the Second had ever dreamed of carrying the crescent flag. No record or tradition has handed down to us the result of the encounter. But, alas for Christian courage and American prowess, we very much fear that the pagan Moslem triumphed, and thus added the subjugator of lightning to his long list of conquests. In connexion with this matter the following remark by Franklin's grandson may be of interest :

Chess was a favorite amusement with Dr. Franklin, and one of his best papers is written on that subject. He was pleased with the performance of the Automaton. In a short letter after his arrival in Paris, M. Kempel said to him: "If I have not, immediately on my return from Versailles, renewed my request, that you will be present at a representation of my Automaton Chess-Player, it was only to gain a few days, in which I might make some progress in another very interesting machine, upon which I have been employed, and which I wish you to see at the same time." This machine was probably the speaking figure mentioned by Mr. Valltravers. The inventor's name occurs with a various orthography, as *Kempelen*, *Kemple*, *Kempl*, but his autograph is *Kempel*.

All Chess readers have stowed away in their memories the name of Hans, Count von Bruhl, for many years the Representative of Saxony at the Court of London, a frequent adversary of Philidor, and one of the most ardent admirers of our game among the last century's disciples of Caïssa. Franklin gave the owner of the Automaton an introductory epistle to the Count. Franklin's letter has been lost, but Bruhl's pleasant reply is still preserved :

SIR:—I was very much flattered with the letter I had the pleasure to receive from your Excellency by means of the ingenious M. de Kempel's arrival in this country. The favorable opinion you entertain of his talents is alone

sufficient to convince me of their extent and usefulness. I cannot find words to express the gratitude I feel for the honor of your remembrance. I shall, therefore, only beg leave to assure you, that it will be the pride of my life to have been noticed by one of the most distinguished characters of the age, and I shall endeavor, upon all occasions, to contribute my mite of admiration to the universal applause which your eminent qualities, as a philosopher and politician, are so well entitled to. I have the honor to be, with great respect,

Yours, etc.,

THE COUNT DE BRUHL.

Twiss, in the first volume of his pleasant collection of *Chess Anecdotes* (p. 190), states that "Dr. Franklin, and the late Sir John Pringle, used frequently to play at Chess together; and towards the end of the game the physician [Pringle] discovered, that the velocity of his own, as well as his adversary's pulse was considerably increased." In the *Palaméde* it is said that Franklin, while in Paris, used to encounter a lady, Madame de Brion [Brillon ?], who was able to give him odds. But no authority is given for this assertion.

Such are all the details which time has spared us of the Chess life of Benjamin Franklin. Few and scattered as they are, they are still sufficient to do honor alike to the man and the game. That a person who embodied and represented better than any other the vaunted common sense of Americans, and the extreme utilitarianism of these later generations, should have loved, honored, and practised Chess, affords one of the strongest external arguments in favor of its general use. These unconnected incidents, moreover, seem to us indicative of many more still unrecorded. Franklin lived in an age of great Chess activity, and passed many years of his existence in the very centre of that activity. The splendid career of Philidor in England and France, the large number of fine players created by his book, his example, and his practice in the capitals of both those countries, the analytical labors of the Modenese school in Italy, the influence of Stein in Holland, and the appearance of the Automaton Chess-Player, all contributed to draw the attention of the public to our intellectual sport, and form in fact the beginning and first developement of that popularization of the game which has been going on in Europe, with increasing effect and extent, ever since. We know that Franklin was personally acquainted with Bruhl, Maseres, Kempel, and Sir William Jones, and that he frequented the *Café de la Régence*. The method of his introduction to Mrs. Howe shows that his love of Chess was a well known fact in London.

From all these circumstances we are warranted in supposing, that behind the scanty written incidents of his Chess life, there must lie a mass of interesting matter still unknown, and perhaps lost to us for ever. We have not even any reliable information of his degree of skill as a player. Many are fond of citing him with Leibnitz, Rousseau, and Euler, as persons gifted with splendid talents and acute intellects, who tried in vain to become adepts at the game. This manner of speech arises in a great measure from the pleasure which men take in uttering or listening to paradoxes. It is certain that only the dimmest and most untrustworthy tradition supports their opinion. Arguing from his mental characteristics—always, as we are aware, a very doubtful method of procedure in Chess—and from the amount of his play, we should be inclined to place Franklin, not in the first rank indeed, but among the best of the second class. His cautious, circumspect, calculating mind should have made him a good defensive player.

But it is in his agreeable essay on the *Morals of Chess* that Franklin has left the most enduring monument of his love for the game. Its graceful style, its admirable exposition of the practical utility of Chess, and its well-conceived maxims of advice are apparent to every one who reads it. "The game of Chess," he asserts, "is not merely an idle amusement; several very valuable qualities of the mind, useful in the course of human life, are to be acquired and strengthened by it, so as to become habits ready on all occasions; for life is a kind of Chess." He then proceeds to show that by playing at Chess we may learn "foresight, circumspection, caution, and the habit of not being discouraged by present bad appearances in the state of our affairs, the habit of hoping for a favorable chance, and that of persevering in the search of resources." But the chief part of the essay is devoted to some judicious and carefully-weighed rules for the guidance of the player. He especially enjoins courtesy towards an opponent, and urges us to use no triumphing or insulting expressions when we have gained a victory, and says that by "general civility (so opposite to the unfairness before forbidden) you may happen indeed to lose the game; but you will win what is better, his esteem, his respect, and his affection, together with the silent approbation and the good will of the spectators." In truth, all who love the ancient pastime of which we treat, will be for ever grateful to Benjamin Franklin for sanctioning its practice, not only by his influential example, but with his vigorous and powerful pen.

## II.—LEWIS ROU.

Since the preceding sketch was written, a scanty ray of light has been thrown upon the story of American Chess in the eighteenth century, by the discovery of a manuscript work written in New York in the year 1734. Its author, the Reverend LEWIS ROU,\* was the pastor of the French Protestant church in that city. He was born in Holland, and appears to have come to the American colonies about 1710, and was immediately called to the pulpit by the Huguenots of New York. The historians of the province do not agree with regard to his character. Smith styles him "a man of learning, but proud, pleasurable, and passionate." But he admits, that "for a long time he commanded the whole congregation by the superiority of his talents for the pulpit." Other writers, however, commend his erudition, his humanity, and his piety. Several successive Governors were pleased to regard him as a familiar friend, and his high literary attainments caused him to be looked upon as one of the leading members of New York society. In 1724 he had a difficulty with his adjunct, Molinaars, which led to a temporary division in the church. Both parties, in the absence of any French synod, appealed to the highest civil authority in the land, and Governor Burnet, a warm friend and admirer of Rou, referred the matter to his council. Rou's defence, which is still extant, is a well written and forcible document. The affair was at length amicably adjusted, and Rou remained the chief head of the church until 1754. I have not been able to ascertain the precise date of his death, but there is reason to believe that it took place in the year just named. His life must have extended to a good old age, for, at that time, his ministry had lasted forty-four years. He lived long enough to see the beginning of the glorious career of his brother-chessplayer, the Pennsylvania printer, for in 1753 Franklin was appointed Postmaster-General.

On the Fifteenth of September, 1733, a paper, entitled, *An Essay on Chess*, appeared in *The Craftsman*, a Tory journal published in London, and edited by Lord Bolingbroke and other prominent opponents of the house of Brunswick. It was, in reality, a sort of scacco-political allegory, in which the game was only used as a mask to cover some assertions so bold that the Tory writers dared not utter them undisguisedly. John, Lord Hervey, a man of versatile talent, and a faithful

\* Very probably his name in French was Louis Roux. It is so spelt in some documents of the last century.i

friend to the Court, replied to the *Essay* in the same strain, and published his answer in the form of a pamphlet, bearing the following title:—*Letter to the Craftsman on the Game of Chess, occasioned by his Paper of the 15th of this month.* It was dated from Slaughter's Coffee-house, Sept. 21, 1733, and contained thirty pages. Slaughter's Coffee-house was then, and long continued to be, the leading resort of London Chess-players.\* There, at different times, Cunningham, the Earls of Sunderland and Godolphin, Sir Abraham Janssen,† Bertin, Gargyll, Black, Cowper, and Salvador, might be seen intent upon their Chess battles. There, less than a score of years after the time of which we treat, Philidor and Stamma played their great match. Lord Hervey's pamphlet was probably widely circulated by the Government and its supporters, and a copy was sent to William Cosby, Governor of New York. He showed it to Rou, and requested him to write out some critical remarks upon the Chess portion of the *Letter*. With this request Rou agreed to comply, and the result was the work which we are about to describe. From the expressed wish of the Governor, we can gather that Rou must have possessed the reputation, among his friends at least, of being a lover of Chess, and a good player. And in this opinion we are fully confirmed by the work itself. His language throughout is that of one thoroughly acquainted, not only with the game, but with its literature, and with what was then known of its history. He uses the technical terms with exact precision; he owns two editions of Vida; he quotes both the French and English translations of Greco; he gives Chess terms in the Persian and Hebrew; and he speaks in disparaging terms of the players which he had encountered on this side of the ocean. In short, we may very fairly conclude, even from the slight evidence which we possess, that he was the foremost practitioner of his time in our country. And slight as is the information which he gives us concerning the state of the game in America, the discovery of his treatise must be regarded as an event of great interest.

\* This coffee-house, sometimes called *Old Slaughter's*, to distinguish it from a rival establishment which assumed the same name, was situated in St. Martin's Lane, and was founded in 1692. For more than half a century it continued to be the favorite resort of the Chess-players of the British metropolis. It was also greatly frequented by artists, such as Wilkie and Roubillac.

† Sir Abraham Janssen, who died in 1765, was considered by Philidor to be the greatest English practitioner of his time. The famous Frenchman could only give him the small odds of the Pawn for the move.

The work of Rou is entitled—

CRITICAL REMARKS UPON THE LETTER  
TO THE CRAFTSMAN ON THE GAME OF CHESS,  
OCCASIONED BY HIS PAPER OF THE 15TH OF SEPT., 1733,  
AND DATED FROM SLAUGHTER'S COFFEE-HOUSE, SEPT., 21.

It is a very closely written manuscript of twenty-four pages, of a quarto size, and from its general appearance, appears to have been prepared for the press, but for some reason or other was never printed. It is divided into seventeen brief chapters or paragraphs. It is dedicated to Governor Cosby thus:

TO HIS EXCELLENCY,

William Cosby, Esq., Captain-General and Commander-in-Chief in and over the Provinces of New York and New Jersey, and the Territories thereon depending, in America, Vice-Admiral of the same, and Colonel in his Majesty's Army.

May it please your Excellency,

To prefix a large Dedication to a Small piece of work would be an ornament unfitting and not proportionable. Therefore I won't trouble Your Excellency with a long Preliminary Discourse upon the contents of this writing, which I humbly lay before you in hope and assurance, or perhaps presumption that you'll be pleased to accept it gracefully. I shall content my Self to say, that as it is Your Excellency that has gratified me with the first sight and communication of an ingenious *Letter to the Craftsman on the Game of Chess*, printed in *London*, last year, I have thought I could offer to no body better than to Your Excellency Some *Critical Remarks* which I have made both upon that *Letter* and the *Craftsman's Paper*, treating in his satirical way of the same subject.

But I have been the more induced and engaged to this since Your Excellency did me the honour of asking my opinion about the same *Letter*, and entreated me to set in writing what Observations I had made upon the several mistakes, errors, or Blunders about the Science of Chess committed by the Author himself, who so severely criticized upon the *Craftsman*, and shewed his ignorance upon the matter.

This I have done at last, with some *slow Festination*, in order that Your Excellency might be truly and rightly informed of the bottom of the matter in dispute, and know precisely what judgement was to be made of these late productions, and what esteem or praises ought to be paid to their Authors.

If in this undertaking I am so happy as to please Your Excellency, if you find in these Remarks upon *the Letter* mentioned, and upon *The Craftsman* to which it is directed, something of curious *litterature* about *Chess*, or something agreeable and entertaining, or interesting, I shall rejoice to have obtained what I intended only. If by misfortune Your Excellency don't like them at all, I shall be sorry to have attempted in vain to procure You some diversion; but notwithstanding this ill success of my labour, I shall comfort myself with the good intention I have had, and with the good opinion that every Author has of his own products, if they were ever so trifling.

I have the honor to be, with a profound Regard,

Your Excellency's

Most humble and

most obedient Servant,

New York, ye 13th,  
of Decemb. 1734.

LEWIS ROU.

On the last page we find the date "ye XIth December, 1734." The book is written with a large display of learning, and shows, especially, an intimate familiarity with the classics. The following motto, from Phaedrus, is added below the dedication:

Librum exaravi,  
Honori et meritis dedicans illum tuis:  
Quem si leges lætabor sin autem minus  
Habebant certe quo se oblectent posteri.

*Phaedr. l. 3. Prol.*

Horace is frequently cited, and he quotes from the French poets Marot and Regnier. As a specimen of the style, I copy the whole of the ninth paragraph. "Page 22, 23," at the beginning of the extract, refers to the Hervey pamphlet, and the italicised sentences and phrases are those used by Hervey, and which our author is criticising.

Page 22, 23.—I had almost pass'd by what the author says here about the *Check-mate given in two or three moves at the beginning of a Game, when the King seems in full prosperity &c., that whenever it is attempted, the least step of the Knight is a full Guard against any surprise of this kind.* I suppose he means here the *Schollars-mate*, or what we call among the French the *Shepherds-mate*, *l'Eschec et mat du Berger*; but if it is so, I say that *the least step of the Knight will not always be a full Guard against any such surprise.* For if we suppose the second to be attempted, I mean the *Shepherds-mate*, and you move to prevent it, your King's Knight to his Rook's 3d house, which I take, and may take, for *the least step of the Knight* in this case, this will hinder it for a moment—but when your Adversary comes immediately afterwards to

move his Queen's Pawn, in order to open the way to her Bishop against that Knight, if you are not again upon your guard, you might either lose the Knight for nothing, or be *check-mated* again. And so *the least step of the Knight* (which was that motion spoken of) will not have been *a full guard* against the Plot intended. As for the *Schollars-mate*, if you suppose it to be attempted, it is precisely two moves of your two *Knights* that will make it succeed, chiefly if you move the King's Knight to his Bishop's 3d house, the contrary Queen being placed at your Rook's 4th house. And if you bring the Knight at y<sup>e</sup> Rook's 3d house, the same may be said that was said upon the former. How shall then *the least step of the Knight be a full Guard against surprises of this kind.*

Rou states in his defence against the charges made by some members of his church, that he was a naturalised Englishman, and he takes occasion in the present work to air his loyalty by calling the Pretender "no King at all, being but a bug-bear, an image of a King who has no Kingdom, no troops and no army to defend his party, not one foot of ground in his pretended Realm," etc. He speaks in one place of the Fool's mate. Comparing the Knight with the Bishop, he says:—"Nay, we may say, that for this very same reason, the Knight is, in some manner, a more valuable piece than the Bishop, because by his way of moving continually from the White to the Black and from the Black to the White, he may go all over the Board, and act every way, where a single Bishop is confined to the half of the Board, and cannot act upon the houses of his contrary colour." In the eighth paragraph he has occasion to describe a stale-mate, and he closes by remarking that "he can't play, and the game is out, lost in England for those who attack and have the best of the game, but equal in other countries and all over the world." With an outburst of enthusiasm in the tenth paragraph, he exclaims:—"It is pity the people should be deceived about the Rules or way of playing at this noble game by such imperfect writings as these two *Letters* [i.e. the Craftsman's and Lord Hervey's] are, chiefly that of the *Craftsman*. But those that want to be acquainted with the true nature of the Game, or with the rules and laws of it, must read *Vida's Poem*, and particularly the *Advertisement* prefixed to the French translation of the famous Italian's Book upon Chess, I mean that of *Gioachino Greco*, commonly call'd the *Calabresse*; or even he may consult the *Instruction* in English about *Chess-Play*, that is at the head of the English translation of the same book, printed in London A°. 1656. These are full instructions about Chess and about the manner of playing it written by masters." He dislikes the allego-

rical character given to the Knight, and deems it "entirely false and absurd, for he doth no more act by *fraud* or *surprise* than any other piece on the Board." Pursuing in another place his former comparison of the Knight and Bishop, he says:—"It is also very observable that two Bishops with their King at the end of a game, or even one Bishop with a Knight can check-mate the contrary King, which two Knights will never do with their King, and which plainly shewes the Bishops to be more valuable pieces than the Knights, at least in this respect, and more serviceable at the conclusion of the game." He boasts of the catholic character of the sport, saying "this is not a game particular to the English nation—it is a game used all over the world, a game of all nations, and as *Vida* says,

Ludus quem celebrat maxima Roma,  
Extremæque hominum diversa ad littora gentes."

In the fifteenth paragraph he discourses of the true meaning of the word *mate*, and quotes Persian and Spanish. "And here," he remarks, "the correspondent of the *Craftsman* seems to be ignorant of the true meaning and original signification of the words *mate* and *check-mate*. The very reason why the Game is then out, is because the King is *dead*, and this is what import the words *mate* and *check-mate*, as some learned men have proved it by the derivation of these words from the Persian tongue."\* He at length closes by observing that the King and his minister will probably not be much more affected by the satirical reflections of the *Craftsman*, than they would be injured "by any of the Kings at Chess, either White or Black, being checkmated by the best Player in England, or by the worst bungler at New York." In the course of the book, an occasional slip, now and then, betrays the pen of the foreigner, but in general, the English is remarkably correct, and often strong and forcible. I regret that lack of space prevents me from printing it entire, but such extracts as I have made will give the reader an idea of this solitary existing memorial of Chess as it was in this Western World a century and a quarter ago.

\* He then gives the Persian words *Shah* and *Shah-mat* in Hebrew letters.

## III.—AARON BURR AND CHESS.

It appears that Aaron Burr played Chess. We learn from the entertaining life of this remarkable man, lately written by Mr. Parton, that upon his arrest, by the command of the federal government, he was carried to Fort Stoddart, on the Alabama river. The next day after his arrival "Colonel Burr was presented to the wife of the Commandant, dined with the family, played several games of Chess with the lady, and bore himself, in all respects, as he would in a drawing-room of Philadelphia or New York." The paragraph concludes by saying that "day by day the prisoner mingled gayly in the narrow circle of the fort, played his games at Chess, won every one's heart and appeared to give himself no concern respecting the future." Burr's lady antagonist was Mrs. Gaines, wife of Captain (afterwards the well-known Major-General) Gaines.

After his trial for high treason, Burr, as is well known, returned to Europe, where he passed four years of exile. In the Private Journal of his Residence in Europe, (published in 1838 by his friend and biographer M. L. Davis) occur many entries showing his fondness for the game. There was in London a Mrs. Onslow with whom he frequently played. Describing a visit at this lady's, under date of November Twenty-second, 1808, he says "*Jouames échecs—je gagnai.*" On the Twenty-ninth of the same month he "went out at one to hunt a Chess-table; bought one, which after buying, I found was not the thing. Gave it up on paying two shillings." On the same day he dined with Mrs. Onslow. "Played two games at Chess and won both." The next day he "took tea and played Chess with O." On the Seventh of December, at his room, he sits up to play "Chess with K. till one." This K. was a Mr. Koe, a friend of Jeremy Bentham. On the Eighth he was again at Mrs. Onslow's. "Two games of Chess, and was beat in both games, though I tried my best." Another entry on February Eleventh, 1809, we suppose to refer to the same lady: "Mem.—On the way to Duval's bought a settee. *Pourquoi?* For the *Chess-player*, to whom I am in debt."

Once more, as in the days at Fort Stoddart, he was enabled to relieve the tedium of confinement by means of his knowledge of Chess. While in London he bore the assumed name of Kirby. Lord Liverpool, at that time premier of Great Britain, finding his sojourn in that country embarrassing to his majesty's government, issued a warrant

for his arrest. This warrant was executed on the Fourth of April, 1809, and Burr, *alias* Kirby, was taken to the house of a Mr. Hughes, one of the government messengers, who was to be responsible for his safe keeping. Hughes lived at No. 31 Stafford Place. After dining, the Ex-Vice President read awhile and then, "happening to discover that Hughes played Chess, we took to that, and, having played until the poor fellow is almost crazed, I wrote this, and am now going to bed" The next day (the Fifth) there was no change in Burr's condition. No one was permitted to see him and he "went to Chess" and "played till five, dinner-time." In the evening again "at eleven Hughes and I engaged in another game of Chess, which lasted till one. I gave him a castle to make us even." He was discharged the next day, but was obliged to leave England, and went to Sweden. On his passage to Gottenburg he states (May Second, 1809,) that he "played much at Chess with Captain Nordenskjöld of the Swedish Navy, who is rather my superior at Chess." After some time spent in Stockholm, Colonel Burr made a short excursion into the interior of Sweden. Being detained at a little inn, August Fourth, 1809, he enters in his journal "Chess the forenoon." Again, crossing a ferry one evening he was obliged to wait at the ferryman's hut until horses could be procured. Here was no bed or couch and "nothing to eat but a hard, black bread, nor to drink but water." He adds, "there being no candle in the hut, we could neither read nor play Chess."

In Northern Germany he visits a Mr. Luning, the father of one of his warmest Swedish friends. While there his journal informs us (December Fifteenth) that he "played Chess last night with Elenore"—probably the daughter of his host. At Eisenach (January Sixth, 1810), he goes to see General Letocq, and says, "I played two games with the General and won both."

These are all the notes which a casual reading of Burr's *Journal* and Parton's *Life* have enabled me to make. But such as they are, they add a new and agreeable item to our scanty information concerning early American Chess-players. Did the brave soldier, the shrewd statesman, the brilliant conversationist, the foiled fillibuster find in the changing aspects of Chess an image of his varied and eventful life? When the Swedish Captain vanquished him in a contest upon the checkered field, did Aaron Burr think of the sad defeat which he had already experienced in political life, and did he anticipate that sadder check-mate which was to put a final end to his domestic hopes?

## IV.—CHESS IN PHILADELPHIA.

MY DEAR FISKE:

That the *Vixere fortis ante Agamemnona multi* applies to the heroes of the chess-board, as well as to those whom Horace had in mind, nobody, I suppose, will dream of questioning; and that our good "Quaker city" had her fair proportion of such peaceful heroes I, for one, do not entertain the slightest doubt. But of them, as of the *Ante-agamemnonians* aforesaid, it is equally true, that they are sleeping soundly in a long night of oblivion, *Carent quia vate sacro*—"They had no poet, and are dead!" There is just one exception, to be sure, but that one exception only serves to demonstrate anew the capricious injustice of Fortune, and the vexatious partiality of the Muses. There came here, namely, about the middle of the last century, one of those migratory Yankees, whom the genuine sons of Penn are wont to look upon with something of apprehension and dislike; but this young fellow had a trade, and gave good proof of possessing the heroic virtue of industrious and successful money-getting. He was not long, therefore, in attaining, among the sympathizing Friends, the privilege of toleration, which, by-and-bye, as his wealth increased, they converted into regular adoption. Now this clever Yankee, so economical of time in all other respects, had a perfect passion for playing Chess; and he gives no hint of ever being at a loss for Philadelphians to play with. That *he* was a weak player—in spite of the various attempts of a certain Chess-editor to make it out otherwise—is a fair inference from the fact, that he found his match in an Englishwoman, and had to accept the Knight from a Frenchwoman;\* and that some of his antagonists were strong players, who beat him soundly and easily, is rendered in the highest degree probable by the fact, that the line of hereditary Chess-talent, in one known cotemporary instance, can be traced back, reasonably near enough, to the generation in question. It was, however, neither his weakness, nor their strength, in Chess, that attracted or repelled the attention of the disdainful Muses. But it happened that our Yankee friend took it into his head, one day, to perform the unaccountable feat of flying a kite at a thunder-cloud, and afterwards to dabble in "rebel" politics; and now, behold! a goodly heap of octavos, by the biographer of Washington, lies solidly and heavily

\* See *Le Palamède-La Bourdonnais*, tome i. p. 41.

upon his memory ; one entire section of this very chapter of THE Book has been devoted to his glory as a "Chess-player" forsooth ; and thus he has come to have nearly as good a chance for immortality as Philidor himself ; while not even the *name* of those who really deserved to be remembered—the men who gave him, or could have given him, "Pawn and two," at the least—has escaped the cruel god that eats up his own children : "*Can haughty Time be just?*"

The invidious silence of the Muse, in reference to our early Chess history, continues unbroken down to the year 1802, when a Philadelphia bookseller issued the first Chess-book ever published in America. The cautious character of our tradesmen is proof enough that there must have been here, at that time, not Chess-players merely, but Chess-students, too, in sufficient number to warrant the publication of a didactic treatise. A few years later, in 1813, occurred an event of peculiar interest to the present generation of Chess-players—the arrival in this city of Mr. Vezin, the patriarch of the Athenæum.\* He found

\* The following particulars of Mr. Vezin's early life have been most kindly communicated to me by his son and successor, Mr. Charles Vezin, jr. Charles Vezin was born at Osnabrück, in Hanover, in the year 1781. The spelling and pronunciation of his name, as well as his physiognomy, appear to indicate, that he was descended from some refugee Huguenot family. In 1802, at the age of twenty-one, he fixed himself at Bordeaux. Here he passed ten years as clerk in a commercial house. Having, during that time, by dint of the strictest economy and frugality, become master of fifteen hundred francs, he resolved to push his fortune in America. It was now 1812, the first year of the war with Great Britain, and the sea swarmed with hostile cruizers. Mr. Vezin, notwithstanding, took passage in an American vessel, was made prisoner at sea, and suffered three weeks' confinement in an English dungeon. He was then exchanged, and finally landed at Baltimore, penniless. He came on to Philadelphia, and "made the *desperate* attempt (as his son expresses it) to sell goods on commission." He worked night and day, and gradually accumulated a sufficient sum to enable him to engage in the importation of German, Belgian, and French goods. He continued in this business until the time of his death. He was not only a merchant of the highest possible character for business talent and perfect integrity, but also a man of superior mind and cultivation. He married, comparatively late in life, the daughter of an accomplished countryman of his own ; and from this excellent lady I had hoped to receive further details in reference to her deceased husband ; but both Mrs. Vezin herself and her two youngest daughters perished in the conflagration of the Austria, at sea, on the 15th of September, 1858.

here players of about his own strength,—one in particular, who had long been looked up to as invincible. Neither he nor they had studied from books, nor had at command any variety of openings. The *Gambits* were as good as unknown. In this state of things, where, with a great deal of Chess-playing, there was little improvement, a vast impulse was given to the practice of the game, here as well as elsewhere, by the arrival in America of Maelzel with the AUTOMATON of von Kempelen. The exciting notices of the New York papers were copied into our own; the booksellers sent out hasty orders for Philidor and Sarratt, Cochrane and Lewis, the *Stratagems* and *Oriental Chess*; and our best players girded themselves for a fierce contest with the Turk the moment he should arrive. The history of such contests, however, belongs elsewhere. What it belongs to me to record in this place, is the fact, that this deep Automaton excitement soon embodied itself in the recognizable form of a *Club*—the first Chess organization known to have been formed in our city. My informants do, indeed, say, that the club was founded “about the year 1825;” but they also agree, that it owed its origin to the visit of the Automaton. If we suppose, therefore, that the club was organized *before* the visit of the Automaton to Philadelphia, but as soon as possible after the landing of Maelzel at New York, it could not date earlier than February, 1826. A date quite as late as this appears to me far more probable than that of 1825, for nothing short of the profound excitement called forth by the mysterious Turk could account for so sudden a running together of such large numbers to organize themselves into the unusual form of a Chess-club. More than a hundred members enrolled themselves at the first rush—as if imperial Caïssa herself, in some desperate necessity, had called upon all her subjects, young and old, strong and weak, ban and arrière ban, to come to the rescue. A suitable room was engaged over the building (long since pulled down), in Chestnut street, near Fifth, known as “Sully and Earle’s Gallery;” President, Vice-President, Secretary, etc., were elected in full number and in due form; and an abundant supply of tables, with little boards and diminutive men, of the London Club pattern, stood ready to gratify the appetite of the eager members, who waited only for the termination of these provoking formalities in order to fall to. Not an individual of the hundred, I suppose (except always the sprinkling of old stagers), but expected to astonish his new antagonist by his prowess—for, among those who play only at home, the growth of “invincibilities” is exceedingly rapid. But this feverish combativeness—so my informant assures me—

was cooled with singular effectiveness by the administrations of the really strong players, who were so liberal of "Fool's Mates," "Scholar's Mates," and other unseemly forms of checkmate, that they soon had the room entirely to themselves. How long this club lasted I have not been able to learn. The affair was probably a very agreeable one, so long as the strong players could enjoy the fine room at the expense of the weaker brethren, whom they had frightened away; but when they alone had to settle with the landlord, they may have thought better of it, and have concluded to do their playing at home, or at the Athenæum; for that institution was beginning, about this time, or a little later, to cherish one feeble ray of that light of Chess, which has since grown to be an illumination, if not a luminary.\*

The Athenæum was founded in 1813, the year of the arrival of Mr. Vezin. At first, and for nearly a score of years, it was merely a reading-room association for newspapers and periodicals, foreign and domestic, with some feeble look towards a library. Until 1847 its home was in that wing of the public buildings, on Independence square, which was occupied chiefly by the American Philosophical Society. For many a long and tedious year did this dull association sustain life on the thistles of mere newspaper-reading, without Chess. But its very clever and popular librarian, the late lamented Mr. McIlhenney, was passionately fond of the game, and must have longed to see the desert, in which it was his lot to dwell, a little gladdened by the view of some oasis of black and white squares. This feeling was shared by several of the subscribers—few, indeed, in number—but too important to the association, by their wealth and weight of character, to be safely thwarted or disengaged. By the co-operation of Mr. McIlhenney with Mr. Vezin and other Chess-playing subscribers—(so, at least, it is believed)—a small table was quietly smuggled into a remote corner of the long reading-room; and there my informant remembers to have seen, at a period later than the organization of the centurial Club, two players, moving very ugly Chess-men, by the dim light of a couple of candles. So late as 1836, when Professor Vethake became a resident of

\* The above particulars, in reference to this club, were communicated to me by its former Secretary. Until a short time ago, he had kept in his possession the engrossed list of its hundred members in its original frame. But the frame was wanted by some slip of Young America—whether for a victory of *Young Eclipse*, or the battle of Tom Hyer and Yankee Sullivan, I do not now recollect—and thus nearly all of these historical names have "vanished (as Carlyle would say) into space."

Philadelphia and a subscriber to the Athenaeum, he recollects finding Mr. Vezin seated at the same solitary table, in the remote corner; and it was at that time, and by the side of that table, that the nearer acquaintance between these eminent players began, which soon ripened into an intimate personal friendship, interrupted only by the death of him, who was by many years the elder of the two.\* Eleven

\* I must be allowed to devote a few words to my friend and colleague, Henry Vethake, of German parentage, is grandson of the officer who directed the artillery of the allies at the battle of Minden. He commenced his career as a Chess-player, at nine years old, by beating his father. His precocity attracted attention; and during his boyhood he played frequently in New York society as a Chess prodigy. He dropt Chess altogether while in college; but as a law student he resumed it, and was recognised as the strongest player in New York. He sometimes alludes to an amusing occurrence of this period. To wile away the time on board a North River steamboat, he accepted the invitation of a stranger to play a game of Chess. Mr. Vethake played, as a strong player is wont to, when he discovers that he could give half his pieces to his adversary. He had not observed, that the game was keenly overlooked by Mr. John R. Livingston, the well-known associate of Robert Fulton. Mr. Livingston discovered in Mr. Vethake, despite of some unaccountably bad moves, the germ of superior Chess talent. This he expressed to the young stranger in courteous and complimentary terms, and assured him, moreover, that, in fact, all he needed was some lessons from some one, like himself, who really knew the game, to become a good player. Mr. Vethake, in return, meekly entreated that so important a course of instruction might begin at once. Mr. Livingston graciously complied; but, after a few moves, accompanied by illustrative remarks, he found his own game so completely pulled to pieces, that he was forced, in amazement, to utter a good-humored, *Aut Erasmus aut Diabolus!*—the crushing strength of his young antagonist's play had sufficiently revealed his name. The greater part of Mr. Vethake's life, from the completion of his law studies to his removal to Philadelphia in 1836, was spent as professor of mathematics in various institutions, where he had no opportunity of finding players approaching to his own strength. For ten or fifteen years, therefore, he may be said to have abandoned Chess altogether. During a visit to Germany, in 1829–30, his interest in Chess was renewed by looking over a game in the hotel at *Aix-la-Chapelle*. He sought the best players at various stopping-places, and beat them all. At Berlin he found a stronger adversary, but succeeded in drawing his game, to the great mortification of the Prussian, who said that if it had been a *Frenchman*, who had thus wrested victory from him, he could never have forgiven himself. And this was said in the

years later, in the year 1847, a very neat brown stone building was completed by the association, in Sixth street, on Washington square; and Chess was distinctly recognised by the appropriation of a small room between the airy library and the space devoted to the consumption of newspapers. The little old table was thrown into the cellar, and its array of deformed warriors sent into some retreat equally inglorious, with most ungrateful oblivion (I must say) of the part both had played in the classic contests of Vezin with Stanley and with Schulten. Four tables, however, of very convenient construction, stepped exultingly into the promised land, which the meek precursor of Fifth street was not allowed to enter; and big, resolute-looking men—turned from patterns furnished by an ingenious subscriber—were disposed in well-contrived receptacles, and seemed to long for the combat as eagerly as the rusting armor of the “Shepherd Lord.” A certain expansion of Athenæum Chess may have followed upon this enlargement of room, and such multiplication of facilities for playing; but it still retained all the unity of a true “School of Chess,” (the *Accademia degli Scacchi*, of the Italian writers), although entirely without the formal organization of a Chess club, because that unity had been produced, not by the one table and the narrow space, but by the insensible operation, through a score of years, of one unobtrusively predominant influence, the example of Mr. Charles Vezin, who was now approaching his three-score-and-ten. A perfect model of high-bred and amiable courtesy, Mr. Vezin had always been a diligent student of the game, and had valued his Chess reputation highly enough to be willing to maintain it in serious contests and formal matches. These matches constitute the most salient points in the history of Athenæan Chess for many years. I cannot do better, therefore, than to mention such of them as I know, after premising a short account of Mr. Vezin’s earlier Chess history.

Mr. Vezin came to this country a Chess-player, and immediately took rank as a strong player, if not the strongest in our city. But he used to say, later in life, that he knew nothing of “chess that *was chess*” until he began to play with the director of the Automaton, Schlumberger. It is a tradition here, that during Maelzel’s first exhibition, in the winter of 1827, Mr. Vezin played with the Automaton

days of Deschappelles and La Bourdonnais! Professor Vethake is now the *Provost* of our University. It is matter of deep regret that none of his matches with Mr. Vezin were ever recorded.

and won. If so, he got no credit for his victory : the sympathies of the spectators were always with the mysterious Turk, whose invincibility was a cherished article of the popular creed ; and even the late Dr. Patterson, who was present at the contest, would allow that Mr. Vezin had won only by being "so confoundedly long on his moves." Be this as it may, although Schlumberger was—and knew himself to be—fully able to give Mr. Vezin odds, he took an early opportunity of calling upon him, (according to a prudent system of Maelzel's), and to say, "that as it was for Mr. Maelzel's interest, that his Automaton should neither lose nor risk its character for invincibility, Mr. Maelzel begged of Mr. Vezin the favor not to play with the Automaton in public. In requital of Mr. Vezin's courtesy, Mr. Maelzel would permit Schlumberger to play with him *in private* as much as he liked." Mr. Vezin gladly accepted the offer : he received Schlumberger frequently at his house, and adopted at once the relation of "pupil" towards this able "Chess professor" of the *Café de la Régence*—adding kind and courteous attentions to the proper compensation for instruction. I presume, that Mr. Vezin's playing with Schlumberger began in 1827 ; and that it was always resumed whenever Maelzel came to Philadelphia, where he spent a much larger part of his time than anywhere else. I know that he continued the intercourse down to a day or two before Schlumberger left the city for the last time ; but studious as Mr. Vezin was, during these eight years of such superior instruction, he was never able to cope successfully with the great "Director." At their last meeting, in the house of Professor Vethake, they played two games, both of which Mr. Vezin lost. He continued, however, to study and improve ; and after a few years used sometimes to say to his friend, "If Schlumberger were to meet us *now*, he would not find it quite so easy to beat us."

With Professor Vethake Mr. Vezin stood on terms of particular intimacy. The acquaintance had begun, between ten and twenty years before Mr. Vethake became a resident of the city, when he was professor, I believe, at Princeton. While on a visit to Philadelphia, Mr. Vezin, who was well acquainted with his high reputation as a Chess-player, sought him out and introduced himself to him. He was the more ready, therefore, in 1836, to welcome Mr. Vethake as a most valuable accession to the Athenæum circle, and to study still farther to improve his own play by frequent and strenuous contests with an adversary so powerful. They regarded themselves, and were regarded by others, as strictly equal. In their style of play, however, there was a marked

difference—but a difference, which Professor Vethake thinks to have been in great part accidental. Mr. Vezin had never been out of practice, and had been constantly adding to his knowledge of the game. Under Schlumberger he had acquired a good command of the Gambits; and he had worked hard at all the Openings, both in books and with his studious young friends over the board. Professor Vethake, on the other hand, had never made the game a subject of systematic study; he had more than once allowed years to pass without playing at all; and in 1836, he had even neglected the Chess-board for fifteen years, with the exception of half a dozen games played during a visit to Germany. He now resumed Chess with much satisfaction, indeed; and with such a constitution of mind as his, he could not play carelessly: but he did not feel disposed—at the grave years of middle life—to begin a minute study of the Openings. For this reason, as well as because he considered the sacrifice of the Pawn at the second move to be radically unsound, he never gave the Gambit in an even game, and contented himself with working out the proper defence for foiling the brilliant Gambits of Mr. Vezin. He was, however, an attacking player, in his own way; and his calculations were as original and interesting, as they were deep and carefully calculated. The two friends continued to play together—in chance games and set matches—until Mr. Vezin began to feel the approaches of the slow decay of which he died. When, in their last match, Mr. Vezin lost five games out of seven, he said it would no longer do for him to play with so strong an adversary: the effort, which it required, was far beyond what he could make with safety. He continued, however, to make his stated visit to Mr. Vethake's house, every Sunday afternoon, as he had done for years; and when he could no longer bear the fatigue of even so short a walk, he took a carriage, rather than forego the friendly interview at the usual time and place.

Of Mr. Vezin's Chess contests with other strong players, some slight record happens to have been preserved. In 1841, he played a match at the Athenæum with Mr. Schulten. The first four games were won in succession by Mr. Vezin; and great was the elation of his young friends at the prospect of his final success; but this brilliant beginning was not followed up with equal good fortune:—the tide turned suddenly against the beloved veteran, and Mr. Schulten won all, or nearly all, of the remaining games of the match. In October, 1842, it appears from Mr. Oliver's manuscript journal, that Mr. Vezin went to Boston with Mr. Schulten to witness the return-match between these two

redoubted champions. Mr. Oliver lost the match—"owing (he partly suspected) to the *men*"—and one may perceive, I think, something of the "Earl Percy sees my fall" in his characterizing the Philadelphian witness of the match as "perhaps the strongest player in the United States." A subsequent trial of four games with Mr. Vezin—of which each won two—left Mr. Oliver "persuaded" (rather too easily, I think) "of his superior force." With the hopes generated by this persuasion, Mr. Oliver visited Philadelphia during the October of the next year (1843). In a short match of five games, Mr. Oliver won three against Mr. Vezin's two. At their next meeting, Mr. Oliver played his own brilliant gambit successfully; but presently Mr. Vezin had worked out the defence, and then he became victor in turn. Mr. Oliver's further record is, that "he had been beaten very much by Mr. Vezin"—which he ascribed (not this time to the "*men*") but to "the excitement of travelling and *other similar causes*." Was ever true Chess-player—from Paolo Boi downwards—without his theory to account for the singular phenomenon of his own defeat?

Another entry in Mr. Oliver's Journal states that Professor Vethake had expressed a desire to play with him; but that *he* had refused to play, except for the stake of a board and men. It could hardly have surprised a son of the Pilgrims, I think, that Mr. Vethake—both on principle and from the necessity of his position as a teacher of youth should decline to play for any stake whatever. Yet Mr. Oliver records, with great particularity, that he had more than once offered Mr. Vethake ("Vezin" in the MS., is an evident slip of the pen), to play with him for the stake aforesaid. I am afraid that my fellow-countryman was laying his plans (as great men have done in our own day), for escaping, with flying colors, from a combat with the friend and equal of Mr. Vezin.

About this time, a sensation was made in the American Chess world by the arrival in this country of the brilliant English player, Mr. Charles H. Stanley. Mr. Vezin was desirous that his young friends should have an opportunity of witnessing the play of the rising master, and therefore readily arranged a match with him, although (as he avowed) he expected to be beaten. He even consented, on this occasion, to play for a stake, solely upon the ground that Mr. Stanley, in winning it, would be merely compensated for the trouble and expense of coming to Philadelphia. The match was played at the Athenæum early in the year 1844. Mr. Stanley, in a tone happily characteristic of himself, has recorded, that "on this occasion, though unsuccessful, Mr. Vezin at

least ‘bore himself as a knight,’ winning seven and drawing three, out of a total number of twenty-one games.” The same courteous adversary adds, that “in a game played by correspondence, a short time after, between the same parties, Mr. Vezin was yet more successful, as, in the latter case, he defeated his antagonist in the most handsome manner.” This correspondence-game was played in the year 1845, and may be found—together with one or two other specimens of Mr. Vezin’s style—in Mr. Stanley’s *American Chess Magazine*.

In the year 1847, a match of two simultaneous games was played by correspondence between Philadelphia and Boston. From a record in the *American Chess Magazine*, I infer that the terms of the match were arranged during a visit to the Athenæum of a Boston amateur, equally known for strength of play and large acquaintance with Chess science and Chess literature, Mr. George Hammond. It appears, from the same authority, that on this occasion Mr. Hammond had the honor of winning the odd game, in a close contest of seven games with the Nestor of the Athenæum. Mr. Stanley, however, remarks, with his customary fairness, that as Mr. Hammond, in turn, was defeated by a very large majority, in a series of games played with Mr. Randolph, the result of the encounter with Mr. Vezin cannot be looked upon as in any manner conclusive—Mr. R., although a young player of very great promise, being certainly not yet to be considered as the equal of his more experienced “Mentor,” Mr. Vezin. Perhaps Mr. Stanley may have been aware of another reason, why the result of such a match could not be looked upon as affecting Mr. Vezin’s real standing as a player—viz., the time-worn veteran was now in his sixty-seventh year, and had begun to lose gradually the perfect command of his mental resources. His son assures me, that his father considered himself to have been at the height of his strength in 1845, when he encountered Mr. Stanley, and that “memory began to play him tricks” from about that time.

According to the arrangements for the match, the Athenæum was to be represented by two very strong young players, Mr. Philip P. Randolph and Mr. Tilghman; the Boston Club by Mr. Hammond himself, “with liberty to consult any fellow-member of the Club.” The game, in which Boston had the move, was drawn by perpetual check, on the part of the defence, at the twenty-second move; the Philadelphia game, after the thirty-sixth move of the attack, had assumed such an aspect, that the Boston Club wisely decided, rather than suffer a lingering death by post, to depute their champion to play out the

remaining moves, here, over the board, with either member of the Athenæum Committee. Mr. Hammond, accordingly, again visited the Athenæum—by this time removed (I believe) to the new building—and gracefully accepted the *coup de grace* from the victorious hand of Mr. Tilghman.\* Whether the redoubtable Bostonian received some compensation for this official defeat by further victories over Mr. Vezin, by winning a return-match of Mr. Randolph, or by beating Mr. Tilghman on private account, I am entirely ignorant. No one would envy him a due share of consolation for submitting to his fate so handsomely.

I am informed of no incident, in our Athenæum history, beyond the private contests of our own players, before the decease of Mr. Vezin. I learn by the press copy of a letter to Mr. Stanley (for which I am indebted to Mr. Charles Vezin, jr.), that his decline had so far advanced in 1850, that he was no longer able to leave the city. He even expressed himself as having taken, for some time, little interest in the game; but he could have meant to say no more than that he took little part in playing himself; for though his venerable form had been less and less frequently seen at the Chess-table, since about 1847, he had by no means ceased to take a lively interest in the playing of others. He frequented the Athenæum daily—usually, he says, in the afternoon—and when he could no longer walk thither, he took a carriage. The time came, at last, when he could no longer leave his house, either for his Sunday's interview with his friend, Prof. Vethake, or his daily visit to the Chess-room of the Athenæum. The painless extinction of this unpretending light of Chess—the calm departure of his serene and gentle spirit—was now evidently near at hand. Contemplating his approaching death with constitutional equanimity and perfect preparation of mind, his thoughts were driven by no violent agitation from their usual channel. It happened that during the week (I believe) before his death, the celebrated New York player, Mr. Thompson, was visiting the Athenæum, and—truth to say—was giving our stoutest champions no very agreeable proofs of his prowess. Mr. Vezin kept

\* It was, apparently, soon after the close of this match, that Mr. Tilghman was drawn by business to England, and there played, with remarkable success, in the London Club. I have heard some interesting particulars of his first visit to the Club, but I have not been able to verify them from the proper source. One game of his with Mr. Tuckett is given in the *Chess-Player's Chronicle*, vol. viii. p. 290. I have seen the same game copied in two or three German Chess books as a model-game in the King's Gambit.

himself regularly informed of the fluctuating course of this closely contested campaign. When he last saw Mr. Vethake, he charged him to remind Mr. McIlhenney not to forget his daily report—the more earnestly, for at that moment the fate of Athenæan Chess reputation was “balancing upon the razor’s edge.” On the Sunday before his death, Mr. Daniel Smith, of the Athenæum, called at Mr. Vezin’s house, not expecting to see him—for he was aware that no visitor was any longer admitted to his presence—but merely to make his kind inquiries. When, however, it was known that he was one of Mr. Vezin’s friends of the Athenæum, he was told that Mr. Vezin wished by all means to see him. Mr. Smith was accordingly ushered into his room, where he saw M. Vezin—by no means stretched helpless on his bed—but sitting in his easy-chair, with his toilette carefully made, in cravat and flowered dressing-gown—in other respects, however, looking more like one whose soul had departed, than a living man. Mr. Vezin received Mr. Smith with his usual urbanity, and with great difficulty—yet not without the courteous formality of the exquisitely well-bred gentleman—assured Mr. Smith, that he was particularly happy to see him, first, because of the personal regard which he entertained for him, and, secondly, because he wished to learn what had been the result of the games with Mr. Thompson. Mr. Smith, with equal urbanity, and with an unconscious imitation of the same formality, assured Mr. Vezin, first, that he was sincerely grateful to him for his expressions of regard towards himself, and, secondly, that he felt particular pleasure in being able to inform him, that Mr. Thompson had gone home to New York with one game *minus*—an assurance which was listened to with the most evident satisfaction by the dying Chess-player. Within a day or two after this consoling interview—on the 8th day of April, 1853—the painless death of the gentle old man took place.

No man ever possessed, in a higher degree than Mr. Vezin, the moral characteristics of a perfect Chess-player. His nerves were disturbed in play neither by irritability nor timidity. His view of the board was clear and sure; his imagination was a steady light, that suggested the proper combination in time; and he worked out his analysis in a calm and steady progress. To say that he neither showed ill-temper in defeat, nor unseemly exultation in victory, is saying little for a man of his temper and manners. He carried the proprieties of the Chess-room to the extent of the most refined delicacy. He would never challenge a defeated adversary to another game, as if eager to renew his triumph; he held it to be more proper to wait until the

loser should ask his "revenge." Many maxims and practices of similar delicacy he left behind him as a legacy to his younger friends. There was nothing, however, which he guarded with more jealousy, than his reputation as a Chess-player. A serious defeat at Chess was to him a real humiliation, which he bore, indeed, with perfect good-temper, but he felt it deeply. In later days, when such reverses happened oftener than they ought, he even made solemn resolutions (so he wrote to Mr. Stanley) to abandon the game altogether—resolutions which he kept sometimes for weeks, and sometimes (he says) for a year. It was only in reference to his Chess reputation, that he ever showed (to my knowledge) any keen sense of insult or injury. On one occasion, after Mr. Vezin's strength had begun to fail, some stranger visitor at the Athenæum—perhaps some obtusely good-natured Western barbarian—perhaps some supercilious foreign player, smiling insult from under a well-curled moustache—challenged him to a match, and, when Mr. Vezin declined, had either the inconsiderate folly, or the insolent rudeness (as the case may have been), to repeat the challenge, with the offer of the Pawn and Move. Now had any business-transaction of Mr. Vezin's been in question, I think he would have quietly left his well-established character as a merchant to take care of itself; but *this* was an attack upon his standing as a Chess-player, made, too, in utter violation of every rule of propriety, which he had himself inculcated and practised. The sick lion took the spurn to heart, with every expression of wounded sensibility; and although he undoubtedly forgave the author of the injury, when the time came to do so *in extremis*, he certainly never spoke to him again.

When Mr. Vezin wrote to Mr. Stanley, in 1850, he spoke despondingly of the Chess prospects of the Athenæum. Professor Vethake (he said) had ceased to play; and his favorite disciples, Randolph and Tilghman, no longer visited the Chess-room. He spoke very highly of the superior talent and hard study of his young friend, Thomas; and gave Elkin the credit of remarkable genius, but added, that "he did not much like hard work"—a position which my brilliant friend admits to be profoundly true. These young men, he said, usually played only with inferior antagonists, and therefore carelessly. "If, consequently, Philadelphia could ever boast of a pre-eminence in Chess, in the United States, she is in a fair way (he said) of losing it, if she has not done so already." At the date of this letter, Hardman Philips Montgomery, not yet a student in the University, was unknown at the Athenæum; and it was not until about a year before Mr. Vezin's death, that this

youthful inheritor of his mantle could be recognised by him as such.\* It was by the victorious efforts of "Phil. Montgomery,"† in fact, that Mr. Thompson had been sent home "one game minus;" it was *his* triumph, that had shed so bright a gleam of satisfaction upon Mr. Vezin's last thoughts of Chess and of his beloved Athenæum. Mr. Montgomery's ability to sustain our ancient glory has been tried more than once since that time. Well-known players—such as Mr. Pindar (now in England), Dr. Raphael, and Mr. Fuller—have visited the Chess-room in turn, and none of them (I believe) has had Mr. Thompson's good luck, of keeping his *minus* account down to *one*.

In the winter of 1855–56 a proposition was made to the Athenæum players, on the part of the New York Chess Club, to contest with them a match by correspondence. Action was not immediately taken by our players, simply because they were without organization as a club. But in the month of February, Mr. W. J. A. Fuller, a leading member of the New York Club, made a visit to the Athenæum, (of which he gave a pleasant account in Frank Leslie's *Illustrated Newspaper*), and effected the proper arrangements. It was agreed that the match should consist of two games, to be played simultaneously, each party to have the white pieces and the move in one of the games. The Athenæum players intrusted their honor, by common consent, to Mr. Philip P. Randolph, Mr. H. Philips Montgomery, Mr. William G. Thomas, Mr. Lewis Elkin, Mr. Alexander E. Dougherty, and Dr. Samuel Lewis. The first moves in the two games were exchanged on the 22d of February, 1856. The game opened by New York was made a *Gioco Siciliano* by the Philadelphians, with a view to playing, with less effort, for a drawn game, in order that they might reserve their entire strength, and give full time, to their own game, which was a Scotch Gambit.

\* When Philips Montgomery entered the Sophomore Class of the University, in 1851, he immediately attracted the attention of his professor, Mr. Vethake, by his superior strength in mathematics; but I well remember the brighter glow of satisfaction, with which the same professor one day informed his colleagues, that he had discovered our young Montgomery to be a strong Chess-player; he had found him (he said) overlooking a game at the Athenæum; and, at the close of it, the youth had pointed out an admirable line of play, which had escaped the parties themselves; in short, it was such a remark as Mr. Vezin or Mr. Vethake himself might have made.

† Such is the *sobriquet*, by which our champion is universally designated at the Athenæum, to distinguish him from another Mr. Montgomery, who is also of the Athenæum and a strong player.

No committee, I am confident, ever performed the arduous duty intrusted to them more laboriously and perseveringly than the Committee of the Athenæum. Their analytic toil was incessant; and yet so promptly was it performed, that they were, in nearly every instance, prepared to answer the New York men by return post. A suspension of play, during the summer months, was a most welcome and necessary respite. The Philadelphia game was the first concluded: it was resigned by the New York Committee on the 12th of January, 1857, at the thirty-second move. The other game was continued until the 9th of February, when, upon the receipt of the forty-first move of the New Yorkers, the Athenæum Committee announced checkmate in six moves. The year-long correspondence between the two committees had been marked by entire harmony and courtesy, and they took leave of each other with increased feelings of good will and respect. At the suggestion of the editor of the Book of the Congress the moves in these two admirably played games are here reproduced.

## GAME I.—SICILIAN OPENING.

## New York.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. Q. takes P.
5. Q. to Q. sq.
6. K. B. to Q. 3d.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. P. takes P.
9. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
10. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
11. K. B. takes Kt.
12. Castles.
13. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
14. P. to Q. B. 4th.
15. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
16. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
17. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
18. P. to K. B. 3d.
19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.

## Philadelphia.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. 3d.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. K. Kt. takes P.
9. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. Castles.
11. P. takes B.
12. P. to K. B. 4th.
13. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
14. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
15. P. to Q. B. 4th.
16. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
17. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
18. B. to Q. B. 2d.
19. Q. R. to K. sq.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.

## New York.

21. K. R. to K. 2d.
22. Q. R. to K. sq.
23. P. takes P.
24. K. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
25. P. takes B.
26. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
27. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
28. R. takes Q.
29. Q. takes R.
30. K. to B. sq.
31. R. to Q. 2d.
32. P. takes P.
33. R. to Q. 7th.
34. K. to Kt. sq.
35. R. to K. Kt. 7th. (ch.)
36. R. takes K. R. P.
37. R. to K. R. 8th. (ch.)
38. B. to K. 5th.
39. K. to K. R. 2d.
40. K. to K. R. 3d.
41. R. to Q. B. 8th.

## Philadelphia.

21. P. to K. 4th.
22. P. to K. 5th.
23. K. B. to K. B. 5th.
24. B. takes Kt.
25. Kt. takes P.
26. Kt. takes Kt.
27. Q. takes K. Kt. P. (ch.)
28. R. takes R. (ch.)
29. Kt. to B. 6th. (ch.)
30. Kt. takes Q.
31. P. to B. 5th.
32. Kt. to K. Kt. 7th.
33. R. takes P. (ch.)
34. B. to K. 5th.
35. K. to B. sq.
36. Kt. to K. 6th.
37. K. to B. 2d.
38. R. to K. B. 8th. (ch.)
39. Kt. to K. B. 4th.
40. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

And Philadelphia announced mate in six moves.

## GAME II.—SCOTCH GAMBIT.

## Philadelphia.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Kt. takes Kt.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. Castles.
7. P. to K. 5th.
8. P. to Q. B. 3d.
9. Kt. takes P.
10. K. B. to Q. 3d.
11. Kt. to K. 4th.

## New York.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. takes P.
4. P. takes Kt.
5. Q. to K. B. 3d.
6. B. to Q. B. 4th.
7. Q. to K. B. 4th.
8. P. takes P.
9. Kt. to K. 2d.
10. Q. to K. 3d.
11. B. to Q. 5th.

## Philadelphia.

12. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
13. Q. to K. R. 5th.
14. Q. to K. R. 6th.
15. K. R. to K. sq.
16. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
17. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
18. Kt. takes B.
19. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
20. B. to Q. B. 4th.
21. B. takes Kt.
22. P. to K. B. 4th.
23. B. to Q. 3d.
24. B. takes P.
25. Q. to K. R. 4th. (ch.)
26. K. R. to Q. sq. (ch.)
27. K. to K. R. sq.
28. R. takes Q. B. P.
29. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
30. R. takes R.
31. Q. to K. B. 6th.
32. B. takes Q. Kt. P.

## New York.

12. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
13. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
14. B. takes K. P.
15. Q. to K. B. 3d.
16. P. to Q. 3d.
17. Q. to K. 3d.
18. P. takes Kt.
19. K. R. to K. B. sq.
20. Q. to K. B. 4th.
21. K. takes B.
22. P. to K. 5th.
23. B. to K. 3d.
24. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
25. K. to Q. 2d.
26. K. to K. sq.
27. P. to Q. B. 3d.
28. Q. R. to Q. sq.
29. R. takes R.
30. P. to K. R. 4th.
31. B. to Q. B. sq.

And New York resigned.

The separate impression, from the pages of the *Chess Monthly*, of these games, with notes and variations, having been entirely private, it is proper to record, in this historic paper, that the Philadelphia Committee, in the moment of victory, reverted in thought to him, whose spirit they might well imagine to have been present with them in a contest for the honor of his beloved Athenæum, and to his memory they inscribed the volume, in a dedication which evidently speaks the affecting language of truth: *To the memory of their venerated Friend their Master and Model in Chess, the late lamented CHARLES VEZIN, these Games are inscribed by the Athenæum Committee.*

The effect of this really remarkable achievement upon the very atmosphere of the Athenæum Chess-room was particularly striking to the eye of one, who, like myself, was only an infrequent visitor, and never a combatant. The members of the COMMITTEE bore themselves with a gravity, that well became the new weight of reputation and responsibility, which had come so fairly to rest upon their shoulders. The playing

even of the "lighter weights" was marked by a seriousness and slowness, that "looked as if it would be science if it could."\* The room, the tables, the pieces, were discovered to be entirely below the present standard of dignity. A subscription was raised to repair, to buy, to beautify. A handsome table, of improved construction, was introduced to replace some ugly antiquity. One headless Knight, and another whose head had been stuck on with sealing-wax—a Bishop with cloven mitre—a Castle with shattered battlements—all were packed off to the turner to be made new again; and as to the remaining champions and "unwashed citizens" of this fierce militia, these eyes did see one of the most honored members of the glorious Committee making to them solemn application of soap and water—just as sovereign princes have been wont sometimes, with their own hands, to wipe the dust and sweat of battle from the brows of favorite warriors, *non indecoro pulvere sordidos*. When the work of renovation had been perfected, serious matches began to be talked of, and some were played—for the ordinary "skittling games" of our hitherto careless "first-rates" were felt to be no longer worthy of the men and of the time. Nay, "Phil. Montgomery" was obliged to abide the test of giving Pawn and Move to players of no ordinary force—a test which he bore without loss of credit.

But the interest of all Chess amateurs was presently transferred to another scene—to the contests of the First American Chess Congress, and to the first appearance, upon a field at all commensurate with his wondrous powers, of the youthful PAUL MORPHY. In this Congress Philadelphia was represented by Philips Montgomery alone; and the unexpected prolongation of the session compelled him to return home after winning his match with Allison, and playing one game (which he lost) with Paulsen. Slight, however, as was the part which Philadelphia took in the Congress, she has been behind no city in feeling the stirring effect of the great Chess excitement which began there, but has now been extended over the whole world by the chivalrous adventures of our unrivalled champion. The Athenæum is still the centre and soul of Philadelphia Chess; but around that centre are now revolving the lesser orbs of many a newly-formed club—one of them composed exclusively of English residents, and another of studious

\* The great English scholar, the Rev. D. Bentley, in his hearty contempt for weak potations, used to say of *Claret*, that it looked as if it would be *Port* if it could.

Germans. Chess columns are opened in three of our newspapers, but only one of them—that of the *Saturday Evening Bulletin*—receives the support and co-operation of the Athenæum players, and speaks with “the large utterance of the greater gods.”

I am happy in being able to close this slight history of Philadelphia Chess with the record of another Athenæum victory. The New York Chess Club and the Athenæum players have again tried their strength in a match of two consultation-games, played over the wires of the American Telegraph Company. The Athenæum confided its honor to the committee, which had so well sustained it in the match by correspondence. The first game, opened by New York, was drawn; the second game was a Scotch Gambit, opened by Philadelphia, and this was won in the most brilliant style.

Our Athenæum, therefore, at the moment when I lay down my pen, is still in full possession of its ancient pre-eminence. Little as I have had to do with winning or sustaining its glory, I exult in it as much as if its Chess-room had been the scene of exploits of my own; and it is with perfect sincerity of interest that I exclaim, as did the too patriotic Servite for his native Venice, *Esto perpetua!*

G. A.

PHILADELPHIA ATHENÆUM, Jan. 1, 1859.

---

#### V.—CHESS IN BOSTON.

The early history of Chess in Boston has passed away with those votaries of the game, who in former years engaged in the friendly contests of mind against mind, and won or lost unnumbered battles on the checkered field. The forms that once bent over the Chess-board, scanning with watchful eyes the progress of the game, as the hands, executives of the all-controlling mind, guided the pieces in their varied moves, have long since mingled with their mother earth and been transformed by the subtle alchemy of Nature into particles of organic matter, that, perchance, have afforded life and sustenance to the devotees of Caïssa in the present generation. Buried in the silent tomb of the Past, by the side of those valiant knights who once paid homage to our ever-youthful and enchanting Goddess, lie the chronicles of the regal game that would now prove so valuable and interesting. All endeavors to penetrate the sepulchral gloom and rescue from oblivion the traditions

of by-gone years, have proved futile, and whosoever would look upon the scenes of the Chess-world of the last century must visit its shadowy realms with Imagination for a guide.

Dealing with the sterner facts of history, the opening of the present century must serve as a starting-point for this sketch, and although the records, either written or printed, of the doings of the amateurs of Chess for many years subsequent to that time, are few in number and exceedingly meagre as to details, yet sufficient information has been gleaned from the veteran players now living, to present a general outline of the progress of the game from the days when Chess was regarded as a positive luxury by the few who were familiar with its mysteries, down to the date of the formation of the first Chess Club and to the present "golden age" of Chess.

In the year 1805, William Pelham, publisher and bookseller at No. 59 Cornhill, issued a work entitled "The Elements of Chess, a Treatise combining Theory with Practice, and comprising the whole of Philidor's Games and explanatory Notes, new modelled and arranged upon an original Plan." This was one of the earliest works upon Chess published in the United States, and the first of its kind printed at Boston. The editor of this volume—that the book *was* edited by some Chess-player at the time of its publication is apparent from an exceedingly interesting Appendix, containing much new and original matter)—was undoubtedly a nephew of Mr. Pelham's, named William Blagrove, who is known to have been an enthusiast of Chess, and a player of merit, though no further information upon the latter point can be obtained. Blagrove, at that time, kept a stationery store and circulating library at No. 5 School street, and is remembered by many of the older citizens of Boston to-day, who then attended school in School street, and were among his best patrons, buying quills, pencils, slates, and other articles for use at school. Blagrove afterwards removed to No. 61 Cornhill, where he kept the "Union Circulating Library," and subsequently, about the year 1810, went to Washington, D. C., where it is believed he died.

It is difficult to assign a satisfactory reason for the publication of this treatise at that time; a natural inference would be that a demand existed sufficient to warrant the undertaking. But it is hardly probable that among the persons then interested in Chess, there were many sufficiently engrossed in the game to purchase a book devoted exclusively to its exemplification and practice, and notwithstanding the sale of the work was not confined to Boston, yet the number of copies likely to

have been disposed of, would barely furnish an adequate remuneration to the publisher. A more plausible supposition is, that Blagrove's enthusiasm for Chess, and his desire to promote the interests of the game and aid in its extension led him to induce his uncle to publish "The Elements of Chess." The knowledge of its publication and of Blagrove's probable connection with the book renders one fact certain; that there were Chess-players in Boston in 1805, though as to who they were or what victories they achieved no information has been vouchsafed.

During the twenty years succeeding that date, the practice of Chess was limited to such occasional play as might occur when two admirers of the game were brought together by good fortune, but there were no attempts at regular meetings, nor has any account been preserved of the proceedings during that period. In 1825-6 several gentlemen were in the habit of meeting from time to time, to enjoy their favorite game, occasionally at the boarding-house kept by Mrs. Lydia Vose, on Milk and Congress streets, and at another well-known boarding-house in Franklin street, a few doors above the present location of the office of the *Saturday Evening Gazette*, and also at the residences of several of the gentlemen interested. Messrs. Samuel Dexter, Thomas J. Eckley, Robert T. Paine, Abraham W. Fuller, Dr. Benjamin D. Greene, A. F. Picquet, subsequently appointed French Commercial Agent, Dr. Samuel Morrill, Jr., and others were among the number. Benjamin Lynde Oliver, for many years one of the very best players in the United States and the leading player in New England, who then resided at Salem, Mass., was occasionally present. Next to this gentleman Messrs. Dexter and Picquet were considered the strongest players. Mr. Eckley is spoken of as being "the most scientific player, but exceedingly slow and tedious." Of the gentlemen previously named, Messrs. Dexter, Eckley, Paine, and Fuller, were members of the legal profession, occupying offices in close proximity on State and Court streets, and they frequently visited each other to participate in the games of White *vs.* Black or White *vs.* Red. M. Picquet was a French gentleman, a lawyer by profession, and came to America in 1825 or 1826 to prosecute a suit at law for the recovery of property belonging to his family. He had also commanded a frigate in the French navy, and in 1829 succeeded M. Desaze as French Commercial Agent. He was highly esteemed by all who knew him, and was much interested in Chess. After leaving Boston he removed to Philadelphia, at which place he died.

In February, 1826, Mr. Maelzel arrived at New York, bringing with him the celebrated Automaton Chess-Player that had excited so much curiosity in the Old World, and his visit to Boston in the fall of the same year gave quite an impetus to Chess. All the newspapers printed at that time contained notices of the exhibition of the Android and allusions to the game of Chess, while the *New England Galaxy*, published by Joseph T. Buckingham, who is still living, and the *Columbian Centinel*, published by Benjamin Russell, devoted large portions of their space to extended accounts of the Automaton and to articles upon Androids and sketches of the origin of Chess.

In the spring of that year, Samuel H. Parker, well known as the publisher of the pioneer edition of the Waverley Novels, issued the second Chess Book published in Boston, entitled "An Analysis of the Game of Chess by Philidor." This work contained a number of diagrams (wood cuts), and an edition of one thousand was printed, a number of which were sold. Mr. Parker then occupied the store No. 164 Washington street, at which place he did business for many years. By a fire that occurred in the building on the first of November, 1833, the balance of this edition of Philidor was burned, and the plates and cuts were destroyed. In an article printed in the *New England Galaxy* of April 28, 1826, the writer, after alluding to the exhibitions then being given by Maelzel in New York, thus notices this work:

"The game of Chess is an interesting game, but not quite so fashionable in this good city of ours as we believe it is in New York and Philadelphia. Should the automaton be exhibited here, as it is presumed it will be, the curiosity of many will be excited, and the desire to become acquainted with the game be more prevalent. Those who wish for instruction in a game which the philosopher Leibnitz classed among the sciences, will find Philidor's Analysis a useful guide. An edition of this work has lately been published by S. H. Parker, Boston, in a neat pocket volume, illustrated by diagrams, and critical remarks and notes. To the work is also prefixed *The Morals of Chess*, by Dr. Franklin, an essay, which though known to many is probably unknown to many more, and may not inappropriately help to fill up this column."

The essay is then given in full, and from the tone of the above remarks and the space allowed to the essay, an idea may be formed as to the degree of interest then felt in the game "classed among the sciences."

In September of the same year (1826), Mr. Maelzel came to Boston

with his Chess-player, rope-dancer, trumpeter, etc., and established himself at Julien Hall, at the corner of Milk and Congress streets, and adjoining the boarding-house kept by Mrs. Vose. The first exhibition was given on the evening of September 13; the admission fee being fifty cents. At this time the automaton played *ends of games* only, in which, having the first move, the contest was generally forced to a favorable issue for the Turk. The *Centinel*, of Sept. 16, contained an article relative to the exhibitions, from which the following extracts are made :

"The skill of some of our best Chess-players has been exerted in contests with the turbaned automaton, but he has always proved the victor."—"Unquestionably Mr. Maelzel is an excellent player, and it may well be thought that any one who can beat him, will not be conquered by the automaton."

In the issue of the same paper for Sept. 20, the first defeat of the Mussulman is thus chronicled :

"We add as an extraordinary fact, that on Monday the grave and skilful *Chess-player* found a conqueror in a *Bostonian*, in one of his most favorite *ends of games*; and was compelled to succumb, we believe for the first time since his arrival in America, any reports from the Commercial Emporium to the contrary notwithstanding. Those who saw the contest, say the Turk had the best of the game after several moves, but by a careless play lost his advantage and the game. He appears, however, to bear his loss with gravity, and has since continued his successful career."

Chess-players in those days were quite as tenacious of their Chess reputation as the same class of persons are at the present time, and the allusion to the "Commercial Emporium," in the paragraph last quoted, called forth a statement in the *New York American* to the effect that the automaton had been beaten at New York in two ends of games, by two gentlemen separately. In answer to this statement, the *Centinel* of Sept. 30, published the following :

"The truth is, that the automaton has been conquered in Boston three times by three gentlemen, separately; but, we believe, that in all the cases the successful players have been indebted to the courtesy of Mr. Maelzel in permitting them to take the first move, in games where success from such permission was inevitable, if the game was well played."

As before stated, the automaton only played ends of games, the person who then inhabited the Turk, imparting life and motion to the

otherwise helpless figure, not possessing sufficient skill to contest entire games with the stronger players of either city, of whose force Maelzel could judge by private contests had with himself and assistant. At this time Maelzel was expecting the arrival of Schlumberger, the best assistant he ever had, from Paris, and as the rivalry between the players of the two cities increased, he addressed a communication to the editor of the *Centinel*, dated Oct. 13, 1826, of which the following is the opening paragraph:

"Sir: A writer in the *New York American* of Sept. 30th, having endeavored to make it appear that my automaton was not able to cope with some of the N. Y. players in whole games, and as I think the players of Boston at least equal to those of New York, and being under obligations to them for their patronage and courtesy, I propose during the ensuing week to entertain them with entire games."

For this purpose an exhibition was given each day at noon, the price of admission being raised to one dollar. Fearing that Schlumberger, who had landed in New York, might not arrive in season for the performances thus announced, Maelzel engaged Mr. Samuel Dexter to play the automaton in case of his non-appearance, but with characteristic shrewdness refrained from initiating Mr. D. into the mysteries of the solemn Turk, while there existed a doubt as to his services being required. Schlumberger reached the city in time, however, and Mr. Dexter was obliged to remain in ignorance as to the *modus operandi*, though, in common with the other gentlemen, he guessed that the operator was concealed in the chest. Mr. Dexter had met Schlumberger at the Café de la Régence, Paris, and upon the arrival of the latter in Boston, a meeting with the prominent Chess-players took place at Mrs. Vose's, at whose house Schlumberger remained while in the city. At this meeting Mr. Dexter played the first *partie* with Schlumberger, and failing to take advantage of an opportunity to make a drawn game came off second best. During the visit of the automaton, nearly all the leading amateurs played with it in public or met Schlumberger over the board in private, but none of them succeeded in winning a majority of games of him, although several proved troublesome opponents.

Of the full games contested in public, the automaton was victorious in all instances save one. On this occasion no person appearing desirous of contending with the turbaned Turk, Mr. Maelzel requested a young man to play for the amusement of the company. The invitation

was accepted, and, after a hard struggle, the hitherto invincible automaton was defeated, much to the chagrin of its proprietor. The victor was Dr. Benj. D. Greene, who still feels justly proud of his conquest.

A pamphlet upon the automaton was published, though by whom edited or printed, is not known. This may be called the third work upon Chess published in Boston. A poem, entitled "Address to the Automaton Chess-Player," appeared at this time, and was copied into the *New England Galaxy* of Nov. 17, 1826. It is an exceedingly clever production, and was written by Miss Hannah F. Gould. The second and third editions of that lady's poems, published by Hilliard, Gray & Co., in 1832 and 1835, contain the "Address," and it was reprinted in the Chess department of the *Saturday Evening Gazette* of June 5, 1858. The performances of the automaton in Boston closed October 24, 1826, and with its departure terminates all public record of the progress of Chess for many years.

From the year 1826 to the year 1839, the gentlemen previously mentioned, met occasionally for play, and from time to time other knights entered the lists to do their *devoir* for Caïssa. Among these may be named Daniel Greenleaf Ingraham, Ivers J. Austin, Max Isnard, who succeeded M. Picquet as French Consul, in 1836, Peter Kielchen, appointed Russian Consul during the same year, Amos Baker, Dr. Peter Renton, A. D. Parker, Dr. Le Baron Russell, and George Hammond. Benjamin Lynde Oliver moved to Boston from Salem in the year 1830, and his presence and devotion to the game, proved of great and lasting benefit to the cause of Chess. The only event of importance occurring during this period of twelve years, of which any information has been obtained, was the second visit of Mr. Maelzel with the automaton, in 1833. The exhibitions at that time were given at Concert Hall, on Court street, commencing June 1st, and closing August 23d, 1833. The incidents of this second visit are scanty, and may be easily related. At one of the exhibitions, no person offering to play, Mr. A. D. Parker proposed to try a full game with the automaton, to which Maelzel consented. The game lasted during the time usually allotted for the performance of the automaton, and was then left unfinished, the Mussulman having the advantage. Mr. George Hammond called upon Maelzel one day, and requested the pleasure of a game with his turbaned companion. Mr. Maelzel acceded to his request, and conducting him to an inner apartment, placed him face to face with the conqueror of emperors and princes. The game was of short duration, the grim Turk adding yet another to his numerous victories, while his

youthful antagonist consoled himself with the reflection that he had at least played Chess with the celebrated automaton. Schlumberger again met in private many of his former competitors for Caïssan honors, and others who had come upon the field since his former visit, stood ready to break a lance with him in the bloodless fight. It is to be regretted that no records of the *parties* then played, have been preserved, though it is averred that Mr. Oliver successfully defended the Evans Gambit, but recently introduced at that time, against Schlumberger himself. Schlumberger entertained a very high opinion of Mr. Oliver's play, and named him as one of the five best players he had met in America.

The exhibitions of the Conflagration of Moscow, the Automaton Chess-Player, etc., proved very successful. That the patronage bestowed was properly appreciated by Mr. Maelzel is evinced by the following paragraph from his advertisement, as printed in the *Evening Transcript* of July 29, 1833.

"Mr. Maelzel begs leave to state that he feels very grateful for the generous patronage he has received from the inhabitants of Boston and its vicinity, and as a small token of his gratitude and regard intends to devote the proceeds of next SATURDAY EVENING for the BENEFIT OF THE POOR. The avails of that evening will be paid over to the Mayor of the City for him to appropriate in such a manner as he may think proper."

The exhibition was subsequently postponed to Monday evening, August 5, and the result is thus stated in the *Transcript* of August 9.

"The amount paid over to the Mayor of the City, by Mr. Maelzel, for the benefit of the poor, was \$116 25, being the proceeds of his exhibition on Monday evening last."

In the year 1839, by invitation of Mr. Daniel Greenleaf Ingraham, then teacher of an excellent private school, a number of amateurs commenced a series of meetings for the practice of Chess, at his residence in Cedar street. There was no Club organized, although some of the gentlemen gave that name to the meetings which were continued for nearly a year. There were usually present, Messrs. Benj. L. Oliver, Dr. B. D. Greene, Thos. J. Eckley, Abraham W. Fuller, Ivers J. Austin, the French and Russian Consuls, Max Isnard, and Mr. Kielchen, and Mr. Greenleaf. Subsequently these gentlemen met occasionally at the house of Mr. Eckley in Walnut street, at Mr. Isnard's in Winthrop Place, and at Mr. Ingraham's school-room in Chestnut street.

During this year (1839) Mr. Samuel Dexter removed to Washington,

D. C., and was subsequently chosen President of the Chess Club at that place. He there met the prominent players of the day, and in his various matches maintained the reputation he had acquired in Boston as a player of great originality and superior force. A Journal, commenced by Mr. Oliver in the year 1838, and continued until his decease in 1843, presents the only continuous record of the proceedings of the Amateurs of Chess in Boston that can now be found, and in chronicling the doings of the ensuing five years, a synopsis of this Journal will be given, together with such extracts as the limits of the present sketch will permit. From these records may be formed a fair estimate of the relative chess strength of the various gentlemen mentioned, who were at that time the leading players in Boston.

The date of the first entry in the Journal, alluding to Chess, is July 11, 1838. On that day Mr. Oliver won three out of four games played upon even terms with Mr. Picquet, and one giving the odds of Pawn and two moves to the same gentleman. In November of that year, he (Mr. O.) contested a match of three games at the odds of Pawn and two moves with Mr. Picquet, which match was to decide whether he could give Mr. P. those odds. This was decided in Mr. Oliver's favor, he scoring two to his opponent's one. He adds, in his Journal :

"I take away my Chessmen and am determined to trouble myself about Chess no more, with any one who cannot beat Mr. Picquet. Of this there is but little prospect, as I know of no player who is a match for him this side of Washington, and I much doubt whether Mr. O'Sullivan\* is his equal, although when they played three games a few weeks ago, they came off even."

During 1839 there are but few allusions to chess, principally results of play with Mr. Fuller, Dr. Dodd and Dr. Greene, to all of whom Mr Oliver gave the Knight, winning a majority of games. He made a "standing challenge to the Chess-players, *without any exception*, to give any one a Knight." Mention is also made of the "Chess Club," referring to the meetings held at Mr. Ingraham's.

In March, 1840, Mr. O. "beat Mr. Fuller very much at the odds of the Knight," and also won a match of five games of Mr. F., giving him the same odds. In April is recorded the fact that Mr. Isnard won two out of three games of Mr. Fuller "for the first time." Dr. Greene beat

\* The *Chess-Player's Chronicle*, Vol. VII., contains several games played by Mr. O'Sullivan.

Mr. Oliver six in a match of ten games, receiving the odds of the Knight. The other entries of that year give results of *parties* contested at odds with the same players.

In 1841, the principal entries in the Journal refer to two matches played with Mr. J. W. Schulten, a gentleman of world-wide reputation as a Chess-player; and as the account of these *parties* by one of the participants cannot but prove interesting, the entries are copied entire.

SEPT. 8.—Mr. Isnard tells me that Mr. Schulten, the great Chess-player, is in the city, and wishes to play Chess with me. I agree. Mr. I. calls and introduces him to me, with Mr. Vogel. He has beaten Mr. O'Sullivan, and Mr. Vezin, of Philadelphia. I meet Mr. Schulten at 2 o'clock at Mr. Isnard's room, and play four games of Chess with him. The first is drawn; the next I beat easily; the two next he beats. We have agreed to play twenty-one games.

SEPT. 9.—Meet Mr. Schulten and Mr. Vogel at Mr. Isnard's. We play a number of games, and I now lead one game on the whole match.

SEPT. 10.—Play Chess with Mr. Schulten; we have now played twenty games of the match, of which I have beaten twelve and he eight. The last four I beat in succession.

OCT. 6.—Mr. Isnard tells me that Mr. Schulten is desirous of his revenge at Chess, and that he is coming to Boston with Mr. Vezin, of Philadelphia. Mr. Vezin gives Mr. Picquet the Pawn and move, or two moves, and is *perhaps* the strongest player in the United States, though he has been beaten by Mr. Schulten.

OCT. 8.—Go to Mr. Isnard's and find there Mr. Schulten and Mr. Vezin, of Philadelphia, who, Mr. Schulten tells me, has come on for the express purpose of seeing me play. I play with Mr. Schulten the beginning of a second match of twenty-one games. He beats me the first at my gambit; I beat the three next. In the afternoon we play two games, one drawn and one he beats.

OCT. 9.—I beat Mr. Schulten five games; he beats me three; we now stand eight to five in my favor. In the afternoon, go to Dr. Greene's, where Mr. Schulten beats me four times in succession, which I partly suspect was owing to the men. We now stand nine to eight.

OCT. 11.—Play Chess with Mr. Schulten; he beats two and I beat one; thus he wins the match. We afterwards play a number of games at our gambits,\* and I beat the most, three to one.

\* In a memorandum book belonging to Mr. Oliver, ten or twelve opening moves are recorded, and called by him "Oliver's Gambit." An examination

Oct. 12.—Play Chess with Mr. Vezin; he beats the first two, and I beat the last two. But he declines playing more, and I am persuaded of my superior force to him. Mr. Schulten afterwards requests me to play his gambit a few times, which I do; he beats three or four games, and I beat the last. I tell Mr. Vezin my own opinion is that I can beat Mr. Schulten five to four.

These matches with Mr. Schulten excited a lively interest in the circle of Chess-players, and quite a number of gentlemen were present at the different meetings. It is to be regretted that the score of the moves in these *parties* (taken down by Mr. Oliver himself) cannot be found amongst his papers, although diligent search has been made.

In July, 1842, Mr. Oliver met Dr. Russell at Mr. Isnard's, and played five games with him, giving the Knight, and winning three. In August, a Mr. Goldsmith visited Boston and played with Dr. Greene, and also with Mr. Isnard, the result being in favor of the Bostonians. Mr. Kielchen won three games of Mr. Oliver, receiving the odds of a Rook.

In September Mr. Isnard made a tour to the South, and played Chess with the French Consul-General at New York, and also with Mr. Schulten. Mr. Oliver won a match of twenty-seven games, giving the Knight to Mr. Isnard, the score being—Oliver, 15; Isnard, 12.

In October, Mr. Oliver won a match of five games with Mr. Thompson, giving him the Knight, and Pawn and move alternately. During the latter part of the month he (Mr. O.) visited Philadelphia; while there he won a match of five games of Mr. Vezin, although the latter gentleman beat him a majority of games during his stay. He also played with several other players, giving them odds, and was successful. In December, Mr. Oliver became acquainted with Mr. Hammond and visited him at his rooms in Pearl street, where he also met with Dr. Renton.

In January, 1843, Mr. Oliver played five games with Mr. Hammond, giving him the Queen's Knight, and winning three to Mr. H.'s one, and one drawn. In May, Mr. Eugene Rousseau visited Boston, and the account of his meeting with Mr. Oliver is thus entered in the Journal:

of this opening proves it to be a variation of the Allgaier Gambit at the first player's eighth move in the second game as given in Staunton's Handbook, pp. 306, 307, where Mr. Oliver, instead of playing 8. Kt. to Q 3., gives 8. Kt. takes K. B. P., followed by 9. B. takes Kt (ch.), etc. This is undoubtedly the opening referred to as his gambit; and by Mr. Schulten's Gambit is probably meant the variation introduced by Mr. S into the King's Bishop's Gambit, and given in Staunton's Handbook, p. 321.

MAY 15.—At about nine o'clock, a gentleman called on me and asked me if I was Mr. Oliver; on my replying in the affirmative, he again asked me if I was the Oliver who was an amateur of Chess. I told him I was the person. He said he was Mr. Rousseau, of New Orleans, a player of Chess, and took the liberty of introducing himself. He said he was going out in the Hibernia to-morrow, and invited me to his room. I immediately called on Mr. Eckley and introduced him, and Mr. E. afterwards came to his room. We commenced playing; he had the first move and played the King's Pawn two; I played King's Knight's Pawn, etc. I lost the first game; the second game I had the move and played my gambit with him, which he defended with the Rook instead of the Knight. This was a drawn game. The third game he lost. In the afternoon we played, and he won the first three games; I then played my gambit and beat one easily, and also another. He then beat one more.

MAY 16.—I call on Mr. Rousseau by appointment and play two more games, both of which I win. The first was in his attempting to defend the gambit by moving out the Bishop to attack the Rook's Pawn. The second was the King's Pawn one. He complained of being hurried for time, and said I ought not to be proud of the games. I told him I was not, but was pleased at beating him, because I hoped to see him again on his return from France. He presented me with two numbers of the *Palamède*."

Mr. Oliver died suddenly from disease of the heart, in the following June, leaving a place vacant in the Chess circles of Boston, to be filled by some rising amateur.

Besides the amateurs with whom Mr. Oliver was in the habit of meeting during the five years from 1838 to 1843, there were a number of gentlemen who assembled occasionally at each other's houses or rooms to enjoy themselves at Chess. Amongst this number may be mentioned, Messrs. Russell, Bullard, Hayward, Willard, Dexter, Dr. Adams, and others. In the year 1841, Nathaniel Dearborn published the fourth Chess Book issued in Boston. It was entitled *The Chess-Player*, and consisted of selections from Franklin, Philidor, Kenny, and George Walker.

The first Chess Club in Boston was formed in the year 1845. In October of that year, measures were taken by several gentlemen interested in Chess, to bring the amateurs of the city together. About twenty names having been obtained, a preliminary meeting was held on Monday evening, October 27th, at the United States Hotel. Much interest was manifested in the project, and Dr. Le Baron Russell, Max Isnard, and George Hammond were appointed a Committee to draft a

Constitution for the Club. The second meeting was held at the same place, on the evening of November 3d, at which time the Committee previously appointed reported a Constitution, and it was adopted. Messrs. Lewis Bullard, Max Isnard, and George Hammond were then chosen a Committee to procure and furnish a suitable apartment for the use of the Club, and to notify the gentlemen at such time as the same would be ready for occupancy. These gentlemen leased a room in the building at the corner of Tremont street and Montgomery place, at an annual rent of one hundred and twenty-five dollars, and furnished the same with the appurtenances necessary for a Chess Club. The Chess tables, some six or eight in number, were of pine, with the board painted upon each, and a drawer for the pieces. Several of these tables are still in the possession of members of the old Club, who regard them as mementoes of the *first* Chess association in Boston.

Due notice having been given through the columns of the *Boston Evening Transcript*, the first meeting of the Boston Chess Club was held on Friday evening, November 14th, at No. 1 Montgomery place, sixteen members being present. The action of the Committee was approved, and the following-named gentlemen were elected officers of the Club: President, Dr. Z. B. Adams; Vice-President, Max Isnard; Treasurer, George Hammond; Recording Secretary, Lewis Bullard; Corresponding Secretary, Dr. L. B. Russell.

This Club was restrictive in the admission of members, each applicant for membership being obliged to receive the vote of three-fourths of the number present at a regular meeting. The annual subscription was fixed at ten dollars, and the Constitution provided for a formal dissolution of the Club, at any time when the expenses could not be defrayed by the yearly assessment. Regular monthly meetings were also to be held, though it was subsequently found difficult to obtain a quorum for the transaction of business. The room was open every day from 8 o'clock A.M. until 12 o'clock at night. Smoking was not allowed in the room, and "all playing for money, and all betting upon games, or the playing of any other game than Chess," was strictly prohibited. At an early meeting of the Club, the Executive Committee were "instructed to procure for the use of the Club, *Lewis' Treatise on Chess* and the *London Chess Chronicle*." And it was also voted that the Rules of Chess given in *Lewis' Treatise* be adopted. Stanley's *Chess-Player's Magazine* was afterwards added to the list of books, and the *Illustrated London News* procured. This Club in a short time numbered about forty members, of whom may be mentioned Messrs.

Adams, Isnard, Hammond, Bullard, Russell, J. W. Clark, Geo. P. Hayward, B. Austin, S. Willard, C. Stodder, I. J. Austin, Dr. B. D. Greene, A. D. Parker, A. W. Fuller, J. Schouler, S. Wells, E. Tyler, P. P. F. Degrand, B. Rolker, C. L. Bartlett, C. Thatcher, Dr. H. Richardson, C. G. Kendall, Mr. Dexter, Dr. J. W. Stone, E. J. Weller, and B. A. Smith. Many of these gentlemen are members of the present Boston Chess Club. During the first year of its existence, great interest was manifested in the Club, and the meetings for play were well attended. In 1846, Mr. Charles H. Stanley visited Boston, and played a match with Mr. George Hammond, who was the leading player of the Club, and who holds the same position at the present time. The score of this match, as given in a communication to the *Chess-Player's Chronicle*, was Stanley 5, Hammond 2, drawn 2. Several of the parties were published in that serial, and also in *Stanley's Magazine*. But little can now be remembered respecting other matches played at the Club, with the exception of a match contested between Mr. George Hammond and Mr. Isnard. This match consisted of twenty-five games, to be played, five upon even terms, and five each at the odds of Pawn and move, Pawn and two moves, Knight, and Rook. The score of this match, as given in the *Chess-Player's Magazine*, was Hammond 19, Isnard 6. Mr. Hammond and Dr. B. D. Greene played frequently together, the total number of games being about *two thousand*, principally at the odds of the Knight given by Mr. H. These two gentlemen on one occasion devoted a whole day to Chess, and played *forty-six* games together. Mr. Hammond afterwards played four games with other members of the Club, thus making his score *fifty* games. Dr. Richardson introduced the novelty of four-handed Chess, and also played the same with other amateurs.

At the expiration of the first year, many of the members failed to renew their subscriptions, and during 1847, but very few assembled for play. At the annual meeting in October, 1847, it was found that but eighteen gentlemen were willing to continue, amongst whom were nearly all the original projectors, and the Club languished from that date until July, 1848, when it was formally dissolved, and the property belonging to the Club disposed of by private auction among the eight or ten remaining members. The closing of the Club was deeply regretted by those who were attached to the game, and interested in its extension; and in consequence of its termination, the amateurs of the city were again scattered, and met only occasionally for practice. During the nine ensuing years, but little can be said of the progress of

Chess. A few members of the old Club were in the habit of playing together at the United States Hotel, and other amateurs of the game would sometimes be fortunate enough to meet a rival in private circles. There was not any effort made, however, to bring the Chess-players together again, although the true Chess spirit still lived, and new men were entering the arena.

With the opening of the year 1857, the first number of the *Chess Monthly* was issued. The publication of this serial brought about results even more marvellous than those produced by the "whistle shrill" of Roderick Dhu. Amateurs of Chess started up on all sides, and pressed forward to enter the ranks of the Caïssan army. Early in the year the National Chess Congress was projected. The announcement of this meeting of the leading players to contend for the championship, was the bugle call that aroused the knights of Caïssa, and bade them arm for the contest. Then came the bustle of preparation. There was a brushing up of "openings" and "endings," an overhauling of standard Chess works, a thorough testing of numberless "variations," and much practice at divers "positions." Boston was not idle, and some half-dozen of her players were present at the Congress, where the performances of Messrs. Hammond and Richardson, the latter fresh from contests with Harrwitz at the *Café de la Régence*, won for them a deservedly high position amongst the foremost players of the country, and established a reputation for Bostonian Chess.

Meanwhile, lovers of Chess wondered why there were not any regular meetings for the practice of the game, and appeals to the players, urging them to unite and organize a Club, were made through the columns of the *Evening Transcript* in connection with notices of the new magazine and items of Chess news. In September, by invitation of Mr. E. J. Weller, several gentlemen assembled for play at No. 8 Hayward place. These meetings were continued through October, and on the return of Messrs. Hammond, Richardson, and others from the Congress in New York, the circle was enlarged, and in November numbered *twelve*. The gentlemen who then met, were Messrs. Hammond, Richardson, Rabuske, Broughton, S. Willard, Smalley, Chapman, Weller, Everett, Keyes, and G. H. and C. F. Howard.\*

\* Of the above named gentlemen, Messrs. Everett, Rabuske, Weller and the two Howards, had been in the habit of playing together and with other amateurs, during the early part of the year, at the United States Hotel and at other places.

Animated with a true Chess spirit, Dr. Richardson proposed that these meetings should be made public, and all amateurs invited to join, with the intention of forming a Club. This proposition was heartily concurred in by the other gentlemen, and pursuant to a notice published in the daily newspapers, a meeting was held at No. 8 Hayward place, on Friday evening, December 11th, 1857. About thirty gentlemen were present, being a much more numerous attendance than was anticipated. Dr. Richardson was called upon to preside, and Mr. George W. Smalley served as Secretary. All present were enthusiastic respecting the establishment of a Chess Club; and a statement was made that a room in the house at which the meeting was held, could be obtained three afternoons and evenings of each week, for the moderate rent of one hundred dollars per annum, including lighting and heating. A great obstacle to the formation of all clubs—namely, heavy expenses and a necessarily large assessment—would thus be removed, and although the room was quite unsuitable for the purposes of the Club, it was thought better to make a beginning there, as the Club could, at any time, remove to more commodious quarters, should the accession of members and consequent increase of funds warrant the change. Messrs. Smalley, Broughton, and Everett were chosen a Committee to draft a Constitution and By-Laws, and the meeting adjourned to meet at the same place on the following Friday.

The second meeting was held December 18th, some twenty gentlemen attending. Mr. George W. Smalley, from the Committee appointed at the previous meeting, reported a Constitution and By-Laws that, with some slight modifications, were adopted. The annual assessment was fixed at five dollars; and all betting upon games, or playing for stakes, or the playing of any other game than Chess, were strictly prohibited. No smoking or refreshments were allowed in the room. The laws of the game, as given in *Staunton's Handbook*, were adopted. The Constitution provided for the election of a President, Secretary, Treasurer, and an Executive Committee of four, at the annual meeting of the Club, which was fixed for the second Tuesday in January. As that meeting would not take place for several weeks, and it being necessary that the Club should be properly represented during the interval, Dr. Horace Richardson was chosen President, George W. Smalley, Secretary, and Edwin J. Weller, Treasurer. The regular meetings for play were on Tuesday, Thursday, and Friday of each week, from four to ten o'clock P.M. The tables were usually all occupied, and the interest in the game continued to increase. Many

of the members of the Club of 1846 came forward to join the new organization, and all doubts as to its success were dispelled.

The first annual meeting of the Club took place on Tuesday evening, January 12th, 1858, the business transacted being the election of officers for the current year. The following named gentlemen were chosen:

DR. HORACE RICHARDSON, *President.*

GEORGE W. SMALLEY, *Secretary.*

EDWIN J. WELLER, *Treasurer.*

GEORGE HAMMOND, WILLIAM R. BROUGHTON, DR. JAMES W. STONE and THEODORE RABUSKE, *Executive Committee.*

A tournament was originated at the meeting, the prize to be a photograph of Morphy and Paulsen playing Chess, with a number of prominent players grouped around the table. Sixteen entries were obtained, the players were paired, and the contest commenced soon after. This tourney excited much interest in the Club, and many of the games were afterwards published. Various circumstances occurred to delay its conclusion and the final round has not been commenced, though a year has elapsed. In February a match of twenty-five games was contested between Messrs. George Hammond and Preston Ware, Jr., Mr. Hammond giving the odds of Rook five games, Knight five games, Pawn and two moves five games, Pawn and move five games, and five to be played upon equal terms. The result was as follows:

	Mr. Hammond.	Mr. Ware.	Drawn.
Odds of Rook . . . . .	0	5	1
" " Knight . . . . .	3	2	
" " Pawn and two moves	4	1	
" " Pawn and move .	3	2	
Even games . . . . .	3	2	
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
	13	12	1

Mr. Hammond contested four games against Messrs. J. W. and H. N. Stone, in consultation, winning two, drawing one, and losing one. A number of games were also played between Mr. H. and Messrs. Richardson and Rabuske, consulting. Other matches occurred from time to time between the prominent players, the details of which have not been preserved.

In April the subject of establishing a Chess column in some one of

the local weekly newspapers was broached and was received with great favor.\* Arrangements were accordingly made with Mr. W. W. Clapp, Jr., proprietor of the *Saturday Evening Gazette*, and on the 1st of May, 1858, a department, devoted to Chess, was commenced in that paper by Messrs. J. Chapman and W. H. Kent, with the valuable assistance and cōoperation of the leading players of the Club. The column in the *Gazette* was established for the purpose of publishing games played by members of the Boston Chess Club, and of placing before its readers the best *parties* of the Chess masters of all countries, together with the current items of Chess news. In carrying out this design the conductors have endeavored and still do endeavor to render the column interesting and instructive to amateurs of the game, and have ever sought to advance the best interests of Chess. Simultaneous with the publication of the Chess column in the *Gazette*, a Chess department was commenced in the *American Union*, conducted by Mr. J. A. Potter, of Salem, Mass. This latter was continued until the beginning of the present year (1859), when its publication was suspended.

In May Mr. W. R. Broughton, a member of the Executive Committee of the club, resigned his position on that committee, and Mr. W. H. Kent was chosen to fill the vacancy thus occasioned. Additions to the list of members were made from time to time until the number reached thirty-six. With the increase of members, the unsuitableness of the apartment occupied by the Club became more and more apparent, and it was evident that a removal to more commodious quarters would be absolutely necessary in order to still further enlarge the Club. As the room was to be closed during the months of July and August no decisive action was had, although it was the generally expressed desire of the members that some change should be made, and many amateurs intimated their intention of joining the Club as soon as a suitable room should be obtained.

A meeting of the Executive Committee was held August 26, 1858, at which it was decided to remove to some apartment better adapted for the purposes of the Club, and Messrs. Smalley and Kent were appointed a sub-committee to obtain and furnish a suitable place. A special meeting of the Club was subsequently held, at which the action of the Executive Committee was approved and the sub-committee was

\* A Chess-column had previously been established in the *Lynn News*, under the supervision of Messrs. Holden and Parsons, to which several members of the Boston Chess Club had contributed games and problems.

requested to proceed at once in the discharge of its duties. A room in the building No. 289 Washington street was rented by the committee, and after being properly fitted and furnished, it was thrown open to the members and their friends on Saturday evening, September 18, 1858. The *Evening Transcript* of a subsequent date contained the subjoined account of the proceedings and description of the room:

"After an interchange of greetings between the members, who expressed themselves as exceedingly pleased with the appearance of the new room, the President of the Club, in a few appropriate remarks, welcomed the guests and congratulated the members upon now having a room worthy of the Club and of the noble game.

"A brief statement was then made by one of the committee who had in charge the furnishing of the apartment, from which it appeared that the Club was in a very flourishing condition. The new room was furnished by the voluntary subscriptions of the members, who have responded cheerfully and liberally to the call for funds, and the regular fee for membership will, therefore, cover all incidental expenses. After these remarks, the various tables were occupied for play, while groups of interested spectators watched the progress of the games with much interest.

"The present apartment is spacious and well lighted, and is furnished in a neat and substantial style. The walls are papered in oak panels, and the furniture is in oak throughout. The Chess tables were made to order, with Chess boards of the regular Club size upon them, the black squares being stained and forming a fine contrast to the oak; each table has two drawers lined with baize for the reception of the pieces. The Chess-men are neatly turned from ebony and boxwood, and are of the real Staunton pattern. The arm chairs are of oak also, of exceedingly light and graceful style, the back and arms being of one piece of wood bent into proper shape, thus giving strength and durability to the chair. The floor is covered with a carpet of tasteful design, in green and wood colors, harmonizing with the surroundings. Two handsome chandeliers add light and ornament to the room."

At a meeting of the Executive Committee, held prior to the opening of the new room, Mr. George Hammond resigned his membership of said committee, and Mr. Preston Ware, Jr., was chosen in his place. A meeting of the Club occurred on the 20th of September, when it was voted that the room be kept open for play every day and evening during the week. The opportune removal imparted new life and vigor to the Club and large accessions were made to its members, the number at the time of closing the old room being speedily doubled and in less than six months nearly trebled. Several tournaments were arranged

and a number of matches were played. The nucleus of a library was formed by donations of the standard Chess works from various members, and measures were taken to increase the number of volumes.

The second annual meeting of the Club was held on the evening of January 11th, 1859. After remarks by the President, congratulatory upon the success of the Club thus far, and suggestive of the policy to be pursued, followed by the reading of the Report of the Treasurer, exhibiting a handsome surplus in the treasury, the election of officers took place, and the following named gentlemen were chosen:

DR. HORACE RICHARDSON, *President.*

GEORGE W. SMALLEY, *Secretary.*

PRESTON WARE, Jr., *Treasurer.*

DR. JAMES W. STONE, WILLIAM H. KENT, THEODORE RABUSKE,  
LEISTER M. CLARK, *Executive Committee.*

The Boston Chess Club is, numerically, one of the largest organizations of its kind in the United States, and numbers amongst its members players of marked ability and genius, and problemists whose names are familiar to the Chess circles of both hemispheres. The future prospects of the Club are bright and auspicious, as there is an *esprit de corps* among the members, that will not be deterred by obstacles nor be suffered to lie dormant under the influence of a mistaken conservatism. There is the *materiel* in the Club to make it a "living, working association," and there is not only a disposition but a determination so to do.

The foregoing sketch of Chess in Boston, particularly the portion prior to the account of the Chess Club of 1857, has been prepared from such memoranda and information as could be gleaned from those amateurs of Chess who participated actively in the doings therein recorded, and it is offered to the readers of this volume without any pretensions whatever, on the part of the writer.

---

#### VI.—BENJAMIN LYNDE OLIVER.

Benjamin Lynde Oliver was born at Marblehead, Mass., September 14th, 1788. He was the son of Rev. Thomas Fitch Oliver, who was at that time Rector of the Episcopal Church at Marblehead, whither he had removed from Providence, R. I., at which latter place he was first settled

as minister. His mother was a daughter of William Pynchon, a distinguished lawyer of Salem, Mass., and an immediate descendant of the family of that name who were among the original settlers of the colony.

The subject of this sketch, was a great-grandson of Andrew Oliver, Lieutenant-Governor of the Province of Massachusetts (1770-74), and a grandson of Andrew Oliver, a gentleman of considerable scientific attainments and a scholar and writer of repute, who was also a judge of the Court of Common Pleas for Essex County, which office he held from the year 1761 to the date of the American Revolution. Peter Oliver, for a long time Judge, and during several years Chief-Justice of the Superior Court of the Province of Massachusetts, who will be remembered as one of the refugees, was a brother of the Lieutenant-Governor, and consequently great-uncle to Benjamin Lynde Oliver.

For four generations back, commencing with the present, the family may be regarded as Chess-players, and it is believed that the Lieutenant-Governor was also familiar with the game, though upon this point nothing positive can be ascertained. Doctor Benjamin Lynde Oliver, of Salem, an uncle of the Mr. Oliver, under immediate notice, was a Chess-player of extensive reputation, and it is not unlikely that the nephew received the benefit of his instruction. Other members of the family have been interested in the game and have played more or less, but these two, the uncle and nephew, acquired the most celebrity; indeed the nephew was, at the time of his decease, one of the strongest players in the United States and the leading player in New England, which position he had also held for many years previous.

While his son was quite young, the Rev. Mr. Oliver moved from Marblehead to Garrison Forest, near Baltimore, Md., to assume the rectorship of the church at that place. He died there in the year 1797, his son being then nine years old. After his decease the family returned to Salem, Mass., where they subsequently resided. The following incident, related of young Benjamin Lynde and occurring at that time, furnishes unmistakable evidence that he had already become quite a proficient in Chess.

His grandfather, Judge Andrew Oliver, gave a dinner party to a number of friends, and after the cloth had been removed, several of the company wishing to witness a game at Chess, the host sent for his grandson to play with him. The boy came, delighted at the opportunity, and after a severe contest, the youth of ten years succeeded in conquering the grandsire of nearly seventy. The gratification experienced by the boy upon this occasion can easily be imagined, and it may also be sup-

posed that the grandfather bore his defeat as a gentleman Chess-player should.

Of the boyhood and youth of Mr. Oliver, but little can now be learned. He was always reserved and retiring in his manners, and seldom, if ever, mingled with the other boys in their games, preferring to amuse himself. He was, however, during the whole of his life, fond of athletic sports and exercises, and is said to have possessed great muscular strength. Through the influence of the late Mr. Chief-Justice Story, who was a connexion of the family, by marriage, he commenced the study of law in the office of Judge Putnam at Salem, Mass., and after the usual course of preparation, began its practice at that place in the year 1810.

He brought to his profession a keen power of analysis, a mathematical regularity and a comprehensive knowledge of the intricacies and subtleties of the law, that would have won for him a high position at the bar, had not his peculiarity of character and his retiring disposition kept him comparatively aloof from the world. Several of his arguments have been reported at length in the Massachusetts Law-Reports, and afford ample evidence of the possession of talents of a high order.

In addition to his efforts at the bar, Mr. Oliver was the author of a number of miscellaneous works of considerable note. In 1818 he published "Hints for an Essay on the Pursuit of Happiness. (Designed for common use.)" He subsequently edited "The Law Summary" and "Story's Pleadings," and published a valuable work upon "Conveyancing," of which latter several editions have been printed. In 1832 he issued "The Rights of an American Citizen, with a Commentary on State Rights, and on the Constitution and Policy of the United States." A copy of this work was forwarded to M. Thiers, then Minister of Foreign Affairs in France, and the author received a letter from that distinguished statesman, in which the production is highly complimented. Although Mr. Oliver did not take any active part in politics, still he wrote many able political pamphlets that were published anonymously, and were received with marked consideration by the public. He also edited the *Salem Observer* during the first year of its existence (1823), and was afterwards a contributor to its columns. With the theory of music he was quite familiar; was possessed of a refined musical taste, and composed many pieces. One or two musical works, comprising his own compositions, principally songs, have been published.

Mr. Oliver was married at Salem, Mass., in the year 1827, and moved to Boston in 1830, residing first in Acorn street and subsequently in

Eliot street. He continued the practice of the law till his decease, devoting himself exclusively to office business. His office was in State street, and in the immediate vicinity were the offices of Messrs. Dexter, Fuller, Paine, and other Chess-players, with whom he frequently enjoyed a game at Chess. During the month of September, 1841, Mr. J. W. Schulten, who still enjoys a wide reputation as a Chess-player, visited Boston, by invitation of Max Isnard, French Consul at that place, for the purpose of contesting a match at Chess with Mr. Oliver. This match was won by Mr. Oliver. The following month Mr. Schulten returned to Boston, accompanied by Mr. Vezin of Philadelphia, one of the foremost Chess men of the time, to play another match with Mr. Oliver. This contest was decided in favor of Mr. Schulten. Mr. Vezin and Mr. Oliver also contested four games, each winning two. In the autumn of 1842 Mr. Oliver visited Philadelphia and met the players of that city at the Athenæum. He played a number of games with Mr. Vezin, the final result being in favor of Mr. Vezin, though Mr. Oliver won a match of five games against this gentleman. He won a majority of games from other players at the Athenæum to whom he gave odds. In May, 1843, Mr. Eugene Rousseau, of New Orleans, came to Boston to take the steamer for Europe and called upon Mr. Oliver. Several parties were contested between them with a slight advantage in favor of Mr. Oliver.

During his residence in Boston he played frequently with the leading amateurs, Messrs. Dexter, Picquet, Greene, Fuller, Paine, Isnard, Eckley, Ingraham, Hammond, Russell, and others. With Mr. Dexter he played upon even terms; to Mr. Picquet he gave the odds of Pawn and two moves, and to the others the Queen's Knight. On the occasions of Maelzel's visits to Boston with the Automaton Chess-player, he met Schlumberger, who played the automaton, quite often in private, and they participated in a large number of games. Mr. Oliver did not play with the Automaton in public. Schlumberger pronounced Mr. Oliver one of the five best players in the United States.

During the later years of his life Mr. Oliver resided at Malden, a few miles from Boston, walking to and from the city regularly. He was troubled for a number of years with disease of the heart, and died from that cause, Sunday morning, June 18, 1843, at the age of fifty-five years. The day previous to his decease he had attended to the business of his office, walking into the city as was his custom, and during the evening appeared in his usual health. It is a somewhat singular coincidence that both uncle and nephew should have died from the same

disease, Dr. Benjamin Lynde Oliver, previously mentioned as a Chess-player of distinction, having deceased in the year 1835, also from heart complaint.

Mr. Oliver was indefatigably industrious and a man of extensive and varied reading and of great learning. He is spoken of as affable and courteous in his manners, though of a retiring disposition, and all who enjoyed his acquaintance, remember him as an agreeable companion, an accomplished gentleman, and a large-hearted, upright man. As a Chess-player he was cool and self-possessed; rarely, if ever, committed an oversight, and could never be found inattentive. He always placed a proper value upon his game, and played to win. In analysis he was very thorough, and his combinations, though lacking the brilliancy of other amateurs, were sound and instructive. His careful attention to the details of the game enabled him to take advantage of any error of his antagonists, and made him a formidable opponent even to the best players. He was exceedingly fond of the game, and gave much of his time and attention to its study. In his Journal he writes at various times, "I am resolved to play no more Chess for eight or nine months," or "I am determined to trouble myself about Chess no more with any one who cannot beat Mr. Picquet;"—but the temptation to resume proves too strong, and the entries of the following week allude to his playing another match with Mr. Picquet or giving the Knight to Dr. Greene, or Mr. Fuller, or some other amateur. Mr. Oliver's presence in Boston, and example as a player, together with his well-earned reputation, which was regarded with pride by his contemporaries, undoubtedly did much to foster and encourage the cultivation of Chess, and the devotees of the game to-day should cherish and honor his memory as the leading Chess-player of New England in former years.

---

## VII.—LÖWENTHAL'S VISIT TO AMERICA.

It is not my purpose, in this retrospect of my visit to the United States, to touch on the impression I received of the political and commercial greatness of the powerful republic of the West. Writing with a definite object, I confine myself as much as possible to my Chess experience of America; but I may say, that I never saw a country which gave me such an idea of growing power and importance, nor one so well fitted to become the home of the exile. The cordial man-

ners of the people, their open-handed hospitality, and free institutions, all combine to make the wanderer feel himself at home; while the spreading commerce and vast undeveloped resources of the country, open up to him a profitable field of labor, and promise, in return for his industry, an honorable independence. In the States I have met with men of many nations, and of all professions and trades, but I scarcely recollect one instance in which the same feeling was not expressed.

I arrived in New York from Hamburgh, on the 29th Dec., 1849. I will not dwell on the events which forced me to fly my own country, Hungary. They are known to all. Their interest belongs to the past, their results to the future; and a Chess record is not the place in which to touch upon them. It is enough to say that I landed a refugee, driven from home, separated from family, depressed in mind, physically ill, and with very slender means at my command. My intention was to go to the West and settle down upon the land. I took lodgings at a hotel near Broadway, and afterwards removed to a boarding-house in Chambers street; and for about a month occupied myself with seeing the city and its institutions, and gaining such information as my ignorance of the language enabled me to collect.

During this time I was waiting for means to carry out my original intentions, but they never came; and as my limited funds melted away, my position became more and more difficult.

Up to this time I had thought but little about Chess. The game had been to me, in my own land, an amusement which absorbed and occupied the time I could spare from business. With my lamented friend, Szén, once my Chess-master and afterwards my fellow-player, I had spent many delightful hours over the board; and in my tours, I had met and contended with most of the great German players; but of Chess as an occupation I had never thought.

One day, oppressed by the feeling of loneliness which comes over a stranger in a crowded city, and perplexed at the dark prospects before me, I wandered into a reading-room and took up the *New York Albion*. The first thing which caught my eye was a diagram with a position upon it. If a benevolent magician had waved his hand over me, the change could not have been greater. In a moment my old love for Chess revived, with a vividness I had never before experienced. It seemed as if it had grown into a passion after, for a few weeks, lying latent. The sense of loneliness vanished. I could find Chess-players, and a common love for Chess was, I knew, a sort of freemasonry. I could not leave the room before I had solved the problem. All night

I fought in dreams many old battles over again, and anticipated combats yet to come. The next morning I called on the editor of the *Albion*, who received me very kindly, and gave me his card as an introduction to Mr. Stanley of the British Consulate—a gentleman with whose name I was already familiar. Mr. Stanley gave me a most hospitable reception. I spent that evening at his house, and played with him; the result being, I think, even games. In Mr. Stanley's style of play, I found very much to admire, particularly the originality and invention displayed by him in the openings. This was especially remarkable in the Knight's Game, in which he introduced the method, since approved by the best Chess authorities, of bringing both the Knights over to the King's side, thus giving additional safety to the King, and preparing a strong attack. I cannot allow the opportunity to pass, without expressing the deep obligations Mr. Stanley placed me under by his unvarying kindness, and the constant exertions he made to advance my interests.

It was about this time that Mr. Stanley left for Washington, to play his match with Mr. Turner; and when he returned victorious, he introduced me to the leading members of the New York Chess Circle, who were in the habit of meeting at the Carlton House, Broadway. There I met Mr. Thompson, whose frequent visits to Europe had caused him to be well known in European Chess circles, and in several encounters with him I had much the best of the play. I also made the acquaintance of Mr. Perrin, the present Honorary Secretary of the New York Chess Club, and Mr. Evert, to both of whom I successfully gave odds.

My first formal match was with Mr. Turner. It was arranged for me by the kind offices of Mr. Stanley and Mr. Thompson, and was played at New York. In this and another match, which immediately followed, I was the conqueror; but I regret to say that I have not preserved any of the games. Mr. Turner struck me as a player of great natural talent and strong imagination, but somewhat too liable to be carried away by a brilliant combination or a dashing coup.

In Mr. Turner I found a generous friend. He kindly invited me to accompany him to his residence near Lexington (Kentucky); my old thought of turning farmer reviving, I accepted the invitation. We left on the 3d of March, 1850. Our stay in Philadelphia was too short to suffer me to meet any of the players of the city, who, I had heard, held a high rank among American amateurs. From Philadelphia we went by rail *via* Baltimore and Cumberland, and from thence by

steamers to Wheeling and Pittsburg, and reached Lexington by stage coach on the 9th of March.

I had heard much of the powers of Mr. Dudley, and looked forward with great pleasure to meeting him. On the 10th, I made his personal acquaintance at Charles's Hotel, and we at once sat down to the game, and did not cease playing till the time arrived for me to go to Mr. Turner's farm, distant about six or seven miles. I greatly admired Mr. Dudley's style of play, but, on this occasion, could hardly form an estimate of his strength. We were, in these first encounters, reconnoitring each other. I saw, however, that I had found a very able antagonist; and subsequent experience impressed me with the conviction that Mr. Dudley was the best American player I ever met. Looking back now, I do not see any reason to alter the estimate I then formed.

At Mr. Turner's plantation I was entertained with the most open-hearted hospitality, and I shall never forget the kindness of my host and the efforts he made to serve me.

On the 11th of March, I was introduced to the leading Lexington players at the Club, and I remember particularly Mr. Steward and Mr. Hunter, as among the most enthusiastic devotees of Chess.

On the 12th of March, I commenced a third match with Mr. Turner, and at that sitting won every game.

On the 14th, I was introduced to Mr. Wikle, the editor of the Lexington newspaper, who emulated my other friends in kindness, and inserted in his journal a very handsome notice of my arrival. I also made the acquaintance of Mr. Lutz, a German by birth, but for many years resident at Lexington.

During my stay with Mr. Turner, Chess, of course, filled up the hours that gentleman could spare from his duties. The result of our play then was, that out of seven matches, some of the first five, others of the first three games, I won six and lost one by the odd game.

Mr. Dudley paid us a visit, and a match was arranged for me with him, by Mr. Turner. The winner of the first eleven games was to be the victor. The first game—a well contested one—was won by Mr. Dudley, and if I had had sufficient English at my command, I should have said that such a game was worth losing. The second game, through a blunder on my part, also went to the score of my opponent. Mr. Turner seemed somewhat startled at the turn affairs were taking, while I felt uneasy. In all the important matches I have played, I have lost the first two games. In consequence of my habit of mind, I take some time to become familiarized with my position, and able to

apply myself thoroughly to what is before me; and this is so, whether my opponent happens to be equal or inferior to me. At the third game, I settled down to my work, and won that and the following five, and ultimately the match only by a majority of three games. This close play was, I think, owing to Mr. Dudley often playing the Ruy Lopez Opening in the Knight's Game. That attack was not then sufficiently appreciated in Europe, and I was but little acquainted with the defence. I took the line of play given in the German Handbuch, and lost nearly every game. Mr. Dudley played this opening with great skill and judgment. Since that time, I have had the opportunity of investigating this attack, and have prepared a defence which, if not completely satisfactory, seems to me far preferable to the old method.

I soon had my revenge—for in another match which followed immediately I won eleven games, Mr. Dudley scoring only three. In this match I remember I adopted in the defence to the Ruy Lopez 3. P. to K. B. 4. with success, and though that move has not secured the approbation of the leading European players it is my individual opinion that it may as well be played as any other, and that, at all events, it gives the second player an open game.

After some days pleasantly spent with Mr. Steward, Mr. Lutz, and Mr. Turner, Sen., a third match with Mr. Dudley was arranged. The previous matches had been played in private, but this took place in compliance with the wish of the Lexington players, and was played in public. It excited considerable interest. The play commenced on the 29th of March, and terminated on the 4th of April the score at the close being Mr. Dudley 5, myself 11, drawn 3. These games are the best I remember playing in America, and would be well worth recording; but I have not a note of one of them. Mr. Dudley bore his defeat well, and in the most handsome manner, declared himself fairly beaten.

On the 10th of April I left Lexington for Frankfort on my way to Cincinnati, carrying with me many pleasant reminiscences, and furnished with letters of introduction to Mr. Temple, the Treasurer of the State of Kentucky. Mr. Temple introduced me to Gen. Pain and to Governor Crittenden, in whom I had the satisfaction of becoming acquainted with one of the leading statesmen of America. I stayed at the Governor's house to tea and supper amid a large party. Mr. Brown, who was, I was told, considered the best player in Frankfort, was present. I won two games of Mr. Brown, to whom I gave odds, and then requested the honor of a game with the Governor. Here my good fortune deserted me, Mr. Crittenden proved victorious, and I had to con-

sole myself with the thought that I had been beaten in even play by one of the shrewdest brains in the States.

On the 12th of April I went to Louisville by steamboat. Here I was introduced to the Club by Dr. Raphael, and played several games. In the evening I was entertained by the gentlemen of the club at a supper which was presided over by General Preston.

On the 16th of April I reached Cincinnati, and on presenting my letters of introduction met with a most cordial reception. My warmest thanks are due to Dr. Schmidt, the editor of the *German Republican*, himself a player of no small power, who introduced me to the leading amateurs, and did all he could to help me. Dr. Schmidt was fairly entitled to the first place among the Cincinnati players, and next to him were Mr. Phineas Moses and Mr. Smith. Among the most enthusiastic lovers of the game I may mention Messrs. E. Brookes, Hopel, Eggers, Cooper, Baker, Salomons, and Paice. These gentlemen met at each other's houses, and I played with them giving odds. A match was soon afterward arranged for me with the leading players consulting together. The first game was played on the first of May at the house of Mr. Moore, and others at the houses of Messrs. Brookes and Smith. The gentlemen consulting were Messrs. Schmidt, Smith, Moses, Brookes, and Moore. I won the first three games and the match. I was also engaged in private matches with Mr. Smith and Mr. Cooper. Mr. Smith had great Chess talent, and a little study and perseverance would have placed him among the best amateur players.

At Mr. Hopel's I played and won a blindfold game, and on another occasion two games simultaneously without sight of the board, and won them both. My antagonists were Messrs. Cooper and Salomons.

On the 10th of May I left Cincinnati, and after spending two days at Louisville reached New Orleans on the 18th. On the 22d I delivered my letter of introduction to Mr. Rousseau, and was by him introduced to Mr. E. Morphy and several other amateurs. Matches were arranged between Mr. Rousseau and Mr. E. Morphy and me. On the 26th I played with Mr. Rousseau (not match games), and won 5 games, all we played.

On the 27th I met Paul Morphy, then a youth, and played with him. I do not remember whether we played in all two or three games; one was drawn, the other or others I lost. The young player appeared to me to possess Chess genius of a very high order. He showed great quickness of perception, and evinced brilliant strategical powers. When I passed through New York on my way to the great

international tournament in London, I mentioned him to Mr. Stanley, and predicted for him a brilliant future.

The intense heat of New Orleans, which from the first had enfeebled me both physically and mentally, produced severe illness and incapacitated me from playing. It was not until the 15th of June that I was able to undergo the fatigue of travelling, and on that day I left for Cincinnati, where I arrived on the 22d, and remained during the rest of my residence in the United States.

My old friends received me with open arms, and through their kind assistance I was enabled to establish a Cigar Divan in connexion with the Chess Club. I commenced under the most favorable auspices. In a short time more than 40 members had joined the club, and there was a prospect that that number would be greatly increased. Mr. E. Brookes was the President, and Dr. Schmidt the Secretary, and to those gentlemen and the other Chess-players of Cincinnati I owe a debt of kindness I may never be able to pay but shall never forget.

Early in 1851 I was tempted to leave Cincinnati to take part in the International Tournament about to be held in London. It was my intention to return to my Cincinnati friends, by whose help I was enabled to take the journey; why I did not do so involves an explanation too long delayed, and which I may perhaps now be permitted to make.

I arrived in London very ill; an old wound in my leg had broken out afresh, and the long and rapid journey had worn me out. My ill success in the Tournament is on record. It was nothing more than might have been expected. In my weak state everything took a morbid hue. I estimated my defeat too highly; I thought a beaten man would be looked coldly on, and I felt I could not go back to those friends at Cincinnati whom I had left with such high hopes and glowing anticipations. Improved health has brought clearer views and the consciousness that I wronged those to whom I owe so deep a debt of gratitude.

In justice to myself I must say that my play in America was much below my usual strength. The circumstances under which I arrived there, the difficulties of my situation, the dark uncertainty of my future, my position as a stranger in a new country, of the language of which I was ignorant, and my weakened constitution, all contributed to render me incapable of efforts I could have made at previous periods.

My general impression of Chess in America was that there was great latent ability in the players, but a deficiency of theoretical knowledge,

and a want of a high standard of play. I did not meet throughout the States the equals of those great players to be found in every European country; but the people had in them at once the logical calculating power of Northern races, and the quick perceptions and warm impulses of the South, and required only opportunity and practice to take a high place in the world of Chess. One attribute of American play struck me forcibly, quickness. Here in Europe a match game occupies a whole day; but in America I have played three or four at the same sitting.

J. L.

---

### VIII.—CHESS IN NEW YORK.

Chess, like all the best things of this world—like wisdom and wealth, like books and beauty, like the pies of Strasbourg and the wines of Cyprus—is an enjoyment confined to a comparatively small portion of the human race. For however humiliating the contemplation of such a state of things must be to Caïssa herself, and however shocking it may seem to the minds of her zealous and ardent devotees, yet it is a settled fact that less than one half of the tongues spoken between the rising and the setting of the sun, have a word to express the name of the game; and what is even more mournful to reflect upon, not a thousandth part of the earth's inhabitants ever seek to drown care or heighten enjoyment by means of the checkered board. I am not aware that any statistics have been collected from the other planets, but it is reasonable to suppose that the proportion of players in Uranus is much greater than with us, as it is impossible to imagine in what way the people of that distant orb can manage to pass away their immensely long years unless by the aid of Chess. But it is a source of gratification to every enthusiastic admirer of our sport that the past has proved that the knowledge of the game extends as enlightenment increases, and we may derive abundant consolation from the prospect that when all the heathen have been converted, and all the ignoramuses have been transformed into sages; when every boor has become a Bacon, and every farmer a Faraday; when mankind universally abhor war for the vices it engenders, and love peace for the virtues it generates—then a chess-board will be found upon every table, and a set of men in every drawer. In a new country a high state of civilization, and consequently a high state of Chess cultivation, is only reached after a long period of warfare with the savage elements of nature.

New York forms no exception to this general rule. The unhappy red men that hunted, smoked, danced, and fought upon the untilled soil that has since borne such a goodly crop of parks and streets, lived and died (I shudder while I write it) in absolute ignorance of the Asiatic amusement. Nor is there a single word in any early chronicle which would lead us to believe that Hendrik Hudson or the burly burghers, who were led by his discovery to found a New Amsterdam in the wild and unknown West, were in any degree more blest in this respect than the dusky sons of the forest who preceded them. Long after the Indians had vanished, long after Holland's sway had ceased, we find the first traces of Chess upon the river-girt island of Manhattan. Lewis Rou, of whom a brief account has been given in a preceding page,\* was, as far as is known, the earliest player in New York,

\* The following kind communication from the Librarian of the New York Historical Society (to whom I am also indebted for other favors of a similar nature) contains some additional information concerning the character of Rou and his fondness for Chess :

"MY DEAR FISKE:

"Lieutenant-Governor *Colden*, in one of his criticisms on *Smith's History of New York*, takes up the subject of the case between Mr. Rou and the French congregation, and after setting forth some of the points in dispute, adds the following: 'But before I leave this subject I cannot with justice to Mr. Rou avoid taking notice of the character Mr. *Smith* gives him. Mr. Rou, he says, was a man of learning, but proud, pleasurable, and passionate: he sets Mr. Moulinars in contrast, viz. that he was of pacific spirit, dull parts, and unblamable life and conversation. Were it not for the contrast it would be difficult to say what Mr. *Smith* means by a pleasurable man, being a phrase seldom or never used in the English language; but as it is set in contrast here with unblamable life and conversation, the reader may naturally think that it means a man of pleasure. I knew Mr. Rou, and I never heard him reproached with any immorality. He was bookish, and as such men frequently are, peevish, and had nothing of the courtly, polite Frenchman. *The game of Chess was the only amusement he took, and perhaps was too fond of it. It was said that he wrote a treatise on that game.'*"

"Very truly yours,

"GEO. H. MOORE.

"LIBRARY OF THE HISTORICAL SOCIETY, March 31, 1859."

The treatise referred to in the last sentence is undoubtedly his *Critical Remarks*, of which an account has already been given.

and his Chess life, if it could be well and worthily written out, would doubtless form an important and pleasant chapter in the history of the sport. He was passionately fond of Chess, and if he had not found players in his new home, would certainly have created them. But from the tone of a passage in his book we are led to infer that he did meet with opponents here, though, with the vanity of a superior practitioner, he hints that they were "bunglers." After his death, however, during the whole of the latter half of the eighteenth century the Chess annals of New York are a dreary blank. The game may have been played to some extent during the years of the British occupancy, for military men have always been more or less addicted to the practice of this mock warfare; and it is possible that among the officers of the English army there were men, who, a quarter of a century before, had witnessed the exploits of Philidor in the camp of the Duke of Cumberland in the Low Countries, or had participated in the combats of that circle of Chess lovers which grew up around the great Frenchman in the capital of Great Britain. But we may be very sure that none of the rebels found leisure for the amusement in those troublous and trying times. They were too earnestly engaged in contending against the power and obstinacy of a real, live King, to feel any inclination to puzzle their harassed brains with the movements of the monarchs of the chess-board. But at last after a memorable and bloody struggle, the white forces of freedom checkmated the black troops of tyranny, and the cessation of physical warfare afforded an opportunity for the practice of the milder delights of mental strife.

In the issue of the *Morning Chronicle* newspaper for the 8th of November, 1802, is to be found the following short advertisement:

#### NEW YORK CHESS-CLUB.

\* \* \* Members are requested to take notice, that the winter meetings of this Club will commence on Tuesday evening next, the 9th inst., at 7 o'clock, at their room in the City Hotel.

From the wording of this brief announcement we may very fairly conclude that the winter of 1802 was not the first season of the "meetings" of the Club. But it affords us no *data* for calculating how many winters had elapsed since its organization. The notice was repeated the following day, but in the same meagre and tantalizing phraseology. There is good reason to believe that from that day to

this New York has not been, for an entire year, without some place where the admirers of Chess might assemble for intercourse and play. And I am convinced that researches more thorough than I have been able to make would bring to light many interesting details concerning New York Chess in the first two decades of the century. I am sanguine enough to think that the names, and perhaps some of the games of the early Philidors and Morphys of Manhattan, might be recovered by a patient and assiduous investigator. Were we able, at once, to rend the curtain which now divides this visible present from that invisible past, I imagine that we should see, on the "Tuesday" or other evenings of every winter, a little crowd of ambitious amateurs gathered together "at their room in the City Hotel," or elsewhere, fighting battles, solving problems, or analysing openings. We should probably hear hotly debated the question whether the slow and cautious \_\_\_\_\_ would win of the rapid and brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ in a long match; whether this gambit could be safely offered or that one safely accepted; or whether a certain dubious position could be drawn by Black, or must necessarily be won by White. Among the circle were, doubtless, some one, or two, or three who were looked up to by the remaining members with the same feelings of admiration and awe with which soldiers are accustomed to regard their boldest and bravest generals. The younger ones very likely fondly believed that these leaders of the Club could successfully compete against the strongest amateurs of the Old World, and it may have happened that some patriotic tyro, astonished at the ease with which the magnates gave him a Knight or a Rook, sighed to think that Philidor had not lived to visit America, and engaged in a contest with some of the Chess stars of the commercial metropolis of America.

A fortunate testimony, going far to prove the continued existence and activity of the Club through the early part of the century, is casually afforded by a reprint of the *Elements of Chess*, by Lewis, which appeared in New York, "revised and corrected by an American Amateur," in the year 1827. The last half-dozen pages of the volume are devoted to a code of "Revised Laws." In his introduction to these laws the editor remarks: "To avoid the undue severity of the old laws on the one hand, and a too relaxed practice on the other, the New York Chess Club, has *from time to time* so altered and amended the laws, as appeared best adapted to the genius of a game, played, or supposed to be played, by gentlemen alone." And again: "It has been thought advisable to make a collection of those laws, as entered

on the books of the Club ; only altering the phraseology where it becomes necessary, from the different form in which they are here presented. In some cases where the Club has not thought proper heretofore to enter a change on their minutes, the practice of their best players has been consulted, and the following laws framed accordingly ; but in no case has the editor introduced any alteration without the advice of those whose high standing as players renders them competent judges of its propriety." In a foot-note to the third article of the code we are told that "the first part of this rule, though long since introduced into practice, was for the first time formally entered on the books of the Chess-Club as one of their laws in 1823." These extracts are of importance and interest, not only as demonstrative of the vitality and position of the Club, but as evidence of the attention which was paid, even in those early days, to the matter of Chess legislation by the foremost amateurs of the city. Discussion on subjects of this nature generally follows, and can never precede, the attainment of a high proficiency in the practice of the game.

In the year 1826, that surprising piece of mechanism and mystery, the Automaton Chess-Player of Kempel, was brought, by its new possessor, Maelzel, to this country. Half a century before, it had first excited the wonder of Europe. Kings had been amused, men of science had been puzzled, and Chess-players had been startled by its apparently inexplicable powers. Had a new Solyman the Great appeared upon the outskirts of Christendom, and marched a conqueror from the shores of the Danube to the banks of the Seine, he could hardly have created more excitement than did this Chess-playing Turk among the intelligent classes of the Old World. Philosophers, who had passed their lives in investigating the secrets of nature, confounded by this visible proof of the fallacy of those theories which were supposed to explain the laws of matter, brought forward the strangest and most diverse hypotheses to account for the miraculous faculties which this machine seemed to possess. Nor was its success much less brilliant during its second exhibition by Maelzel, in an age of much greater intelligence and acuteness ; and the most enlightened of trans-Atlantic capitals gazed with feelings of partial awe and entire amazement upon a carved image, which appeared to contain within its wooden head the brain of a thinking, calculating man. Having wearied the curiosity of Europe, Maelzel brought his Automaton to America. It was visited, admired, and discussed by the inhabitants of the Western Republic very much as it had been by the people of the European

monarchies. Its first exhibitions were given in New York, and its career there, as well as in the other parts of the Union, is described in a succeeding portion of this volume with an accuracy and pleasantness which forbid my attempting to narrate it here. It is sufficient for me to say, that it was shown several times in the course of the first few years after its arrival to the curious of Manhattan, and undoubtedly did much there, as elsewhere, to revive the taste for Chess, and to bring the game into public notice. The journals of the day debated with zeal the question of its construction, and in the course of the multitude of articles which it originated, much information concerning the nature and history of the game in which the Turk performed such astounding feats, was communicated to the readers of newspapers. Rival Automaton Chess-players started into being, and Chess-books were published both in New York and Boston.

In the latter years of the decade which witnessed the advent of the Automaton, a Frenchman, by the name of Blin, opened a Chess-room in Warren Street, where the members of the New York Club probably held their meetings.\* The leading players of that time were, Henry J. Anderson, Ezra Weeks, Judge Theodore S. Fisk, Elkanah Watson, I. Finch, William Coleman, Antonio Rapallo, and E. Macgauran. Of these, Mr. Finch was an Englishman, who spent some years in this country and Canada. Upon his return to England he published an account of his travels, wherein he gives abundant evidence of his fondness for the game. Afterwards he was a frequent visitor to the clubs and divans of London, and a game is extant between him and the great M'Donnell. Judge Fisk, if we may believe those who knew him intimately, and were capable of appreciating his Chess abilities, was one of the best players produced by this country, previous to the appearance of Paul Morphy. Mr. Stanley, who made his acquaintance in the latter years of his life, speaks in the highest terms of his originality and brilliancy, and states that he never met with a man so difficult to conquer,

\* Blin's Chess-rooms remained open until some time after his death, which took place about 1843. Of the players mentioned in the text, Watson, a lawyer, and Weeks died many years ago; Anderson, who held for many years a Professorship in Columbia College, and who, besides being an excellent player, collected a fine Chess library, is still living; Macgauran is yet a resident of New York; Coleman was the Editor of the *Evening Post* and is dead; Rapallo died, a member of the New York bar, in 1854. Rapallo was a nervous player, and had a peculiar habit of holding all the men he captured in his hands, until the end of the game.

among all the native players of America, in his day. He was a man whose love of Chess was not confined to its practice alone, but extended to its literature. His Chess library, which was sold shortly after his death, numbered between one and two hundred volumes in English, German, and French, and was undoubtedly the largest on this side of the Atlantic at the time of its formation. It is probable, although I have been able to obtain no certain information of the fact, that Judge Fisk was the American amateur who edited the reprint of Lewis' *Elements of Chess*, to which I have before alluded, and which was published in New York in 1827. He played a good deal with Finch to whom he was greatly superior. He is said to have played considerably with Schlumberger, the conductor of the Automaton, and to have won a slight majority of games. He died about 1853. In 1835, or thereabouts, Mr. Saunders opened a Chess divan in Broadway, near Maiden Lane, which had an existence of only one or two years. But the New York Club shortly began to assemble at another place, established by Thomas Bassford, in Ann Street. Here a large and convenient room was fitted up, and furnished with club-men and boards, and here the foremost amateurs of New York continued to assemble for several years. Charles D. Mead, James Thompson, whose names have ever since been connected with the game in the commercial metropolis, Saroni, Charles Collier, Fowler, E. Wilcox (who used to play without seeing the board), Jedediah B. Auld, Adam D. Logan, and M'Donnell, were those who then enjoyed the highest reputation as disciples of Caïssa.\* Animated by a new zeal, consequent upon finding themselves in such comfortable quarters, the members of the Club arranged, in 1835, a match with the players of the Federal City. Washington was represented by J. L. O'Sullivan† and others, and New York by Saroni and Logan. This

\* Collier, who possessed the reputation of being a good book-player, Saroni, and Wilcox are dead; Logan, a lawyer, and M'Donnell are still living; Jedediah B. Auld is at present Private Secretary to Mayor Tiemann, of New York.

† The Honorable John L. O'Sullivan is one of the most enthusiastic and intelligent admirers of Chess, of which our country can boast. He graduated at Columbia College in 1831, edited for many years the *Democratic Review*, and has been for some time Minister Resident at the Court of the King of Portugal. In 1843-4, during one of the interregnums of the New York Club, he gave several Chess soirées at his residence, which were attended by many prominent players, and among others, by the present Dr. M'Vickar, of Columbia College.

contest, after continuing for some time, was interrupted by one of those causes which are so apt to influence the course of games by correspondence, and was never concluded.\* An incident connected with this combat is sufficiently amusing: the proprietor of the New York rooms, supposing that a game played across such an extent of country as intervened between Washington and New York, should be contested upon a field of proportionate size, caused to be constructed an enormous Chess-board, upon whose acre-like squares two armies of huge pieces and pawns stood in fearful array. This Brobdignagian Chess furniture was the source of infinite merriment for some time among the frequenters of the rooms. Another story is told of the same person, whose knowledge of the game never reached a very high point. In addition to the Chess department of his establishment, he had apartments devoted to Billiards, in which he was a proficient. One afternoon a distinguished Chess-player happened to come in, and while conversing with him, the proprietor asked, with an air of earnestness which indicated his own belief in the practicability of the scheme, "Don't you think that a plan might be discovered by which the games of Chess and billiards could be combined in one?" "I have no doubt of it," was the equally grave reply, "but you see the difficulty consists in finding a *cue* to it."

In the latter part of the year 1840, while the players of the city were meeting at Bassford's, a match, by correspondence, was arranged between New York and Norfolk, Va. It was to consist of two games, conducted simultaneously, and the winning party was to be entitled to a fine set of men. The players, on the part of New York, were Colonel Charles D. Mead and Mr. James Thompson;† Norfolk was

\* According to another informant it was afterwards finished by O'Sullivan, in New York, over the board, and was won by Manhattan.

† CHARLES DILLINGHAM MEAD, whose name is favorably known wherever American Chess-players congregate, was born in the city of New York in the year 1815. He graduated at Columbia College in 1835, and subsequently became a member of the New York bar. After a legal career of ten years Colonel Mead went to Europe, where he travelled for a long period, competing with most of the principal amateurs of the Old World, and more particularly with the lamented Kieseritzky, who regarded him as a very strong opponent. Like a true knight-errant Colonel Mead visited most of the European capitals in search of adversaries, but it was only in Paris and London, that he met with any superior to himself. In the New York and Norfolk match Colonel Mead and Mr. Thompson displayed Chess powers of a very

represented by Mr. C. W. Newton, Mr. M. Myers, Colonel Greene (quite well known in that day for his blindfold play), and Mr. Littleton W. Tazewell, formerly Governor of the State of Virginia. The moves in the games were published in the *New York American*. The first game, in which New York had the move, lasted until the end of 1842 and was then drawn. The second game, begun by Norfolk, was concluded in the early days of June, 1842, at the twenty-sixth move, at which time New York announced mate in four moves. The score of the latter game is here given.

## GAME II.—TWO BISHOPS' OPENING.

## Norfolk.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B to Q. B. 4th.
3. P. to Q. B. 3d.
4. Q. to K. B. 3d.

## New York.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
4. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.

high order. Upon its final organization, in 1856, Colonel Mead was elected President of the New York Chess-Club. He is now the presiding officer of the American Chess Association. I know of few greater Chess enthusiasts than the subject of this sketch, nor is there any one who has made more earnest and persistent efforts for the advancement of the game. The amateurs of New York especially owe him a large debt of gratitude.

JAMES THOMPSON, the colleague of Colonel Mead in the joust with Norfolk, was born in London in 1805. He crossed the Atlantic at the age of ten years, and settled with his family in the County of Susquehanna, Pa., but came to New York in 1826, where he has ever since resided. He learned Chess at the early age of eight, but after some practice abandoned it for many years, finally resuming it in 1836, about the time of the establishment of Bassford's Chess-Rooms. From that day to this Mr. Thompson has been one of the most prominent members of the New York Club. When St. Amant was in the city the Club purchased from him a complete set of the *Palaméde*, which was competed for in a tournament of the eight strongest members, and won by Mr. Thompson. Travelling on the Continent of Europe in 1840 and 1850, he played more than one hundred games with Kieseritzky at the odds of pawn and move and scored a majority. He also encountered many other players abroad, and in general with very good success. He is considered as the most brilliant player of the Club, and delights in games wherein he gives odds. With the Attack in the Evans Gambit he is particularly familiar. His genial disposition and ardent attachment to the game make him a universal favorite with the Chess lovers of New York.

## Norfolk.

5. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Castles.
8. P. takes P.
9. K. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
10. Q. to Q. 3d.
11. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
12. Q. B. to K. 3d.
13. Kt. takes Kt.
14. Kt. to Q. 2d.
15. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
16. Q. takes R.
17. Q. to Q. B. sq.
18. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
19. K. B. to Q. 5th.
20. B. takes Kt.
21. B. takes B.
22. Q. to K. 3d.
23. K. R. to Q. Kt. sq.
24. Q. to K. sq.
25. R. to Kt. 2d.
26. Q. R. to Q. Kt. sq.

## New York.

5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. P. takes P.
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
10. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
11. K. Kt. to R. 4th.
12. Castles. (Q. R.)
13. B. takes Kt.
14. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
15. R. takes Kt.
16. Kt. takes P.
17. B. to K. B. 6th.
18. P. to K. R. 4th.
19. P. to K. R. 5th.
20. Q. takes B.
21. Q. to K. Kt. 5th.
22. R. P. takes B.
23. P. to K. 5th.
24. P. to K. B. 4th.
25. P. to K. B. 5th.

And New York mates in four moves.

The second game was translated, and published in the *Palaméde* of Paris (vol. ii., 1842, pp. 63-65), with notes by the editor, St. Amant. He there condemns the sacrifice of the exchange made by New York at the fifteenth move as unsound, and asserts that the winning of the game by New York after that move was the result of "luck." Norfolk, he maintains, should have captured the Rook with Bishop, instead of Queen. Some years afterwards Mr. Stanley republished the game in the *Spirit of the Times* (May 2, 1846), denied the allegation of the distinguished French critic, and appended some variations to prove the correctness of New York's course. St. Amant (*Palaméde*, vol. vi., 1846, pp. 280-281), upon receiving a copy of Mr. Stanley's remarks, very frankly and courteously rectified his error. There is, however, a certain air of incredulity about his apology, as if it was difficult to believe that any Chess-players at a distance of three thousand miles from the Café de la Régence could be capable of forming and elaborating a combination so deep as the one in question.\*

\* Besides the *Palaméde*, *Bell's Life* republished the game in the same year

At the close of the contest a dispute arose as to the actual result of the match. Norfolk insisted that the match consisted of two games, that one was not a majority of two, and consequently the whole struggle resulted in a draw. New York replied that if one was not a majority of two, it was yet infinitely greater than nothing. A long paper warfare resulted; but the matter was at length submitted to the adjudication of Mr. O'Sullivan, who decided in favor of New York, and in a long and logically written essay demonstrated the justice of his decision. New York therefore received the prize.

This well-fought battle seems to have aroused the interest of the Chess community of the city, for during its progress the Club considerably increased in numbers, and in 1841 was able to take rooms for its exclusive use in Barclay street, a few doors from Broadway. In these rooms, in the year 1842, Charles Henry Stanley, an English player of some note in his native country, made his first appearance in America as a Chess-player.\* John W. Schulten, still a merchant of New York, but who passes most of his time in Paris, became first

(July 24). It is to be found also in Bledow's *Correspondenz-Partieen* (p. 74); in Walker's *Chess Studies* (p. 74, No. 397); in Agnel's *Chess for Winter Evenings* (p. 161); and in the *American Chess Magazine* (pp. 81-82).

\* CHARLES HENRY STANLEY, for many years the champion of America, was born in England in the year 1819. He was well known, from about 1837, in all the London clubs, and at the Divan, as a frequent visitor, and as one of the most promising players of the day. He considers Mr. Popert as his principal Chess instructor. Mr. Popert could give him no odds; but the custom of the Divan habitués being to play for a shilling a game, to equalize matters, Mr. Popert used to bet two to one on his winning. Not long before Mr. Stanley's departure for the United States, he contested a match with Mr. Staunton, then at the height of his strength. Mr. Stanley received the odds of pawn and two moves, and won the match by a large majority. Upon his arrival in America Mr. Stanley began to devote a larger portion of his time to the game, and one after another he defeated all the leading players of the country from Boston to New Orleans. His encounter with Rousseau, at New Orleans, took place in 1845, and his victory over Turner, at Washington, was achieved in 1850. In 1852 St. Amant, of Paris, passed through New York, and of the few games played between the Frenchman and Mr. Stanley each party won an equal number. Mr. Stanley was the pioneer Chess editor of this country, and established in 1845 the first American Chess column in the *Spirit of the Times*. His services to the game in our republic cannot be too highly estimated, whether we consider him as a Chess writer or simply as a practitioner.

known to the Chess circles of New York at about the same time and place. He is a German by birth, and for many years has enjoyed a large reputation, on both sides of the Atlantic, as a player of great force and elegance. A variation of the Bishop's Gambit, of marked ingenuity and beauty, owes its origin to him. (See Staunton's *Handbook*, p. 321.) Mr. Stanley and Mr. Schulten were frequent adversaries and produced many admirable games, a number of which have since appeared in print. In 1846, since which period they have rarely met, the score, in the set matches between them, stood as follows:

First match (1844) . . . . .	STANLEY, 11	SCHULTEN, 5
Second " (1844) . . . . .	" 11	" 9
Third " (1845) . . . . .	" 15	" 13
Fourth " (1846) . . . . .	" 7	" 11

We have been unable to ascertain the number of drawn games in the first three matches, but in the last encounter four so resulted. Among the leading players of the club in Barclay Street, were Dr. Detmold, a German, who is still living in New York, and Mr. Selim Franklin. The latter won the chief prize in the great Pacific Tournament held in San Francisco in 1858.

Since 1840, a pleasant place of resort for amateurs, has been at the rooms of the Society Library. Directly after the completion of the building, on Broadway, the Directors made arrangements for the accommodation of such of their members as were fond of Chess, and the following was inserted in the papers of the city in the month of February, 1841: "The members of the New York Society Library are informed that the arrangements for playing Chess in the conversation-rooms of the Library are completed, and that on and after this evening (February 13th), such of them as are amateurs of this delightful game, may indulge themselves under the most favorable circumstances of accommodation and comfort." Among those who have, at different times, occupied the Chess tables of the Society Library, none will be longer or more kindly remembered than the Reverend Dr. William Walton, whose enthusiasm for the game and appreciation of its high social character, render him one of the most honored members of the Chess circles of the city.

Not long after the close of the New York and Norfolk match, the rooms in Barclay street were given up. The club then met a short time on Broadway, near Spring street, where a tournament was arranged and played, in which the chief prize was the presidency of

the club. Mr. O'Sullivan was the leading instigator of this movement. In the winter of 1843-4 apartments were taken in the Carlton House, on the corner of Broadway and Leonard street, where the members were especially accustomed to assemble on the evenings of Tuesday and Thursday. The proprietor of the hotel was himself an amateur of no ordinary ability. Here the fires of Chess continued to burn brightly for many years. Here the most brilliant combats of Stanley took place, and Chess enthusiasts of the city are still wont to recall with delight "the days when Stanley played at the Carlton." Here Schulten displayed those high qualities of patience under defeat, and perseverance under difficulties, which have given him a high and well-deserved reputation. Here that representative man of New England Chess, George Hammond, in frequent visits, exhibited his high talents in many encounters with the leading members of the Club. Mr. Hammond was in New York in August, 1845, in April, 1846, and again in April, 1847, at which latter time he played a match with Mr. Thompson. Upon the establishment of the Club at the Carlton, Schulten was chosen President, and Stanley Honorary Secretary.

Two or three events worthy of note, marked the year 1845. In the early part of that year Stanley commenced a Chess column in the *Spirit of the Times*, which was the first attempt at a regular Chess organ. In looking over the files at this day, it is impossible not to be struck by the versatile genius of the editor, which is seen in every number. In November Stanley left New York for New Orleans to contest his match with Rousseau, an account of which is given at greater length in a succeeding page. In the summer of the same year *Bell's Life* (edited by George Walker) suggested a match, by correspondence, between Spreckley and Mongredien of Liverpool, on the one hand, and Stanley and Schulten of New York, on the other. Stanley, in noticing this remark, declines any such arrangement, humorously asserting that as it would probably last from ten to fifteen years, it would be really playing *for a man's life*. At the same time he offered to play a match over the board with either of the gentlemen named. In the following November a letter was received from Mr. Spreckley proposing on the part of himself and Mr. Mongredien to engage in a consultation match against the two strongest New York players. But the affair was never brought to a successful issue. In March, 1845, a match of a single game was commenced between Mr. Stanley and Mr. Vezin of Philadelphia, which was won by the latter gentleman. The moves were published through the *Morning News* of

New York and the *United States Gazette* of Philadelphia. In June, 1846, another encounter took place over the board in New York between these players, the New York amateur winning the odd game out of nine. In October Mr. Marache,\* who was beginning to be favorably known even outside of New York, began a Chess magazine, upon the failure of which Stanley, in January, 1847, issued the first number of another. By a notice in the journals in February, 1847, we learn that "the members of the New York Chess Club continue to hold their meetings at the Carlton House, where they have excellent accommodations. Amateurs visiting the city will be at all times welcome at the Chess Club. Applicants for membership should apply to the Treasurer (Mr. P. H. Hodges) at the Carlton House. The amount of subscription is five dollars half yearly." Besides the players already mentioned, Mr. Zerega, Mr. F. Bernier, and Mr. Martin Mantin,† were

\* NAPOLEON MARACHE was born in Meaux, Department of *Seine-et-Marne*, France, in 1818, but came to this country when thirteen years of age. He was first shown the moves at chess in 1844, when twenty-six years of age, and learned them with astonishing rapidity. He manifested such a taste for the game that, at his instructor's suggestion, he procured some Chess books—the first two volumes of the *Chess Player's Chronicle*, and shortly afterwards Lewis' *Treatise*. Within three weeks after he had received his first lesson, he could give the odds of a Rook to his teacher, from whom he had but just before taken the odds of the Queen. He subsequently became acquainted with that well-known Brooklyn amateur, Mr. Daniel S. Roberts (now one of the leading players of California), who gave him first the odds of a Rook, then of a Knight and Pawn and two moves, until Mr. Marache was at length able to meet him on even terms. Mr. Marache considers that most of his Chess knowledge is due to this gentleman. In 1845 he commenced making problems, which were published in the *Spirit of the Times*; and up to the present time he is the author of about one hundred stratagems which have appeared in various American journals. In October, 1846, he started the first American Chess periodical under the title of *The Chess Palladium and Mathematical Sphynx*, of which only three numbers, however, were issued. He conducted at one time, with marked ability and courtesy, the chess column of *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*, and now (1859) edits that of *Porter's Spirit*. As a player, Mr. Marache is admirably cool and self-possessed, and joins to his native talent for the game a large knowledge of the books. As a problemist his suicidal positions are wonderfully ingenious and elaborate.

† Martin Mantin, a native of France, but for a long time well known as a New York merchant, has been for twenty-five years the most inveterate and

prominent members of the Club during nearly the whole of the period in which it held its sessions at the Carlton.

In 1849, a frequent topic of conversation at the Carlton reunions was a match with Mexico. The distance between the two capitals of the sister republics of America, and the reputation of the amateurs of both cities, made every lover of chess feel an interest in the promise of a prolonged contest. During the latter part of the winter of this year, Mr. O'Sullivan was in Havana, where he met with the best player of Mexico, Señor Leandro Morro. Both were enthusiastic admirers of the game, and a match was arranged without difficulty. The stakes were to be a set of chessmen, worth at least one hundred dollars, and the combat was to begin forthwith. Mr. O'Sullivan, immediately upon his return to New York, in April, publicly announced the fact that the first move might be expected from the city of Montezuma about the middle of May. Everything seemed to promise a grand struggle between the Northern and the Southern races—between a race which boasted of a M'Donnell and a race of the lineage of Lopez. But whosesoever the fault may have been, the match was indefinitely postponed and still remains unsought. Who can say what would have been the result, had it taken place? Would the Americans have repeated upon the Chess-board the bloody victories of a few months' previous, at Palo Alto and Cerro Gordo? Or would *los Mexicanos* have avenged upon the checkered field a score of defeats upon the plains and in the passes of their country?

The players of the city continued to meet at the Carlton until 1850, when their quarters were changed to a new establishment at number 663 Broadway, known as the *New York Athenæum*, which consisted of several spacious and elegant reading-rooms, and a fine apartment devoted exclusively to Chess. Here the leading amateurs of New York, including Mr. Stanley, Mr. O'Sullivan, Colonel Mead, and Mr. Thompson, were to be met nightly. Some interest was excited by a number of curious contests, between Mr. Stanley and a prominent player, at the singular odds of *two pawns and the move*. Mr. Stanley had returned from his battles with Mr. Turner at Washington (played in February, 1850), covered with laurels, and stood higher than ever. In November, 1848, he had commenced a Chess column in *The Albion*, which he still conducted, and through which the Chess public of Amer-

assiduous attendant at the Club. He rarely misses an evening; and he plays with a formidable rapidity. He is now the Actuary of the Club.

rica was informed of the inception and progress of the great International Tournament at London, in 1851. About this time Mr. Thomas Loyd, an ingenious and excellent player, first became known as a first-rate among the amateurs of the city.

The Athenæum having closed, after a brief but brilliant existence, the members of the Chess community soon felt the want of another assembling-place. The short sojourn of Charles St. Amant in the city, during the early part of the year, also gave an unwonted impetus to metropolitan Chess. That celebrated Frenchman, on his way from San Francisco to Paris, remained only long enough in New York to accept the hospitalities of the Chess circle, which were tendered him, in the shape of a dinner at Delmonico's. He played a few games with Mr. Stanley, the result being the winning of an equal number by each player. The friends of Chess, in New York, were indebted to the activity of Mr. Perrin,\* a player who had lately come among them, for the re-organization of the Club and for its flourishing existence during the following five years. In the fall of 1852 his efforts succeeded in rousing the players to action, and rooms were taken in Broadway near Franklin street. The Club removed, in the spring of 1853, to number 85 Fourth avenue, in the spring of 1854, to Tenth street, near 4th avenue, and in the spring of 1856 to number 19 East Twelfth street. During all these changes its affairs were conducted solely by Mr. Perrin, under whose kindly auspices it continued to increase in number and pros-

\* FREDERICK PERRIN was born in London, of Swiss parents, and is now (1859) in his forty-fourth year. When young he was fond of all games in which skill could be displayed, and especially of Chess, but he was sent at the age of fourteen, to a gymnasium in Switzerland, where he had few opportunities for the practice of his favorite amusement. Upon his return to England he passed much of his leisure time in the Divan, encountering many of the leading British players, but receiving from them the odds of the knight. His principal opponent was the late Mr. Daniels, whose game, George Walker tells us, much resembled Cochrane's. It was only after his arrival in this country that Mr. Perrin commenced a serious study of Chess, playing at first with the late Mr. Vezin, of Philadelphia, and other well-known practitioners of that city. He was subsequently appointed Professor of Modern Languages in Princeton College, where he practised the game almost daily with Mr. Eugene B. Cook, whose splendid problems are known and admired throughout the world-wide domain of Chess. He left Princeton in 1853, and came to New York in 1853, where he now fills a position in the National Bank, and superintends the Chess column of the *Albion*.

perity. Upon its last removal the members expressed their sense of the obligation which they owed to Mr. Perrin, by presenting him with the two handsome engravings of *Mate Pending* and *Mated*, by Frank Stone. Among the leading players during the early part of this period was Mr. Pindar, for the last three or four years known as one of the strongest men in the Manchester Club, the most flourishing provincial Chess organization in England. Other players were Mr. Thompson, Colonel Mead, Mr. W. J. A. Fuller,\* Mr. A. R. Gallatin (justly regarded as a fine analyst), Mr. Thomas Loyd, Mr. Marache, Mr. T. Rabusky (now of the Boston Club), Mr. A. W. King, Mr. D. Julien, Mr. Mantin, Mr. C. E. Anderson, Mr. F. Bernier, Mr. W. C. Hamilton (latterly a member of the St. Louis Club), Mr. W. C. Miller, Mr. John S. Dunning, and Mr. Samuel Loyd. In the last months of the winter of 1855-56 the Club received an important accession in Mr. Theodore Lichtenhein, a player of great powers.† His

\* WILLIAM JAMES APPLETON FULLER, was born at Boston, April 8th, 1822. After spending some time at Harvard College, he paid a brief visit to Europe. He commenced playing Chess at the age of sixteen; and enjoyed the instruction of Mr. Hammond, who, with Dr. Oliver, used to play with him at odds. A checkered life gave him but few opportunities to cultivate the game. Among his numerous adventures, we are told that "he has hunted whales in Polar seas,—swam for a wager, and most unexpectedly for life, at Niagara Falls and among the amphibious Fayaways of the tropics—taught school and edited newspapers in the Far West—lost his way and everything else but his life, in crossing the wilderness on his route to California—doubled every Cape and Horn on the globe—and last, not least, drunk champagne with M. Godard while high up in a balloon." Although he taught Chess while on a whaling voyage to the officers of the ship, and encountered in Cuba the magnates of the ever-loyal isle, he did not resume the regular practice of the game until he settled in New York, in 1854. Then he entered the Club, and in the following year took charge of a Chess department in *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*, where he displayed high literary as well as powerful Chess abilities. He was chiefly instrumental in giving an accelerated impulse to the onward march of the game, and his brilliant, humorous, and instructive column aroused an enthusiasm for our sport, which had never before been experienced by the public of this country. Mr. Fuller is now (1859) engaged in the successful practice of the law, in New York, and is an Honorary Member of the New York Club.

† THEODORE LICHTENHEIN was born at Königsberg, in Prussia, in 1829. He studied for the medical profession, but his military tastes induced him to accept a commission in the Prussian army. After two years' service, Mr. L.

game was immediately noticed as a fine specimen of the style lately brought into vogue by the renowned Prussian school. In the preceding winter Mr. C. H. Schultz and the writer of this sketch entered the Club. It was then meeting in Tenth street, on Tuesday, Thursday, and Friday evenings, and the sessions were held from the first of November to the first of June. Mr. Thompson and Mr. Pindar had gone to Europe not long before. Matches were in progress between Mr. Perrin and Mr. T. Loyd; and Mr. William W. Montgomery, the leading player of Georgia, was paying the first of a number of visits to New York. Some interesting games were contested between Mr. Stanley and Mr. Montgomery one of the first evenings on which the writer saw the Club assembled. When the Club was fairly settled in Twelfth street in May, 1856, the following officers were elected:—Charles D. Mead, President; C. E. Anderson, Vice-President; F. Perrin, Secretary; A. W. King, Treasurer; A. R. Gallatin, N. Marache, and F. Bernier, Executive Committee. Dr. Raphael,\* who had played a

came to this country, where he has resided uninterruptedly for the last six years, engaged in the wholesale mercantile business in this city. He learned the moves in Chess at twelve years of age, and rose rapidly to the rank of a first-rate player, so that when eighteen years old he was elected President of the Königsberg Chess Club. But from the time of his arrival in this country he never practised the game until his entrance into the New York Club in the spring of 1856. His success in encountering the magnates of that body soon made it evident that no player excelled him in strength. His style is that of the famous Berlin school—more remarkable for its soundness than its brilliancy. The same careful analysis, the same cautious and certain manoeuvring of his forces, which are to be seen in the published games of the great German masters, distinguish the Chess style of Mr. Lichtenhein. He is now considered the strongest player in the city of New York, and was President of the Chess Club during 1858–9. He was the winner of the third prize in the Congress.

\* B. I. RAPHAEL was born in Richmond, Virginia, in 1818, and graduated at the University of Virginia. He was taught the moves by his father at an early age, but made no great progress in the game until he came to New York for the purpose of commencing his medical studies, when he frequented the Club, which then met at the Carlton House. At this time he played with Stanley, Thompson, Mead, and other first-raters, but was probably a knight weaker than any of them. Having completed the course at the College of Physicians and Surgeons, and after remaining in the New York Hospital as a Resident Surgeon for three years, he sailed for Europe in 1842, and spent

distinguished part on the Chess-boards of the West, came to New York in 1857, and was warmly welcomed by the Club. The Club engaged in a match by correspondence with the Athenæum players of Philadelphia in the years 1856 and 1857, in which, as is told in another part of this book, the New Yorkers were unfortunate. Frequent visitors at the rooms in Twelfth street were Mr. H. P. Montgomery, Mr. Lewis Elkin, and Mr. Dougherty, of Philadelphia; Mr. J. Ferguson, of Lockport; Mr. S. R. Calthrop, of Bridgeport (formerly a player of note in Oxford, England); and Mr. David Parry, of Virginia. Just after the close of the Congress, in 1857, the Club had the pleasure of seeing among them for a short time Mr. John W. Schulten, whose interest in Chess during his absence had by no means diminished. Mr. Schulten played with Mr. Perrin and Mr. Stanley successfully, but only won a single game out of twenty-four with Mr. Morphy. While under the direction of Mr. Perrin the Club was accustomed to have an annual Tournament of the eight strongest players. The chief prizes in these were won successively by Mr. Thompson, Mr. Perrin, Mr. Marache, and Mr. Fiske. In 1857 the same officers were re-elected, with the exception of Mr. King, whose place was supplied by Mr. Thompson. During the summer vacations of the Club in 1856 and 1857 the meetings were held in the St. Denis Hotel, corner of Broadway and Eleventh street, where rooms were gratuitously occupied by the kindness of the proprietor, Mr. Denis Julien, well known for many years as an elegant composer of problems, a fine player, and an ardent devotee of the royal sport.

eighteen months in the hospitals of Paris. While in that city he occasionally frequented the Café de la Régence, where he played with Kieseritzky and St. Amant, always, however, receiving odds from them. In the winter of 1843 he was a spectator of the celebrated match between Staunton and St. Amant. On his return to this country in the following year, he removed to Louisville, Kentucky, commenced the practice of medicine, and during several years was medical lecturer in the college of that city, holding, at the same time, the post of Attending Surgeon in the City Hospital. In 1845 he assisted in founding the Louisville Chess Club, which, in connexion with the Clubs in Lexington and Frankfort, instituted the annual Chess Tournaments held at the different watering-places in Kentucky. Associated with Mr. Bland Ballard, of Louisville, he played two games by correspondence with the Lexington Club, as also several telegraphic matches with Frankfort, Kentucky, Cincinnati, Ohio, and with Nashville, Tennessee. In the spring of 1857 he removed to New York, where he has since been engaged in the practice of his profession. He won the fourth prize in the Grand Tournament of the Congress.

In the spring of 1858 Mr. Perrin removed to Brooklyn, and at a numerously attended meeting, held at the St. Denis Hotel in May of that year, it was determined to reorganize the Club, and a new constitution was drawn up and adopted, under which the following Board of Management was chosen:—Theodore Lichtenhein, President; W. Coventry H. Waddell, Vice-President; Robert J. Dodge, Secretary; James Thompson, Treasurer; Daniel W. Fiske, Librarian; Denis Julien, Actuary. The Board were instructed to prepare a code of Chess laws for the use of the Club. This was done, and the new code, together with the Constitution of the Club, issued in the form of a pamphlet. Large and convenient rooms were taken at No. 29 Bond street, which were retained until October, when the Club again moved to 814 Broadway. In December, 1858, the Club appointed a Committee to play a second match, by telegraph, with the Athenæum players of Philadelphia, but the valiant Manhattanese came off little better than in their former contest with the brave knights of the Quaker city. At the annual election in April, 1859, the following persons were elected to compose the Board:—Charles D. Mead, President; C. E. Anderson, Vice-President; Robert J. Dodge, Secretary; James Thompson, Treasurer; William C. Miller, Librarian; Martin Mantin, Actuary. In May the Club commenced to occupy their present handsome apartments in the building of the New York University, on Washington square. More than one hundred gentlemen, to insure the permanence and prosperity of the Club, have engaged during three years to pay an annual subscription of ten dollars.

---

#### IX.—CHESS IN NEW ORLEANS.

THE fact that the Crescent city has been for many years the residence of a Chess-player equally famous in both hemispheres, and that it has produced incomparably the best Chess artist of our times, leads us to give a brief account of the progress of the game in the metropolis of the South. Tradition says that about a quarter of a century ago the Chess-players of that day used to assemble in a reading-room in St. Charles street, and that afterwards certain lovers of the game, mostly Germans, were accustomed to meet in an apartment hired for that purpose in the upper part of the city. But unfortunately none of

the names of these early devotees have been preserved. A regularly organized Chess Club is first known to have existed in New Orleans in 1838, but it had a life of less than two years. While it did last its sessions were held in an apartment over the post-office, in a locality afterwards called the Exchange. After its disbandment the players began to frequent the Reading-Rooms of the Exchange, Royal street, which were established about 1844. In 1844 the Club was revived. The chief member was Mr. Eugene Rousseau, a native of France, who began his Chess career at the Café de la Régence and the Cercle des Échecs. His contests with Kieseritzky, St. Amant, and other great players of Paris have given him a high place among the players of the age. He was well acquainted with the celebrated Labourdonnais.\* His matches with Mr. Schulten resulted as follows:

First match (New Orleans, 1841), of 21 games,	Rousseau, 10;	Schulten, 11
Second " " " of 11 "	" 7;	" 4
Third " (New York, 1843), of 21 "	" 13;	" 8

Next to Mr. Rousseau, the strongest players of New Orleans in the last decade were Mr. Ernest Morphy, the uncle of Paul Morphy, and one of the most thorough and careful analysts in the Union, afterwards a resident of Ohio, and now of Quincy, Illinois; Mr. Arthur Ford, who removed some years ago to Texas; and Mr. Edward Jones, now living in California, who left behind him in Louisiana the reputation of being a brilliant and ingenious player; Mr. Bernier and Mr. Zerega, both of whom were at different periods members of the New York Club, came next in strength; while Mr. W. A. Gasquet, Mr. Charles Le Carpentier, Mr. J. P. Benjamin, Mr. C. W. Horner, and Mr. Hurtel, were esteemed as amateurs somewhat inferior to the first-rates.

One of the most important matches recorded in the annals of American Chess was contested at New Orleans in the year 1845, between Mr. Charles Henry Stanley, of New York, and Mr. Eugene Rousseau, of New Orleans. The entire amount of the stakes was one thousand dollars. One combatant was a countryman of Labourdonnais and St. Amant, the other was a native of the land of M'Donnell and Staunton; and both were known to have no superiors in the country of their adoption. There was only one thing that somewhat detracted from

\* MR. ROUSSEAU, at the present time, cannot be much less than fifty years of age. His style shows the training of the great French school under which his Chess mind was formed. Many of his games are scattered through the Chess publications of the last twenty years.

its interest. Mr. Rousseau is said to have been seriously ill for some little time previous to the match, and when the time came to meet his adversary he was far from convalescent. His friends urged him to demand a postponement, but fearing lest such a request might be wrongly interpreted, he expressed his determination to play at all hazards. He was so weak that every morning he was forced to ride some miles in order to gain, if possible, sufficient physical strength to endure a sitting of three or four hours. Mr. Stanley left New York for New Orleans on the 10th of November, 1845, and arrived at his destination on the 23d of the same month. The match was commenced on the first of December and finished on the twenty-seventh. It was played at the rooms of the Club, on the corner of St. Charles and Common streets, in the building occupied by the Commercial Reading-Rooms. The most interesting games were, perhaps, the first and nineteenth of the series, the scores of which we copy from the collection of the games afterwards published by Mr. Stanley (pages 5 and 29).

## GAME I.—KNIGHT'S DEFENCE.

Stanley.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to K. R. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
8. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
9. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
10. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
11. P. to Q. B. 3d.
12. Castles.
13. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
14. Kt. to R. 5th.
15. P. takes P.
16. Q. to K. B. 3d.
17. Q. B. takes Kt.
18. Kt. takes Kt. P.
19. Kt. takes Q.
20. Kt. takes R.

Rousseau.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. Castles.
6. Q. B. to K. 3d.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. Q. to K. 2d.
9. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.
10. K. B. takes K. Kt
11. K. B. to Kt. 3d.
12. P. to Q. 4th.
13. P. to Q. B. 3d.
14. P. takes P.
15. Q. B. takes K. B.
16. Q. B. to B. 5th.
17. Q. to K. 3d.
18. Q. B. to K. 7th.
19. B. takes Q.

And Mr. Rousseau resigns.

## GAME XIX.—SICILIAN OPENING.

## Stanley.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.
3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.
5. P. takes P.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. K. B. to Q. 3d.
8. Castles.
9. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
10. K. Kt. takes Q. Kt.
11. K. B. to B. 2d.
12. K. R. to B. 2d.
13. P. to K. R. 3d.
14. Q. B. to K. 3d.
15. Q. B. takes P.
16. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
17. Q. takes K. P.
18. K. to R. 2d.
19. Q. to Q. 2d.
20. P. to Q. R. 4th.
21. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
22. K. takes B.
23. K. to R. 2d.
24. Kt. to R. 3.
25. K. takes R.
26. K. to Kt. 4th.
27. P. to K. B. 5th.
28. K. to R. 4th.
29. K. to R. 5th.
30. P. takes P.
31. K. to R. 6th.

## Rousseau.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. to K. 3d.
3. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 4th.
5. P. takes P.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. K. B. to K. 2d.
8. Castles.
9. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
10. P. takes K. Kt.
11. Q. B. to R. 3d.
12. K. R. to K. sq.
13. Q. R. to Q. B. sq.
14. P. takes P.
15. P. to Q. B. 4th.
16. K. B. takes Q. B.
17. K. R. to K. 8th. (ch.)
18. P. to Q. B. 5th.
19. Q. R. to K. sq.
20. B. to K. R. 5th.
21. B. takes P. (ch.)
22. Q. R. to K. 6th. (ch.)
23. B. to Kt. 2d.
24. R. takes R. P. (ch.)
25. R. to K. 6th. (ch.)
26. B. to B. sq. (ch.)
27. Q. to K. Kt. 3d. (ch.)
28. Q. to K. Kt. 6th. (ch.)
29. P. to K. Kt. 3d. (ch.)
30. Q. to K. Kt. 5th. (ch.)
31. Q. to R. 5th.

Checkmate.

It is difficult to commend too highly the play of the New Yorker in the former game, and of the New Orleans combatant in the latter. They are assuredly among the finest examples of American skill previous to the times of Paul Morphy. All the contests were regularly reported for the *New Orleans Commercial Times*, and for the *Spirit of*

*the Times* in New York. The score at the termination of the match stood :

Stanley, 15

Rousseau, 8

Drawn, 8

In a private letter, dated November 25th, Mr. Stanley gives us the following brief glimpse of New Orleans Chess :—“The great cause to which my mission most particularly relates, flourishes in this city to an extent for which I was altogether unprepared. A considerable portion of the magnificent reading room at the Merchants’ Exchange is devoted to the convenience of Chess-players alone, and so far are they from neglecting the privilege, that, on a casual visit, I was last evening both surprised and delighted to observe that no less than eight separate games were progressing at the same time. This formidable array of Chess-players, it is necessary to observe, is altogether independent of the more constitutional and regularly organized body of amateurs, known as the ‘New Orleans Chess Club,’ and holding its more private meetings in an apartment adjoining the ‘Commercial News and Reading-Rooms.’” In this letter, as well as in others written at the same period, Mr. Stanley praises, in no measured terms, the unbounded hospitality and agreeable courtesy of the players of New Orleans.

In the year following the great match the Club was again disorganized, and the amateurs of the city had no other place of Assembly than the Exchange Reading-Rooms. Here in 1850 and 1851, might sometimes have been seen a young boy, opposing with the courage, the caution, and the success of manhood the best players of the city. Around his board the *élite* of the Chess world of New Orleans were collected. This child was the future hero of the Congress—the future conqueror of the Chess kings of Europe. His story and the account of the visit of Löwenthal to New Orleans in 1850 are elsewhere given. Among Paul Morphy’s chief opponents at home were Mr. Rousseau, Mr. Ernest Morphy, and Mr. James McConnell.

The present efficient Chess Club of New Orleans was founded in 1857, under the presidency of Mr. Paul Morphy. Mr. Rousseau has altogether abandoned Chess, and Mr. Ernest Morphy resides in a distant State. But, besides its President, the Club nevertheless numbers many players of marked ability, among whom the first, perhaps, is the Secretary, Mr. Charles Amédée Maurian.\* Beyond his reputation as a

\* Mr. Maurian is one or two years younger than his friend, Mr. Paul Morphy, with whom he has contested a multitude of games at various odds, and

very strong and brilliant player, Mr. Maurian has acquired a deserved fame as a Chess writer through his editorship of a Chess column in the *Sunday Delta*. The Club, for two months after its formation, met in Victory street, between Frenchmen and Elysian Fields, in the third district; it afterwards moved to its present quarters, corner of Canal and Exchange alley, in the second district, exactly opposite the rooms occupied by the Club in 1844 and 1845.

---

## X.

THE HISTORY

OF THE

## AUTOMATON CHESS-PLAYER IN AMERICA.

A LETTER ADDRESSED TO

WILLIAM LEWIS ESQ., LONDON.

It will be matter of surprise to no student of Chess-science, even in our own country, that I should have begged permission to address to *you*, my dear Sir, any paper which I might be called upon to contribute to the Book of the First American Chess-Congress. It will at once be understood, by such a reader, that I wished, so far as in me lay, to see formally put forward, in that monument of our Chess-history, the honored name of the venerable cotemporary author, whose peculiar and undisputed glory it is, to have made himself the mediator between Del Rio and Philidor, and to have become the real founder of the great Modern School of Chess.\* Few, however, of my countrymen will suspect, that I had any better reason for connecting your name with an essay so far removed from Chess-analysis, as this poor letter on the Kempelen

whose instruction he has been fortunate enough to enjoy. The two friends studied and graduated at the same college.

\* I quote the authoritative opinion of the German *Handbuch des Schachspiels* by von Bilguer and von der Lasa.

Automaton, than the simple, yet convincing one, that I was competent to write nothing more scientific to connect it with. Few will guess, that my thoughts first turned to you, at the moment when I had pursued the career of Maelzel's last Director to his early death in a strange land; and that the link of association between poor Schlumberger and yourself, was the fact, that you too, in your youthful days, had borne the same relation to the mysterious Turk as he. It was, in reality, to the sole survivor of all the Directors of the Automaton that my imagination wandered from the deathbed of the last. It was to you, therefore—*First*, as the greatest of the great players, that had lent their inspiration to the wood and iron of the grand old Hungarian; and *Secondly*, as the Nestor of living Chess-authors, that I applied for that permission, which was so readily and so courteously granted, of giving my imperfect historical sketch the form of a letter to yourself.

It is with no affectation of self-disparagement that I call my sketch imperfect. It is really so; partly because I could not, under the circumstances, avail myself of many of the materials which still exist, and partly because many of the most interesting materials have perished with the witnesses, whose memory was the sole depository of them. My original commission from the acting editor of the Book was but to form a record of what Automaton anecdotes could be collected in my own city; and it was not until this comparatively easy task had been accomplished, and I was innocently expecting a call for my MS., that I was suddenly informed—some half year or so (sooth to say) after the whole work was fairly to have been published—that I must enlarge the narrow field of my researches by the small addition of all the rest of our North American continent. Along with this order of my youthful Pharaoh, I received such allowance of straw, as might be contained in a sheet of newspaper extracts from Boston, and a year's dates from New York. This was undoubtedly one of

"The wrongs that tempt the spirit to rebel;"

but the subject had become really interesting to me, and I had formed a habit of treating an editor's behests as too sacred to be safely disregarded. Late as it was, I was even sanguine enough to hope—after having succeeded so well in my examination of our own city newspapers—that I could, at least, form a complete "Itinerary," so far as dates and places were concerned, of the Automaton's twelve years' progress through our continent. But even this has proved to be impossible. Our own libraries furnished me with few files of newspapers besides our own; and when I invited any resident of another city to examine their old journals, he soon found the task too intolerably wearisome to be continued. Even applications for less exact information—for mere traditional recollections of Maelzel's exhibitions—did not always secure any satisfactory result—nay, they did not always secure even the notice of an answer. To be sure, in the midst of these discouragements, now and then a rich vein of information was unexpectedly struck upon. Such were the thorough newspaper researches of my friends in Boston and New York; the interesting personal recollections of my Baltimore and Cincinnati correspondents; and the acute investigations of a professional friend into the affair of Eugene Beauharnois.

Such godsends as these lead me to hope, that much more material, equally interesting, may still be in store for me, if I continue to amuse myself—as I possibly may—with these pleasant and perplexing inquiries; but it is discouraging to reflect, how large an amount of testimony—in reference especially to the personal history of Maelzel and his Director—has been destroyed, and only lately, too, by time, or removed by death. All the papers of Maelzel that were once in the possession of Mr. Ohl, his correspondence with Mr. Willig, the evidences of his successes and his losses, have perished by different processes of destruction. The old Philadelphians, who had been the confidants of the proprietor of the Automaton, or who had most frequently played with its director, are nearly all dead—some of them having departed only a short time before I had

begun to be interested in this curious piece of history. Still, as two such witnesses were thrown in my way, even after my MS. was ready for the press, I do not despair that some other living depositaries of Automaton tradition will yet be found, whose revelations may enrich some future republication or *rifacimento* of this grave work of my hours of relaxation. In the meanwhile—not to keep the world in ignorance of such details as I am already prepared to communicate—I proceed to my epistolary tale.

---

That Maelzel should have conceived and executed the scheme of an exhibition-tour through America, after having spent eight years with his Automaton in three of the capitals of Western Europe, would seem to be the most natural thing in the world, without going at all below the surface of the question. For, first, the novelty of the exhibition must, in that time, have gradually worn off, and its attractiveness must have diminished in proportion; and, secondly, the secret must have insensibly leaked out, with the same injurious effect. Maelzel, too, was notoriously fond of travelling. Even the scanty glimpses of his biography, which are all we get, show him at one time at Vienna, at another at Naples; this invention dates from Frankfort, and that from Amsterdam; now he is in Paris, and now in London; not to mention his unrecorded tour, with the Automaton, through the German cities, between 1805 and 1812. The visit to America has, notwithstanding, its secret history. M. Fétis, for example, informs us, that Maelzel's "Directors" quarrelled with him, and exposed his secret, and that *therefore* he was obliged to seek a new country.\* This statement is probably incorrect. I do not think that Maelzel had any other Director, after 1819, than Mouret; and I doubt if Mouret revealed the secret of the Automaton—or, at least, that he did it in any public way—before 1834, when Maelzel had been absent from Europe eight years.† But there is

\* I cite here and elsewhere from the article MAELZEL in Fétis's *Biographie Universelle des Musiciens*, t. vi.

† "Mouret," says Mr. Walker, "sold the secret of his prison-house to the French Penny Magazine." I suppose, therefore, that the article *Automate Joueur d'Échecs* in the *Magazin Pittoresque* for 1834, p. 155, was made up from communications furnished by this very skilful player, who, after having been

another statement, given in the last volume of La Bourdonnais's *Palamède*, which has been proved to be substantially correct by private information, which I have myself collected.

The story is this.—In 1809, Maelzel, by virtue of his office as "Mechanician to the Court" (*Hof-Mechanikus*), was occupying some portion of the Palace of Schönbrunn, when Napoleon chose to make the same building his head-quarters during the Wagram campaign. It was then and there (and *not* in 1805 nor in Berlin\*) that Napoleon played that famous game of Chess with the Automaton, the particulars of which, if I may trust several careful reporters of Maelzel's own account, have been not a little distorted, embellished, and multiplied.† In 1812, the Duke of Saxe-Weimar—the same who travelled in the United States—

the Chess-preceptor of the sons of Louis Philippe, sank into habits of intemperance, and died in 1837. He was, therefore, in the lowest stage of his degradation when he betrayed the secret of his old employer.

\* The story runs, that Kempelen sold the Automaton to Frederick the Great, about the year 1785, I suppose, and left it in his possession. It has therefore been inferred, that Napoleon *must* have seen it at Berlin, after the battle of Jena. But Kempelen died with it in his own possession on the 26th day of March, 1804, and his son—his *filius carnalis* (as Blackwood calls him)—sold this other son of his father to Maelzel very soon after. These facts seem to prove that Kempelen could have sold nothing to Frederick but the secret; and even of that I am incredulous, so far, at least, as the pecuniary consideration is concerned.

† This remark applies, I am sorry to say, to the account given by my friend, the author of an interesting article in the first volume of the *Chess Monthly*, the materials for which were furnished by the late lamented Dr. Mitchell. That estimable gentleman supposed himself (as he said) to be merely recording what he had been told by Maelzel himself; but I am certain, that in some particulars he mistook for recollections of Maelzel's conversation what were really recollections of a newspaper translation of De Tournay's article in the *Palamède*, and that in others he mixed up some faint impressions left by Windisch's pamphlet with what a certain witness *said* he had heard from Maelzel. All of this was very natural in the case of an elderly man looking back over the dim space of from twenty to thirty years. I venture to oppose to such unsatisfactory testimony the perfect coincidence of two gentlemen of very accurate habits of mind, in their separate and distinct reports of what they had learned directly from Maelzel himself—I mean Dr. J. I. Cohen, of Baltimore, and Dr. C. F. Schmidt, of Cincinnati. The "fighting face to face," the "lady's shawl," the "magnets," the "striding over Knight and Pawn," must be dismissed, I fear, as apocryphal.

saw the Automaton, abandoned (as I understand) to inglorious repose, in the *Casa Buonaparte* at Milan, the capital of Eugène Beauharnois, then Viceroy of the kingdom of Italy.\* At some period after 1809 and before 1812, whether at Munich, the residence of Eugène's father-in-law (where Maelzel at one time lived as *Hof-Mechanikus* to his own sovereign also), or at Milan itself, the lively young Viceroy was a witness to the wondrous exhibition of the Automaton, and was so bewitched by the mystery, that he bought the whole affair—mechanism, mystery, Maelzel and all—for thirty thousand francs. He then went to Russia to storm the redoubt at Borodino, and came home to fight for his vice-regal dominions, until he had secured a tolerable equivalent in the territory of his royal father-in-law. Maelzel went about his business—perfecting and exhibiting various inventions—until he settled down at Paris, in 1816, as a member of the firm of J. Maelzel & Co., established for the manufacture and sale of the *Métronome*. I suppose he left his partner to attend to the factory and the shop, for in 1817 (according to Fétis) he returned to Vienna. The chief object of his journey, however, did not lie in Vienna, but in the capital of Bavaria; and his business was with the Prince Duke of Leuchtenberg—the new title of Eugène Beauharnois. The truth is, Maelzel had taken a fancy to renew his old adventurous travels with the “turban'd Turk;” and him he sought—no longer at Milan but at Munich; for Eugène was under no obligation, while surrendering his dominions to the Austrian, to leave behind him his property. One would suppose, that Maelzel could have had no difficulty in getting possession again of what was no longer of any use to Eugène. We should have expected the Prince to say, “I have had all I wanted of it—its secret; nor have I paid for it more than it became a prince to pay. For *you* it can earn bread. Take it again, and live by it as before.” But Maelzel did not expect, I presume, and certainly did not get, so easy a bargain. The ex-viceroy

\* See the Duke of Saxe-Weimar's *Travels in North America* (Philadelphia, 1828), vol. ii. p. 197. I find the following note in Cancellieri's *Giuoco degli Scacchi* (Venezia, 1824), p. 163—Il dottissimo mio amico Cav. Millin nel T. I. del suo *Voyage dans le Milanais*, p. 81, riferisce, che *le celebre Automate, Joueur des Echecs, après avoir parcouru l'Europe, est resté à Milan dans la maison bâtie par le Comte Ludovico de Belgiojoso*. Millin's book was published in 1817, but his tour was made, I believe, in 1812. I presume, therefore, that the Duke of Saxe-Weimar and Millin both saw the Automaton in the same year and in the same house.

was known to possess the virtue of clinging to his goods and chattels with a peculiarly tenacious grasp—in short, he was *un peu avare*.\* Instead, therefore, of any such Haroun-al-Raschid proceeding as I have suggested above, he sat down to consider how he might part with the bread-winning Automaton to its old owner, even without present payment (which was out of the question), in such a way as to turn an investment, hitherto unproductive, into quite a profitable speculation. It is not perfectly clear what terms the Prince finally came down to, far less what were the details of the mutual chaffering. The writer in the *Palamède* makes the result a kind of partnership in an exhibition-tour—the title of the Automaton was to remain in the princely owner, and Maelzel was to pay the interest of the original cost as his partner's fair proportion of the profits. But another account—current, I believe, at Munich—makes the transaction to have been a *sale*: Maelzel bought back the Automaton for the same thirty thousand francs, and was to pay for it out of the profits of his exhibitions—"Provided, nevertheless," that Maelzel was not to leave the Continent to give such exhibitions. The latter account I believe to be the more correct one.†

After an exhibition season in Paris, which I suppose to have been the winter and spring of 1817 and '18, Maelzel went over to London in the latter part of the year 1818. So, at least, I infer from the date of a game played by you, my dear Sir, as Director of the Automaton.‡ Here, I am informed, difficulties began with the Duke of Leuchtenberg, who is said to have complained of the visit to England as an infringement of the condition not to leave the continent. I can hardly believe that Maelzel could ever have consented not to visit the best field in Europe for his operations, or that Eugène could have put such an interpretation upon a condition so worded. It is more likely that Maelzel—who, in this country, bore the reputation of the

\* The reader may find this charge of *stinginess* (if one dare call it so) gently stated, and gently refuted, in the article devoted to Eugène in the *Supplement* to the *Biographie Universelle* of the brothers Michaud.

† Such portions of this statement as are not based on the articles in the *Palamède* (vols. i. and iv. of La Bourdonnais's series), were communicated to me by Dr. Schmidt, who learned them partly, I believe, in New York, and partly during a residence at Munich, in the years 1827 and '28. The papers of the lawsuit at Paris, in 1825, if they could be got at, would give the real particulars of the affair.

‡ Chess Players' Chronicle, Vol. i., page 18, "Game played by the CHESS AUTOMATON and Mr. S ——s, at Spring Gardens, 31st Dec. 1818."

promptest and most liberal of paymasters—was slow to believe that the step-son of Napoleon really intended to exact from him the paltry sum which he had bargained for, and that he allowed too long a time to elapse before paying the first instalment of the purchase-money at Eugène's banker's. This first difficulty—so my information runs—was peaceably settled, and Maelzel continued to exhibit in England for a year or two more.\* He then returned to Paris, and—after what interval I know not—proceeded from thence to Amsterdam, where he appears to have been in 1821 and 1822.† It may not be fair to infer from Mouret's story‡—the scene of which is laid in the Dutch capital—that Maelzel's exhibitions had been less successful in Holland than in England or France. Everywhere he was likely sometimes to be out of money, for he was always expending large sums upon mechanical experiments—not to mention such other objects as Fétis has specified with as little of circumlocution as of misgiving. But either his Dutch exhibitions had not brought him back to Paris rich, or the profits of his last Paris exhibitions did not find their way to his banker's, for when Eugène pressed hard for another instalment, nothing was forthcoming. At last either Eugène himself, or his heirs—for he died in 1824—commenced legal proceedings against the unpaying Maelzel. The writer in the *Palamède* adds, that the record of this lawsuit even disclosed the secret of the mechanism. This part of the statement I should more readily believe, if I could see what the secret had to do with the objects of the prosecution, and if it were not as much the interest of the Leuchtenberg family, as of Maelzel, to keep alive that mystery, to which they too looked as the best security for getting their pay. But whether the secret was exposed or not, Maelzel may have conceived, that he should like his princely creditors just as well, if he were not quite so near them, and that it would be wise to abandon a field, which, already pretty well exhausted, had at length begun to bristle with the briars and brambles of the law. One of my authorities assures me, that he

\* Here, again, my authority is Dr. Schmidt.

† I say this, because Maelzel's difficulty with Winkel, in reference to the *Métronome*, occurred at Amsterdam during one of these years, and while he was there with his Automaton. (See Fétis, and the *Revue Encyclopédique*, t. xvi., p. 405.)

‡ This story (of which, after all, I do not believe a word) was first given in De Tournay's article (*Palamède*, t. i.)—then in Walker's paper in Fraser's Magazine (*Chess and Chess-players*, p. 35,)—then in Tomlinson's *Amusements*—and so everywhere.

"ran away" from Europe, partly to escape the consequences of the suit, and partly because it was only by running away that he could carry off the Automaton from the Continent. The latter part of this statement may be correct—it is quite possible, that Maelzel may not have chosen to ask the consent of the Leuchtenbergs to his undertaking so distant an adventure. But there is evidence that the law-suit itself was so far settled, that a balance was struck, and that security for this sum (four thousand francs) was given, in some form, upon the Automaton itself. But another authority assures me, that this statement—so far as the "absconding" is concerned—cannot be correct, and that Maelzel came to this country with the consent and concurrence of his creditors. One circumstance, however, bespeaks either haste or poverty—Maelzel embarked for America without a "Director"—a step so contrary to his usual course, that it can be explained only by his want of present means to secure to a superior player an adequate remuneration, or by his leaving Paris too suddenly to permit his concluding any such treaty at all.

Under such circumstances—with such additional motives engrafted on those of voluntary enterprise and love of change—Maelzel proceeded to Havre, and, on the 20th of December, 1825, embarked on board the packet-ship *Howard*, Capt. Eldridge, for the New World. He landed at New York on the 3d of February, 1826. His arrival was announced in the "Ship News," as that of "Mr. Maelzel, Professor of Music and Mechanics, inventor of the Panharmonicon, the Musical Time-Keeper, &c." He appears to have called, as soon as possible, upon Mr. Coleman, the editor of the *Evening Post*—to whom it is probable he had some letters of introduction—and to have enlisted him at once among the friends of his enterprise. The Automaton Chess-player—not mentioned in the "Ship News"—was immediately introduced to the public by an attractive editorial; and everything seemed to indicate, that the novel exhibition—accounts of which had from time to time reached our shores—would speedily be opened to the public. But these appearances were deceptive. Maelzel's Exhibition was not opened until after the lapse of nearly two months. I do not know whether this delay need be accounted for in any other way, than by recollecting, that Maelzel was a German and not a Yankee, and consequently that he had no taste for doing things in a hurry. He had his exhibition-room to fit up, his boxes to unpack, and a substitute for his proper Director to train in the management of the mechanism and in the playing of his select End-games. This will be

better understood, when I say, that Maelzel was obliged, at the outset, to confide the direction of his Automaton to a *woman*, whom he had brought over with him—the wife of the man who guided the motions of his rope-dancers. Such an extemporised *Directress* must, of course, have required a good deal of instruction.

I have been told, however, that there was another and more serious cause of this two months' delay. The watchful representatives of the deceased ex-viceroy had no mind to allow their legal balance of nearly eight hundred dollars to slip through their fingers, after having faithfully sought to recover it in the hard ways of the law. They therefore sent over their claim—following closely on the heels of Maelzel—to a foreign consul and banker in New York, with extremely judicious instructions as to the manner of collecting it. Whatever trespass or crime Maelzel might have committed, in carrying off the Automaton from the Continent, and whatever wholesome fears of future processes might be suspended over his head, he was in no wise so to be dealt with that he could not exhibit:—in other words, the well-educated Leuchtenbergs had “thumbed their *Æsop*” to good purpose, and still bore in mind the lessons of the hen that laid the golden egg. It was these molestations—says my informer—that so long kept back the expected exhibition of the mysterious Chess-Player. For my own part, I do not see how measures growing out of such instructions could have produced any such effect, unless Maelzel had wished to show his princely creditors, that he did not choose to be in so great a hurry to raise money for them, as they might wish. I therefore incline to think, that the message of the Leuchtenbergs came over rather later, and that it had nothing to do with either accelerating or retarding the slow and easy way in which the proprietor of the Automaton went about getting up his exhibition.\*

But, whatever may have been the cause of the delay, at length, on the 11th of April, the public were informed by advertisement, that the

\* I may add, upon reflection, that Maelzel appears *everywhere*, as well as at New York, to have consumed a great deal of time in the preparations for opening his exhibitions, and that he did so—not merely from the German *Gelassenheit* mentioned in the text—but from an excessive particularity, which made him the standing torment and despair of the mechanics, whom he had at work for the purpose. It was all the same to him, whether the money spent in this way was likely to be more or less than his receipts—the work must be perfect in its kind, even if it had to be knocked in pieces and made over again at his expense.

Exhibition of the Chess-Player, along with the Austrian Trumpeter, and the Rope-dancers, would be opened on Thursday evening, the 13th, at the National Hotel, No. 112 Broadway, where Maelzel himself was lodging:—for such was his habit or his system—he liked always to live in the closest connexion with all his agents, animate and inanimate; and if they could not take rooms with *him*, he usually took rooms with *them*. His friend of the *Post* had done what he could to excite the curiosity of the public, by assuring them, that the secret of the Automaton had, for fifty years, eluded the researches of the ingenious and the scientific, and had puzzled the mathematical Dr. Hutton himself. Only about a hundred persons, however, answered to the call, on the 13th; but the intense and peculiar excitement, which the mysterious exhibition of the evening enkindled in this small company, converted each and all of them into such zealous preachers of the glories of the Turk, that presently a hundred applicants for admittance had to be excluded every day, for want of room. The newspapers now needed no application from Maelzel to resound the wonders of his mechanism:—they were filled with detailed accounts of his exhibitions, with communications that revealed his secret, and with confutations that made the revelations ridiculous. Nay, one of the editors feels bound to apologize for “permitting the Automaton to occupy so much of his columns, but persons at a distance (he says) can form no idea how much the attention of our citizens is occupied by it.” To meet the popular demand, Maelzel was obliged soon—if he did not do so from the first—to give two exhibitions every day—one at noon, and the other in the evening.

At these exhibitions, the Automaton played only end-games:—such a player as Maelzel’s “Directress” could not be matched, in any other way, with the New York amateurs; but other reasons were given, which were for a while received as satisfactory. These end-games were presented to the adversary, at his own separate board, outside of the silken cord, on printed diagrams filled up in pencil, with liberty to choose his *side*; but the first *move* the Automaton reserved for himself.\* A little book, bound in green morocco, which was found

\* It may be worth while to say, that the space, within which the Automaton was exhibited, was separated from the rest of the hall by a silken cord. In Von Kempelen’s day, the antagonist played upon the Turk’s own board; but Maelzel always placed a table, with a board, without the cord, at one side, in order—as was given out—not to intercept the view of the audience.

among Maelzel's effects after his death, contained the entire collection of situations, from which the selections were made for the exhibitions. On examining this little book carefully, I satisfied myself that it was made up in England, and perhaps by yourself. The larger number of the positions, I have traced to your *Oriental Chess*, to your *Problems*, and to your favorite authors, Stamma, Lolli, and others.\* They must have been selected, after very careful study, as positions, which would give the Automaton a won game, *with the move*, even when he had what was originally meant to be the wrong side. It generally happened, however, that such kind of players, as usually measured themselves with the Turk at the exhibitions, were pretty sure to choose the side that had the Queen or the largest number of pieces; and to lay a further trap for their unsophisticated simplicity, Maelzel had the kindness to indicate, by large numerals, in his heavy German handwriting, the precise number of pieces on either side. At the first exhibition, for instance, the position set up was the forty-first of Stamma (in your edition the sixty-eighth), wherein Black—who was bound to lose—had the advantage of a pawn, and that too a *passed* pawn, within one step of the royal line. The adversary of course chose the side of Black, and lost (say the newspapers) in five moves. Against such an adversary, even the female Director could be safely risked with a change of sides:—the pieces were set up again; the Automaton

Maelzel was constantly passing between the Automaton and the adversary's table to repeat each move on the board of the other party. When Napoleon appeared to be about to pass the cord, at Schönbrunn, Maelzel checked him with, “*Sire, il est défendu de passer outre:*” the Emperor immediately acquiesced, with a good-natured *Eh bien!* and took his seat at the little table on his own side of the cord. His conduct throughout appears to have been pleasant and gentlemanly, perfectly free from the bad taste so foolishly affirmed of it. It is probable, that the player, who, on this occasion, had the honor of beating the “Victor in a hundred battles,” was Allgaier:—it is certain, at least, that he was at one time a Director of the Automaton for Maelzel.

\* The book is evidently of English make, and the figures pasted into the squares of the diagrams, are such as never appeared in any book besides Mr. Lewis's *Oriental Chess*. Hence I was disposed to conjecture, that the collection was made exclusively by Mr. Lewis. I have been informed, however, by a gentleman, who assisted Maelzel temporarily in 1826, that both Deschapelles and Mouret did something towards making up the tale of eighteen situations.

took the Black—with the first move, however—and won again in about the same number of moves. “The figure was then removed amid great and deserved plaudits”—plaudits, I may observe, which were more readily given to Maelzel than they would have been to any other exhibitor. He stood before the visitors of his room, by no means as a showman, but as a great inventor. Such he had proved himself to be by his Panharmonicon and his Rope-dancers; such he appeared to be, where he was less original, in his Metronome and his Trumpeter; and a genius that could do so much was half believed to be capable of inventing a machine that could calculate the combinations of Chess. And not his talents alone—his appearance and manners attracted the applause of his visitors. He was the perfection of politeness and amiability; he was passionately fond of children, and invariably reserved for them his front seats and distributed sweetmeats among them; and he occasionally gave a benefit to orphans, or widows, or some other charity, in a way that evinced real benevolence of disposition.

There was no reason, however, why the secret of even so polite and popular an exhibitor should not be perseveringly pried into by people so ingenious and so curious as my countrymen. One of the newspapers—the *Evening Post*, in particular—remarked that Maelzel’s secret had been guessed, at least a dozen times, before the first exhibition-week had expired. One man was sure, that when Maelzel made the adversary’s move on the Turk’s board, he indicated by his mode of putting down the piece the answer which the concealed player was to make; another man wrote him an anonymous letter—with which Maelzel was enough amused to preserve it among his few papers—informing him, that he had seen him touch certain springs on either side of the board. All of these things were precisely what Maelzel would have wished people to say—they gave him occasion to enhance the mystery of his mechanism by such decisive practical refutations. At one time he would remain twenty feet distant from the Automaton, except when he approached it to make the adversary’s move; at another, he played at the separate table against the Automaton, and allowed the adversary to make the move upon the Automaton’s board. There is no doubt, that on such occasions he had his understanding with the adversary. But, then, there was one mode of guessing at his secret, which gave Maelzel much more trouble. Some people had a fashion of counting his household, and of wondering how it invariably happened, that a certain Frenchwoman could be seen at all times, except

during the first hour of the exhibitions. To put a stop to such troublesome speculations and to keep them out of the newspapers, Maelzel resorted to a *tour de force*. He went to his friend Coleman ; told him his secret ; and engaged his son to officiate occasionally as the concealed director of the Automaton, while the Frenchwoman aforesaid should enact the part of the adversary. Nobody could be more jealous of his secret than Maelzel habitually was ; but he had an extremely acute perception of character ; and when he found he *must* tell his secret, he always told it to such as were sure never to betray it. Young Coleman was ready enough to pay for the honor of possessing a secret, shared by so few, by rendering Maelzel the occasional assistance which he needed. Two other persons, at least, were also taken into Maelzel's confidence ; but I do not feel at liberty to mention their names. One of them, I may say, was a young countryman of Maelzel's, to whom —after a short acquaintance—he felt it safe to entrust his chess-men, to have them magnetized again. The good-natured Maelzel was disposed to reward his young friend for this confidential service. One day, therefore, when they were alone together, in the exhibition-room, Maelzel entreated his assistance to lift off the top of the Automaton—whereupon, to the youthful German's amazement, up rose the tall figure of a well-known scientific gentleman, who had succeeded Coleman in the possession of the great secret. These three young men acted as amateur-directors in turn ; and occasionally one would play, at the exhibitions, against his concealed confederate. Maelzel was certainly much relieved by their kind co-operation—especially after he had been deserted (as I understand he was) by his female assistant ; but I do not think that his secret was either more or less protected by this arrangement.

Maelzel had always taken the precaution of renouncing beforehand any claim of absolute invincibility on the part of his Automaton ; but he was aware that nothing, save the discovery of the secret, could do him more harm than to have his Automaton beaten. In Europe, he had done his best to secure constant victory by making an alliance with the very strongest players of the day ; in this country he had thus far relied upon confining the playing at the exhibitions to end-games. But in spite even of this precaution he had the mortification—and it was always a great mortification to him—of seeing his Automaton beaten twice in New York. In one of these instances the end-game was the Position of three pawns against three pawns, which forms the Frontispiece of Mr. Cochrane's *Treatise*. Such a position

was too striking not to be remembered by visitors of the exhibition, so as consequently to be set up and analysed in private. A young player had thus studied the position, and happened to be present soon after when it was proposed by Maelzel: he played the right moves, and won. In the other case of defeat, it is said that Maelzel, out of courtesy, had permitted the adversary to take the first move.

It is, I believe, the common opinion, that Maelzel expected to find no Chess-players of any strength, in this country, and that he calculated on satisfying the visitors of his exhibitions with end-games alone, and on being able, in this way, to sustain the reputation of his Automaton without going to the expense of engaging a superior director. Nothing was further from the disposition or views of Maelzel—a most sagacious and liberal man—than such a calculation as this; and no one could have felt greater annoyance, I am persuaded, than he did, at being obliged to find excuses for not allowing entire games to be played here, as he was known to have done in Europe. That he brought no director with him is, in fact, decisive evidence of what I have said before—that he left Europe in haste and under some kind of embarrassment. I have learned, by private information, that, hurried as he was, he did not embark without having entered into treaty with a strong player of the *Café de la Régence*, who was to follow him upon receiving from him the requisite remittance of money for his passage. Maelzel could have been in no condition to make such remittance until after he had opened his exhibition; but as soon as money began to flow in upon him so freely from that source he sent hastily over for his foreign director. It was, however, long before the days of ocean-steampers or even of frequent packets of any kind, and Maelzel could not calculate on waiting much less than three months, even if his summons should be obeyed by return packet. So anxious, however, was he to silence the murmurs of those who called for entire games, and to remove from the first scene of his Chess warfare in this country, with flying colors, that he was impatient for the speedy junction of his new ally, and was sadly disappointed and mortified (I understand) that the Havre packet did not bring him before the close of the exhibition in New York. There was, at least, one singular thing to be accounted for in connexion with this New York exhibition. He had closed it about the first of June, with the intention of proceeding to Boston, when he appeared suddenly to have changed his mind; for he advertised on the sixth of June, that "he had concluded again to exhibit his automata in New York; but that, as they had been packed up for the

intended visit to Boston, a week or two must expire before they could be ready for inspection." It has been stated to me, as an explanation of this singular delay in New York, that Maelzel was detained, against his will, by the agent of the Leuchtenberg family, and that he did not recover his freedom of motion until he had finally liquidated the balance of the claim against him. This balance, it may be recollectcd, was now no more than eight hundred dollars; and I do not think there was any day, after the month of April, on which Maelzel could not have paid so trifling a sum in a moment. I infer, therefore, either that the balance had been paid long before this first of June, or that Maelzel approached the payment of this particular claim with the profoundest reluctance and disgust—a feeling in which I must honestly confess, that I do myself heartily sympathize. I am disposed to believe, however, that Maelzel had decided upon this after-exhibition from some expectation, which he had been led to form, that his foreign director would arrive in season to take part in it. If so, he was disappointed; and on the fifth of July he was obliged to close his exhibition in New York, and to proceed to Boston, without the satisfaction of having displayed the power of his Automaton in full games, and with the keen mortification of having been obliged at last to pay, unto the uttermost farthing, his Imperial Highness Eugene Napoleon's "little bill."\*

At Boston, Maelzel fitted up for his exhibition-room Julien Hall, at the corner of Milk and Congress streets. Here also he carried out his favorite plan of lodging in company with his automata, his meals being brought to his room in the Hall. His first exhibition was given on Wednesday evening, the 13th of September, and was followed regularly by two exhibitions every day, as in New York. The Bostonians had been well prepared to receive him: the excitement of New York had been conveyed, in full force, to the eastern capital, and a pamphlet

\* The dates for Maelzel's first campaign in New York (with the exception of what I could myself get from the "ship news," etc., copied into the Philadelphia papers) were furnished for me by Mr. Fiske and Mr. William C. Shaw, of New York. A more minute examination of the *Evening Post*, from 1826 to 1836, with a fuller account of the results, was made for me by my young friend, Mr. Charles Deming Hoyt. What relates to the doings of the Leuchtenberg family in New York is derived from communications made by Dr. Schmidt, of Cincinnati, with important verifications and additions derived from the obliging and painstaking researches of F. B. Wightman, Esq., of the New York bar.

specially devoted to the history and analysis of the Automaton Chess-Player had issued from the Boston press. I need not relate what would be but the repetition of my record for New York. The Automaton was beaten three times—always in end-games—twice because Maelzel courteously gave the antagonist the first move, and once because of a blunder on the part of the Director, who, I should add, was a young man from New York. The demand for full games was loud here also, and Maelzel must have felt even more desirous to meet that demand, in order to gratify a public which received him with unusual expressions of respect:—it was quite in the character of Bostonians to treat him, not as an exhibitor, but as an artist, whose great talents were recommended by singular courtesy and amiability of manners. Maelzel and his young amateur assistant came into very agreeable relations with the principal Boston chess-players, who were gentlemen of the highest class; and it was finally arranged with one of these kind friends, that in case the foreign Director should not arrive by the next packet, as expected, he should be entrusted with the secret, and the direction of the Automaton for full games. But Maelzel was at length relieved from the necessity of any further disclosure of his secret by the actual arrival of his Director, who had reached New York on the 27th of September, on board the same Havre packet in which he himself had come over.

The actor who now came upon the scene, as being the last of a remarkable series of Directors, and not unworthy to be ranked with them for skill, deserves especial mention. He was one of the leading players at the *Café de la Régence*, but was known there—and is spoken of by De Tournay, St. Elme-le-Duc, and St. Amant—only by the name of *Mulhouse*—probably because his own name was less agreeable to a French mouth than that of his birth-place. His real name was WILLIAM SCHLUMBERGER. He belonged to a wealthy family, which is still known by its connexion with some of the most prosperous manufacturing establishments in that manufacturing capital of the Department of the upper Rhine. His education was far superior to what is usually expected of one who is destined for business alone. He was understood to be decidedly strong in Mathematics; his conversational use of both French and German—with which, as an Alsatian, he was equally familiar from childhood—was that of one who, by taste and education, eschewed everything provincial or ungrammatical; and the only composition of his I have ever seen—a letter of thanks in French—was perfect in conception, expression, and style. His education had

even embraced the study of our language; for he spoke English, although imperfectly, on his arrival, and wrote it—to judge by a letter I have seen, written by him for 'Maelzel—with very respectable correctness. Nay, the interest and discrimination with which, on a certain occasion, he ran eagerly through and commented upon Scott's Life of Napoleon, at the moment of its publication, evinced a fondness for books, and a certain degree of familiarity with current history and literature.

His own account of himself was, that he had entered upon the business life, for which he had been so carefully educated, in Paris, where he and his brother were put in charge of the dépôt of the family establishment at Mulhouse. He was thrown out of business by a commercial misfortune, and then he began to support himself by giving lessons in Chess at the *Café de la Régence*.\* That he must have begun to frequent the *Café* long before, to have acquired such superior knowledge of the game as to qualify him to be (as he was called) *Professeur des Échecs*, is obvious enough; and it is quite natural to suppose, that he may have given to Chess time which he should have devoted to the affairs of the dépôt. For, if Chess had been resorted to by him as a profession, only because it was one of several means of earning his subsistence, all equally agreeable and equally indifferent to him, he

\* St. Amant's account is, that he lost his "patrimony" at play. Now, as it is not so disreputable in France as it is here to "gamble," it is not in itself impossible that Schlumberger might have visited a "hell;" and if he did he was very likely to have been victimized. Nevertheless, I think M. St. Amant to be in error: For, *First*, Schlumberger was always simple and veracious in what he said, and his own account was confirmed by what Dr. Schmidt heard when he was in Paris, among the old associates of *Mulhouse*, in 1827 or '28. *Secondly*, Schlumberger, during the eleven years he was in this country, was never known to have the slightest taste for "gaming" in any form. He was never known to play any other games than Chess and Draughts; nor to play those games for money in any other way than as a teacher earning his tuition-fee. *Thirdly*, M. St. Amant, by speaking of his "patrimony," shows himself to have been ill-informed of Schlumberger's condition in life, and may be presumed to have been equally ill-informed in reference to his habits. I should judge that M. St. Amant, who calls Schlumberger "very intelligent," inferred from his education that he was not a young man in business, but the heir to a hereditary estate; and, hearing that he had become destitute by losses, presumed them to have been a young gentleman's losses—at the gaming-table.

could hardly have become, what he certainly was, as striking an example as ever lived of a perfect Chess-enthusiast:—Chess was to him all in all. On every other subject he conversed with little animation; but if the slightest association brought up the idea of Chess, and recollections of the *Café de la Régence* and its heroes, his conversation became full of life and interest. He could not be made happier than by any opportunity to descant on the prowess of his hero, La Bourdonnais, with whom—in his indifference to the privileges of the position wherein he was born and bred; in his apparent satisfaction at being freed from the responsibilities of property and business as a mere clog; in his estimate of Chess as the one thing to be lived for—he had, in fact, the strongest possible bonds of sympathy. But, unlike La Bourdonnais, he had, in money matters, the correct habits of a well-trained man of business; and in Chess, his enthusiasm was associated with a German-like seriousness and studiousness, which were utterly unknown to the jovial Frenchman, whose life (it has been said) might be summed up in two words—"He was always either laughing or playing."

When the celebrated player and writer, M. St. Amant, began to frequent the *Café de la Régence*, about the year 1823, he found Mulhouse—then a young man but a year or two past twenty-one\*—capable of playing with La Bourdonnais at no greater odds than the Pawn and move, and fully equal to Boncourt and Mouret; he found him, in fact, a player *de première force*—a true "first rate." Of him, therefore, the young St. Amant sought instruction in Chess; and, many years later—when at the height of his own high reputation—the "Viceroy of La Bourdonnais" gratefully acknowledged, that to the practical demonstrations of Schlumberger he owed his first initiation into those grander combinations of the game, of which he has himself given such classical examples. The subsistence of Schlumberger—dependent solely upon his earnings as a Chess-teacher—was undoubtedly, as it appeared to M. St. Amant to be, both scanty and precarious; and his position in other respects—with no ties of family or business—was such as to mark him out as a proper subject for the offers of Maelzel, who, as a resident of Paris, an enthusiastic Chess-player, the employer in succession of Wéille, Alexandre, Boncourt, and Mouret, and an *impresario*,

\* I have tried, without success, to get the date of Schlumberger's birth from Mulhouse. According to the judgment formed by some friends, who knew him best, he was either born with the century, or not more than a year or two earlier.

always interested to know all proper subjects for an engagement, was pretty sure to be familiar with the skill, character, and circumstances of every professional player at the *Café de la Régence*, or at Alexandre's *Hôtel de l'Échiquier*. M. St. Amant says, that Maelzel "crimped" *Mulhouse* (*l'embaucha*), under such circumstances, without difficulty. Schlumberger, however, never looked upon himself as having been made a victim of; he considered himself to have been fairly and kindly treated by Maelzel, and remained faithfully attached to his person and his interests to the last.\*

When Schlumberger arrived at Boston, about the first of October, he was not received as one either personally or professionally unknown. Maelzel, too sagacious to expect to blind entirely the few gentlemen in every city, who knew more of Chess and the Chess-world than was to be learned in the corner of a parlor and at his exhibition room, never affected to disguise from such persons the fact, that he required an agent for the operations of his Automaton; the only secret for *them*—and it always remained a tantalizing secret—was *how* the agent acted upon the Automaton, when the ocular demonstration seemed to be perfect, that there could be no room for a player within the box. It was, therefore, allowed to be known in a certain Chess-circle, consisting chiefly of Mr. Dexter, Mr. Oliver, Mr. Picquet (the French consul), and Mr. Paine, that a strong player from the *Café de la Régence* had arrived, and was hourly expected at Boston. But more than this, Mr. Dexter himself had been at Paris, only a few months before, and, visiting the great resort of Chess-players in company with Dr. Niles, of the American Legation, had seen Schlumberger playing with La Bourdonnais;† and Schlumberger now came to Boston with an intro-

\* I may as well cite here the whole of what M. St. Amant says of his teacher, in the first volume of his own series of the *Palamède*, p. 236:—  
" Nous avons long-temps possédé un joueur d'échecs très intelligent qui fit son éducation au Café de la Régence, où, après avoir perdu son patrimoine au trente et quarante, il était devenu professeur d'échecs, vivant uniquement de trois à quatre francs qu'il y gagnait journellement. Nous l'appelions *Mulhouse*, du nom de sa patrie. Le directeur de cette *Revue* lui a l'obligation particulière de l'avoir initié aux premières grandes combinaisons du jeu, par une démonstration pratique renouvelée fréquemment. *Mulhouse* étoit émule de Mouret et de Boncourt, c'est à dire de première force après Labourdonnais."

† Mr. Dexter saw La Bourdonnais giving Schlumberger the *Pawn and move* and the *Pawn and two moves* alternately. Schlumberger, always veracious, said that La Bourdonnais could give him the *Pawn and move*. I

duction to Mr. Dexter from their common acquaintance, the same Dr. Niles. Mr. Dexter, therefore, immediately received him in the midst of his Chess-playing friends; and with these gentlemen Schlumberger, during his stay in Boston, was henceforth constantly playing, by invitation, at their houses. He found Mr. Oliver the strongest player of the circle; but neither he nor any other player in the United States, at that time, could make any stand before the equal of Alexandre, Boncourt, and Mouret, and the worthy antagonist of the "King of the Chess-board" himself. He was invited, of course, solely as a Chess-player and Chess-teacher; but the invitation came from persons, to whose houses Chess would have been no passport, if associated with bad habits or bad manners. I find, in fact, that the impression which Schlumberger made everywhere, under such circumstances, was in the highest degree favorable; all testify, that his manners were gentlemanly, and his conduct every way respectable. His countenance was remarkably agreeable in expression; his features well-defined and handsome; his nose well-formed and prominent. The admirable formation of his head, with its dark brown hair, and his beautiful chestnut eyes, are always dwelt upon by those who had known him. His figure was muscular and well-proportioned, with the drawback which Poe has commemorated, of "a remarkable stoop in the shoulders." Many of Maelzel's directors, Alexandre, *Le petit Juif*, and Mouret, had been small men; Schlumberger, like Boncourt, was tall—full six feet high. Although a rapid Chess-player, he was rather slow of motion, and slow of speech. When visiting gentlemen's houses, he was always neatly and respectably dressed; but at all other times he appears to have reasoned like Sir Toby Belch, that any clothes were good enough to play Chess in, and was by no means careful of his personal appearance. As one, too, who, for the sake of Chess, had long since shaken hands with the conventionalities of social life, he was quite indifferent to the class of his lodgings, so they were within the reach of his narrow means. In Boston, indeed, he lodged in a superior boarding-house, which adjoined Julien Hall; but in other places, he chose much humbler quarters, although—wherever Maelzel had a private table in his exhibition rooms—the two allies not unfrequently dined together. On such occasions, they had, I am told, a most amusing way of keeping

suppose La Bourdonnais was still trying to give him the greater odds, which he may have been able to give him a year or two before, but when he failed, consoled himself by falling back upon what he could really afford to give.

the Chess-board *en permanence* between them, while making a deliberate and gentle progress through the pleasant stages of the savory meal. Attacks and counter-attacks were vehemently carried on, fork in hand. Maelzel would meditate a move as he masticated; and Schlumberger, always rapid at Chess, would reply without the loss of a mouthful. The severity of "desperate situations" was softened to the German's heart by copious draughts of claret; and his French antagonist, in the keen pursuit of victory, put the glass often unconsciously to his lips. Neither of them was by any means deliberately disposed to intemperance; yet if the game happened to be protracted to an extraordinary number of moves, Maelzel, to be sure, would be steady as a rock, but Schlumberger might, perhaps, murmur his *Echec et mat!* "with the least sign of a hiccup upon him."\*

But to return from these pleasant contemplations to business. In the first place, the terms of the oral contract between my two heroes were now formally reduced to writing;† and, as a fortnight elapsed before Schlumberger assumed the public direction of the Automaton, I infer that it required thus much time to become accustomed to the manipulation of the mechanism. Some indiscreet editorial friend did indeed announce, on the 4th of October, that full games were soon to be played; but on the 7th he had to acknowledge that he had been misinformed. On the 13th Maelzel was out with a very clever card, in which he cunningly replied to the boast of a New York editor,‡ that the Automaton had not been able to cope with any of their players in full games, by first complimenting the Boston players with being quite equal to the New Yorkers, and then informing them, that they should have the opportunity of playing full games with his Automaton, in private exhibitions, every day, at noon, for a short time. Accordingly, on Monday, the 16th of October, Maelzel had the satisfaction of seeing his Chess-player occupy the same proud position as it

\* I owe this pleasant picture to the pencil of the humorous and intelligent Signor Blitz, who drew from his own observation in 1836.—It will have been discovered, that I know *Father Tom and the Pope*.

† The contract was drawn up by a gentleman, then in Boston, who had some business connexions with Maelzel. He merely remembers, that Maelzel was to pay Schlumberger fifty dollars a month. No doubt, Schlumberger's travelling expenses were paid in addition. The terms may have been varied afterwards. It is certain, at least, that both parties were perfectly satisfied with each other.

‡ *New York American* for Sept. 30th.

had done in London, in Paris, and in Amsterdam. Schlumberger seconded him as faithfully and as stoutly as the strongest of his former directors. It is a little singular, however, that in the evening of that same triumphant day, the same Schlumberger should have been beaten in an end-game by a mere youth, who came forward, at Maelzel's request, because no older player was ready to help fill up the hour. Perhaps Maelzel encouraged the youth by allowing him to have the first move; perhaps Schlumberger had not yet sufficiently studied the variations of the problem; perhaps he had dined with Maelzel, and their game had had too many moves. A more serious defeat appears to have followed during the same week. At one of the mid-day exhibitions, Schlumberger most unaccountably lost a full game to another very young player, to whom he could with ease have given the Rook. The same young gentleman, Dr. Benjamin D. Green, has since risen to eminence in his profession; but I doubt if any professional skill or success has ever given him so peculiar a distinction, in a certain circle, as his having been "the man that beat the Automaton." Poor Schlumberger's ill luck came near doing still greater mischief. On one occasion, just as Maelzel was bringing the Turk out from behind the curtain, a strange noise was heard to proceed from his interior organization, something between a rattle, a cough, and a sneeze. Maelzel pushed back his ally in evident alarm, but presently brought him forward again, and went on with the exhibition as if nothing had happened.\*

On the 28th of October, after a fortnight of such playing of full games, in connexion with the usual evening exhibition, Maelzel closed his Boston campaign.† We next hear of him at New York, on his

\* The same mishap, according to M. St. Amant, once occurred in the case of Boncourt, at Paris. Perhaps it was in consequence of several dangerous accidents of this kind, that Maelzel adjusted to the interior of the mechanism a terribly noisy spring, which the director had only to touch, upon the first admonitory tickling, and then could sneeze or cough as freely as he liked, without the least fear of dissolving by his noise the "burden of the mystery."

† I am indebted to Mr. Joseph A. Potter, of Salem, the well-known problem composer, for the newspaper dates of Maelzel's visit to Boston. The same matter, with copies of editorials, etc., had been already furnished to the editor of the "Book of the Congress," by Mr. William H. Kent, of Boston. Whatever else I have been able to present has been gathered for me by the active researches of the same gentleman, and communicated to me in a series of very agreeable letters.

way to Philadelphia. It would seem that the New York players had not been disposed to acquiesce, with entire satisfaction, in the compliments which Maelzel had paid to the Bostonian amateurs at their expense. A certain *Græco*—as he misspelled the name—came out in the New York *American* with a challenge to the Automaton chess-player, in the midst of his victories over the Bostonians in full games, to play against him, as the representative of New York chess, “for love or money.” Maelzel, being now in New York, answered this challenge, on the 7th of November, by saying, that he was authorized by a number of the gentlemen of Boston, whose chess reputation had been thus indirectly aimed at, to accept Greco’s challenge, provided the stakes played for should not be less than one thousand dollars, and from that to five, at his option. The thing appears to have been quietly settled by the two strongest of the New York players calling on Maelzel, and contesting a few games in private with the new Director. The result was made known by a second card of Greco’s, in the *American* of the 11th, wherein he states, “that since his former communication both of the American chess-players, on whose skill he had relied so arrogantly, had been beaten with ease by a foreigner, and that he must therefore ‘back out’ from his challenge, as better men had done before him, and subscribe to the Automaton’s superiority without a trial.”

Maelzel had said, in his card of the 7th of November, that he was to remain in New York only three days before going to Philadelphia by appointment. I have no doubt that he did come on hither immediately, although his solemn “arrival” is announced in the Philadelphia newspapers under date of December 22d; for his preliminary arrangements at Boston had consumed a month, and those which he made here were such as to require a still longer time, and constant personal attention on his part. Whether Philadelphia was, from the first, his city of predilection I cannot say: it certainly came to be so; and the steps which he took at the outset would appear to have proceeded from some feeling of the kind. He rented—for a term of years, as I understand—an old building, long since burnt down, in Fifth street, below Walnut, adjoining the lot on which the African church now stands. The second story had already been used as a dancing-hall by a M. Labb . This Maelzel fitted up, at very considerable expense, as an exhibition-room, with a new broad stairway, and private rooms for himself, where he could look after his Automaton, and enjoy his chess-dinners with Schlumberger, in a most delightful state of bachelor inde-

pendence. He retained the control of this building for so many years, and occupied it so large a part of the time in person—merely letting the lower story—that it came to be regularly known as “Maelzel’s Hall.”

In no city, moreover, does Maelzel appear to have formed such intimate and lasting connexions with native or foreign residents as here. He had known the elder Mr. Willig, then our most extensive music-seller, in Europe. With him he was on terms of close personal intimacy, and to him he entrusted the secrets even of his bank book. Mr. John F. Ohl was resorted to in many matters of business from the beginning; and we shall find his name associated with Maelzel’s down to the latest transactions which I have to record. From an early period, Maelzel rented of Mr. Ohl some kind of store-room, where he had an odd fancy of depositing broken stools and benches, or other trumpery, which he knew to be useless, but which he had it not in his heart either to part with or destroy.\* His acquaintance with native residents lay directly among such men of science and ingenuity as took an interest in the inventions which he had perfected, or could help him in those which he was continually meditating. He was constantly keeping at work artists and artisans of every description, one upon one detached part, another upon another, of some complicated mechanism; while no one but himself knew the relation of the parts to each other, and to the whole. From one of these ingenious men, my friend Mr. Joseph J. Mickley—then a young pianoforte manufacturer, now better known for his union of personal amiability and integrity with curious knowledge—I have learned more of what I know of Maelzel and Schlumberger, in their private character and relations, than from all other sources.

Their acquaintance began by Maelzel’s sending for Mr. Mickley, when the Hall was nearly finished, and when the final noisy preparations for the first exhibition were doing their last and worst—late, therefore, in December—to make some slight repairs in the upright

\* So it was told me; but I am pretty sure that this old store-room played a more important part in Maelzel’s arrangements. When he was in Europe he needed a safe deposit for his Chess-player; and Mr. Ohl’s store-room, and the neighborhood of the friendly Mr. Willig, were precisely what was wanted for his purpose. On his distant tours into the interior he never took the whole of his Exhibition with him: a part was left behind and stored in this same room.

piano on which Maelzel used to play—and finely, too—to accompany his Trumpeter, or guide the motions of his Dancers. My amiable friend, who had the advantage, as a native of the Moravian settlement at Bethlehem, of speaking German readily, appears to have made an immediate and agreeable impression upon Maelzel. He was, at once and for ever, made free of the exhibition; he was a frequent and welcome visitor at Maelzel's Hall; and his shop was a favorite resort of the great inventor. On one of his earliest visits to the Hall, he found the stout, grey-headed exhibitor, not as usual, quiet, bland, and urbane, but busily training some one behind the curtain in the proper manipulation of the dancing figures. He was himself ordering, fretting, fault-finding, scolding in most emphatic French, while the unseen pupil was mildly and good-humoredly interposing pleasant deprecations. Maelzel interrupted his grumbling to apologize to Mr. Mickley for his awkward disciple, by saying, in good-natured German, "He is a novice: he has only been a little while with me." The tall, stooping young man left his puppets and passed out. Soon afterwards Maelzel took occasion to introduce the young man to Mr. Mickley as "Monsieur Schlumberger."

Schlumberger was, therefore, not the "Director" of the Automaton alone, but also Maelzel's "Assistant" in his exhibitions. He acted, moreover, as a kind of confidential secretary and clerk; at one time writing his letters, at another time going round to the different mechanics, who were kept busy as I have described. Maelzel appears not only to have valued his services very highly, but also to have delighted in his society, and to have become attached to him personally. He was fond of having him with him when he walked out to Mr. Mickley's factory, or other favorite resort, and was delighted to see him engaged in conversation with others. If Schlumberger told a pleasant story, or said anything approaching to a good thing, Maelzel was the first to give his smile or laugh of approbation. At the Hall they were sure to be found together at the chequered board. Maelzel was passionately devoted to Chess; and if he was really "an inferior player" (as Mr. Walker has called him), his inferiority was shown—where Chess-genius shines most—in the combinations of the middle of the game; in end-games Schlumberger declared him to be superior to himself. Besides such occupations in direct connexion with Maelzel, and his visits to the house of Mr. Vezin and some other amateurs in his capacity of Chess-Professor, I cannot learn that Schlumberger formed any sort of intimacy or acquaintance with any of our residents of whatever nation or

class. Perhaps he had the feeling, natural to men of inferior energy, that, once thrown out of his hopes for life by misfortune, any attempt to recover his position was idle, and that nothing was left to him but to live on by such means as chance had thrown in his way, without asking or looking for anything from his fellows. It is creditable to him, if such were the case, that he abandoned himself, in his despondency, to no habits inconsistent with the respectability of his former position.

Maelzel's first exhibition-season in Philadelphia extended from the 26th of December, 1826, to the 20th of March, 1827. The Hall was open twice a day—at noon and in the evening—and full games as well as end-games were played, but whether indifferently at either hour I do not know. The Automaton lost one end-game—the famous Three Pawn position—to Mr. Daniel Smith; and one full game to a lady, Mrs. Fisher.\* The latter game happens to be the only specimen of poor Schlumberger's *play*—I will not say *skill*—that has been preserved. It was printed at the time in the *Philadelphia Gazette*, and was afterwards reported in Mr. Stanley's *American Chess Magazine* (p. 57). It was played at two different sittings, on the 30th and 31st days of January. Maelzel's devotion to the fair sex was quite too profound to allow his Automaton to insist upon his prerogative to take the first move; nay, Schlumberger is said to have had peremptory orders to get beaten. After the lady's 39th move, "Mr. Maelzel (says the newspaper), at this stage of the game, considering it lost, politely thanked Mrs. F., and observed that he was fairly beaten. . . . He also remarked that the Automaton had been conquered but three times—once in Paris, once in Boston, and by Mrs. F. of Philadelphia."†

Maelzel's success would have warranted his remaining as much longer as he liked in Philadelphia; but he was wisely anxious to reap

\* There is a tradition (not perfectly authenticated) that the late Mr. Vezin won a game of the Automaton. I have also been informed that the Philadelphia Chess Club, consulting, under the presidency of Mr. Vezin, played with the Automaton at a private exhibition, and lost.

† Maelzel did not, I suppose, consider himself bound to speak as upon oath, while uttering this speech in honor of the Philadelphia lady. He had already told Coleman in New York, that his Automaton had been beaten five times in Europe. In a clever article in the Quarterly Review for June, 1849,—which I could guess to be Mr. Tomlinson's—the Automaton is said to have lost six games in three hundred; but this must be allowed to have been an astonishingly small proportion, when it is recollected that in those three hundred games, Mr. Lewis gave the Pawn and move to all comers.

the fruits of that expectant curiosity which had been excited elsewhere. Closing, therefore, his exhibition on the 20th of March, he proceeded to Baltimore, and on Monday evening, the 30th of April, opened a season, which lasted—with an interval from the 2d of June to the 8th of October—until the 16th of November (1827). He found a suitable Hall in the Fountain Inn, Light street, which he fitted up with arrangements for living there by himself, precisely as he had done in Philadelphia. Schlumberger was sent, or went, to take lodgings in some second-rate inn, but spent a great deal of his time in playing with Maelzel, or with gentlemen of the city. I believe it is not to be understood that he played only with those who engaged him as a teacher. Maelzel was glad that he should play as much as possible with the first-rate amateurs of every city which he visited; partly, no doubt, from kindness to Schlumberger, who must have missed his daily enjoyment of the *Café de la Régence*; partly to keep him in good practice; and partly, by finding out who were the strong players, to prevent any surprise at his exhibitions. Among the places which Schlumberger most frequented for this purpose, was the office of a young physician, who, besides being a clever amateur, was deeply interested in the mysterious mechanism of the Automaton, as a scientific inquirer. Actuated by such curiosity, he had already visited New York the year before, and had then not only played with the Automaton, but had also formed an agreeable acquaintance with Maelzel himself. He was now, therefore, much in Maelzel's society; he was, by standing invitation, a frequent visitor at his exhibitions; and he was one of those with whom Maelzel was glad to have Schlumberger play. From the correspondence and conversation of this distinguished Baltimorean—Dr. Joshua I. Cohen—I have learned several interesting particulars in reference to all three of my heroes; and these I record with unusual satisfaction, because I have found my courteous and obliging informant to have been, from his scientific habits, an acute observer, and to be singularly accurate in the recollection of his observations.\*

Although Schlumberger found some strong players in Baltimore—among whom Mr. Amelung then ranked as the first—there were none to whom he could not have given odds. Dr. Cohen usually received from him the Knight, and with these odds could make a pretty good

\* I owe my first valuable communication from Dr. Cohen to the attention of Mr. H. Spilman, editor of a remarkably well-conducted Chess-column in the *Baltimore Dispatch*.

stand against him. Schlumberger would, however, now and then lose an even game to some of the Baltimore amateurs; and Dr. Cohen mentions one incident of the kind, which is quite to the purpose to show, that a first-rate player cannot always do justice to himself unless the adversary be one that calls for the full exertion of his powers. One day when he was playing in his office with Schlumberger, a friend came in, to whom he offered his place at the board, and a chance to try his skill against the "soul of the Automaton." The new comer asked for no odds, and yet—after a hard contest—won the game. Schlumberger immediately said, "I cannot play even with you—I must give you a piece:"—he gave him the Knight, accordingly, and beat him with ease. He had, probably, at the outset, perceived the inferiority of his antagonist, and could not arouse himself from that "sheer indifference," to which Mr. Staunton somewhere pleads guilty, under like circumstances, until he had got into a position where no efforts could save the game. I infer from what Dr. Cohen says, that in this case of giving odds, as well as in games played at the exhibitions against ordinary antagonists, the director made sure work by converting the opening into a gambit:—to most of our players—in their ignorance of the proper defence—the gift of the Pawn was indeed (in Mr. Walker's phrase) a "Greek gift."

In the public exhibitions, full games were not often played, because not often called for; but on these rare occasions Schlumberger never allowed himself to be beaten. When the Automaton adhered to its claim of the first move, the game was made a gambit; when the adversary had the move, Schlumberger invariably resorted to Mouret's favorite defence of *King's Pawn one*—a Boeotian defence, thoroughly understood at the *Café de la Régence*—so often played afterwards by La Bourdonnais, so thoroughly detested by McDonnell. In playing end-games, Schlumberger did not come off quite so well:—he was sometimes beaten, although very seldom. One of these defeats was suffered at the hands of the same young physician, to whom, in private play, he regularly gave the Knight. Dr. Cohen has given me a very agreeable account of the circumstances. Although a constant visitor of the exhibition, he had never taken any part in the play; but on one occasion, with the room full of company, no one answered Maelzel's invitation to try the Automaton in a game. Dr. Cohen was, therefore, induced by Maelzel's request, seconded by that of his friends, to come forward to the little table. The diagram was shown him, and he was asked *which side he would take?* The problem was the eighth

of the little green book—the one hundred and thirty-first of your *Oriental Chess*, from which I suppose it was copied. Dr. Cohen did not pretend to analyse the position upon such a mere moment's notice; but, seeing a Queen, Rook, Knight, Bishop, and five Pawns on one side, and two Rooks, one Knight, one Bishop, and four Pawns, *without* a Queen, on the other, he ingeniously guessed, that what was meant to *appear* the weakest side was really the strongest, and therefore chose the queenless White. Playing merely to oblige Maelzel, and expecting to be speedily checkmated by his powerful adversary as of course, he took no great pains; but perceiving as the game advanced, that his own position appeared to be really by far the stronger of the two, and encouraged by the great interest manifested by the company, he began to take all possible pains with his moves; and, at the end of an hour, nothing was left for him but to give the *coup de grace* and say *Checkmate!* Maelzel was too cunning to suffer this word of triumph to be pronounced in public, if he could avoid it. He therefore blandly requested Dr. Cohen—as if merely to show off one of the curious powers of the Automaton—to make a false move. The Doctor readily complied; the Turk shook his head, thumped angrily on the lid of the chest, replaced the offending piece, and made his own move, amidst the plaudits of the spectators.\* The keen Chess-

\* I may as well note here as elsewhere, that in the matter of “false moves” the Automaton was as great a stickler for law, and nothing but law, as any Chess-codifier of the present day could be; but—like Aristophanes’s old man, that had a memory only for such debts as were due *to* and not *by* him—he could take the law into his own hands upon occasion. In Boston—during his first visit, I believe—when the Automaton had made his move, Maelzel coolly took up the piece and put it back in its place again. The Automaton immediately repeated the move, and Maelzel again annulled it. But when the Turk made the same move a third time, it was with an emphasis that thoroughly awed the Proprietor, and he went off and repeated it on the adversary’s board without further resistance. Mr. Dexter afterwards asked Maelzel what the thing meant. Maelzel told him, that he thought the Automaton was making the wrong move, but Schlumberger had convinced him that it was the *coup juste*. Much the same thing once happened here. My venerable friend, Mr. Value, Professor of French, was once playing with the Automaton—an end-game, I suppose—when Maelzel took the same liberty of recalling the Turk’s move, both a first and a second time. The third time, the Automaton made a different move, and Mr. Value’s game went to pieces immediately.

players, who had followed the moves with such interest, did indeed cry out—"But how about the game?"—a question quite too impertinent, of course, when put by so paltry a minority, to receive any sort of attention. Dr. Cohen himself was so good-natured as really to be sorry for his victory. He knew that Maelzel was always angry with Schlumberger for losing a game, and that whenever this happened—as might now have been the case—in consequence of an innocent cup too much, he used to swear horribly at his meek and penitent director in the terrible German, which he reserved for such occasions.\* The Doctor was still more annoyed when he saw in the next morning's paper a regular bulletin of his victory, and began to foresee, that the reputation for Chess skill, which he was thus acquiring, might be a burden too heavy for him to sustain.† He therefore called upon Maelzel immediately, to express his regret at the unauthorized publication. Maelzel complained that the game had been ill-played by the Automaton, and was desirous that the victor—who was showing himself so courteous and generous—should try the same position again, at the next exhibition.‡ But as Dr. Cohen was far from coveting any

\* Lest this should be understood to poor Schlumberger's disadvantage, I think it right to say, that he not only was no drunkard, but that he was rarely intemperate, and even then, I think, chiefly from not being aware, while absorbed in a game of Chess, how much wine he was drinking. He drank only wine or ale; and the conductor of the exhibition, during Maelzel's absence in Europe, assures me that Schlumberger was as rigidly temperate as he was faithfully attentive to his business. I suspect, therefore, as I have hinted before, that the occasional lapses, of which I know Maelzel sometimes complained, were nearly all the consequence of such Chess-dinners as I have described, which came too late in the day to allow Schlumberger's head to get properly settled before he was obliged to enter the box.

† As I record Dr. Cohen's *apprehension* I am reminded of the *realized* sufferings of poor Jouy. He had the honor of being beaten in one of La Bourdonnais's blindfold games, and of being named therefore in the poet Méry's *Soirée d'Ermites*. Henceforth none of Jouy's ordinary antagonists—parlor Chess-players—would play with so formidable a celebrity. In his despair, he abused Méry roundly for having clothed him in such a lion's skin, and was heartily grateful to the first man that did him the favor, by a series of beatings, of letting people see (as he said), the ass's ear peeping out from underneath. (*Le Palamède-St. Amant*, t. vi. p. 426.)

‡ Dr. Cohen had been allowed (perhaps as an inducement to him to play), not only to choose his side, but also to take the first move. Now, under these

such notoriety, and had played solely to oblige Maelzel, he felt perfectly at liberty to decline a repetition of the contest.

Maelzel's Baltimore campaign was marked by an event of far greater importance than defeat in one end-game or two—I mean the discovery and publication of his secret. The affair happened in this wise:—two youths, who had in vain exhausted every means of discovering the secret of the mechanism, by such observation and inspection as the exhibition afforded, took it into their heads to approach their object in another direction. That part of Maelzel's exhibition-room, from which the Chess-player, the Trumpeter, and the Dancers were successively brought before the curtain, was furnished with windows, which could be looked into from the roof of a shed near by. Upon this roof the boys mounted, during the first hour of the exhibition, ready to see whatever should offer itself to be seen. When the hour was over, Maelzel rolled back the Chess-player behind the curtain. It was during the last week in May, and the heat in that Southern city was excessive; to Schlumberger in his box it must have been well-nigh intolerable. Intent only upon relieving his ally, Maelzel stepped to the window, threw the shutters wide open, and then, going back to the Automaton, he removed the top, as one turns round the leaf of a card-table.\* From the mysterious crypt within there immediately emerged, in full sight of the boys, the very unpoetical figure of a tall man in his shirt-sleeves, whom there was no difficulty in recognising as Schlumberger himself. The discovery was as alarming as it was surprising to the young fellows. To be the depositaries of a secret, which, in

circumstances, he could—according to the book—have won by force in seven moves. And yet Maelzel may have been both sincere and correct in saying that the Automaton—even under these disadvantages—would have won but for bad play, for Dr. Cohen, in his first careless moves, had probably given Schlumberger a chance to retrieve his desperate game, if he had not been himself as careless, for the moment, as his antagonist.

\* Such was the impression of the young men, but they were certainly mistaken. The top of the chest was not in any way fastened to it, but was always lifted off. It was not only detached from the chest, but was also made to fit very loosely to it—that is, a space was left between the side of the chest and that part of the lid—a concave moulding—which shut over it, as may be clearly seen in Von Kempelen's drawings. This shutting over and loose fitting of the lid, along with certain notches cut in the upper edge of the chest, constituted one of the means for keeping up a constant supply of fresh air for the player.

their minds, exceeded in importance all secrets the world had known, since the days of the Eleusinian Mysteries, was a burthen under which their strength gave way, as did that of Caleb Williams, when he had become an involuntary witness to the crime of his master. One of them "rolled the stone off his breast" (as the Germans would say), by telling everything to his father. The story began to spread; and in a few days—on Friday, the first of June—an article, with the attractive head *The Chess-player Discovered*, appeared in the Baltimore *Gazette*. When the statement of this discovery was first made to Maelzel, he treated it with huge disdain. He said he was used to such pretended discoveries, and that he was not to be frightened into paying hush-money; but his friend, the younger Mr. Willig, and others, who knew the character and standing of the youthful witnesses, warned him that he must not treat the affair so lightly, but that he must take some steps to prevent a belief in the discovery from taking root. Maelzel began, thereupon, to consider the propriety of resorting to the tactics of his New York campaign: he thought of entrusting his secret to Mr. Willig, and of requesting *him* to act as Director, *pro tempore*, at one or more exhibitions, while Schlumberger, no longer in his shirt-sleeves, should enact the part of "adversary" at the little table. But Maelzel was saved by his unerring tact, and by his lucky stars together, from finally resorting to this expedient. He must have had the sagacity to discover, very soon, that nobody credited the pretended discovery. The world had set its heart upon believing that the secret, which had puzzled mechanicians, mathematicians, and monarchs, for more than half a century, was something quite too deep to be penetrated by a couple of boys. The *National Intelligencer*, of Washington, the very highest newspaper authority in America, sagaciously treated the *Gazette* article as having emanated from Maelzel himself—"the tale of a discovery was but a clever device of the proprietor to keep alive the interest of the community in his exhibition." The smaller fry of editors, after being put on their guard by the "Newspapers' Mother,"\* were far too cautious to make fools of themselves by repeating the shallow story; and thus

\* When the *Young Chevalier's* Highlanders were marching out of Edinburgh for the battle-field of Prestonpans, they dragged along with them, by hand, a heavy gun, which they had captured in the town. They could not be convinced that a gun without shot was of no use. The *cannon*, they said, was the *musket's mother*; and they seemed to calculate on the better behavior of their own small arms, under the awful eye of the big maternal field-piece.

it was that a revelation, which might have been expected to spread over all the country like wild-fire, did nothing but raise a slight smoke in one city, and even there, as if fairly ashamed of itself, it soon vanished into air. It was, moreover, lucky that the month of June had come, and that, further exhibitions of any kind being out of the question, Maelzel could discontinue his, without appearing to do anything at all out of the way. Nor did his good fortune end here. His success in America had induced him to send to Paris for other pieces of mechanism, by which he had been wont to diversify his exhibitions in Europe. The most remarkable of these was his truly magnificent panoramic view of the *Conflagration of Moscow*, which contrived to reach our shores just at the moment when its inventor and proprietor must have thought anything a god-send, that could divert the thoughts of the public from the Automaton and its secret. Accordingly, on the 5th of June, he was enabled to thank the people of Baltimore for their kind patronage, and to inform them that the *Conflagration of Moscow*, which had elicited so much admiration in Amsterdam, Paris, and London, would be exhibited in a short time, *in addition* (for it would never do to 'back out') to the *Chess-player*, etc. The short time was four months. On Monday, the 8th of October, the first of the renewed exhibitions was given, and the proceeds were wisely and benevolently devoted to a public charity. While the public attention was absorbed by the brilliant spectacle, the Automaton gracefully effected its retreat, merely throwing out as a rear-guard the following note at the foot of the larger advertisement: "The Automaton Chess-player will be exhibited only to private parties, on application to Mr. Maelzel."

By this prudent withdrawal of the *Chess-player*, poor Schlumberger's "occupation was gone," except so far as he was obliged to put in practice Maelzel's hard lessons in puppet-dancing—a piece of manual skill wherein one might doubt if he ever gave absolute satisfaction; for it was in reference to this, that he rather explained than complained to a friend, that "the old gentleman was very difficult to please." But I believe it was not so. I am told, that his disposition to do his duty well, along with his superior intelligence, made him really perfectly *au fait* in the management of the *Funambulists*, and now of the *Conflagration of Moscow*, in all its ever-varying movements. In fact, he came at length to be quite as indispensable to Maelzel in his secondary character of "Assistant" as in that of "Director." And while doing this justice to Schlumberger's fidelity and acquired skill as an Assistant, I am tempted

to add a fuller statement of what I merely alluded to before—the evidence, namely, which he gave of some literary taste and historical knowledge, during the perusal of Scott's Life of Napoleon. One of the clever Baltimore amateurs, with whom Schlumberger volunteered to play occasionally, was a young professional gentleman of high position. Discovering in the unpretending Director's conversation the evidences of good education and cultivated taste, the amiable Baltimorean, in a spirit of refined courtesy, presented him with an elegant copy of the famous biography, which had then just issued from the press, and was absorbing the attention of all readers (as I well remember), not less than *Ivanhoe* or *Old Mortality* had done a few years before. The attention was gratefully received; and the merits and demerits of the history, as the perusal advanced, were the subject of animated discussion at successive meetings over the Chess-board. But Schlumberger, with all the marks of his German race, was a Frenchman—as truly a Frenchman as were his brother-Alsatians, Rapp, Lefebvre, or Ney; and if there be any one book in the world, which all Frenchmen have agreed, with one accord, to be angry with and abuse more than any other, it is the imperfect and unequal attempt of the great novelist to delineate the career and character of their idolized Emperor. The wrath of Schlumberger would appear at last to have come into an odd kind of conflict with his real politeness and good nature. At the moment of leaving Baltimore—on the 2d day of December, 1827—he addressed to the gentleman in question a very elegantly-worded letter, wherein he thanked him warmly for his many kind attentions, and then maliciously begged *his* acceptance, in turn, of a book, which he had carefully selected as likely to jar as much with his *American* friend's opinions, as Walter Scott's "libellous biography" had with *his*, as a *Frenchman*. The joke will not, I hope, too much damage my hero's character for good breeding, when due allowance is made for that excessive French sensibility on this one point, which the polite donor had not calculated upon. Nay, I hope this anecdote may help to remove an unfounded impression, which I have found quite current in Philadelphia, namely, that Schlumberger was but a "kind of living Chess-board," with neither mind for, nor interest in, any subject but one. It is probable, that few of those who played with him spoke enough of any other subject than Chess, to discover what he knew besides, or some of them might, perhaps, have found him, to their surprise, a man of better education than themselves.

In a pleasant conversation with his friend, Mr. Willig, the younger—but whether during this, or a later, visit to Baltimore, I do not know—

Maelzel once said, "You Americans are a very singular people. I went with my Automaton all over my own country—the Germans wondered and said nothing. In France, they exclaimed, *Magnifique ! Merveilleux ! Superbe !* The English set themselves to prove—one that it could be, and another that it could not be, a mere mechanism acting without a man inside. But I had not been long in your country, before a Yankee came to see me, and said, 'Mr. Maelzel, would you like another thing like that? I can make you one for five hundred dollars.' I laughed at his proposition. A few months afterwards, the same Yankee came to see me again, and this time he said, 'Mr. Maelzel, would you like to buy another thing like that? I have one ready made for you.'" This was Maelzel's account of a matter, which—like the discovery of the secret—gave him some trouble, and ought (one would think) to have destroyed the attraction of his Chess-player. But again his star prevailed.

I have only an imperfect knowledge of this cross-current in the stream of my history, but I give what I have been able to learn.\* An ingenuous "Yankee"—so they call him, but I do not know whether I ought to admit him to share with me that title—had begun to construct an automaton chess-player before Maelzel's visit to this country. From what is said of it, I infer that it was made after the conjectural drawings given in Willis's clever book.† The maker—Mr. Walker—did not

\* What follows is copied substantially from Mr. Fiske's minute of a conversation with Mr. Walker, the constructor of the "American Chess-player."

† I call the book clever, but, after all, its merit has been much overrated. Willis did indeed guess pretty well the manner in which the player might be concealed, while the successive opening of the doors was going on; but his solution of the more difficult problem, how the player knew the adversary's moves, and made his own, was as erroneous and as clumsy as possible. A far more remarkable book was that of the Freyherr zu Racknitz (equivalent, I understand, to Baron Racknitz), entitled *Ueber den Schachspieler des Herrn von Kempelen und dessen Nachbildung. Leipzig und Dresden, 1789.* (With seven Plates.) Having been written in German, nobody read or understood it—except (as Hegel complained) one, and he *misunderstood* it, and called its author *Mr. Freyhere*. Racknitz did not guess the mode of hiding the player so well as Willis; but he *did* guess—and did actually copy in an automaton of his own—Kempelen's application of Magnetism to his purposes. The magnetized men, the silk threads and little iron balls, the separate board within, the pentagraph—all these are found in Racknitz's automaton so nearly the same as in Kempelen's, that one might reasonably suspect some treachery on the part of one of Kempelen's Directors.

finish it, and begin to exhibit it, until after Maelzel had gone to Baltimore. The first exhibition was in May (I think) 1827, at New York, at the corner of Reade street and Broadway. The newspapers pronounced it to be, every way, as good as Maelzel's Turk, except that it was by no means so strong a player. As soon as Maelzel became aware that this rival Automaton was in the field, he wrote to his friend Coleman, to inquire about it; and Coleman was "discomfortable cousin" enough to answer, that Walker's was decidedly the better Automaton of the two. Thereupon Maelzel hurried on to New York—in the interval (as I conjecture) between the closing and the renewal of his season in Baltimore—and forthwith went with Coleman to witness the performance of the "American Chess-Player." When the exhibition was over, he was introduced by Coleman to the two brothers Walker, and said to them, in what they characterize as his "sly way" (put on, perhaps because he was talking to Yankees), "Your Automaton is very good, but then you know it is very different from mine. There is no use of our having two automatons in the field. I will give you a thousand dollars for your machine, just to tear it up; and you shall become my cashiers." The brothers declined the offer, and proceeded to exhibit their Chess-player at Saratoga, Ballston, and other places. Maelzel returned to Baltimore, and in due time re-opened his exhibition, just as coolly, to all appearance, as if his secret had not been completely exposed, and as if his Automaton had not ceased to be a unique wonder, within the space of a few weeks. My opinion is, that Maelzel had seen too much, during his visit to New-York, and had reflected too much on the deep-rooted prejudice of the American people in favor of *his* Automaton, to be seriously disturbed by the prospect of what the brothers Walker could do to interfere with his success. It was not *any* Automaton, that the people were bent on finding supremely wonderful, but *the* Automaton—the unique, historical invention of Von Kempelen. It was fatal, again, to the Walker Chess-player, that anybody could beat it. And finally, what were the American brothers Walker—ingenious men, to be sure, but "prophets in their own country"—in comparison with the most celebrated mechanician of the age, the inventor of the *Métronome* and of the *Panharmonicon*, whose name had been repeated in every scientific journal, from the *Magazin Encyclopédique* to the *Edinburgh Journal of Science*; and what was their naked exhibition of a Chess-player, copied from other men's drawings, to such a display of mechanical genius as one evening in Maelzel's Hall presented, when the original Chess-player was seen in

connexion with the *Funambulists*, and with *Moscow*, with the *Speaking Figures* and the *Trumpeter*, all introduced to the admiration of the spectators by the inventor himself, with a tact which proved him to be the absolute perfection of an exhibitor? A year in America must have satisfied so shrewd an observer as Maelzel, that he occupied a vantage-ground, from which no efforts of rival exhibitors, nor even the ordinary accidents of fortune, could easily drive him. He took full time, therefore, for his Baltimore season; and it was not until after the beginning of December, that he retraced his steps leisurely to Philadelphia and New York.

Although Maelzel left Baltimore early in December—for Schlumberger wrote the above mentioned note of the 2d, on the eve of his departure—he appears to have been in no remarkable hurry to exhibit again. He does not advertise in Philadelphia until the 5th of January, 1828, and then he speaks of himself as on his way to New York; but, mindful of former kindness experienced here, he proposes to open his Hall for a short exhibition season. The season lasted, in fact, until the first of March. No mention whatever is made, in his advertisements, of the Automaton Chess-player. I suppose, therefore, that he was now lodged in the old store-room on the premises of Mr. Ohl. This temporary relegation may have been the consequence solely of the discovery at Baltimore, or it may have had some connexion with an exhibition of the Walker Automaton, which I find advertised in our papers of the 11th of December. Some kind of negotiation or scheme appears, at any rate, to have been occupying the mind of Maelzel, for on the 3d of March he advertises, that he suspends his exhibition here in order to make arrangements in New-York for an exhibition there. To New York he went, undoubtedly, but—from some unknown cause—he did not exhibit there during this year. His short visit, it is likely, had some other object in view. On his return, he resumed his exhibition here—again without the Chess-player—and continued it from the 12th of March to the 19th of April.

We next find Maelzel once more in Boston, where he opened a season, which might appear to have extended (with some short interruptions) from the 4th of June to the 3d of October. But this appearance covers a curious transaction, the nature of which I have learned only at the latest and quite unexpectedly. After about three weeks of exhibition, Maelzel informed the public, that he must close his Hall for a few days, during a journey which he was obliged to make to New York. It is impossible to conjecture precisely what had been going

on in that city for some months to be fidgeting poor Maelzel at this rate, and calling him away, first from Philadelphia, and then from Boston. The Leuchtenberg affair was long before this time done with, and he never troubled himself about the Walker Automaton after his first offer.\* The only other transaction, that I know anything of, is a negotiation of much the same kind with another ingenious Yankee, Mr. Balcom, who had made, or proposed to make, still another Automaton Chess-player. I think it very likely, that Maelzel bought Mr. Balcom off; but whether—as stated in the *Chess Monthly*—there ever really was a finished Automaton in the case, purchased for five thousand dollars, and “ruthlessly consigned to the flames,” may perhaps require some confirmation. It is certain, however, that in some way he took Mr. Balcom’s genius into pay; for on the 6th of September he publicly announced the reception of a new Android, the *American Whist-player*. Now this Whist-player was made by Mr. Balcom for Maelzel; and the probability is, that what was originally begun by the troublesome Yankee as a Chess-Player was never finished as such, but was turned into this less objectionable shape “for a consideration,” and so the “opposition” ended. Whether any actual use was made of this new Android I am not informed. I have been told, however, that the nearest Schlumberger was ever known to come to an involuntary revelation of the secret, whereof he was the depositary, was in protesting to a friend against the substitution of an Automaton Whist-player for the Automaton Chess-player, “For *I*,” says he, very earnestly, “do not like Whist, but *I do* like Chess.”

In connexion with this buying off opposition by buying in new automata, Maelzel appears to have formed a plan for selling the greater part of his exhibition—always excepting his beloved Trumpeter and the Chess-player—while its attractions were at the highest. On the 15th of July he advertised his willingness to dispose of “Moscow” to

\* A little too fast. On the 9th day of May, and to appearance, while on his way from Philadelphia to Boston, Maelzel cautioned the public, through the *New York Evening Post*, against the “American Automaton Chess-player,” then exhibiting at the Museum. The thing, he assured them, “was not the Automaton, exhibited by *him* in New York, two years before, nor had it any real pretensions to the skill and power of that celebrated Chess-player.” It must have been subsequent to this manifesto, I suppose—but I do not know when or for how long a time—that one of the Walkers really travelled with Maelzel as his Cashier, but with no reference to any purchase of the “American Chess-player.”

any individual or company on reasonable terms. The sale was actually made, on the 22d of August, to a company of three Bostonians, for the sum of six thousand dollars. It was in the terms of the bargain that Maelzel should recommend to the company a competent exhibitor,\* and should allow the exhibition to be advertised as his. He himself took in pieces the Automaton Chess-player and the Trumpeter, and packed them off, I have reason to believe, for Philadelphia, to pass the long winter, silently and obscurely, in Mr. Ohl's storehouse, in the dull society of the other trumpery lodged there, while their happier proprietor should be making merry in his old haunts at Paris; for Maelzel had no sooner pocketed his money than he was off for Europe.† But the exhibition of everything except the two retiring automata—of the "Burning of Moscow," the "Speaking Figures," and the "Funambulists," together with an "Automaton Violoncellist" (never heard of before or afterwards)—was carried on in Julien Hall under the name of Maelzel, and with the indispensable assistance of our hero Schlumberger. From Boston the exhibition started upon a long expedition, which I am not interested to follow, inasmuch as it had no other connexion with the history of the Automaton than the presence of its "Director" (with his more glorious title suffering sad eclipse under that of "Assistant"), and left no other trace of its success than the confusion of dates and facts, which it naturally gave rise to, by bearing the name of Maelzel. Suffice it to say, that while the new company's agent, Mr. Kummer, was busily engaged in preparations for exhibiting "Moscow" and its companion mechanisms in Tammany Hall, New

\* The exhibitor guaranteed to the company by Maelzel (after having been recommended to him by the elder Mr. Willig) was Mr. William F. Kummer, who had become perfectly at home and favorably known all over the country, by travelling as an agent for the celebrated manufactories of jewelry in his native Baden. From Mr. Kummer, now living in Philadelphia at an advanced age, I have learned what is related in the text.—The dates of this second visit to Boston were furnished by Mr. Kent.

† Maelzel embarked for Europe (so Mr. Kummer informs me) on the 11th of September. Although he had made the sale of his "Moscow" on the 22d of August (three days before re-opening his exhibition, after closing it on account of the warm weather on the 26th of July) he continued to exhibit it in connexion with the Chess-player and Trumpeter until the 6th of September. It was not till the 13th of September, when he was already four days at sea, that "Mr. Maelzel," i.e. the new company, advertised the re-opening of his exhibition, in compliance with numerous solicitations, etc.

York, he was suddenly joined by the great exhibitor on the 13th day of April, 1829, then just landed from the Havre packet. The company, I should judge, had not found Maelzel's exhibition without Maelzel so successful, but that they were very glad to enter into new arrangements with him, in pursuance of which his automata and theirs were to be exhibited, for a time, in some kind of partnership. To all appearance, Maelzel remained in New York, without making excursions elsewhere, for a full year.\* This must have been Schlumberger's first residence there, except for comparatively short periods; and to this first opportunity of associating with the New York amateurs may be referred his connexion with the late Judge Fisk. I know nothing of their relations with each other beyond what is furnished by one rather interesting piece of evidence:—among the articles which came into the late Dr. Mitchell's possession, along with the Automaton, were copies of the two pamphlets in which the First and Second, and then the Third, of your *Games of the London and Edinburgh Match*, were issued in advance of the work as a whole. These bore the name of *Theodore S. Fisk*, with the addition, subsequently made, *Presented to his friend, Mr. Schlumberger*. The date of the presentation had been given, but the last and only important figure was accidentally torn off.

Maelzel came on to Philadelphia, after his year-long residence in New York, and opened his hall for exhibitions from the last of September until the first of December, 1830. From this date, my ability to trace a complete itinerary of my Turkish hero's campaign ceases. I judge that about this time Maelzel began to make some of those distant excursions, the existence of which is perfectly ascertained, but the existence alone, without either date or incidents. He made one long journey, at least, to Pittsburg, and from thence down the Ohio and the Mississippi, with longer or shorter halts for exhibitions, at Cincinnati, Louisville, and New Orleans;† and such recollections of some of

\* The exhibition in Tammany Hall continued from the 18th of May, 1829, to the 24th of April, 1830. It appears that he had brought over with him from Paris what he calls a "Diorama and Mechanical Theatre." On the 26th of September, 1829, he offers this for sale, together with his late useless acquisition, the "Whist-player," and another articles of his exhibition. On the 28th of January, 1830, he informs the public, that he had enriched his exhibition with another mechanism of his own, the "Carousel."

† Experience has taught me to put no confidence in such mere *guesses* at dates as have been given me for all of these visits, except the tour of 1836, afterwards mentioned. Everybody and everything has, in turn, regularly misled

these exhibitions, as have been communicated to me, induce me to think that they *may* belong to the space between December, 1830, and a long residence here during the summer and autumn of 1831—extending also, possibly, through the winter of 1831 and '32. A curious circumstance connected with this residence is Maelzel's again announcing by advertisement (late in the year 1831) that he is about to abandon public exhibitions, and that he offers for sale his Conflagration of Moscow, and the other now numerous articles of his Exhibition—always omitting the Automaton Chess-Player. This advertisement, like a former one of the same kind, may have been the prelude to a second voyage to Europe.\* For two years after this date, I have been able to glean nothing of Maelzel's movements, beyond an exhibition season in New York during the melancholy cholera year of 1832, and a third visit to Boston in the summer of 1833.† If he made any tour to Canada—according to the statement of the *Palamède* and the traditions of Philadelphia—I should assign it to this period, so barren of

me, except written documents, and the newspaper advertisements and editorials. Mr. Theophilus French, of Cincinnati, kindly attempted to examine the newspapers of that city for me, but the old files could not be found. An application to Louisville for information received no answer. Mr. Skinner, Secretary of the St. Louis Chess Club, assured me that Maelzel never exhibited in that city. An obliging letter from Mr. Charles A. Maurian, Jr., of New Orleans, convinced me—of what I had long doubted—that Maelzel was at least once in New Orleans. Some confusion has been created by the same tour having been made by "Maelzel's Exhibition" (*minus* the Trumpeter and the Chess-Player), while in the hands of the Boston Company. A searching of the New Orleans newspapers, in particular—with a view, especially, to determining the fact and date of Maelzel's embarkation for Havana from that port late in 1836, is surely a *desideratum*.

\* Mr. Mickley is quite confident that Maelzel returned to Europe more than once. The death of Mr. Willig, and the destruction by fire of all Maelzel's correspondence with him, make it impossible to *verify* this impression; which, however, is rendered highly probable by the entire silence of the newspapers during certain long periods.

† "During this latter visit" (says the well-known amateur, Mr. Hammond, in a note to Mr. Kent), "I had the audacity, boy as I was, to call on Mr. Maelzel one day, and propose a game with the Automaton. He received me with his accustomed suavity—escorted me into an inner room, where two gentlemen were quietly enjoying themselves at Chess—and in due time I had the satisfaction of a game, which was soon terminated, and I succeeded in coming off only 'second best.'"

other dates.\* It is not at all unlikely, however, that Maelzel either chose to lie by, for long periods, here or in New York—more probably here—withou t exhibiting at all, as he could well afford to do, or exhibiting without finding it worth his while to advertise. Maelzel's Hall was so well known, and so popular a resort, that if the tide of visitors had once been fairly made to set in, by a month's advertising, it continued to flow without further notice, until the newspapers gave the melancholy announcement, that the favorite exhibitor was about to pack up and go elsewhere.

But if Maelzel had really been for a while inactive, he ceased to be so, and was never more in motion than during the last four years of his American campaign. In 1834, after a three months' exhibition-season in Philadelphia, he would appear to have gone South as far as Richmond;† and in November, of the same year, he is found in Charleston, South Carolina.‡ His visit to Richmond was marked by the sudden and dangerous illness of Schlumberger—an accident, which not only interrupted the exhibition for a time, but also

\* Mr. W. A. Merry, of Montreal (who submitted my inquiries to several older residents and veteran Chess-players), and Mr. D. Rodger, have been able to find no evidence or tradition of Maelzel's ever having exhibited in that city, the most accessible and the most attractive for his objects of any in Canada. The ingenious Dr. Palmer, himself an exhibitor and a curious antiquarian, has also kindly made inquiries for me, and gives a decided opinion against the statement of the *Palamède*.

† Maelzel was certainly more than once at Baltimore, and his second visit was most probably made at this time; but the friend who examined for me the Baltimore papers for the first visit (in 1827) was unable to continue the examination beyond that date. I have myself searched the *National Intelligencer* in vain for any advertisement of Maelzel's during this year. If, therefore, he paused to exhibit at Washington, he must have contented himself with posting bills.

‡ Mr. Charles E. R. Drayton, Secretary of the Charleston Chess Club, remembers the fact of Maelzel's having exhibited in Charleston, but nothing more. Mr. Robert T. Paine, of Boston, went to Beaufort, S. C., to observe a certain total eclipse of the sun, and remembers, that afterwards, during the same tour, he played with Schlumberger at Charleston. Now, my astronomical colleague informs me that the eclipse in question occurred on the 30th of November, 1834. In spite, therefore, of George Walker's condemnation of Villot's too learned book, the Chess-player may admit that astronomy can, after all, be of some use.

confirmed in the mind of *one* acute observer, at least, the probable hypothesis of his being the moving power of the Automaton.\* It is also an odd circumstance, that by the advertisements of this and one other year, Maelzel would appear to have been in two places at once. A closer examination leads me to the more reasonable conclusion, that he occasionally found it profitable to divide his numerous curiosities, and to allow an agent to exhibit the attractive Conflagration of Moscow, &c., at Richmond, for instance, while he remained for a while behind at Washington with his inseparable allies, the Chess-Player and Schlumberger.† The last of these distant expeditions—if I may rely

\* The “acute observer” here alluded to was Edgar A. Poe. He appears not to have been in Richmond in 1834; but he was living there as editor of the *Southern Literary Messenger* at the time of Maelzel’s second visit, and inserted in the number of that magazine for April, 1836, the very clever paper which is now found in the fourth volume of his Works (pp. 346–70). He there speaks of Schlumberger’s illness as having occurred during the *former* visit, without specifying the year. The dates of both visits were most obligingly ascertained for me by Gustavus A. Myers, Esq., by searching the Chamberlain’s books for the memoranda of moneys received of Maelzel for his licence to exhibit. These memoranda were made under date of August 21, September 15th, and September 20th, 1834; December 10th, 1835; and January 6th, 1836. I am indebted for Mr. Myers’s assistance to the ever-friendly interference of Dr. Cohen, of Baltimore.

† My dates for this year are: March 15—May 31, at Philadelphia; May 23—July 5, at New York; August 31, Maelzel pays for a week’s licence at Richmond; September 8—November 1, at Philadelphia; September 15th and 20th pays for licences again at Richmond; November 30, at Charleston. In 1835, Maelzel is at Washington (according to his advertisements in the *National Intelligencer*) from November 27 to January 16 of the next year; and yet on the 10th of the same December he procures a licence at Richmond for exhibiting the Conflagration of Moscow, etc., and makes another payment for the same purpose on the 6th of January. The exhibitions at Washington and at Richmond were, therefore, nearly parallel with each other. I have become satisfied, however, since the text was written, that the exhibition at New York, from May to July, and that at Philadelphia, from September to November, 1834, were not Maelzel’s exhibitions, but exhibitions simply of Maelzel’s Moscow—whether of an *imitation* merely of his remarkable piece of mechanism—and such, I am told, were made—or of that sold in 1828 to the Boston company, which he afterwards replaced for his own exhibitions by a new construction. The circumstance that Maelzel made no protest (that I can find) against the Moscow being advertised as his makes the latter supposition the more probable one.

upon local recollections, unsupported by documentary evidence—was a second tour to the West during the autumn of 1836, and the ensuing winter.\* He is found here again in the spring, and here he remained until he left our shores, never to return. It must not be imagined, however, that he was always to be found at “Maelzel’s Hall.” He seems to have given up his hold upon that favorite building at the time when he advertised his Exhibition for sale, preparatory to an absence from the city for two years. During his subsequent visits, he exhibited once in the Union building, at the corner of Chesnut and Eighth Streets, but at other times in the Masonic Hall, Chesnut Street. His name is last associated with the Adelphi Buildings, in Fifth Street, below Walnut. When he had decided on a visit to Havana—to be followed, I understand, by a tour through the principal cities of South America—he resolved to reconstruct the most attractive mechanism of his Exhibition—the Conflagration of Moscow—on a grander scale. For this purpose he rented the Adelphi Buildings, where he kept all kinds of mechanics busily at work, during the summer and autumn of 1837. To superintend and expedite the work, he occupied private rooms in the same building himself. It may be recollected on how limited a scale he had been compelled to form his establishment during his first visits to New York, Boston, and Philadelphia; and that Schlumberger, when the contract was originally made between them, was so universal in his duties as to make any other assistant unnecessary. Maelzel’s subsequent success, and the great enlargement of his Exhibition, increased his regular staff, and relieved Schlumberger from his factotum *rôle*. His preparations for Cuba induced still another improvement. He took into pay an experienced exhibitor by the name of Fischer—partly, to be sure, because such a Head of Department had become necessary for the execution of his grand schemes, but partly also because the same Fischer had a wife, whose housekeeping talents would make it possible for the entire establishment to live together—an object of some consequence in a strange country. The system was carried into execution, by way of rehearsal, in the Adelphi Buildings, for some time before the embarkation for Cuba.

While Maelzel was thus absorbed in his preparations for Havana, Schlumberger was more than ever at leisure to accept the invitations

\* The fact of Maelzel’s having been at Pittsburg in September or October, 1836, on his way to the West and South-West, was obtained for me by Mr. Mickley from J. Chislett, Esq., of Pittsburg, Architect, after my own application in another quarter had failed to elicit an answer.

of our amateurs to play at their houses. At all events, the most distinct information I have received, in reference to such engagements, belongs to this period. The impression left on my mind by these anecdotes, compared with those which go back a few years earlier, is, that so far from having grown more careless in his habits, or more indifferent to the respectabilities of society, Schlumberger had rather outlived some of the influences of a hand-to-mouth life in the *estaminets* of Paris and in the free-and-easy old *Café de la Régence*. He had certainly grown more and more into the confidence and affection of Maelzel. I doubt, that is, whether Maelzel made arrangements to keep Schlumberger always so near him, as to be regularly his companion at the pleasant dinners I have more than once alluded to, until the intimate association of several years had taught the cautious old German the full worth of his faithful and amiable assistant, and had gradually called forth in his heart a feeling of real attachment to him.\* Their connexion had lasted so long, they were always so much together, their manner towards each other was such, that an opinion grew up, among our German citizens, at least, that Schlumberger was a near relation, or an adopted son, of Maelzel's; nay, some thought him to be actually his son.

I do not know that any of the anecdotes I have heard of his playing here, either in public or private, during these later years, have enough of interest for others to deserve repetition, yet one or two I will mention, were it only for the sake of the names, which I shall thus have a chance of recording in association with that of my hero. Maelzel, it has been seen, was willing and desirous that his director should play with certain amateurs, in every city, but he was not willing he should play with everybody. In 1831, he sternly broke up a nice little arrangement of *Mulhouse's* for privately enjoying a perfect paradise of Gruyère cheese and white wine, along with games at the Rook, in the back shop of a certain free-living Swiss watch-maker, on the ground that he did not wish such people to know, that he had a superior Chess-player in his pay—but I suspect the main reason was, that he did not like the man.† On the other hand, he put no obstacle in the

\* The dinner-picture of Signor Blitz belongs to the exhibition-season in Philadelphia, from April 25th to June 25th, 1836. He was daily with Maelzel, in his rooms, at that period, in preparation for his own part in the performances of the evening.

† Schlumberger and Vaton (for so the watchmaker was called) reckoned themselves as compatriots. Mühlhausen as it is in German) was politically

way of his playing in a place less intermediate between a gentleman's parlor and a Parisian *estaminet*: Schlumberger regularly frequented a hotel or restaurant, at the corner of Second and Dock streets, equally famous for its monopoly of Poughkeepsie ale and the presence of some quiet players at Chess or Draughts.\* It was a safe resort, for nobody there knew Schlumberger, or had a single thought for Maelzel's secret. Both here and in the watchmaker's back shop, Schlumberger was the same quiet, sober man—always absorbed in his game—fond of the light wine and pleasant ale, but fond within the limits of strict sobriety. In 1834, while Maelzel was exhibiting in the Masonic Hall, Chestnut street, Mr. Samuel Smyth, one of the most popular frequenters of the Athenæum, then a handsome youth (I take leave to say) of eighteen, played a game with the Automaton, and won. The event—partly no doubt from the interesting appearance of the youthful champion—was unusually exciting: a gentleman, among the spectators, was so far beside himself, that he rushed out of the room, and ran up Chestnut street, without his hat, to publish the rare phenomenon of a victory over the invincible Turk. The next morning, the youth called at the exhibition room; Maelzel received him with more than mere courtesy—he was overrunning with kindness for the young—and forthwith set him down to "play the game out" (such is Mr. Smyth's phrase) with Schlumberger.† So far from showing any ill-humor at his defeat, the good-

a part of Switzerland until near the close of the last century, and its factories are still supported, to a large extent, by the capital of the Swiss town of Basle. While George Walker, therefore, calls Maelzel's American director a *German*, our German residents here always speak of him as a *Swiss*.

\* Schlumberger was not only fond of Draughts—whether the Polish or the English game—but reckoned himself even stronger at Draughts than at Chess.

† While the proof of this page is before me, I learn from Mr. Smyth, that his victory was not won in public. The game was not finished during the short time allowed to the Automaton during Maelzel's later exhibitions. The position was, therefore, taken down, and Mr. Smyth was invited to call and play out the game in private. The only witness present, besides Maelzel, was the friend who accompanied Mr. Smyth, and who was no other than the hero of the hat. And finally, the incident of the hat must have occurred after this private interview, and not during the public exhibition.—I let the text stand, to show how difficult it is to gather from conversation—and, above all, from the conversation of one interview—a perfectly correct view of any occurrence.

natured director took the warmest interest in the superior Chess talent of his conqueror. He made him come frequently to play with him, in private, at the hall, and encouraged him with the assurance, that with perseverance in such study of the game he would be at least equal to Mr. Vezin. I need not say, that such amiable and disinterested attentions to a stranger youth left a most agreeable impression upon the mind of Mr. Smyth. Equally favorable to Schlumberger are the recollections of Mr. Henry G. Freeman—so well known in former years as by far the most rapid and brilliant player at the Athenæum—to whose house Schlumberger was introduced in 1837 by the late Mr. McIlhenney. It was during the same season, just before Maelzel's departure for Cuba, that Schlumberger played several times with my colleague, Professor Vethake, the Provost of our University. I have spoken elsewhere of my venerable friend's strength at Chess and of his intimacy with Mr. Vezin. He was now a new-comer to the city, and was for the first time in the neighborhood of the Automaton since it was played by Coleman, at New York, in 1826. Mr. Vezin, it is understood, had continued to receive Schlumberger at his house, with all the zeal and the deference of a good student at Chess, on every occasion of the Automaton's being here, after the first visit of 1827. If Mr. Smyth is correct in his reminiscences, Mr. Vezin, with all his diligence and talent, had never been able to make Schlumberger tremble for the possession of his magisterial seat: the last match between them, of nine games, gave but one victory to Mr. Vezin's score. He was now desirous of seeing the strength of his new friend, Professor Vethake, tried against one, whom he himself had found so uniformly invincible. He, therefore, brought Schlumberger frequently to Professor Vethake's house during the autumn of 1837; and, with all his amiability, I have no doubt he felt some satisfaction, in finding that his friend was no more able to make an effectual stand against him than he had been himself. Professor Vethake remembers, that at their last meeting he was so unusually fortunate as of three games to win one and draw another, while Mr. Vezin of two games lost both—a result which made Mr. Vezin good-humoredly remonstrate with Schlumberger for not playing as badly with him as with his friend. This last meeting took place (Professor Vethake believes) immediately before the final departure of the unfortunate director.

Nearly every particular of Maelzel's last expedition is involved for me in more or less of obscurity. The absence of the proper means of information, and the presence of too much information that cannot be

relied upon, have combined to perplex me in reference not merely to what took place at Havana, but also to what was done here, under the eyes of residents still living. Even the port from which he embarked was a point to be settled only by the unsatisfactory balancing of conflicting testimony, all of it imperfect, until the very last moment left me by the printer. The tradition is constant, at the West and South-West, that Maelzel went to Havana by way of New Orleans. For a long time I knew not how to deal with a tradition, so deeply rooted, while opposed by a similar tradition in favor of Philadelphia, until it occurred to me, that both might be true, but true of different visits to Havana. I have learned very lately, that this conjecture was the true solution of the problem—that Maelzel was twice at Havana, and that his first visit thither was most probably the continuation of his tour to the West in the autumn of 1836: it was far more inviting, and even more convenient, to take Havana on his return to Philadelphia by sea, than to retrace his steps by the great rivers. It was the very gratifying success of this first visit to Havana that made him so eager to return. It would seem, that he had a second time sold his *Conflagration of Moscow*, and that the Havanese had expressed great disappointment at not having been permitted to see what they had heard of as so admirable. He, therefore, promised to return, and to return with a Moscow for *them*, far more beautiful than had been seen by anybody before them. On his return to our city—in the spring of 1837, as I suppose—he began to devote himself (as I mentioned before) to the re-construction of this magnificent panorama, with an interest so absorbing, that he allowed the entire summer and autumn to go by without giving any exhibition.

As usual, his excessive particularity had tormented his mechanics and artists, with undoing and doing over their work, until he came near being too late for the opening of the best season at Havana. As it was, after having kept the vessel in which he was to go a week beyond her time, he was obliged to pack up his Moscow with some details still unfinished. He sailed from this port on the 9th of November, on board a vessel of his friend, Mr. Ohl's—the brig *Lancet* (Young, master)—a date which various “false witnesses,” with their “distinct recollection,” and “circumstances” supported by what looked like a “document,” contrived to divert me from discovering, until the sound of the press was in my ears. The great object was to be in Havana in time to have the exhibition open during the only good season for public amusements in a rigidly Catholic country so near the torrid zone—namely, from Christ-

mas to Ash Wednesday, which fell that year upon the last day of February. Considering what Maelzel had to do—or, at any rate, what he assuredly *would* do—before being or thinking himself ready to open his doors, the 9th of November was quite late enough for him to start. The passage usually occupied from ten to fifteen days after leaving the Capes.

There were persons at Havana with whom Maelzel was intimately associated during both his visits—Mr. Francisco Alvarez, merchant (a correspondent of Mr. Ohl's); Mr. Edelmann, a German music-dealer; and Mr. Amelung, another fellow-countryman; but all of these good witnesses have been dead for some years. Even the old *Diario de Habaña*, which could have given me Maelzel's advertisements, at least, has been looked for by an obliging correspondent, but the *Diario* has vanished with the rest. The correspondent in question, Mr. Julius Runge, a German merchant, was already settled in Cuba at the time of Maelzel's second visit, and the active Signor Blitz arrived there from New York only a few days after Maelzel, to carry on an exhibition of his own. These are the only living witnesses, then on the spot, with whom I have been able to confer or correspond.\* Both are in the highest degree intelligent and trustworthy; but neither was interested to become perfectly acquainted with all of the doings of Maelzel; nor do they perfectly agree in such imperfect recollections as they still retain of what passed so long ago. There is no doubt that Maelzel consumed the usual four or five weeks in getting ready, but there is also no doubt that his doors were at length open, by the end of Advent, to take advantage of the first reaction in favor of mirth at Christmas-tide. He had more than met the expectations of his Havana friends by the splendor of his new Panorama, and had himself good reason to be satisfied with his success. Mr. Runge remembers having been a frequent visitor to the exhibition, and knows that it was a favorite resort during the Carnival season. But the end did not correspond with this happy beginning. The exhibition became at length a disastrous failure. How long it dragged on its feeble existence—when it closed—I have no information. Some time in May or June (as near as can be recollected), Maelzel wrote a piteous letter to his old associate, Mr. Kummer, desiring him to engage an exhibition-room for him in Philadelphia,

\* I am indebted for the information received from Mr. Runge to the kind offices of his brother, Mr. Gustavus Runge, the accomplished architect, whom I am happy to number among my friends.

at the same time informing him of his misfortunes in Havana, and dating them from the death of his faithful assistant and director. Poor Schlumberger had died of yellow fever—at what precise date, and under what circumstances, I have been entirely unable to ascertain. His illness must have been short, for Signor Blitz, who was naturally a good deal at Maelzel's rooms, had heard nothing of it. While busy one morning in his own exhibition-room, he was surprised to see Maelzel enter, with unwonted marks of haste and agitation, and to hear him say abruptly, "Schlumberger is dead!" He thinks this was in the month of February. Mr. Kummer recollects that Maelzel, in his letter, spoke of having lost the best part of the Carnival by Schlumberger's death. I have little doubt, therefore, that Schlumberger died about the 20th of February, or a little earlier. But for such concurrence, however, between these two independent witnesses, I could by no means have accepted so early a date. Mr. Runge left Havana for Germany in March, that year, and speaks with confidence of Maelzel's exhibition, as being still successful, and his director still alive, up to the moment of his own departure. The yellow fever, too, does not usually visit Havana until much later. Dr. Antommarchi, the physician of Napoleon, died at St. Jago de Cuba on the 3d of April; but the scourge does not appear to have reached Havana until about six weeks afterwards; for travellers who left that city on the 30th of May, reporting the city as then healthy, spoke of the yellow fever cases as having occurred there about the middle of that month.\* Mr. Joseph L. Nobre, master of one of Mr. Ohl's vessels (the *Otis*), is confident that he saw Schlumberger, as well as Maelzel, at Havana during the winter and spring, and he thinks he saw them last together in the month of April. A date so much later, as would be indicated by this less positive testimony, is more consistent with Maelzel's remaining at Havana until the middle of July: that he should allow five months to elapse, after an event so fatal to his interests, without making any movement to return to Philadelphia, would certainly appear to be very unaccountable.

Mr. Runge remembers to have been informed, on his return from Europe, that Maelzel had taken great pains to keep the fact of Schlumberger's death as secret as possible. He undoubtedly calculated, at the moment, upon providing himself with some other director, and upon continuing his exhibitions with the same alacrity and success as

\* From a letter in the *Boston Evening Transcript*.

before. If so, he was deplorably mistaken—and that too from a cause, which he could not have taken into account, namely, the sudden and absolute prostration of his own spirit, hitherto so hopeful and so indomitable, consequent upon the loss of one, who had been for so many years his devoted and efficient ally. Schlumberger had grown to be nearer to his heart than he himself had been aware of. He used to reproach his director, at times, with being a mere child in everything but chess; but it was this very childlike inability to take care of himself—this childlike disposition to cling to the support and adhere to the interests of his strong-minded but kind-hearted employer—that had insensibly led Maelzel to regard him more as a son than as a salaried assistant. He might again, perhaps, draw to his side some needy first-rate from the *Café de la Régence*, but where could he expect to find the same amiable facility of character, the same friendly companionship? Reflections like these must have been doubly distressing to the solitary old man, who now lacked but four years of his three score and ten. There is no reason to think, that Maelzel closed his exhibition abruptly upon Schlumberger's death; nay, it is doubtful whether he even made any change in it; and that too for a reason, that brings to view another of the perplexing considerations connected with this Cuban campaign. It is by no means certain, namely, that Maelzel took the Automaton with him in this second visit to Havana. Mr. Runge's expressions, it is true, clearly imply, that the chess-playing of the Automaton formed a part of the exhibition; and to *us* it would seem, at first sight, that without the co-operating presence of the Turk, with his strange mystery, all the glory and charm of the exhibition would have departed. But we find that such was not the case. From the time of the Baltimore adventure in 1837, Maelzel had occasionally left out the Chess Player from his programme entirely, or had reserved it for private and occasional exhibitions alone. Such was the case when he exhibited here in the autumn of 1836. In the tour, which he made immediately after the exhibition, to the West, to New Orleans, and finally to Havana, he did indeed take the Automaton along with him; but when about to embark for his last expedition, he is said to have left the Automaton behind—to be a second time a solitary prisoner in the old store-room—and to have given as a reason for doing so his fear of Schlumberger's being disqualified, by some chess-dinner imprudence, from getting into it without manifest danger of making some awkward exposure. If Maelzel really said this, he said it because it was the most convenient thing

to say. The real reason, no doubt, of his now being rather backward to bring the Automaton prominently before the public was the fact, that the secret, in all its detail, had at length been published, under circumstances to produce some approach to conviction. Mouret's treacherous disclosures to the writer in the *Magazin Pittoresque* for 1834 had been republished, with additional details and a distinct certificate to its authenticity, in a periodical of the highest possible authority in Chess-matters, the *Palamède* of La Bourdonnais for 1836. This *Palamède* article, by De Tournay, had been immediately copied into the newspapers:—while Maelzel was here for the last time, in the Adelphi Buildings, he had the opportunity of reading his old director's disclosures in Mr. Robert Walsh's paper, the *National Gazette*.\* It is not impossible, therefore, that Schlumberger was separated from the mechanism, which he had so long inspired, at the moment of his death. If so, the exhibition may have gone on without any immediate change in the programme.† But the loss of one, who, by his fidelity and skill, had become as indispensable to Maelzel in the character of Assistant as in that of Director, must have begun speedily to tell. Fischer and his wife saw that the loss was decisive of the fate of the exhibition, and thereupon abandoned Maelzel at once. The double blow thus inflicted—first by death, and then by desertion—the mortal stroke, that crushed his interest, while it broke his heart—must have decided Maelzel perforce to close

\* The number of the *National Gazette*, for Feb. 6, 1837, containing De Tournay's article, was found among Maelzel's papers after his death.

† I have been so often led into error by trusting even the most veracious of witnesses, where documents were wanting, that even in this case, I cannot speak of the Automaton's being left behind as more than "probable." Mr. Kummer, who had the key of the old store-room during Maelzel's absence at Havana, thinks he saw the Chess-Player there, packed away in five boxes—dismembered, and mixed up with other articles, with a view to preserve its secret, even if the boxes should be opened. But is it certain, that he could guess the contents of the boxes by their outside? The Chess-Player was mixed up with portions of the *Carousel*. But the *Carousel* was precisely what Maelzel was most likely to have had with him at Havana. The mode of packing could not, and did not, preserve the secret, but was just such packing as would be made under Maelzel's circumstances at Havana, in distress, and with little help. Until, therefore, more is heard from Havana—until, especially, the advertisements in the *Diario* have been reported upon—I shall still retain some leaning for the opinion, that Schlumberger and the Automaton were together at Havana, at the time of his decease.

his exhibition entirely. Then it was that he looked back to our friendly city, and—while making such arrangements as he could, in his helpless position, for the voyage—wrote to his old ally, Mr. Kummer, the letter which I mentioned before. The letter was gloomy in its backward view of the past—gloomy in its prospect of the future—ominous signs, in the case of a man naturally so cheerful and so hopeful as Maelzel.

Maelzel's preparations had been completed in time to enable him to take passage on board a vessel of Mr. Ohl's—the brig Otis, commanded by his friend, Capt. Nobre—which had arrived in the port of Havana about the first of July. The vessel started on her return-voyage on Saturday, the 14th of the same month. When Maelzel came on board, with the other passengers, Capt. Nobre was struck by the remarkable change, which had taken place in his appearance, since he had seen him with Schlumberger only three months before, in April. At that time not the slightest sign of wearing disease or natural decay could be seen: he was as stout and florid, as active and as lively, as he had been twelve years before, when he landed at New York, still a young man at the age of fifty-three. But now it was evident that he was "breaking up"—that all the powers of mind and body were rapidly sinking, as though the source from which they had derived their strength had been suddenly withdrawn. He sat on the deck, with a little travelling chess-board in his hand, clinging with the last exertion of his faculties to his favorite game. As soon as the brig had cleared the harbor, and the captain had become at liberty, Maelzel produced his board and invited him to play. They sat down, in view of the Moro Castle, and played two games. The weakness of Maelzel's play, compared with his former strength, was a further evidence of his rapid decay. He won the first game, to be sure—for his antagonist had no great skill—but his strength did not sustain him equally for a second. The position came to be one not much unlike the favorite one of the Automaton—three Pawns against three Pawns. Capt. Nobre, who had the move, was dimly aware, that all depended upon which Pawn he should push first, and asked his skilful adversary, as a known master in end-games, to advise him. Maelzel, usually so courteous and so obliging, answered, with a little of the sick man's peevishness, "You must play your own game—I cannot tell you what to move." Capt. Nobre, being thus thrown upon his own resources, meditated his move well, pushed the right Pawn, and won.\* After dining—or attempting

\* Dr. S. W. Mitchell has in his possession a very small inlaid marine chess-

to dine—with the rest of the passengers, Maelzel took to his berth, and never left it again. He had brought on board with him a case of claret wine. This he made the steward place on the edge of his berth, that it might be always within his reach; and so long as his strength lasted he might be seen, from time to time, raising the bottle itself, with weak and trembling hands, to his lips—for it was impossible for him, in such a condition, to make use of a glass. He asked for nothing, received nothing, and said nothing. It was evident, that he was perfectly aware of his real situation; but whether he saw all as a blank before him, or whether he turned back in mind and heart to the Christian hope, whereto he had been made heir in that sacred edifice of pious Ratisbon, in which the music of his father's organ was wont to rise with the incense of the Holy Sacrifice—in either case he made no sign. For six days he continued in this state, with little appearance of change; but on the evening of Friday, as the vessel entered upon the shoals off the North American coast, the captain perceived that he began to sink rapidly; and early on Saturday morning, the 21st of July, he was found dead in his berth. With no other rites, than fastening a four-pound shot to the feet, the body was launched into the deep. The brig was at that moment off Charleston. Capt. Nobre went through the remaining duties, which were devolved upon him by the occasion. He caused the trunks of the deceased to be opened, and the contents to be inventoried, in the presence of the passengers. Twelve gold doubloons—and these, too, advanced to him by Mr. Ohl's correspondent, Mr. Francisco Alvarez—constituted all that remained of the treasures of Maelzel. One article only of some interest was found—the gold medal, by Loos, which had been presented to the great mechanician by the King of Prussia.\*

The news of the death of Maelzel was received in Philadelphia with a universal feeling of sincere regret. The language of the newspapers was but the echo of the general voice. Mr. Joseph R. Chandler, at this moment our Minister at Naples, then editor of the *United States Gazette*, made a happy allusion, in a feeling obituary notice, to those board, which there is reason to think was that on which Maelzel played these his last games.

\* This medal, after passing through several hands, was finally sold to the United States Mint, and, instead of being added to the very rich collection of coins and medals, there deposited, was barbarously melted down. Although not unique, it deserved a better fate, as well for the sake of the great artist who made it, as for its association with Maelzel.

productions of inventive genius, with which all that was generally known of Maelzel was associated. "His ingenuity seemed to breathe life into the work of his hands, but it could not retain the breath in his own nostrils; the kindly smile that he had for children will be no more lighted up on earth; and the furrow of thought that marked his brow as he inspected the movements of the famous Turk, will no more convey intelligence. He has gone, we hope, where the music of his Harmonicons will be exceeded; but his body will rest beneath the blue waves of the Atlantic, till the 'last trump' shall sound for the convocation of quick and dead." To this day, the memory of Maelzel is cherished with a feeling of affectionate respect among those who knew him here, whether merely by attendance upon his exhibitions, or by personal intercourse with himself. His position, in exhibiting, for his own emolument, the productions of his unsurpassed genius for curious mechanism, was felt to be hardly less dignified than that of the great painter, who derives profit from opening a gallery of his own works, or of the great composer, who seeks to derive support from his art, by presiding at a concert of his own elaborate symphonies. He won all hearts, moreover, by his fondness for children and his delight in making them happy at his exhibitions, by the liberal use of his profits for objects of benevolence, and by his amiable and obliging disposition, recommended as it was by manners gentle and urbane. He left no complaints behind him of contracts unfulfilled or bills unpaid. Whatever there may have been in his private morals, that might have detracted from this favorable impression, was forced upon the attention of nobody, and was never inquired into; and I do not consider it any part of my office, as historian of the Automaton, to draw from their dread abode the personal frailties of Maelzel.\*

\* Maelzel (sometimes written, and always pronounced, Mälzl) was born at Ratisbon (Regensburg) in Bavaria, on the Feast of the Assumption (August 15th) 1772, and baptized by the name of John Nepomucene, from the patron-saint of Bohemia, St. John of Nepomuk (Joannes Nepomucenus). His father was an organ-builder, and a man of great mechanical ingenuity in all respects. Maelzel was thoroughly trained to the profession of music, in theory and in practice. At the age of eighteen he was a teacher of the piano at Vienna. After a time, however, he became entirely absorbed in curious mechanical inventions; but his earliest and most important productions, in this line, were applications of mechanics to music. Such were the *Panharmonicon*, invented in 1805, the *Trumpeter*, in 1808, and the *Métronome*, in 1815. At the time of his death he wanted only about three weeks of sixty-six years.

Not less tenderly is poor Schlumberger still spoken of by the survivors of the far narrower circle, within which it was his humbler lot to move. Even those who did not know that the narrow crypt of the Automaton had been to him a refuge and a resource in misfortune, judged better of him than to set him down as a reckless and worthless adventurer. In one whose manners and language gave evidence of birth and education in a respectable position, on whose character neither crime nor degrading habits had affixed any stain, they saw nothing worse than what they could ascribe to a defective or anomalous organization—a devotion, namely, to Chess, so absorbing, as to convert into an exclusive employment and a livelihood, what should have been but the relaxation from the duties of some recognised business or regular profession. Whether the course of life which he had adopted, after his commercial misfortune, had led to his being disowned at home, I have no means of knowing; but that *he*, to the last, clung to some recollections of his family, I have been convinced by one piece of testimony, that happens to have survived the destruction, which fell so suddenly and effectually upon everything that was his or Maelzel's. Among a few papers that came into the hands of the late Dr. Mitchell, along with the Automaton, was an ill-bound quarto volume, containing the *Plates of a Cours de Physique*—such a text-book as might have been used in some French college. A stencil book-plate bore the name of SCHLUMBERGER-BLECH;\* and below was written, in the known handwriting of our Director, *donné à Ge. S.* (i.e. evidently *Guillaume Schlumberger*). This detached volume of an old school-book could have been of no earthly use to him; but it was the memorial of a father or a brother; and as such it had been brought over by poor Schlumberger from Europe—it had formed a part of his scanty luggage in all his travels over our country—and it had most probably been his companion, when he went to Havana to die. I trust that such a trait of character will plead in my favor with any reader of mine, who may be disposed to think that I have dwelt at too great length, or too tenderly, upon the memory of an obscure and unfortunate Chess-player.

The story of the Automaton, after the loss of its proprietor and its director, may be briefly told. Maelzel had made such use or waste of the large sums, which he had realized in eleven years of successful

\* I learn from a native of Mulhouse, that this name indicates a connexion by marriage between two families there resident, the Schlumbergers and the Blechs.

exhibitions, that after he had consumed five thousand dollars (it is said) upon the reconstruction of his Moscow for Havana, he was obliged to procure some advances of money, from his friend Mr. Ohl, for the rest of his outfit.\* The sum was no greater than could have been easily repaid, if the season in Cuba had been at all less overwhelmingly disastrous than it proved to be. As it was, Maelzel died with the debt unpaid; and Mr. Ohl had no other means of reimbursing himself than by the sale of what property of the deceased he had in his hands. This consisted solely of the various articles of the "Exhibition"—both such as Maelzel had taken with him to Havana, and such as he had left behind, in the old store-room, of which he had kept possession for so many years. The creditor immediately took out Letters of Administration, and, on the 21st of August, advertised the entire Exhibition for sale by public auction, precisely in the condition in which all had been packed up for the last time by the exhibitor himself. After some postponements, the sale finally took place at Mr. Ohl's store-house, on Friday, the 14th of September. The Chess-player was the first article put up, and was hastily knocked down to a bid of four hundred dollars. It was, in fact, bought in by Mr. Ohl himself. A minute too late, another bidder was on the ground, who would have offered more than twice that sum. Undoubtedly, both he that bought, and he who failed of buying, were under the impression, that what had redeemed the broken fortunes of Von Kempelen, and had been a perennial source of golden streams for Maelzel, must be a good speculation in the hands of another. But this was a great error—Maelzel's "Exhibition" without Maelzel was a body without a soul. And in reference to the mysterious Chess-player, in particular, it was only in favor of the great mechanician, that the public resolutely persisted in refusing to know a secret, which

\* I express myself according to what appears to be the truth of the case. But I may perhaps be really unjust to Maelzel if I do not state, on the other hand, what I have heard from many quarters, viz: that during several years, his funds were deposited here, under the charge of Mr. Willig; that at one time he had in bank over twenty thousand dollars; that afterwards, when Mr. Willig's age made him reluctant to take charge of any affairs but his own, Maelzel transferred his funds to other hands—here or elsewhere—whether for deposit or investment; and that, although such funds were not forthcoming to meet Mr. Ohl's claims, they may not have been wasted by Maelzel. Some inquiry after this deposit or investment was afterwards made on behalf of a brother of Maelzel's, living in Vienna—I know not with what result.

had been exposed and published a dozen times. Mr. Ohl, therefore, to his great surprise, no doubt, was not for a moment disturbed in the possession of his treasure by the offers of any speculating exhibitor, and may have often regretted that the sale had not been opened by some other article, or that the rival bidder had not come on the ground a little sooner.

While the Turk was thus lying in the storehouse of Mr. Ohl, consigned, in piteous dismemberment, to a tomb of five packing-boxes, Mr. George Walker indited his history for *Fraser's Magazine*, and denied to him—what Charles Lamb had claimed for his *Blakesmoor*—all right to utter his *Resurgam*. But Mr. Walker was so far mistaken, that the Automaton *did* “rise again,” although only—as would appear—that he might finally “vanish into space” by a process more glorious than that of slow decay. For his rescue from that ignominious fate, to which he appeared to have been hopelessly condemned, and for his restoration to the integrity of his form, in order to the sublime consummation, which was reserved for him, our hero was indebted to the curiosity and mechanical ingenuity, the enterprise and the popularity, of a very remarkable professional gentleman, whose loss is still fresh in the memory of a large circle of devoted friends—the late Dr. John Kearsley Mitchell, Professor in the Jefferson College of Medicine. This skilful and learned physician was as far as possible from being one of those who achieve professional success by dint of plodding industry exerted in one direction alone. A Scotchman by descent, a Virginian by birth—uniting acuteness and strength of mind with a delightful enthusiasm of character—a naturalist, a mechanician, a poet—he had the readiest intellectual sympathy with every operation of original power, no matter in what sphere it might exert itself. Whether it were a surgical operation or a sermon, Mr. Webster making a speech or Ole Bull playing a violin solo, Mr. Hobbs picking a lock or Mr. Rarey taming a zebra, the attraction might have been nearly the same for Dr. Mitchell. How keenly the interest of such a man must have been excited by the productions of mechanical genius exhibited by Maelzel may be readily guessed; but, with his imaginative turn of mind, nothing could have put him under a more irresistible fascination than the mystery that hung around the impenetrable creation of Von Kempelen. He appears to have cultivated, to a certain extent, the acquaintance of Maelzel—as others of our men of science and ingenuity had done—and he had been, it is to be presumed, just as successful as others in getting from him anything to relieve their curiosity. The newspaper translations of

De Tournay's article could not work perfect conviction in his mind. Who could tell whether Mouret had not earned his money, and preserved his honor (in some sort), by telling what only looked like, but in fact was not, the real secret? There could obviously be no satisfactory, final test, but that of the actual inspection of the mechanism itself. To secure this object, Dr. Mitchell resolved to get possession of the Automaton. Finding that Mr. Ohl—after a year and more had passed by without any offer—would now gladly part with it for the sum at which he had himself bid it in, Dr. Mitchell immediately took it off his hands for four hundred dollars. Having in view no plan of getting back his money, or making a speculation, and being by no means capable of such folly as to pay so large a sum for the mere gratification of his curiosity, he had, from the beginning, formed a very sensible plan for securing his object without taxing himself, or those who shared his curiosity with him, at any unreasonable rate. The plan was to make the Automaton the property of a club. Each member was to subscribe either ten or five dollars, and thereby become a joint-owner of the Automaton, and a joint-depositary of its secret, when discovered. These sums were certainly not too much to pay for what had cost Eugene Beauharnois thirty thousand francs; and the contrivance for preserving the secret from being lost was as ingenious as it was considerate for posterity:—with nearly seventy-five depositaries, most of whom would have the assistance of wives in their difficult task, there was but little danger, that the calamity would ever occur of both the Automaton itself and authentic witnesses of its mystery having all perished together. The plan was carried out with entire success. Many subscribed their entrance-fee to the club, because they wished at the same time to know the secret and to please the amiable Dr. Mitchell; others because they wished to please Dr. Mitchell, without caring to know the secret; and some few—as in all voluntary subscriptions—subscribed because they could not refuse. In this way a sum was raised, large enough to pay for the Automaton and to cover the expense of getting it into working order.

When the five boxes, wherein the dismembered Turk had been packed away—whether here or at Havana—had been transferred to the office of Dr. Mitchell, and then eagerly opened, a perfect chaos was disclosed; and the work of restoring the mechanism to its pristine integrity and efficiency was found to be no slight one. Not only had fragments of other parts of the exhibition—such as the knightly *Carousel*—been put into these five boxes, but parts of the Automaton itself had to

be searched for in other boxes, still in the possession of Mr. Ohl. With the help of Willis's drawings in the Boston pamphlet—of the *Palamède* article, as found in our city newspapers—of the plates in Racknitz's book (which somebody here happened to own), and of suggestions from ingenious friends, Dr. Mitchell succeeded, at last, in perfecting the discovery of the secret, and of proving his discovery to be true by the test of actual demonstration.\* These pleasant labors of restoration had

\* A description of what Dr. Mitchell then discovered to be the interior construction of the Automaton, with the processes of the Exhibitor and Director, was taken down from his lips nearly twenty years afterwards, and communicated to the first volume of the *Chess Monthly*. No provision having been made for illustrating my History by engravings, I have thought it useless to do anything more than to refer the reader to the article in question. It is hardly right do so, however, without saying, that in one important point, Dr. Mitchell was certainly mistaken. { The Exhibitor did *not* open all of the front doors at once, nor was the Director, at the moment when the opening of the doors began, in the *smaller* compartment. It is clear from various accounts (those of Windisch, Racknitz, and the *Monthly Review*, compared with that of Willis), that both Kempelen and Maelzel always pursued the same routine, viz. they first opened the door of the smaller compartment, and then held the candle at the little window in the rear, while the Director sat in the larger compartment. Next the drawer was pulled out; then the two doors of the larger compartment were opened—the director having slid into the smaller compartment, while the exhibitor was coming deliberately around to the front again, and pulling out the drawer. Dr. Mitchell says, that the doors were all shut, before the machine was turned about to show the back, and that it was after the doors had been closed, and after the machine had been turned round, that the Director slid from the one compartment into the other. Both of these statements are incorrect. The Director shifted his position, while the machine was still facing the spectators; and while the machine was wheeling round, on its castors, the front doors were all flying loosely about. The proceeding described by Dr. Mitchell would have seriously weakened the demonstration, that there was no man inside; while the sublime effrontery of the actual process was a Q. E. D. that left not a word to say.—I may add, that in another place, by a mere misprint, the player's knees are said to 'fill up'—it should have been 'lift up'—the floor.—In justice to Kempelen, I ought to make the following explanation. Dr. Mitchell says, that Kempelen did not conceal his player in the simple but wonderfully ingenious way, that made the glory of the Automaton in Maelzel's time, but made him lie at length behind the drawer, and could therefore have nobody but a dwarf or very short man (less than four feet) for a Direc-

occupied Dr. Mitchell's intermissions of professional duty during the summer of 1840. Early in the autumn, he was prepared to invite the members of the club to his office, and to exhibit to them the construction of the Automaton, and its mode of operation. He himself did not disdain to enter the mysterious chest—as Eugène Napoleon had done before him—to conceal his own portly person first in one compartment, then in the other, and finally, after pulling this string for the eyes and that for the head, to work the pentagraph-handle, which effected the moves on the board above. Private exhibitions to the families of the shareholders and other friends followed. Mr. Kummer, whom I have had occasion to mention before, was first called in to act as Director during these exhibitions; but, after a short time, the seat of Schlumberger came to be occupied by my friend, Mr. Lloyd P. Smith, at this moment the accomplished and courteous Librarian of the "Philadelphia Library company." At that time a mere youth, he had already acquired some reputation as a promising Chess-player. His father, being one of the shareholders, took him with him, one day, to Dr. Mitchell's office, and had him initiated into a knowledge of the great secret—a privilege which had no longer any need of being expensive, now that the affair had been paid for. From the vivid excitement of his imagination, under the influence of a discovery to him so surprising, it was a natural step to desire to be himself the hidden agent in the delightful work of

tor. There is not the slightest foundation for this injustice done to the genius of Kempelen—an injustice perfectly innocent, however, on the part of Dr. Mitchell. The case was this. A friend lent Dr. Mitchell Racknitz's pamphlet, with its seven plates. Not reading German at all, Dr. Mitchell supposed these plates to be *bona fide* representations of *Kempelen's* Automaton, whereas they really were drawings of an Automaton of Racknitz's own, which he had constructed in order to demonstrate, that Kempelen's *might* be worked by a man inside. Now Racknitz, who guessed so perfectly the true way of becoming acquainted with the adversary's moves, failed entirely in guessing the manner of concealing the player. *He hid his* player behind the drawer, and made him figure accordingly in Plate IV, where Dr. Mitchell saw him, and took him for a director of Herr von Kempelen's.—The remains of a telegraph, which Dr. Mitchell saw, without being able to guess how it was used, was an apparatus for a part of Kempelen's exhibition, described by Windisch, viz. the Automaton's answering questions by making words out of an alphabet spread out before him. Maelzel never exhibited this feat in public, because it gave, quite unnecessarily, an additional opening to the discovery of his secret.

mystification. No offer could be more acceptable to Dr. Mitchell; and young Lloyd was presently instructed in all that was necessary for his new office.

An exhibition or two of this kind, in one's own private rooms, may be very amusing indeed, but a series of them—at the appointment or request of others—is rather too much. It was soon quite desirable to have the club of shareholders decide what should be the ultimate disposition of their property. At that time, the fine building in Ninth Street below Chestnut, erected for the reception of the accumulated curiosities of the ingenious Mr. Willson Peale, still contained (I believe), in its lower hall, the very interesting collection formed in China by Mr. Dunn, and thus came to be known as the "Chinese Museum." The stockholders decided to deposit the Automaton in this building. Thither accordingly it was removed, after having been exposed, for a short time—but without (I believe) any demonstration of its powers—in the Annual Exhibition of the Franklin Institute. But the Turk, although now in a fair way, as it seemed, of being finally released from service, after so many years of wandering, was required to appear once more in public, and in no very dignified attitude—before the title of *emeritus* could be conceded to him. The office of Director was too exciting and amusing to young Smith to be parted with so abruptly. It was accordingly arranged between himself and the late Mr. McGuigan, the popular superintendent of the establishment, to give a few public exhibitions of the Automaton in the Chinese Museum. The public were, therefore, solemnly informed by advertisement, that "although public curiosity had been partially gratified with the interesting piece of mechanism, its mystery had never yet been solved;" and on the 23rd of November, and four or five other evenings, during the following six weeks, young Smith had the pleasure of directing the operations of the Automaton to small audiences. One occurrence of that last exhibition-season was not only quite an event in a young man's life, but also a curious testimony to the simple perfection of the Hungarian's mechanism. At that time, we had here the very fashionable and very excellent young ladies' school of the late M. Picot. As Dr. Mitchell was physician in ordinary to the school, it occurred to him to invite all the pupils in a body to attend one of the exhibitions of the Automaton at the Chinese Museum. The kind-hearted Doctor, as forward to please the young as was even Maelzel himself, dispensed—in favor of the dear school-girls—with all the formalities of the silken cord and other *noli me tangere* securities, and turned the whole beautiful bevy at once

into the space usually monopolised by the solemn Turk. While he proceeded to open door after door, and to hold a candle to the little windows in the rear, the curious young people were allowed to crowd as closely around as they pleased, and to use eyes and hands at discretion; but with all their looking and searching, they did not discover the slightest trace of the wicked youth, who was sitting comfortably in his "second position"—with his limbs elongated under the floor, and a green baize door in front—coolly using his eye-glass to scrutinise the unconscious little beauties through certain narrow apertures in the partition between the two compartments.

These rather childish exhibitions over, the Automaton—like Scott retiring with a *moriturus vos saluto* from public life—withdrawn to a private corner, near an unfrequented staircase, and from henceforth looked calmly through the glazed partition, that separated him from the world, without being disturbed by any further molestation. Such interest, in fact, as had been re-excited after Maelzel's death, had been either absolutely factitious or confined to a very narrow circle:—it had not sufficed to create any further demand on the part of the public, or to elicit any offers from any speculating exhibitor. Of the countless visitors of the Chinese Museum few ever inquired for, few ever saw, the forgotten Automaton. I do not remember ever to have heard of its being where it was, until I heard of its destruction.

Fourteen years after the Automaton had been thus deposited in the Chinese Museum, early in the night of the 5th of July, 1854, a fire broke out in the National Theatre, at the corner of Ninth and Chestnut street. It extended rapidly through the adjoining buildings to the east; it threw sheets of flame across Chestnut street upon the Girard House, to the north; and, on the south, soon enveloped the Chinese Museum, which was separated from the burning theatre by only a narrow alley. There was plenty of time to have rescued the Chess-player, if anybody had thought of it. But all interest in what had drawn crowds to Maelzel's Hall, a quarter of a century before, had now so completely died away, that the city newspapers, while devoting columns to the havoc made in bricks and mortar, in the frippery of the theatre, and the insured stock of shopkeepers, had not a word to give to the annihilation of a piece of mechanism historically more curious than any other the world has ever seen.

It can hardly be regretted, I imagine, that the Automaton Chess-player should have been destroyed as it was. Better, to the feeling of its admirers, a sublime departure, in the midst of a vast conflagration,

than slow decay in an obscure lumber-room. Such, at least, is the feeling of its American historian, as he draws his narrative to a close; and such, I may venture to conjecture, is that of him to whom that narrative is addressed with every sentiment of respect and admiration.

G. A.

Philadelphia, May 18th, 1859.

---

#### POSTSCRIPT.

In the hope that among the readers of the preceding sketch may be some who will feel interested, and have it in their power, to make such researches in the newspapers of the time, or into the traditions of their respective residences, as will fill up the wide chasms which I have been obliged to leave in my itinerary, and supply many interesting anecdotes unknown to me, I subjoin a mere skeleton of my own dates. From this it will be easy to see for what periods, chiefly, further researches are desirable. Any such contributions to the future completion of my sketch will be thankfully received.

No. 215 S. 17th Street.

1826.—April 3—July 5, New York. Sept. 12—Oct. 28, Boston  
Dec. 26, opens at Philadelphia.

1827. March 20, closes in Philadelphia. April 30—June 2; Oct. 8—Nov. 16, Baltimore.

1828.—Jan. 5—April 19, Philadelphia. June 4—Oct. 3, Boston  
Visit to Europe.

1829.—May 18, begins to exhibit in New York.

1830.—May 24, closes in New York. Sept. 30—Dec. 1, Philadelphia

1831.—Sept. 13—Nov. 18, Philadelphia.

1832.—May 14—July 5, New York.

1833.—May 27—Aug. 23, Boston.

1834.—March 18—May 31, Philadelphia. Aug. 21, Sept. 15, Sept. 20, licenses at Richmond. Charleston after Nov. 30.

1835.—(New York papers, for the latter half of this year, not examined.) Dec. 10, license at Richmond. Nov. 27, opens at Washington

1836.—Jan. 6, license at Richmond. Jan. 16, closes at Washington April 25—June 25, Philadelphia. September or October, at Pittsburgh, Cincinnati, and New Orleans. Embarkation for Havana (?).

1837—38. Dates of exhibition at Havana (?).

## XI. AMERICAN CHESS BIBLIOGRAPHY.

THE following list of works, written or reprinted in the United States, forms, if I am not mistaken, the first complete catalogue of the productions of our chess press. In perusing it, the reader will notice that although a large portion of the titles consists of books previously published in England, yet there are to be found several original additions of importance to the literature of the game. These lie chiefly in the departments of practical chess, of chess biography, and of chess serials. I have arranged the titles chronologically.

## I.

*Critical Remarks upon the "Letter to the Craftsman on the Game of Chess, occasioned by his Paper of the 15th of September, 1733, and dated from Slaughter's Coffee-House, Sept. 21." MS. New York, 1734.*

This work, as has been stated, in a full description of it given in preceding pages, was written by the Reverend LEWIS ROU, a Huguenot clergyman, in the city of New York. It exists complete only in the form of a manuscript.

## II.

*The Morals of Chess.* By DR. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

This essay, although it has been widely published, has never appeared in a separate form. The earliest work in which I have been able to discover it, is the first part (pages 141-148) of the collection of chess anecdotes by TWISS, which saw the light in 1787. TWISS introduces it with the following remark: "For the following pages, I am indebted to the author of the *Life of Dr. Young*." The author of Young's life was MR. H. CROFT. In TWISS the essay lacks the first or introductory paragraph, which reads as follows:

Playing at chess is the most ancient and most universal game among men; for its origin is beyond the memory of history, and it has, for numberless ages, been the amusement of all the civilized nations of Asia, the Persians, the Indians, and the Chinese. Europe has had it above a thousand years; the Spaniards have spread it over their part of America, and it begins lately

to make its appearance in these States. It is so interesting in itself, as not to need the view of gain to induce engaging in it; and thence it is never played for money. Those, therefore, who have leisure for such diversions, cannot find one that is more innocent; and the following piece, written with a view to correct (among a few young friends) some little improprieties in the practice of it, shows, at the same time, that it may, in its effects on the mind, be not merely innocent, but advantageous, to the vanquished as well as the victor.

In reprinting the essay, this is often omitted. Twiss also appends an additional paragraph from the pen of Croft, commencing: "When a player is guilty of an untruth to cover his disgrace," etc., which is often given in later works as Dr. Franklin's own. The essay has been published many times. It is to be found in Sparks' collection of Franklin's writings, in the *Massachusetts Magazine* (July 1791, vol. iii. pp. 431–433), in the *American Museum* (April, 1792, i. pp. 133–135), in the *Monthly Magazine* (September, 1804), in various treatises on the game of chess, and in many periodicals both foreign and domestic. It has been translated into French and Italian. But a good edition, illustrated with critical and bibliographical notes, and prefaced by a full account of Franklin's chess deeds and chess sayings, is still a desideratum.

### III.

*Chess made Easy. New and comprehensive Rules for Playing the Game of Chess, with Examples from Philidor, Cunningham, &c., &c. To which is prefixed a pleasing Account of its Origin; some interesting Anecdotes of several exalted personages who have been admirers of it; and the Morals of Chess, written by the ingenious and learned Dr. Franklin.*

This Game an Indian Brahmin did invent,  
The force of Eastern wisdom to express;  
From thence the same to busy Europe sent,  
The modern Lombards stil'd it pensive Chess.

DENHAM.

*Philadelphia, printed and sold by James Humphreys, at the corner of Walnut and Dock-Streets, 1802. 12mo. pp. 97.*

This little volume is the first separately printed chess work issued from the American press. It is an exact copy of a book bearing the same title which was published in London, by Symonds, in 1796 (and

in 1803), and of which brief critical notices may be seen in the *Analytical Review* (xxvii. pp. 433–434) and in the *Monthly Review* (xxviii. p. 478). The compiler's name is nowhere mentioned. Its contents are as follows: Advertisement; extract from the Analytical Review; Origin of the Game of Chess (said in the advertisement to be written by Favet, a Frenchman, undoubtedly a misprint for Frere); Anecdotes of the Game of Chess; the *Morals of Chess*; moves of the pieces and rules for playing; the laws of the Game; and a few games from Philidor, in which the Cunningham Gambit occupies nearly half the space. An engraved frontispiece represents the board, and above it are the figures of the pieces and pawns. The typographical execution of the volume is very neat, and it is, probably, in this respect, a close imitation of the English original.

#### IV.

*The Elements of Chess; a treatise combining Theory with Practice, and comprising the whole of Philidor's Games, and explanatory notes, new modelled; and arranged upon an original plan. Boston, printed for W. Pelham, No. 59 Cornhill. 1805. 8vo. pp. 208.*

This work was probably edited by William Blagrove, a nephew of the publisher, and an enthusiastic amateur. Its contents are: pp. 1–6, advertisement; pp. 7–14, description of the pieces and chess terms; pp. 15–21, remarks on the theory of chess, and the laws; pp. 22–156, games from Philidor; pp. 157–165 positions of the pieces in Philidor's unfinished games; pp. 166–200, nine of Philidor's blindfold games; pp. 200–208 appendix. The notation employed is that of the numerals, a 1, (White Queen's Rook's square) being 1, a 2 being 2, and so on to h 8 (Black King's Rook's square) which is 64. The frontispiece is a folding sheet with two engravings; one of the board and men arranged for play, the other, a diagram illustrative of the notation. The work is a vast improvement on the preceding title. It is printed by Munroe & Francis.

In the appendix the editor proposes a complete revolution in the nomenclature of the game. After some remarks on the unsuitableness of the names of the pieces, he says: "Impressed with a strong desire to see an amusement of such antiquity, of such fascinating attractions, freed from every incumbrance, the writer of these remarks proposes in the following sketch to substitute other names more expressive of the respective powers of the pieces; more suitable to the dignity of

the game; more descriptive of the military character; and better adapted to our feelings as citizens of a free republic." He then gives a scheme of the change which he advocates, thus :

<i>Old Names.</i>		<i>New Names.</i>
King	.	Governor.
Queen	.	General.
King's Rook	.	First Colonel.
King's Bishop	.	First Major.
King's Knight	.	First Captain.
Queen's Rook	.	Second Colonel.
Queen's Bishop	.	Second Major.
Queen's Knight	.	Second Captain.
Pawn	.	Pioneer.

Philidor's first game is next given "to show the effect of the new moves." Such expressions as "Fifth Pioneer at 36;" "Third Pioneer takes the General;" "Major covers the check at 52," and "Governor castles," present a strange appearance to the eye of the chess-player. Nor is this feeling diminished by the perusal of such notes as this: "You advance this Pioneer two squares to obstruct your adversary's first Colonel in his intended attack on your sixth Pioneer."

#### V.\*

*An Easy Introduction to the Game of Chess; containing one hundred Examples of Games, and a great Variety of Critical Situations and Conclusions; including the whole of Philidor's Analysis, with copious Selections from Stamma, the Calabrois, &c. Arranged on a New Plan, with Instructions for Learners; rendering a complete knowledge of that scientific Game perfectly easy of attainment. To which are added Caïssa: a Poem, by Sir William Jones; the Morals of Chess, by Dr. Franklin; Chess and Whist Compared; Anecdotes respecting*

\* It is scarcely necessary to notice here a book bearing the following title :

Analyse du Jeu des Échecs. Par Philidor. . . . Nouvelle Édition. . . . Philadelphie: chez J. Johnston, libraire-éditeur. Imprimerie de Lafourcade. 1821. 12mo. pp. 150.

The paper, typography, and general appearance of the work prove it to have been printed in Europe, and probably in Belgium.

*Chess and Chess Players, &c.* Philadelphia: published by H. C. Cary and I. Lea, and Abraham Small. Jesper Harding, Printer. 1824, 12mo. pp. 267.

This was first published, I believe, in London, by Ogilvie in 1806 (2 vols. 12mo.) Editions in one volume afterwards appeared in 1809, 1813, 1819, and at other times. The name of the compiler has never been made public. The miscellaneous collection of anecdotes, essays, and poems at the end is not without interest. The openings and games are all in the numerical notation (1 to 64), and no diagrams are given.

## VI.

*Analysis of the Game of Chess, by A. D. PHILIDOR. Illustrated by Diagrams, on which are marked the Situation of the Party for the Back-Games and Ends of Parties: with Critical Remarks and Notes by the Author of the "Stratagems of Chess."* Translated from the last French edition, and further illustrated with Notes, by W. S. KENNY, Author of "Practical Chess Grammar," "Chess Exercises," &c. To which is annexed "Franklin's Morals of Chess" and a "Practical Description of the Game," &c. Boston: Samuel H. Parker, 164 Washington Street, 1826. 12mo. pp. 252.

This is a reprint of an English book which appeared at London in 1819, and again, in a second edition, in 1824. It is a translation of Montigny's edition of Philidor, which, since 1803 (the date of the first impression), has been many times reproduced in France. The moves throughout the book are written out at full length, thus: "King's Bishop's Pawn, two squares." Forty-one diagrams, engraved on wood, are inserted in the text. An edition of one thousand copies was printed, but by a fire, which occurred in Boston the year following its appearance, the unsold portion of the edition, together with the plates and cuts, suffered a total destruction.

## VII.

*Elements of the Game of Chess, or a New Method of Instruction in that celebrated Game, founded on Scientific Principles: containing numerous General Rules, Remarks, and Examples, by means of which, considerable skill in the Game may be acquired, in a comparatively short*

*time. The whole written expressly for the Use of Beginners, by WILLIAM LEWIS, Teacher of Chess, and Author and Editor of several publications on the Game. Revised and corrected by an American Amateur. New York: G. & C. Carvill, Broadway, 1827. 12mo. pp. 275.*

Lewis published this book in London as early as 1818. The reprint is preceded by a brief advertisement, and at the end (pages 269-275) the American editor has added a code of Revised Laws, which had been sanctioned by the New York Club.

### VIII.

*The Games of the Match at Chess, played by the London and Edinburgh Chess Clubs, in 1824, 1825, 1826, 1827, and 1828. Also three Games (played at the same time) by Mr. Philidor blindfolded, with Count Bruhl, Mr. Bowdler, and Mr. Maseres. Also the Game played by a Lady of Philadelphia with Maelzel's Automaton. New York: printed for the Publisher, by A. Ming, Jr., 106 Beekman St. 1830, 8vo. pp. 8.*

In spite of its long title this is only an unimportant brochure. The title covers the first page; the second is devoted to a brief account of the Edinburgh-London Match; pages three to seven are filled with the games mentioned above, in the numerical notation: the last page is devoted to the well-known anecdote concerning the Persian player and his wife, to the position erroneously styled *Philidor's Legacy*, to a Knight's Tour, and to an explanation of the notation.

### IX.

*The Chess-Players; a Drawing by MORITZ RETZSCH, explained according to hints from himself, by C. Borr. von Miltitz, with additional Remarks on the Allegory. Re-published for the Warren Street Chapel. Boston: Weeks, Jordan & Co., No. 121 Washington Street. 1837.*

Having never seen this reprint of the celebrated outlines by Retzsch, I cannot answer for the correctness of the title. The additions to the remarks by von Miltitz are, I understand, very slight and unimportant.

### X.

*Chess Made Easy: being a New Introduction to the Rudiments of that*

*Scientific and Popular Game. By GEORGE WALKER, Teacher of Chess. Baltimore: Published by Bayly & Burns. S. French, Printer, 1837. 12mo. pp. 94.*

This little work, by the voluminous Walker, made its first appearance at London in the same year.\*

### XI.

*Chess Made Easy: being a New Introduction to the Rudiments of that Scientific and Popular Game. By GEORGE WALKER, Teacher of Chess. Baltimore: Published by Joseph Neal, No. 174 Baltimore Street, 1839. 24mo. pp. 124.*

This is another reprint of Walker's treatise for beginners.

### XII.

*The Chess-Player, illustrated with Engravings and Diagrams; containing Franklin's Essay on the Morals of Chess; Introduction to the Rudiments of Chess, by GEORGE WALKER, Teacher; to which are added the Three Games played at one and the same time by Philidor; Sixty Openings, Mates, and Situations, by W. S. KENNY, Teacher, with Remarks, Anecdotes, etc., etc., and an Explanation of the Round Chess-Board. Boston: Published by Nathl. Dearborn, 1841. 12mo. pp. 155.*

This loosely-compiled volume contains, after Franklin's essay, first, Walker's "Chess Made Easy" (pp. 13–115): then Philidor's games with Conway, Sheldon, and Smith (pp. 116–123); then a few brief games and positions (pp. 124–142); and, lastly, the round Chess, and a few anecdotes (pp. 133–155).

### XIII.

*The Chess-Player's Hand-Book; containing a full account of the Game of Chess, and the best mode of playing it. Boston: Published by Saxton, Pierce & Co., 133½ Washington Street, 1844. 24mo. pp. 67.*

An unpretending little book, first published, I think, by Routledge of London.

\* I do not know whether the reprint mentioned by Walker (*A New Treatise on Chess*, 1841, p. 291), "by Carey & Hart. Philadelphia, 1837," ever really existed or not. I have never seen it. Schmid (p. 358) copies Walker's title.

## XIV.

*Rules for playing the Game of Chess for four Persons.* New York:  
*T. J. Crowen, corner of Bleecker St. and Broadway.* 1845. 12mo.  
*pp. 8.*

Reprinted from an unimportant and anonymous English original.

## XV.

*Thirty-one Games at Chess, comprising the whole Number of Games played in a Match between Mr. Eugene Rousseau of New Orleans, and Mr. C. H. Stanley, Secretary of the N. Y. Chess Club. With Notes as originally reported for the "New Orleans Commercial Times."* By MR. STANLEY. The Match commenced at the New Orleans Chess Club, on the 1st Dec., 1845, and terminated on the 26th Day of the same Month. Price fifty Cents. (New Orleans, 1846.) 16mo. pp. 46.

This extremely rare little pamphlet was printed just before Mr. Stanley's departure from New Orleans after the close of the Match. Only a small edition was published, and very many of the copies were suffered to go to waste in the printer's loft. It contains a short introduction by Mr. Stanley. The Games follow immediately after, and are accompanied by good notes from the pen of the victor.

## XVI.

*The Chess Palladium and Mathematical Sphinx; devoted to the Curiosities of Chess and the Ingenuities of Arithmetic.* Edited by NAPOLEON MARACHE and J. VICTOR WILSON. New York: William Taylor & Co. 1846. 8vo. pp. 70.

Only three numbers of this Magazine (October, November, December) were published. After the first number the name of the second editor was withdrawn and the other issues were edited solely by Mr. Marache. The chess matter consists of short extracts from various authors, a few games, and a large number of problems and enigmas. The first and second pages of the cover are filled with mathematical problems in verse.

## XVII.

*The American Chess Magazine: a periodical Organ of Communication for American Chess-Players. For the Arbitration of disputed Points and doubtful Questions arising in the Study and Practice of the Game of Chess. For the Instruction of Young Players, and the Amusement of All. Edited by CHARLES H. STANLEY, New York: R. Martin, Publisher, 1847. 8vo. pp. viii + 268.*

The *American Chess Magazine* was issued Monthly and continued only from October 1846 to September 1847. The typography is excellent and the matter valuable. The contents comprise fourteen *Lessons for Learners* by Mr. Stanley, seventy-five games, of which more than two-thirds are American, and a number of literary and historical essays. Eight diagrams, each occupying a page, appeared with every number, and these ninety-six problems are usually found at the end of the volume. They are not paged. Among the players whose contests adorn the volume are Stanley, Vezin, Hammond, Schulten, Thompson, Rousseau, Raphael, Ballard, and Dudley. Among the composers who contributed stratagems, were Stanley, Julien, Agnel, and Leake.

## XVIII.

*The Manual of Chess: containing the elementary Principles of the Game; illustrated with numerous Diagrams, recent Games, and original Problems. By Charles Kennedy. New York: D. Appleton & Co. 1847. 12mo. pp. 122.*

This is one of several works by a well-known Chess author; the original appeared in London the preceding year; no alterations or additions whatever are made in this reprint.

## XIX.

*Chess for Winter Evenings: Containing the Rudiments of the Game, and elementary Analyses of the most Popular Openings, exemplified in Games actually played by the greatest Masters; including Staunton's Analysis of the King's and Queen's Gambits, numerous Positions and Problems on Diagrams, both original and selected; also a Series of*

*Chess Tales, with Illustrations engraved from original Designs. The whole extracted and translated from the best sources by H. R. AGNEL. New York: D. Appleton & Co. 1848. 12mo. pp. xiv + 509.*

This book has enjoyed a wide popularity in America. Its analyses are chiefly derived from Staunton, although some new games and many problems are added. One or two important openings are entirely neglected by the compiler. Scattered through the book are four pleasant Chess sketches, chiefly translated from the *Palamède*. Each of these stories is illustrated by steel engravings from paintings by Weir. Mr. Agnel has been for many years Professor of French and Spanish at the United States Military Academy, West-Point.

## XX.

*The Chess-Player's Hand-Book; containing a full Account of the Game of Chess, and the best Mode of playing it. By the Author of the Hand-Books of "Etiquette," "Conversation," "The Toilette," "Courtship and Marriage," etc., etc. Philadelphia: George S. Appleton, 164 Chestnut Street. 1850. 16mo. pp. 64.*

A second reprint of title XIII.

## XXI.

*The Book of Chess: Containing the Rudiments of the Game, and elementary Analyses of the most Popular Openings, exemplified in Games actually played by the greatest Masters; including Staunton's Analysis of the King's and Queen's Gambits, Numerous Positions and Problems on Diagrams, both original and selected; also a Series of Chess Tales, with Illustrations engraved from original Designs. The whole extracted and translated from the best Sources by H. R. AGNEL. New York, D. Appleton & Co. 1852. 12mo. pp. 509.*

This is only a new impression from the plates of XIX. The slight change made in the title was done, as we are told, without the consent of the Author. Impressions exist also with the dates 1855 and 1859.

## XXII.

*The Chess-Player's Hand-Book; containing a full Account of the Game*

*of Chess, and the best Mode of playing it. By the Author of the Hand-Books of "Etiquette," "Conversation," "The Toilette," "Courtship and Marriage," etc., etc. New York: Leavitt & Allen, 27 Dey-Street, 1853. 16mo. pp. 64.*

Another impression from the stereotype plates of title XX.

### XXIII.

*Maxims and Hints for an Angler: embellished with humorous Engravings, illustrative of the Miseries of Fishing. To which are added Hints and Maxims for a Chess Player. Philadelphia: published by F. Bell. 1855. 24mo. pp. 60.*

This is a reprint of the first English edition (1833) with the title-page altered. The name of the author, RICHARD PENN, does not appear. The dedication also is omitted.

### XXIV.

*The Chess Monthly, an American Chess Serial, edited by DANIEL WILLARD FISKE, M.A. Volume I. 1857. New York: P. Miller & Son, 13 Thames St. corner of Trinity Place (1857). 8vo. pp. vi + 393.*

*The Chess Monthly, an American Chess Serial, edited by PAUL MORPHY Esq., and DANIEL WILLARD FISKE, M.A. Problem Department by E. B. COOK. Volume II. 1858. New York: W. Miller, No. 49 Nassau Street (1858). 8vo. pp. vi + 398.*

This Magazine, now in its third year, was originated by the editor of the first volume. It has contained original articles by Professor George Allen of Philadelphia, and by Löwenthal, Von der Lasa, Jaenisch, and Centurini; it has published original games by Morphy, Montgomery, Hammond, Lichtenhein, and Paulsen, among American amateurs, and by Von der Lasa, Löwenthal, Harrwitz, Staunton, and Dubois among European players; and its pages have been illustrated with original problems by such American composers as Cook, Loyd, Marache, Potter, Julien, and Brown, and by such foreign celebrities as Bayer, Willmers, Petroff, Healey, Centurini, and White. The problem department has been edited since the beginning of 1858 by Mr. Eugene B. Cook of Hoboken, N. J.

## XXV.

*The Games of the Match at Chess played by the Chess Players of the Athenaeum, Philadelphia, and the New-York Chess Club, between the Years 1856 and 1857, with Variations and Remarks by the Athenaeum Committee. Philadelphia, 1857. 8vo. pp. vii + 23.*

This brochure is a reprint from the pages of the *Chess Monthly*. It is dedicated to the memory of the celebrated Philadelphia player, Charles Vezin, and the excellent *Advertisement* prefixed to the book is from the pen of Professor George Allen.

## XXVI.

*Prospectus of the National Chess Congress, commencing in New York, October 6th, 1857. New York, T. W. Strong, Steam Job Printer, 70 Ann Street, 1857. 8vo. pp. 13.*

A few copies of this were printed on heavy Paper. In connection with the Congress a few circulars on note paper were also printed.

## XXVII.

*Games of Chess, and Chess Problems—Issued for the Convenience of Amateurs by Thomas Frère. For sale by T. W. Strong, 98 Nassau Street, New York; (1857) 12mo.*

This is a volume containing one hundred blanks with the moves numbered from 1 to 60 for the purpose of recording games, and the same number of blank diagrams for copying positions or problems.

## XXVIII.

*A New Method of Chess Notation, by JOHN BARTLETT. Cambridge, December, 1857. Fol. pp. 3.*

The chief contents of this sheet are either given or described in pages 137–139 of this volume.

## XXIX.

*The Life of Philidor, Musician and Chess-Player.* By GEORGE ALLEN,  
Member of the American Philosophical Society, Greek Professor in the  
University of Pennsylvania.

Aux Français étonnés de sa male harmonie  
Il montra dans son art des prodiges nouveaux;  
Dans ses délassemens admirant son génie  
On voit qu'en ses jeux même il n'a point de rivaux.

*Philadelphia:* 1858. 8vo. pp. viii + 56.

This interesting and valuable work was privately printed, fifty copies only having been struck off. It first appeared in the pages of the *Chess Monthly*, and is the only complete life of the great French master which has ever been written. The bibliography at the end is especially accurate. A new and enlarged edition is now in the hands of the publisher.

## XXX.

*Rules and Regulations of the New York Chess Club.* Adopted June 10th, 1858. *New York:* T. W. Strong, Steam Printer, 98 Nassau Street, 1858. 24mo. pp. 24.

On the leaf following the title-page we have the list of officers for 1858-9; then come (pp. 5-9) the Rules and Regulations for the government of the Club; and finally *The Laws of Chess* as adopted for the guidance of the members. These last were based upon the codes of Von der Lasa and Jaenisch, and were translated and written out by the writer of this article.

## XXXI.

*Frère's Chess Hand-Book.* Containing elementary Instruction and the Laws of Chess, together with fifty select Games by the first Players. Endings of Games. And the Defeat of the Muzio Gambit. Also, thirty-one of the choicest Chess Problems, and a Description of, and Rules for four-handed Chess. By THOMAS FRÈRE. *New York:* T. W. Strong, 98 Nassau Street, 1858. 12mo. xii + (229-334).

The curious paging of this little volume is owing to the fact that it

was originally printed as a part of an edition of *Hoyle's Games*. There is little or no analysis in it, but its games are very well selected.

### XXXII.

*Bulletin of the American Chess Association, Number I. Jan.-June 1858.*  
(*New York*, 1858.) 8vo.

The second number of this half-yearly publication has not yet been issued.

### XXXIII.

*The Chess Player's Instructor; or, Guide to Beginners; containing all the Information necessary to acquire a Knowledge of the Game: with Diagrams illustrative of the various movements of the Pieces.* By CHARLES HENRY STANLEY. *New York: Robert M. De Witt, Publisher, 160 & 162 Nassau Street.* (1859.) 12mo. pp. iv + 72.

This clever little elementary manual is from the pen of a gentleman long known to the American Chess world as a pleasant writer and a very strong player. It contains several diagrams, and concludes with eleven well selected games.

### XXXIV.

*The Chess Handbook: teaching the Rudiments of the Game, and giving an Analysis of all the recognized Openings. Exemplified by appropriate Games actually played by Morphy, Harrwitz, Anderssen, Staunton, Paulsen, Montgomery, Meek, and many others.* By an Amateur. *Philadelphia: published by E. H. Butler & Co.* 1859. 16mo. pp. 256.

This appears to be a clever abridgement from the English *Handbook*, which the Editor of the book himself styles "the basis of his work." The illustrative games, however, are newly, and, in the main, carefully selected. We are not told who composed the dozen problems on diagrams which are inserted at the end of the volume.

### XXXV.

*Morphy's Games of Chess, and Frère's Problem Tournament.* By THOS.

FRÈRE. *New York: T. W. Strong, 98 Nassau-street.* 1859.  
12mo. pp. 144.

The second part of this book contains many clever problems selected from those which competed in a tournament arranged by Mr. Frère, the chess-editor of *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*. The first part was published without the sanction or approval of Mr. Morphy, and comprises games with notes copied from the *Chess Monthly*, *The Era*, and other sources, without any special acknowledgment. The collection was evidently hurriedly and incompetently made to take advantage of the demand created by Mr. Morphy's success in Europe.

### XXXVI.

*Science and Art of Chess.* By J. Monroe, B.C.L.

Les jeux mériteraient d'être examinés; et l'on y trouveraient beaucoup d'importantes considérations; car les hommes n'ont jamais montré plus d'esprit que lorsqu'ils ont badiné.—*Leibnitz, Repliques aux Réflexions de Bayle.*

*New York: Charles Scribner, 124 Grand Street.* 1859. 12mo.  
pp. 281.

This work is dedicated to Lieutenant General Scott. It is written with a considerable display of learning, metaphysical and otherwise. The nomenclature and phraseology are sometimes very curious. We notice some remarkable errors in spelling, such as *Guioco* instead of *Giuoco*, *Dal Rio* for *Del Rio*, etc. The author has also fallen into some bibliographical errors, in his Introduction and elsewhere, such as mistaking Ponziani's work for Del Rio's treatise.

### XXXVII.

*Constitution of the Charleston Chess Club, Adopted Dec. 1858—Incorporated 1858. Charleston, Steam Presses of Walker, Evans & Co.*  
1859. 8vo. pp. 8.

Modelled after the new Rules and Regulations of the New York Chess Club (title XXX.)

### XXXVIII.

*The Manual of Chess: containing the elementary Principles of the Game;*

*illustrated with numerous Diagrams, recent Games, and original Problems.* By CHARLES KENNY. New York: D. Appleton and Company, 346 & 348 Broadway, 1859. 12mo. pp. 122.

Merely a new impression from the stereotype plates of title XVIII.

### XXXIX.

*The Exploits and Triumphs, in Europe, of Paul Morphy, the Chess Champion; including an historical account of Clubs, biographical sketches of famous Players, and various Information and Anecdote relating to the noble game of Chess.* By Paul Morphy's late Secretary. New York: D. Appleton & Company, 346 & 348 Broadway, M.DCCC.-LIX. 12mo. pp. viii + 203.

A gossiping account of the career of Morphy in Europe. Some portion might, perhaps, have been omitted or re-written, but, upon the whole, it is not an uninteresting volume. The author's name is FREDERICK MILNE EDGE.

Besides the works enumerated in the above list there are several editions of *Hoyle's Games, Boys' and Girls' Own Book*, and other publications of a character similar to the *Académies des Jeux* of the continent, which contain brief treatises on the game of Chess. The *Encyclopædia Americana* has a chess article of no great value (vol. III. pp. 132-134), while the *New American Cyclopædia* contains a very brief and unsatisfactory notice by the present writer. A description of the Japanese game of Chess, from the pen of Dr. Green, the fleet surgeon, was printed on a quarto sheet by the press on board the Mississippi, a steamship of the Japanese squadron, while lying in the harbor of Hong-Kong. It was afterwards inserted in the official account of the Expedition. An article by the celebrated Edgar Allan Poe on "Maelzel's Chess-Player" was first made public in the *Southern Literary Messenger* (Vol. II. pp. 318-326, April, 1836), and was afterwards published in his collected works (Vol. iv. pp. 346-370). It deserves notice as a shrewd and bold attempt to explain the mystery of that singular combination of human brain and mechanical ingenuity. In the *Southern Literary Messenger*, also, (Vol. IV. pp. 233-245) occurs a tale of love and chess under the name of *The Game of Chess, by the authoress of "The Cottage in the Glen," "Sensibility," etc.* At a much earlier period the

*Rhode Island Literary Repository*, published at Providence, contains (Vol. I. pp. 464-469, December, 1814) an original, but anonymous, essay entitled "Chess," which consists of a brief account of the origin of the game, followed by a long and pleasantly sketched parallel between chess and life. James K. Armstrong wrote for the *Democratic Review* (New Series, Vol. IX. pp. 20-23, July, 1841) a poem called *The Chess-Player, lines suggested by Retzsch's celebrated Picture*. It begins :

I saw two beings bending o'er a game,  
War's image and the parent of deep thought,

and contains one hundred and fifty-two lines. Miss Hannah Flagg Gould, the well-known poetess, has written an address to Maelzel's Automaton in verse, which may be seen in the collection of her poems. Richard Henry Stoddard, in one of his published volumes, has a short poem representing two lovers at chess. A clever allegorical story, *The Queen of the Red Chessmen*, was published in the *Atlantic Monthly* (Vol. I. pp. 431-435, 1858). Several English chess articles have been copied into such periodicals as Littell's *Living Age*, and into the newspapers. Allusions to chess occur in the works of Cooper and several other popular writers. Sketches, stories, and essays, in which love, murder, and demonology are strangely intermingled with the peaceful game of Chess, are scattered through the daily and weekly journals of the land.

On the first of March, 1845, the first weekly Chess column in the country was commenced in the *Spirit of the Times* in New York, under the editorship of Charles H. Stanley. \* Its problems began to appear on diagrams June 20th, 1846. During the absence of Mr. Stanley in New Orleans, at the time of his match with Rousseau, the column was conducted by Colonel Charles D. Mead. A curious hoax appeared in an early number of the Chess department of the *Spirit of the Times*. The Editor had published the Indian Problem, at that time just received from Europe, and it had, of course, excited much attention. Thereupon, some wicked lover of fun, writing under the signature of *Mate*, informs the editor that the problem is by no means a new one, but was really number seventeen of the positions contained in the Dublin edition of *Holmes on Chess*. He furthermore requests the editor to examine and publish Holmes' position number twenty, which was much finer than the so-called Indian Problem. In the course of a

week or two, the editor, after a diligent search for *Holmes on Chess*, begins to doubt the existence of the work and proceeds to castigate the perpetrator of the hoax in no measured terms. *Mate* then apologises in a gentlemanly way and states that his only object was to play off a harmless deception upon Mr. Stanley and the New York Club, in which he had been perfectly successful. In 1848, Mr. Stanley commenced a similar department in *The Albion* of New York, which is still published and is at present under the charge of Mr. Frederick Perrin. The *New York Journal* also published a meagre Chess column for some volumes, which was for a time supervised by Mr. Stanley. In 1848 or 1849, Dr. B. I. Raphael edited for some months a column devoted to the game in the *Chronicle of Western Literature*, a literary weekly published at Louisville, Ky. It ceased on account of the suspension of the journal. Upon the establishment of *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper* in 1855, the Chess column was placed in the able hands of Mr. W. J. A. Fuller, who has been followed by Mr. W. W. Montgomery, Mr. N. Marache, and Mr. Thomas Frère. The *Syracuse Standard* began a Chess column in the year 1857, at first under the direction of Mr. George N. Cheney, and latterly under that of Mr. William O. Fiske. Some other papers in New York City also published games, problems, and Chess intelligence regularly before the days of the Congress. Since the Congress, organs of this kind have increased with amazing rapidity, and I have room to mention only the most prominent ones. Boston has been represented by the *American Union*, and the *Saturday Evening Gazette*; the former was for a while edited by Mr. James A. Potter, and the latter has been conducted from the commencement by Mr. W. H. Kent and Mr. J. Chapman. At Lynn in the same state, the Chess department of the *News* is in the hands of Mr. N. J. Holden, and Mr. Eben Parsons, Jr. The *Providence Press* is edited, I believe, by Mr. Frank H. Thurber. In New York the old *Spirit of the Times* has again commenced the publication of Chess matter, while new candidates for public favor are *Porter's Spirit* (edited at first by Mr. Stanley, and now by Mr. Marache), *Harper's Weekly* (by Mr. Stanley), the *Saturday Press*, the *Musical World* (by Samuel Loyd), the *Freeman's Journal*, the *Boy's and Girl's Magazine*, and others. In Philadelphia the interest in the game is kept alive by the *Evening Bulletin* under the charge of Dr. Samuel Lewis and Mr. Francis Wells, by the *Sunday Mercury* and by one or two less important organs. In Baltimore the *Weekly Dispatch* column is managed by Mr. F. Spilman, and the one in the *Family Journal* by Mr. S. N. Carvalho. The *Sunday*

*Delta* of New Orleans has, since the spring of 1858, given up a column or two, weekly, to Chess, under the supervision of Mr. Charles A. Maurian. The *Charleston Courier* has a Chess department. In Cincinnati Mr. T. French edited for some time a Chess column in the *Sunday Dispatch*; one is now published in the *Daily Commercial* and in *Young's Sunday Dispatch*. Louisville maintains two Chess columns, one, by Dr. C. C. Moore, in the *Kentucky Turf Register*, and the other in the *Family Journal*. The *Missouri Democrat* of St. Louis, as far as its Chess matter is concerned, is edited by Mr. Theodore M. Brown. The Chicago *Sunday Leader* has engaged for its Chess department the services of Mr. Louis Paulsen. A Chess department has of late been established in the *Whig and Republican* of Quincy, Illinois. The department of the *Winona Republican* of Winona, Minnesota, commenced by Dr. C. C. Moore, is now conducted by another hand. *Der Protestant* of St. Louis and the *Mississippi Blätter* have represented the German lovers of Chess, while three or four western journals, printed in the English language and not enumerated in this list, have published Chess matter. All of these journals have exercised and are still exerting immense influence. They are generally conducted by persons of refinement and intelligence, and their efforts must at last result in making the game more popular in the United States than it has ever been in any country of the Old World.

## XII.—PAUL MORPHY.

PAUL MORPHY, the foremost Chess-player of the present age, and, so far as we are enabled to judge, the greatest Chess-player of any age, was born in the city of New Orleans, Louisiana, on the twenty-second day of June in the year 1837. His grandfather, on the paternal side, was a native of Madrid, the capital of Spain, the land in which Ruy Lopez and Xerone lived and died, and in which Leonardo da Cutri and Paolo Boi won their most glorious victories. Removing to America the grandfather of Paul resided for some years at Charleston, South Carolina, and had five children, two sons and three daughters. The elder son, Alonzo Morphy, the father of our hero, was born in November, 1798, went to New Orleans at an early age, graduated at a French institution, known as the *College d'Orleans*, studied law under the famous Edward Livingston, was Judge of the Supreme Court of Louisiana from 1840 to 1846, and died in November, 1856. He was a

Chess-player of respectable ability, but was greatly excelled by his brother Ernest Morphy, formerly of New Orleans, then of Moscow, Clermont County, Ohio, and now of Quincy, Illinois. Judge Alonzo Morphy married a daughter of Mr. Joseph B. Le Carpentier, a gentleman of a French family, who came many years ago from St. Domingo to New Orleans, and who died in 1850. Mr. Morphy had six children, of which two sons and two daughters are now living. The elder son received the name of Edward, and is at present engaged in mercantile pursuits in his native city; the younger son was christened PAUL CHARLES, but usually signs his name simply PAUL MORPHY.

During the days of Paul's childhood, Judge Morphy was accustomed in the evenings and on Sundays, as a relaxation from the severe labors of his profession, to play Chess, either with his father-in-law, Mr. Le Carpentier, who was a confirmed lover of the game, or with his brother, Ernest Morphy, who, as is widely known, occupied for a long time, a high rank in the New Orleans Chess Club. The boy Paul was wont to watch these friendly encounters with so much interest that his father, in 1847, when Paul was about ten years of age, explained to him the powers of the pieces and the laws of the game. In less than two years he was contending successfully on even terms with the strongest amateurs of the Crescent City. One peculiarity of Paul's play, during the infantile stage of his Chess life, while his father, his grandfather, his uncle, and his brother were his chief adversaries, used to create considerable merriment among the fireside circle of Chess lovers with whom he was brought into contact. His Pawns seemed to him to be only so many obstacles in his path, and his first work upon commencing a game was to exchange or sacrifice them all, giving free range to his pieces, after which, with his unimpeded Queen, Rooks, Bishops, and Knights, he began a fierce onslaught upon his opponent's forces, which was often valorously maintained until it resulted in mate.

Paul fitted himself for college by several years' study in Jefferson Academy, New Orleans. Leaving this seminary he became, in December, 1850, a student of St. Joseph's College. This institution, one of the best Catholic educational establishments of the South, is situated in the pleasant village of Spring Hill, six miles west of Mobile, Alabama, and was founded by the Society of Jesus in 1830. Here Paul passed the usual four years of the undergraduate course, spending the agreeable and profitable days of student-life, very much, we may suppose, as multi-

tudes of other youth have done since the time of the earliest university. During the periods given up to recreation Chess was allowed by the government of the institution and Paul occasionally indulged in his favorite amusement. Both among his fellow-pupils and the faculty he enjoyed considerable fame as by far the strongest player in college, and now and then one of the learned Professors permitted himself to be beaten, at heavy odds, by the young disciple of Caïssa. Among Paul's adversaries was Mr. Charles Amedée Maurian, of New Orleans, a younger student, with whom he had already been upon terms of intimacy in their school days at the Jefferson Academy. But it was not alone as a Chess-player that Paul made his mark at college. He was known as a close student, and won either the first or second premiums in every department during each year that he remained at Spring Hill. In the classics he took especial delight, but exhibited less of a fondness and aptitude for mathematics. During the annual vacations, which lasted from the fifteenth of October to the first of December, Paul returned home, and at these periods he used to encounter some of the leading practitioners of New Orleans. He graduated with honor in October, 1854, less than four months after he had finished his seventeenth year. His youth induced him to pass another year at college as a resident graduate, and he left New Orleans in December of the same year and remained at Spring Hill until the close of the academical term in October, 1855. In the following month he entered the Law School of the University of Louisiana, where he enjoyed the instruction of such men as Christian Roselius, Randall Hunt, Alfred Hennen and Judge Theodore McCaleb—all of them prominent ornaments of the Louisiana bar. He graduated at the Law School in April, 1857, and was admitted to practice in the courts of his native state, so soon as he should attain the legal age of twenty-one.

In the course of the years 1849 and 1850, before entering college, Paul contested over fifty parties with Mr. Eugene Rousseau, a gentleman whose name is familiar to Chess readers in both hemispheres on account of his famous match with Mr. Charles H. Stanley in 1845, and from the fact that he played in Paris more than one hundred even games with Kieseritzky, of which the great Livonian won only a bare majority. The first meeting between the veteran devotee of the game and his youthful opponent was brought about by Mr. Ernest Morphy. Of the games played, Paul came off the conqueror in fully nine-tenths. The following irregular counter gambit in the King's Knight's Opening may serve as a specimen :

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. Castles.
6. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
7. P. takes P.
8. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
9. Q. to K. B. 3d.
10. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
11. Q. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
12. Q. to K. 6th (ch.)
13. Q. takes P. (ch.)
14. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
15. Kt. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
16. Kt. takes R.
17. P. takes P.
18. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
19. K. R. to K. sq.
20. Q. B. to Kt. 2nd (ch.)
21. K. R. to K. 5th (ch.)
22. Q. B. to B. sq. (ch.)
23. K. R. takes K. Kt. P.

## ROUSSEAU.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to K. B. 4th.
4. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Kt. takes P.
8. Q. Kt. to K. 2nd.
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.
10. P. takes Kt.
11. K. to Q. 2nd.
12. K. to Q. B. 2nd.
13. Q. to Q. 3d.
14. K. takes Q.
15. K. to K. 3d.
16. P. takes P.
17. K. to K. B. 3d.
18. Q. B. to K. 3d.
19. Q. B. to K. Kt. sq.
20. K. to Kt. 4th.
21. K. to K. R. 3d.
22. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

and Mr. Rousseau resigns. Ernest Morphy's Chess strength was nearly equal to Rousseau's. Commencing with the year 1849 the uncle and nephew have played something like a hundred games, Paul having been the victor in almost every combat. Among Paul's numerous victories over his relative was this pretty specimen of the *Evans Gambit*, played in November, 1856:

## PAUL MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Castles.
8. Q. Kt. takes K. B.
9. Q. B. to R. 3d.
10. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.

## ERNEST MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to R. 4th.
6. K. P. takes P.
7. K. B. takes B. P.
8. Q. P. takes Q. Kt.
9. P. to Q. 3d.
10. K. Kt. to R. 3d.

## PAUL MORPHY.

11. Q. takes B. P.
12. P. to K. 5th.
13. K. R. to K. sq.
14. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
15. K. B. to Q. R. 6th.
16. K. R. to Q. B. sq.
17. Q. takes Q. Kt.
18. Q. takes R. P. (ch.)
19. K. R. takes B.
20. R. takes B. P. (ch.)
21. Q. to Q. B. 6th (ch.)
22. Q. R. to Q. Kt. 8th.
23. K. R. to K. 7th (ch.)
24. R. takes R. (ch.)
25. R. takes Q. (Mate.)

## ERNEST MORPHY.

11. Q. to K. B. 3d.
12. Q. P. takes P.
13. B. to Q. 2nd.
14. Castles (Q. R.)
15. Q. Kt. to R. 4th.
16. B. to Q. B. 3d.
17. Kt. P. takes B.
18. K. to Q. 2nd.
19. Q. to K. B. 4th.
20. K. to K. sq.
21. Q. to Q. 2nd.
22. Q. takes Q.
23. K. to K. B. sq.
24. Q. to K. sq.

The crowning triumph, however, of the younger years of the American master was his defeat of Löwenthal. This distinguished Hungarian player, who had long before acquired a European reputation as a gifted cultivator of the art of Chess, was, like his famous Chess-loving countryman, Grimm, driven into exile by the disastrous events which followed the heroic but unfortunate struggle of the Magyars against Austria. Coming to America, he visited New York and some of the western cities, and finally reached New Orleans in May, 1850. On the twenty-second and twenty-fifth of that month he played with Paul Morphy (at that time not yet thirteen years of age) in the presence of Mr. Rousseau, Mr. Ernest Morphy, and a large number of the amateurs of New Orleans. The first game was a drawn one, but the second and third were won by the invincible young Philidor. Another opponent of Paul Morphy's before the Congress was Mr. James McConnell, a lawyer of New Orleans, with whom he played about thirty games, of which he won all but one. During the last year which he spent at St. Joseph's College, on the first day of March, 1855, Paul Morphy contested six parties against Judge A. B. Meek of that city, and was successful in all. On the same day he encountered Dr. Ayers, also a prominent amateur of Alabama, in two games, with a similar result. In January, 1857, he again met Judge Meek in New Orleans and won the four games played at that time. With his friend Mr. Charles A. Maurian, now undoubtedly one of the strongest players in the country, he has played a multitude of games at odds diminishing in value as Mr.

Maurian's strength increased. Their contests at the odds of Rook or Knight are among the very best combats of their kind on record. The first place at which Paul Morphy ever played in public was the News Room of the Exchange at New Orleans, where his board was always surrounded by veterans of the game gazing with wonder and surprise at the almost incredible achievements of the boy before them. Astonished as they were, there were doubtless very few among them who anticipated the more brilliant feats which he was afterwards to perform upon a grander field and against greater foemen.

In the latter part of June, 1857, the writer of this article, who was then acting as Secretary to the Committee of Management, wrote a note to Paul Morphy inviting his special attendance at the coming Congress. A reply was received early in July from Mr. Morphy declining to accede to the request, the death of his father a few months before making him reluctant to take part in such a scene of festivity as a Chess Congress. A lengthy letter was then sent to Mr. Maurian, urging him and others of Mr. Morphy's friends in New Orleans, to press the matter for the sake of Chess and the Congress. And finally, late in September, the writer had the pleasure of receiving a telegram from Mr. Morphy saying that he would leave his home the following Wednesday on his way to New York. It was with the prestige acquired by his victories over Löwenthal, Rousseau, Ernest Morphy, Ayers, Meek, and McConnell, that Paul Morphy arrived in New York on the fifth of October, 1857, to participate in the first Congress of the American Chess Association. But few specimens of his skill had appeared in print. And notwithstanding his general high reputation, there were many, who from his youth and the small number of his published games, manifested much incredulity concerning his actual Chess strength and the probability of its standing the shock of the attack which would be made against it by the first players of America. But on the evening of his arrival all doubts were removed in the minds of those who witnessed his passages-at-arms with Mr. Stanley and Mr. Perrin at the rooms of the New York Club, and the first prize was universally conceded to him, even before the entries for the Grand Tournament had been completed. Certainty became more sure as the Congress progressed and he overthrew either in the Tournament or in side play, one after another of those men who had long been looked up to as the magnates of the American Chess World. Among those whom he met and conquered during the time of the Congress were Mr. George Hammond of Boston, Mr. Theodore Lichtenhein, Mr. Napoleon Marache, Mr.

James Thompson, Mr. Charles D. Mead, Mr. Charles H. Stanley, and Mr. Frederick Perrin of New York, Mr. Hardman Philips Montgomery of Philadelphia, Mr. Hiram Kennicott of Chicago, and Mr. Louis Paulsen of Dubuque, Iowa, most of whom had been for years considered the representatives of Chess in this country. One of the most striking games of this date, on account of its beautiful termination, was an off-hand *Evans Gambit* with Mr. Marache.

## MARACHE.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. P. to K. 5th.
8. P. takes P. (in pass.)
9. Castles.
10. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
11. K. B. to Q. 3d.
12. B. takes B.
13. B. to Q. R. 3d.
14. B. takes K. R.
15. B. to Q. R. 3d.
16. Q. B. to B. sq.
17. B. to K. B. 4th.
18. Q. to Q. B. 2nd.
19. Q. to K. 4th.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to R. 4th.
6. P. takes P.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. Q. takes P.
9. K. Kt. to K. 2nd.
10. Castles.
11. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
12. Kt. takes B.
13. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
14. Q. takes Kt.
15. P. takes P.
16. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
17. Q. R. to Q. sq.
18. Q. Kt. to Q. 5th.
19. K. Kt. to K. Kt. 6th.

And Mr. Marache, losing the Queen, resigns.

But the earlier pages of this volume are a sufficient witness to the gallant exploits of Paul Morphy during the sessions of the first national assembly of American Chess-players, from his entrance into the Grand Tournament to his final and complete victory over all opponents which secured him the highest prize in the gift of the Congress. His amiable character, his youth and his modesty had won the hearts of the members and visitors even before they had fully learned to admire and applaud his unrivalled excellence as a player. Half unconscious, perhaps, of his own powers in this respect, he gave no such exhibition of his command of unseen Chessboards as those with which he has since astonished the Capitals of England and France. But that his ability was only latent, was evident to many who watched the progress of his

single public blindfold game with Mr. Paulsen, at the close of which he announced, amidst the applause of more than two hundred excited spectators, a forced checkmate in five moves. After the Congress he remained more than a month in New York, delighting the Chess-club of that city with frequent visits and playing a number of games at the odds of Rook or Knight with various competitors. It was at this time that he addressed a courteous note to the Secretary of the club, in which he stated that he was desirous, before leaving for the South, of testing his actual strength, and with that view he ventured to proffer the odds of Pawn and Move, in a match, to any of the leading members of the club. This challenge was accepted, on behalf of the club, by Mr. Charles H. Stanley. Mr. T. J. Bryan, a gentleman whose countenance is a familiar one both in the Chess circles of Paris and New York, arranged the preliminaries on the part of Mr. Morphy, while Mr. Bailey acted as the second of Mr. Stanley. The following is one of the games, in which Black's King's Bishop's Pawn is to be removed from the board.

## STANLEY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. to K. 5th.
4. Q. B. to K. 3d.
5. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. B. takes P.
8. Kt. takes Kt.
9. P. to Q. B. 3d.
10. B. to Q. Kt. 5th (ch.)
11. B. takes Kt. (ch.)
12. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
13. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
14. Castles.
15. Q. takes K. P. (ch.)
16. K. R. to Q. sq.
17. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
18. Q. Kt. to Q. 2nd.
19. Q. to K. Kt. 3d.
20. Q. to Q. 3d.
21. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
22. Q. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
23. Kt. to K. 2nd.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 3d.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. P. to Q. B. 4th.
4. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. P. takes P.
7. Kt. takes B.
8. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
9. Kt. to K. 2nd.
10. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
11. P. takes B.
12. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
13. Castles.
14. B. to Q. R. 3d.
15. K. to R. sq.
16. Q. R. to K. sq.
17. Q. R. takes K. P.
18. Q. B. to Q. B. sq.
19. K. B. to Q. 3d.
20. Q. B. to R. 3d.
21. R. to K. R. 4th.
22. P. to Q. B. 4th.
23. R. takes Kt.

## Stanley.

24. P. takes R.  
25. P. to Q. B. 4th.  
26. R. takes Q. P.  
27. Q. to Q. B. 3d (ch.)  
28. Kt. to Kt. 3d.

## Morphy.

24. Q. to Q. sq.  
25. R. takes K. R. P.  
26. Q. to K. R. 5th.  
27. K. to Kt. sq.  
28. Q. to K. R. 6th.

and Mr. Stanley resigns. According to the terms of the match, the winner of the first seven games was to be the declared victor; but after playing five games, the score standing

MORPHY 4.

STANLEY 0.

DRAWN 1.

Mr. Stanley, through his second, resigned the contest. Before his departure from the commercial metropolis, Mr. Morphy had the pleasure of encountering another combatant of universally acknowledged skill, Mr. John W. Schulten. The result of their three or four sittings was

MORPHY 23.

SCHULTEN 1.

DRAWN 0.

On the seventeenth of December, 1857, Mr. Morphy left New York, where he had spent nearly three months and a half, on his way to his Southern home. The evening before his departure a large number of the Chess lovers of the city gave him a farewell dinner, at which Mr. James Thompson presided. Near the close of the year he reached New Orleans, by way of the Mississippi, and met with a cordial reception from his friends and the Chess-players of that city, by whom he was serenaded soon after his arrival. In January he announced in the pages of the *Chess Monthly* that the challenge which had been extended to the members of the New York Chess Club was now open to the acceptance of the whole American Chess community, and that he was willing to play a match with any prominent amateur in the country and would give the odds of Pawn and Move. It was never accepted. During the remainder of the winter of 1857-8 he occasionally attended the sittings of the New Orleans Club, of which he had been elected president some months previous. Here he played several games at the odds of Rook and Knight alternately with Mr. John Tanner, a lately-deceased German amateur, of which he won a large majority, with Mr. McConnell at the odds of the Knight, and with Mr. Maurian, Dr. R. Beattie (formerly of the St. Louis Club) and others at the odds of the Rook. He also made his first serious attempts at playing without sight of the boards, and on different evenings contested in the Club

Rooms successively two, three, four, five, six, and seven parties at once in this manner, with unvarying success. The rooms were literally crowded on every occasion with curious observers. In March Mr. William W. Montgomery, the representative amateur of Georgia, paid a visit to the Club, and met Mr. Morphy first in even games and then at the odds of Pawn and two Moves and Knight, and was compelled to succumb in nearly every game. Mr. Montgomery had previously established a good reputation in even-handed contests with the first-rates of the New York and other Northern Chess circles. Soon afterwards the Club was favored by a hasty call from Mr. T. H. Worrall, an English gentleman, who is known from his residence in the city of Mexico as "the Mexican Amateur." Mr. Morphy gave him a Knight and won a slight majority of the games played. The contest was afterwards resumed on the other side of the ocean.

After having won the highest honors which could be gained in the American Chess arena, Paul Morphy's friends and admirers were naturally anxious to see him arrayed against the great players of the Old World. Meanwhile, there seemed to be little chance of the immediate fulfilment of this hope, for Mr. Morphy entertained no idea of crossing the Atlantic for some years to come. But it might, perhaps, be possible, by an offer liberal enough to cover all his expenses, to induce some European amateur to attempt the journey. Accordingly a committee of the New Orleans Club, in a letter dated the fourth of February, 1858, invited Mr. Howard Staunton of England to visit New Orleans for the purpose of playing a match with Mr. Morphy, for a sum of five thousand dollars, one half to be furnished by the amateurs of New Orleans, and the other half by Mr. Staunton or his friends. The proposed terms of the match provided that "should the English player lose the match, the sum of one thousand dollars" was "to be paid him out of the stakes in reimbursement of the expenses incurred by him." One of the reasons that induced the originators of this challenge to select Mr. Staunton, in preference to some of the great players of the Continent, was that his name was more familiar to the American Chess public. His books formed a part of a collection which is to be found in all the libraries of the Union, and were known to every amateur. He and his friends, moreover, had maintained for years his title to the Chess championship of Great Britain, and with what other nation do Americans so delight to compete as with the sons of our mother-land? But Mr. Staunton, as he had a perfect right to do, declined the offer of the New Orleans committee. At the same time his reply was couched

in language designed to make the world believe that only the distance between London and New Orleans prohibited his acceptance of the challenge. Mr. Morphy determined to remove this obstacle and in the last days of May left his native city, with the good wishes of all who knew him, to encounter the English player upon English ground. He arrived in New York, where he was warmly received by the Club, on the eighth of June, and sailed the next day in the steamship Arabia for Liverpool, which he reached on the twenty-first.

The world that opened upon Paul Morphy, when he set foot upon the eastern continent, could hardly be called a new one. Familiar with the published games of all the living masters, he had examined their style and measured their strength with an acuteness of Chess judgment which has never been equalled, and with a memory which is rarely treacherous. The men with whom he was about to meet were no strangers to him; he had known from boyhood every peculiarity of their Chess character. The foemen before him could have inspired him with no sentiments of fear; for, aware of the strength of their blows, he felt confident that his own would be stronger. In short, whatever doubts others may have felt, Paul Morphy himself could hardly have anticipated any other result to his European tour than that which actually followed. It was the lord of a broad realm going forth, in the pride of his hereditary right, to take possession of his own, with the modesty of youth and the confidence of strength. Leaving Liverpool on the day of his arrival he went to Birmingham, to attend, as he supposed, the annual meeting of the British Chess Association. It had been appointed to take place at this time, but had afterwards been adjourned until August; the news of this postponement, however, had failed to reach Mr. Morphy. Having learned the facts at Birmingham, he set out for London the following morning, and went to Löwe's Hotel in Surrey Street, Strand, a house kept by a German gentleman who had held, some years back, a leading position in the Chess circles of the great metropolis. In the capital of Great Britain Mr. Morphy found an ample field for the exercise of his great powers. No city in the world possesses so many localities devoted to the practice of the game, or numbers so many persons given to its habitual culture. Mr. Morphy visited the St. George's Club, and the Divan in the Strand, soon after his arrival, and one of his earliest combatants was Mr. W. Barnes, with whom, among numerous other contests, he played at the Divan the following fine specimen of the *Philidor's Defence*.

## Incidents in the History of

## BARNES.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. P. takes K. P.
5. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
6. P. to K. 6th.
7. K. Kt. to B. 7th.
8. Q. B. to K. 3d.
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
10. K. Kt. takes K. R.
11. B. to Q. B. 4th.
12. K. Kt. to B. 7th.
13. K. R. to B. sq.
14. P. to K. B. 3d.
15. Q. Kt. to R. 3d.
16. B. takes Q. B.
17. Q. takes Q. Kt.
18. Castles.
19. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
20. K. to Kt. sq.
21. Kt. to K. 5th.
22. Kt. to Q. 3d.
23. Kt. takes B.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 3d.
3. P. to K. B. 4.
4. B. P. takes P.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
7. Q. to K. B. 3d.
8. P. to Q. 5th.
9. Q. to K. B. 4th.
10. Q. takes Q. B.
11. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
12. Q. takes Kt. P.
13. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
14. Q. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
15. Q. B. takes P.
16. Q. Kt. to Q. 6th (ch.)
17. P. takes Q.
18. B. takes Q. Kt.
19. P. to Q. 7th (ch.)
20. B. to B. 4th.
21. K. to B. sq.
22. R. to K. sq.
23. Q. takes K. R.

And Mr. Barnes, of course, resigns the battle. Another contest at the same opening with Mr. H. E. Bird is almost as brilliant as the one just given and was played about the same time. Mr. Morphy's antagonist has been recognised during the past three or four years as one of the most formidable native players of England.

## BIRD.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. Q. Kt. takes P.
6. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
7. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
8. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
9. Q. Kt. to K. R. 5th.
10. Q. to Q. 2nd.
11. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 3d.
3. P. to K. B. 4th.
4. B. P. takes P.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. P. to K. 5th.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. K. B. to Q. 3d.
9. Castles.
10. Q. to K. sq.
11. K. Kt. takes Kt. P.

## BIRD.

12. K. Kt. takes K. Kt.
13. Kt. to K. 5th.
14. K. B. to K. 2nd.
15. Kt. takes Kt.
16. Q. B. to K. 3d.
17. Castles (Q. R.)
18. Q. B. takes K. R.
19. P. to Q. B. 3d.
20. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
21. K. to B. 2nd.
22. K. to Kt. 2nd.
23. P. takes K. B.
24. Q. takes R.
25. K. to B. 2nd.
26. B. takes P.
27. Q. R. to Q. 3d.
28. K. to Q. 2nd.
29. K. to Q. sq.

## MORPHY.

12. Q. takes Q. Kt.
13. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
14. Q. to K. R. 6th.
15. P. takes Kt.
16. Q. R. to Kt. sq.
17. K. R. takes B. P.
18. Q. to Q. R. 6th.
19. Q. takes R. P.
20. Q. to R. 8th (ch.)
21. Q. to R. 5th (ch.)
22. K. B. takes Kt. P.
23. R. takes P. (ch.)
24. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
25. P. to K. 6th.
26. B. to K. B. 4th (ch.)
27. Q. to Q. B. 5th (ch.)
28. Q. to R. 7th (ch.)
29. Q. to Kt. 8th (ch.)

and Mr. Bird resigns.

Besides the players already mentioned Mr. Morphy met and defeated by large majorities Boden, Medley, Mongredien, Owen, Hampton, and Löwe. But the greatest of his English triumphs was to come. His old Hungarian opponent, who had encountered him seven years before, was now in London. Since the battles at New Orleans Löwenthal's strength had greatly increased. His natural talent for the game had been cultivated by several years of practice in the clubs; his powerful analytical ability had been improved by a long period of study and editorship. Of the off-hand games which he had played with Staunton he had won a considerable majority, and at a later period he was destined to wrest still more honorable laurels from the same chief in the lists of Birmingham. A match was soon arranged. The Anglo-Magyar's friends subscribed five hundred dollars, to which Mr. Morphy added an equal sum, and the playing began in the latter part of July. The sittings took place alternately at the London Club and at the St. George's Club. The writer gives here the fourth game of the match, a good example of the *King's Gambit Refused*.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to K. B. 4th.

## LÖWENTHAL.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.

## MORPHY.

3. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
4. P. to Q. B. 3d.
5. K. B. to K. 2nd.
6. K. B. takes Q. B.
7. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
8. P. to Q. Kt. 5th.
9. P. to Q. 4th.
10. Q. B. takes P.
11. Q. B. to K. 3d.
12. Q. Kt. to Q. 2nd.
13. Castles.
14. P. to Q. R. 4th.
15. Q. to K. 2nd.
16. Q. to Q. 3d.
17. P. to K. 5th.
18. K. B. to R. 5th.
19. P. to Q. R. 5th.
20. K. R. takes B. P.
21. Q. to B. 5th (ch.)
22. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
23. Q. B. to B. 2nd.
24. Q. P. takes Kt.
25. Q. B. to Q. B. 5th (ch.)
26. Q. B. takes Q. R.
27. Q. to K. B. 2nd.
28. P. to Q. Kt. 6th.
29. R. P. takes R.
30. Kt. P. takes B. (ch.)
31. R. to Q. Kt. sq.

## LÖWENTHAL.

3. P. to Q. 3d.
4. Q. B. to Kt. 5th.
5. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
6. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
8. Q. Kt. to K. 2nd.
9. K. P. takes B. P.
10. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
11. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
12. Castles.
13. P. to K. R. 3d.
14. P. to Q. B. 3d.
15. K. R. to K. sq.
16. P. to Q. 4th.
17. K. Kt. to Q. 2nd.
18. K. R. to K. 3d.
19. B. to B. 2nd.
20. K. takes K. R.
21. K. to K. 2nd.
22. Q. to K. Kt. sq.
23. Kt. takes K. P.
24. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
25. K. to Q. sq.
26. R. takes K. P.
27. Q. to K. 3d.
28. R. P. takes P.
29. Q. takes K. B.
30. K. takes P.

and Mr. Morphy wins. The result of the whole match, which came to a conclusion on the twenty-second of August, was

MORPHY 9.

LÖWENTHAL 3.

DRAWN 2.

It is pleasant to be able to record that feelings of the utmost courtesy prevailed during the entire continuance of the match; indeed Mr. Löwenthal's whole conduct towards his young conqueror, from the day of his arrival in London to that of his departure from Europe, was characterized by extreme generosity and kindness. This contest was not yet finished before the indefatigable victor had consented to another with the Reverend Mr. Owen, known in the columns of the Chess jour-

nals, by the pseudonym of "Alter." Mr. Morphy gave the odds of the Pawn and Move, and the score at the termination stood

MORPHY 5.

OWEN 0.

DRAWN 2.

But the avowed object of Mr. Morphy's voyage remained unaccomplished. Mr. Staunton, still promising to play, postponed the commencement of the match from time to time, until October, when he finally declined it. This is not the place to comment upon the singular conduct of the British player. His own countrymen have loudly rebuked him for the course which he saw fit to pursue, and the Chess press all over the world has manifested its approbation of the American's behavior. And after all the public has lost but little by Mr. Staunton's refusal to play. Games between players who differ so greatly in strength could have afforded neither instruction nor entertainment. A sort of victory over the whilom leader of the ranks of English Chess Mr. Morphy was permitted to obtain in two consultation games. One of them, a *Philidor's Defence* played at Mr. Staunton's residence in Streatham, is here appended:

## STAUNTON AND OWEN.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. P. takes K. P.
5. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
6. P. to K. 6th.
7. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. K. Kt. takes K. P.
9. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
10. Q. to K. 5th.
11. Q. B. takes K. Kt.
12. Q. R. to Q. sq.
13. Q. to Q. B. 7th.
14. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
15. P. to K. B. 3d.
16. Q. takes Q. R.
17. Kt. to K. 4th.
18. B. to K. 2nd.
19. Castles.
20. Kt. to Q. B. 5th.
21. K. to R. sq.
22. R. to Q. 4th.

## MORPHY AND BARNES.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 3d.
3. P. to K. B. 4th.
4. K. B. P. takes P.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
7. P. to Q. B. 3d.
8. P. takes Kt.
9. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
10. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
11. K. B. takes B.
12. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
13. Q. B. takes P.
14. P. to K. 6th.
15. Q. to K. 2nd.
16. K. to K. B. 2nd.
17. K. B. to B. 5th.
18. K. to Kt. 2nd.
19. Q. to Q. B. 2nd.
20. B. takes K. R. P. (ch.)
21. B. to Q. B. sq.
22. B. to K. Kt. 6th.

## STAUNTON AND OWEN.

23. R. to K. 4th.
24. R. to Q. sq.
25. R. to K. R. 4th.
26. Q. takes Q. Kt.
27. Q. to K. R. 2nd.
28. R. to Q. 7th.
29. Kt. to K. R. 4th.
30. Kt. to K. B. 6th.

## MORPHY AND BARNES.

23. K. to R. sq.
24. Q. to K. Kt. 2nd.
25. B. takes R.
26. Q. B. to R. 3d.
27. B. takes B.
28. Q. to K. R. 3d.
29. B. to Q. B. 5th.
30. P. to K. 7th.

and Mr. Staunton and his ally resign.

There were several reasons why Mr. Morphy declined entering the Tournament at the annual meeting of the British Chess Association in Birmingham. The Committee, having invited his attendance, offered him, soon after his arrival in England, the sum of seventy pounds to defray, in part, his expenses. This Mr. Morphy declined. If he had taken part in the contest and had been so fortunate as to win the chief prize (sixty guineas) it might have been thought that he had magnanimously refused the money at one time feeling certain to gain it at another. Many prominent personages in the London Chess circles were desirous, too, of seeing the Chess-editors of *The Era* and the *Illustrated News* meet in the lists, a circumstance which it was felt would be less likely to occur if the American took part in it. And finally Mr. Morphy was advised to refrain from playing lest it should have a fatal influence upon the prospects of his match with Mr. Staunton. But he never intended to disappoint those who might feel a desire to witness some specimens of his skill and accordingly at noon on Thursday, the twenty-sixth of August, he reached the seat of the conflict by a mid-day train, and offered to play eight games simultaneously without sight of the boards against any eight gentlemen who might be selected to oppose him. A feat like this would certainly compensate the members of the Association for any feelings of regret arising from his failure to participate in the Tournament. Before such an achievement the traditional exploits of Philidor and Labourdonnais seemed insignificant affairs, and the blindfold Chess with which Harrwitz a few years back had astonished the amateurs of the provinces was divested of its wonderful character. On Friday at one o'clock, in the Library Hall of the Queen's College, Mr. Morphy commenced the execution of his stupendous task. His opponents were

I. Lord Lyttleton, President of the Association.

II. Reverend G. Salmon, of Ireland.

III. Mr. J. S. Kipping, Jr., Secretary of the Manchester Club.  
 IV. Mr. Thomas Avery, President of the Birmingham Club.  
 V. Mr. Carr, Secretary of the Leamington Club.  
 VI. Dr. James Freeman, late President of the Birmingham Club.  
 VII. Mr. Rhodes, of the Leeds Club.  
 VIII. Mr. W. R. Wills, Honorary Secretary of the Association.

Among those who were present in the hall were Löwenthal, Staunton, Boden, Bird, Owen, Hampton, Falkbeer, and Brien. Mr. Morphy won six games, lost one and drew one, terminating the remarkable contest at a quarter past six o'clock, amid the loud plaudits of the assembled spectators. Among these combats the following at the *King's Bishop's Opening* is perhaps the most striking. It was played at the sixth board.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
3. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
4. K. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 4th.
6. K. Kt. takes P.
7. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
8. Castles.
9. Kt. takes Kt.
10. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
11. K. B. takes Q. P.
12. K. R. to K. sq.
13. Kt. to K. B. 6th (ch.)
14. Q. B. takes P.
15. Kt. to K. 6th.
16. Q. to K. R. 5th.
17. K. to R. sq.
18. R. takes Q. B.
19. Q. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
20. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. P. takes Q.
22. B. takes B.
23. Q. R. to K. Kt. sq. (ch.)
24. Q. R. takes Kt. (ch.)
25. R. takes P. (ch.)
26. R. to K. Kt. 7th (ch.)
27. K. B. to K. 4th.

## FREEMAN.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
3. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
4. P. to Q. 3d.
5. P. takes P.
6. K. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
7. Castles.
8. Kt. takes K. P.
9. P. to Q. 4th.
10. Q. to K. sq.
11. P. to Q. B. 3d.
12. Q. to Q. 2d.
13. P. takes Kt.
14. Q. to Q. 3d.
15. Q. B. takes Kt.
16. K. B. takes P. (ch.)
17. Q. to K. B. 5th.
18. Kt. to Q. 2d.
19. B. to Q. 5th.
20. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
21. Kt. takes Q.
22. Kt. takes K. B. P.
23. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
24. K. R. P. takes R.
25. K. to R. 2d.
26. K. to R. 3d.
27. P. to K. B. 4th.

## MORPHY.

28. K. B. to Q. 3d.
29. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
30. Q. B. to K. 5th.
31. Q. B. to K. B. 4th (ch.)
32. R. to K. Kt. 5th.
33. K. to Kt. 2nd.
34. K. B. takes P. (ch.)
35. P. to K. R. 4th.
36. Q. B. takes R.
37. K. to B. 3d.

## FREEMAN.

28. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
29. K. R. to K. B. 2d.
30. Q. R. to K. sq.
31. K. to R. 2d.
32. Q. R. to K. 8th (ch.)
33. K. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
34. K. to R. sq.
35. R. takes R. (ch.)
36. R. to K. sq.

and Dr. Freeman gives up the contest. Outside of this wonderful achievement Mr. Morphy only played two games at Birmingham with Mr. J. S. Kipping, Jr., a gentleman whose familiarity with the different lines of play in the *Evans Gambit* is surpassed by few or no English players. One of the games at the opening in question is here subjoined.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Castles.
8. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. P. to K. 5th.
10. R. to K. sq.
11. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
12. Kt. takes K. P.
13. P. to K. B. 4th.
14. K. to R. sq.
15. Q. Kt. takes P.
16. Q. R. to Q. sq.
17. Q. takes Kt.
18. Q. takes K. B.
19. Kt. to K. 4th.
20. Kt. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. Q. takes Q. (ch.)
22. R. takes B.
23. P. takes P.

## KIPPING.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to Q. R. 4th.
6. P. takes P.
7. P. to Q. 3d.
8. Q. to K. B. 3d.
9. P. takes K. P.
10. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
11. Q. to K. B. 4th.
12. Kt. takes Kt.
13. P. takes Q. B. P. (ch.)
14. B. to Q. 5th.
15. K. to B. sq.
16. Kt. takes B.
17. Q. B. to K. 3d.
18. P. to K. B. 3d.
19. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
20. Q. to Q. B. 4th.
21. P. takes Q.
22. P. takes B.
23. P. to K. Kt. 3d.

## MORPHY.

24. P. to K. R. 4th.
25. R. to K. 5th.
26. Kt. to K. 4th.
27. Kt. takes P. (ch.)
28. R. to K. 6th (ch.)
29. R. to Q. 5th (ch.)
30. R. to K. 4th (ch.)

## KIPPING.

24. K. to B. 2d.
25. P. to K. R. 3d.
26. P. takes P.
27. K. to B. 3d.
28. K. to B. 4th.
29. K. to Kt. 5th.

and Mr. Morphy mates in two moves.

On the twenty-eighth of August Mr. Morphy left Birmingham and returned to London. As Mr. Staunton had declared his inability to play the proposed match before November the young hero determined to spend the intervening time in Paris, and accordingly departed from London on the second of September, reaching the French Capital the following day. And now a new scene opens in the life of the man whose deeds we chronicle. Behold him in that classic dwelling-place of Chess, the *Café de la Régence*, a locality made memorable by the presence of a score of great masters and by remembrances of a thousand celebrities who have played Chess, discussed philosophy, dreamed of military fame, or mused upon political projects within its walls. From the days of such pre-revolutionary philosophers as Voltaire and Rousseau to the times of such poetical worthies as Musset and Méry numbers of the rulers of the minds and masses of France have resorted to this noted *Café* for recreation and sociality. And now can we not see them gazing with interest at the advent of this young man who was destined to revive the old glories of the place? Can we not imagine the shades of Legal and Philidor, of Bernard and Carlier, of Deschapelles and Labourdonnais looking down with delight upon this youthful inheritor of their laurels? Does not the spirit of Franklin rejoice as he watches this representative of America—less of a sage, perhaps, but infinitely more of a Chess-player than himself—revenging the defeats which the tamer of the lightning was compelled to undergo in this very same *Café de la Régence* nearly a century ago? Nor did the past welcome him with greater joy than the present. St. Amant, Rivière and the whole crowd of the *Café's* living habitués received him with open arms. Multitudes gathered to witness his play. Old pupils and admirers of Labourdonnais returned to the forsaken paths of Chess, to see the glories of their old teacher and idol eclipsed in the contests which now took place upon the time-honored battle-field of Caïssa. Beyond the Chess circles, too, honors were showered upon

the head of the eminent champion. Famous sculptors, like Lequesne, asked him to sit for his bust in marble ; he received calls from princes and was invited to dine with dukes ; he was flattered by poets and men of genius. And amid all this, Gallic pride, which would else have felt sore at his repeated victories, exulted in the fact that Paul Morphy was half a Frenchman ; for the language of his fireside has been, from his youngest years, that of France. Speaking the tongue with the ease and facility of a native, admiring the character of the people and familiar with their manners and customs as still preserved in the Creole circles of New Orleans, Mr. Morphy felt himself at home among the French and enjoyed with a keen zest the pleasant society of gay and agreeable Paris. The American residents, from the Minister down, were of course proud to do honor to one who was so worthily representing his country in the Old World ; while every French door was thrown open to him with a generous and hearty hospitality.

On the threshold of *La Régence* Mr. Morphy encountered as his first antagonist, Mr. D. Harrwitz, a native of Prussia and one of the first players of Europe. He commenced his Chess career at Breslau, whence he went to England, where, during a residence of some years, he edited the *British Chess Review* and engaged in numerous matches. For a long time past he had resided in Paris, devoting himself, as usual, entirely to the practice of the game. The two combatants first engaged in a preliminary contest which was lost by the American player. Then a match was commenced, from which the following *Philidor's Defence* is selected.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. takes P.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
6. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
7. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
8. B. to K. R. 4th.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Castles (K. R.)
11. Q. R. to Q. sq.
12. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
13. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
14. P. to K. R. 3d.

## HARRWITZ.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 3d.
3. P. takes P.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
6. Q. B. takes K. B.
7. P. to K. B. 3d.
8. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
9. Q. to Q. 2d.
10. K. B. to K. 2d.
11. Castles (K. R.)
12. K. R. to B. 2d.
13. Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.
14. Kt. to K. 4th.

## MORPHY.

15. Q. to K. 2nd.
16. B. to K. Kt. 3d.
17. Kt. to K. B. 5th.
18. P. to K. B. 4th.
19. R. takes P.
20. R. to K. R. 4th.
21. B. takes Kt.
22. R. to K. B. sq.
23. Kt. to Q. Kt. 5th.
24. R. to K. B. 2d.
25. Kt. takes B. P.
26. Kt. to Q. 5th.
27. P. takes B.
28. P. to Q. B. 4th.
29. R. to K. R. 5th.
30. P. to Q. B. 5th.
31. R. takes K. R. P. (ch.)
32. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
33. Kt. takes B. (ch.)
34. Kt. to B. 5th (ch.)
35. Kt. takes Q. P.

## HARRWITZ.

15. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
16. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
17. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
18. P. takes P.
19. K. to R. sq.
20. B. to K. B. sq.
21. B. P. takes B.
22. Q. to K. 3d.
23. Q. to K. Kt. sq.
24. P. to Q. R. 3d.
25. R. to Q. B. sq.
26. B. takes Kt.
27. R. to Q. B. 2d.
28. B. to K. 2d.
29. Q. to K. sq.
30. Q. R. takes P.
31. K. takes R.
32. K. to Kt. sq.
33. K. to Kt. 2d.
34. K. to Kt. sq.

and Mr. Morphy wins easily.

The palm in this encounter was to be awarded to the first winner of seven games, but after the termination of the eighth encounter, Mr. Harrwitz, alleging indisposition, requested a postponement. Mr. Morphy had already, at a previous stage, acceded to a similar demand on the part of his adversary, and now, by the advice of his friends, declined to permit a second violation of the terms of the match. The illness of the German player, meanwhile, was not such as to prevent him from playing numerous games each day at the *Café* against other and weaker opponents. Upon Mr. Morphy's refusal Mr. Harrwitz definitely resigned the match, leaving the score

MORPHY 5.

HARRWITZ 2.

DRAWN 1.

On the twenty-seventh of September Mr. Morphy repeated the wonderful feat which he had before performed at Birmingham and engaged simultaneously eight strong amateurs of *La Régence*, with his back to the boards. His opponents were

## Incidents in the History of

I. Baucher.  
II. Bierwirth.  
III. Bornemann.  
IV. Guibert.

V. Lequesne.  
VI. Potier.  
VII. Preti.  
VIII. Seguin.

The combat lasted ten hours, during which Mr. Morphy without food or drink retained his seat. The result, Mr. Morphy winning six and drawing two games, was announced amid prolonged and reiterated plaudits. The *Café* was literally crowded, from the commencement of the exhibition to its close, with hundreds of French, English, and American amateurs. Many of the games were fine specimens of play, the best, perhaps, being a *Philidor's Defence*, which was contested at the first board.

**MORPHY.**

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. Q. takes P.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
6. K. B. takes Q. Kt.
7. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
8. B. to K. R. 4th.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. Castles (K. R.)
11. Q. to Q. B. 4th (ch.)
12. K. Kt. to Q. 4th.
13. Q. R. to Q. sq.
14. P. to K. B. 4th.
15. P. to K. B. 5th.
16. K. Kt. to K. 6th.
17. P. to Q. R. 4th.
18. Q. to K. 2d.
19. B. to K. Kt. 3d.
20. B. takes Kt.
21. K. R. to K. B. 3d.
22. K. R. to R. 3d.
23. Q. to Q. 2d.
24. Q. takes Q. B.
25. K. R. takes R. P. (ch.)
26. R. to Q. 3d.
27. Q. to B. 7th (ch.)

**BAUCHER.**

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 3d.
3. P. takes P.
4. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
5. Q. B. to Q. 2d.
6. Q. B. takes K. B.
7. P. to K. B. 3d.
8. Kt. to K. R. 3d.
9. K. B. to K. 2d.
10. Castles.
11. K. to R. sq.
12. Q. to Q. 2d.
13. P. to Q. R. 4th.
14. K. R. to B. 2d.
15. K. R. to K. B. sq.
16. K. R. to K. Kt. sq.
17. Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.
18. Kt. to K. 4th.
19. Q. to Q. B. sq.
20. Q. P. takes B.
21. B. to Q. 2d.
22. P. to K. R. 3d.
23. K. to R. 2d.
24. B. to Q. 3d.
25. K. takes R.
26. K. to R. 4th.

and Mr. Baucher resigns.

Among the French amateurs of note whom Mr. Morphy encountered were Rivière, Laroche, Journoud and Devinck. The strongest of these and at present the leading native amateur of the land of Labourdonnais is Jules Arnous de Rivière. Among the games contested between him and the young American was the following elegant specimen of the *Evans Gambit*.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. P. takes P.
9. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. P. to K. 5th.
11. P. takes K. Kt.
12. P. takes Kt. P.
13. K. R. to K. sq. (ch.)
14. P. to Q. 5th.
15. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
16. P. takes B.
17. P. takes P. (ch.)
18. K. R. to K. 7th (ch.)
19. Q. to K. sq.
20. R. to Q. sq.
21. R. takes Kt.
22. Q. to Q. Kt. sq. (ch.)

## RIVIERE.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. P. takes P.
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
10. P. to Q. 4th.
11. P. takes K. B.
12. K. R. to Kt. sq.
13. Q. B. to K. 3d.
14. Q. to K. B. 3d.
15. Q. takes Q. Kt.
16. Q. to Q. 6th.
17. K. takes P.
18. K. to Kt. 3d.
19. Q. to Q. 4th.
20. Kt. to Q. 5th.
21. B. takes R.

and Mr. Rivière resigns.

But the greatest victory of the chivalrous knight-errant of Chess was to come. On the evening of the fourteenth of December Adolph Anderssen arrived in Paris for the purpose of playing a match at Chess with Mr. Morphy. He had been long regarded as the representative of the practical department of Teutonic Chess; he had won in 1851, the victor's wreath in the great international Tournament at London; and had been during several volumes one of the editors of the famous *Schachzeitung* of Berlin. He now resides in his native town of Breslau, where he is attached to a Gymnasium or College as Professor of Mathematics, giving enough of time to his favorite recreation to enable him

to maintain his strength unimpaired. Upon reaching the French capital he found his opponent confined to his bed by a severe illness. But, excited by the promise of a joust with an adversary so distinguished, Mr. Morphy soon sufficiently recovered to commence playing, and on the twentieth the match began at his rooms in the Hotel Breteuil. The number of games to be won by the victor was seven, the same as in the combat with Harrwitz. The three most striking parties are here inserted. The *Evans Gambit* immediately following was the first of the match.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. P. to Q. 4th.
7. Castles.
8. P. to K. 5th.
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
10. P. takes P.
11. B. takes Kt.
12. Q. to Q. R. 4th.
13. Q. takes B. P.
14. B. to Q. Kt. 2d.
15. P. takes B.
16. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
17. K. to R. sq.
18. P. to K. B. 4th.
19. Q. takes Q. P.
20. K. to Kt. sq.
21. B. to B. 3d.
22. Q. to K. B. 3d.
23. K. to R. sq.
24. Q. to K. Kt. 2d.
25. R. to K. Kt. sq.
26. Q. R. to K. B. sq.
27. Q. to Q. B. 6th.
28. Q. to K. Kt. 2d.
29. B. takes B.
30. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
31. P. to K. R. 4th.

## ANDERSEN.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. B. takes P.
5. B. to Q. R. 4th.
6. K. P. takes Q. P.
7. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
8. P. to Q. 4th.
9. K. Kt. to K. 5th.
10. Castles.
11. P. takes B.
12. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
13. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
14. B. takes Kt.
15. Kt. to K. Kt. 5th.<sup>4</sup>
16. K. R. to K. sq.
17. Kt. to K. R. 6th.
18. Q. to K. R. 5th.
19. Kt. takes P. (ch.)
20. Kt. to Q. 6th.
21. Kt. takes B. P.
22. Kt. to R. 6th (ch.)
23. Kt. to K. Kt. 4th.
24. Q. R. to Q. sq.
25. P. to K. R. 3d.
26. Q. to K. R. 6th.
27. Q. to Q. 2d.
28. B. takes Q. P.
29. Q. takes B.
30. Q. to Q. 4th.
31. Kt. to K. 3d.

## MORPHY.

32. Q. to K. Kt. 4th.
33. R. to K. Kt. 2d.
34. Q. to K. B. 5th.
35. Q. to K. B. 6th.
36. Q. to K. B. 5th.
37. R. takes R.
38. K. to R. 2d.
39. R. to K. B. 2d.
40. Kt. to Q. 2d.
41. Q. takes P. (ch.)
42. Kt. to K. 4th.
43. Kt. takes R.
44. Kt. to K. Kt. 4th.
45. K. to Kt. 3d.
46. K. to R. 2d.
47. K. to Kt. 3d.
48. K. to R. 2d.
49. P. to K. R. 5th.
50. Kt. to K. B. 6th.
51. Q. takes P. (ch.)
52. Q. to Kt. 6th (ch.).
53. Q. takes R. P. (ch.)
54. Q. to Kt. 6th (ch.)
55. P. to K. R. 6th.
56. P. to K. R. 7th.
57. K. to Kt. sq.
58. P. to R. 8th (Q.)
59. Q. takes Kt.
60. K. to B. sq.
61. Q. to K. B. 5th (ch.)
62. Q. to Q. B. 8th.
63. K. to K. sq.
64. Q. to Q. Kt. 7th (ch.)
65. Q. to K. B. 7th (ch.)
66. Q. to K. B. 3d (ch.)
67. Q. to K. B. 6th (ch.)
68. Q. to Q. Kt. 6th (ch.)
69. Q. to Q. R. 7th.
70. K. to K. 2d.
71. Q. to Q. R. 4th (ch.)
72. Q. to Kt. 5th (ch.)

## ANDERSEN.

32. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
33. R. to Q. 6th.
34. K. R. to Q. sq.
35. Q. to Q. 4th.
36. R. to Q. 8th.
37. Q. takes R. (ch.)
38. R. to Q. 6th.
39. R. to K. 6th.
40. R. to K. 7th.
41. K. to R. sq.
42. R. takes R. (ch.)
43. Q. to Q. 4th.
44. Q. takes R. P. (ch.)
45. Q. to Q. Kt. 6th (ch.)
46. Q. to Q. B. 7th (ch.)
47. Q. to Q. B. 6th (ch.)
48. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
49. P. to Q. R. 4th.
50. P. takes Kt.
51. K. to Kt. sq.
52. K. to B. sq.
53. K. to K. sq.
54. K. to Q. 2d.
55. Q. to Q. 4th.
56. Q. takes P. (ch.)
57. Kt. to K. Kt. 4th.
58. Q. takes Q.
59. Q. to Q. 5th (ch.)
60. P. to Q. R. 5th.
61. K. to Q. B. 3d.
62. K. to Q. Kt. 4th.
63. P. to Q. B. 4th.
64. K. to Q. B. 5th.
65. K. to Q. B. 6th.
66. Q. to Q. 6th.
67. K. to Q. Kt. 6th.
68. K. to B. 7th.
69. Q. to Q. B. 6th (ch.)
70. P. to R. 6th.
71. K. to Kt. 7th.
72. Q. to Kt. 6th.

and Mr. Morphy resigns. The next game, a *Centre Counter Gambit*, was the fifth of the match.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to Q. 4th.
4. P. to Q. B. 4th.
5. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
6. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
7. Q. B. to K. 3d.
8. Q. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. P. takes B.
10. Kt. to Q. 2d.
11. K. B. to Q. 3d.
12. Q. to Q. B. 2d.
13. Castles (K. R.)
14. Q. R. to K. sq.
15. P. to K. R. 3d.
16. K. to R. 2d.
17. R. to K. Kt. sq.
18. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
19. P. to K. B. 4th.
20. K. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
21. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
22. R. takes B.
23. K. to K. Kt. 2d.
24. P. takes P.
25. P. takes Kt.
26. P. takes P.
27. K. to K. B. sq.
28. Q. to K. B. 2d.
29. P. takes Kt.
30. Q. to K. 2d.
31. B. to K. B. 2d.
32. Q. R. to Q. sq.
33. Q. takes R.
34. Q. to Q. 3d.
35. R. to K. Kt. 3d.
36. Q. takes Q.
37. R. to K. Kt. 6th.
38. P. to Q. B. 4th.
39. K. to K. 2d.

## ANDERSEN.

1. P. to Q. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. Kt. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
5. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
6. P. to K. 3d.
7. K. B. to Q. Kt. 5th.
8. B. takes Kt. (ch.)
9. B. to K. 5th.
10. B. to Q. B. 3d.
11. Q. Kt. to Q. 2d.
12. P. to K. R. 3d.
13. Castles.
14. P. to Q. Kt. 3d.
15. Q. to Q. B. sq.
16. K. to R. sq.
17. R. to K. Kt. sq.
18. P. to K. Kt. 4th.
19. Q. to K. B. sq.
20. Q. R. to Q. sq.
21. B. takes Kt.
22. Q. to Q. 3d.
23. K. Kt. to K. R. 4th.
24. P. takes P.
25. P. to Kt. 5th.
26. R. takes P. (ch.)
27. P. to K. B. 4th.
28. Kt. to K. 4th.
29. Q. takes B. (ch.)
30. Q. to K. 5th.
31. Q. to Q. B. 3d.
32. R. takes R. (ch.)
33. Q. takes P. (ch.)
34. Q. takes Q. R. P.
35. Q. to Q. B. 5th.
36. R. takes Q.
37. R. to Q. B. 3d.
38. P. to Q. R. 4th.
39. R. takes P.

## MORPHY.

40. R. takes P.
41. K. to B. 3d.
42. R. to K. Kt. 6th.
43. R. to K. Kt. sq.
44. P. to K. 6th.
45. R. to Q. R. sq.
46. R. takes P.
47. K. to K. B. 4th.
48. K. takes P.
49. K. to Kt. 4th.
50. R. to R. 8th (ch.)
51. R. to R. 7th.
52. B. to K. Kt 3d.
53. K. to R. 4th.

## ANDERSSEN.

40. R. to Q. B. 7th (ch.)
41. P. to Q. R. 5th.
42. R. to Q. B. 5th.
43. P. to Q. R. 6th.
44. P. to Q. R. 7th.
45. R. to K. 5th.
46. R. takes P.
47. R. to Q. 3d.
48. R. to Q. 4th (ch.)
49. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
50. K. to R. 2d.
51. R. to Q. 2d.
52. R. to K. Kt. 2d (ch.)

and Mr. Morphy wins. The last selection was, in number, the ninth, and is the shortest and most dashing affair among the entire series of eleven games. It is a pretty example of the *Sicilian Defence*.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. P. to Q. 4th.
3. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
4. Kt. takes P.
5. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
6. B. to K. B. 4th.
7. B. to K. 3d.
8. Q. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
9. Kt. to Q. 5th.
10. K. Kt. to Q. B. 7th (ch.)
11. Q. to K. B. 3d (ch.)
12. B. to Q. B. 4th.
13. Kt. takes Kt. (dis. ch.)
14. B. takes Q. P. (ch.)
15. Q. to K. R. 5th (ch.)
16. P. takes P.
17. K. to K. 2d.

## ANDERSSEN.

1. P. to Q. B. 4th.
2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to Q. B. 3d.
4. P. to K. 3d.
5. P. to Q. 3d.
6. P. to K. 4th.
7. P. to K. B. 4th.
8. P. to K. B. 5th.
9. P. takes B.
10. K. to B. 2d.
11. Kt. to K. B. 3d.
12. Kt. to Q. 5th.
13. P. to Q. 4th.
14. K. to Kt. 3d.
15. K. takes Kt.
16. Kt. takes Q. B. P. (ch.)

and Professor Anderssen yields the game. The whole result of the encounter is thus summed up:

MORPHY 7.

ANDERSSEN 2.

DRAWN 2.

After the termination of this more formal contest which was concluded on the twenty-eighth of December, several off-hand skirmishes were

fought between the same players, Mr. Morphy winning five and Professor Anderssen one. That the great Prussian was still in the vigor of his strength, and preserved the old force and skill before which the assembled Chess-players of Europe eight years before had learned to tremble, was proved by the result of the games with Harrwitz and others at the *Café de la Régence* which took place just previous to the match. Mr. Morphy confesses that he met no abler antagonist or nobler gentleman in Europe than the Prussian Anderssen.

Besides those already mentioned, Mr. Morphy played one other match of importance in Paris, in which his opponent was Mr. Augustus Mongredien, the popular and courteous President of the venerable London Chess-Club. It resulted—

MORPHY 7.

MONGREDIEN 0.

DRAWN 1.

At length the American was obliged to leave the fascinating city where he had passed so many pleasant weeks and won so great renown. His protracted stay in Europe and the approaching departure of his brother-in-law, Mr. Sybrandt (who had lately arrived in Paris), compelled him to hasten his departure, and obliged him reluctantly to relinquish his long-cherished project of visiting Germany. His Parisian friends entertained him at a farewell banquet on the 4th of April, at which his bust was solemnly crowned with the merited laurel wreath, and on the ninth he took a final leave of the great French capital. He reached London the next day, and deep was the regret expressed by the British amateurs, when he announced that he could not prolong this second visit beyond a few days. He again performed his blindfold feat, once in the presence of the London Chess-Club, and again in the presence of the St. George's Club. His adversaries in the first instance (April 12th), were—

- I. Greenaway.
- II. Jones.
- III. Janssens.
- IV. Maude.

- V. Medley.
- VI. Mongredien.
- VII. Slous.
- VIII. Walker,

two of whom resigned, while both parties agreed, owing to the lateness of the hour to call the remaining six games drawn. In the other case he contended against—

- I. Cremorne.
- II. Kennedy.
- III. Cattley.
- IV. Hay.

- V. Worrall.
- VI. Cunningham.
- VII. Thrupp.
- VIII. Barnes.

Of these Mr. Morphy won six games and drew two. The following *Evans Gambit*, with Captain H. A. Kennedy, was one of the contests played on the latter occasion.

## MORPHY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. K. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. P. to Q. Kt. 4th.
5. P. to Q. B. 3d.
6. Castles.
7. P. to Q. 4th.
8. P. takes P.
9. P. to Q. 5th.
10. P. to K. 5th.
11. P. to K. 6th.
12. P. takes P.
13. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
14. K. Kt. to Kt. 5th.
15. Q. B. to K. B. 4th.
16. K. Kt. to B. 7th.
17. Q. B. takes Q. Kt.
18. P. takes K. R. (ch.)
19. Q. B. takes Q. P.
20. Q. to Q. 2d.
21. Q. R. to K. sq.

## KENNEDY.

1. P. to K. 4th.
2. Q. Kt. to B. 3d.
3. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
4. K. B. takes Kt. P.
5. K. B. to Q. B. 4th.
6. P. to Q. 3d.
7. P. takes P.
8. K. B. to Q. Kt. 3d.
9. Q. Kt. to K. 2d.
10. Q. Kt. to Kt. 3d.
11. P. takes P.
12. K. Kt. to K. 2d.
13. P. to Q. B. 3d.
14. Q. Kt. to K. 4th.
15. P. to K. Kt. 3d.
16. Castles.
17. K. R. takes K. Kt.
18. K. to B. sq.
19. Q. B. to K. Kt. 5th.
20. P. to K. Kt. 4th.

and Mr. Kennedy resigns.

During the last few days of Mr. Morphy's sojourn in England the leading Clubs of the metropolis expressed their sense of his high abilities by public dinners, and the British amateurs of all grades hastened to testify, in various ways, their approbation of his conduct and their admiration for his skill. From such flattering demonstrations the youthful conqueror felt obliged to tear himself away, and accordingly left for America by the steamer of the thirtieth of April from Liverpool. He reached New York on the tenth of May and was received with enthusiasm, not alone by lovers of the game in which he had displayed an unsurpassed proficiency, but by American citizens in general, who rejoiced at the triumphs which he had achieved in Europe, and who felt a national pride in the eminence which his efforts had given to his country in a field of art where the Old World had hitherto met with no rivalry.

Physically Paul Morphy is of short stature and slight build. He has the dark eye and hair of the South, and betrays in many ways his Gallic descent. His eye is soft and expressive, and assumes an expression of brilliancy whenever he is examining an interesting position. His memory is wonderfully good, and his comprehension quick and active. His genial disposition, his unaffected modesty, and his unvarying courtesy have endeared him to all his acquaintances. His affections are ardent and his generosity unbounded. He is a man of large general information and liberal culture, and is especially well-read in French and English literature. The most noteworthy features of his Chess character are the strange rapidity of his combinations, his masterly knowledge of the openings and ends of games, and the wonderful faculty which he possesses of recalling games played months before. While engaged at the board he is quiet, courteous and undemonstrative, and is neither depressed by defeat nor excited by victory.

### XIII.—MISCELLANEA AND ADDENDA.

— In the works of Thomas Jefferson are several anecdotes of Franklin. Speaking of the American philosopher's residence at the French Capital Jefferson says: "He was, therefore, feasted and invited to all the court parties. At these he sometimes met the old Duchess of Bourbon, who, being a Chess player of about his force, they very generally played together. Happening once to put her King into prize, the Doctor took it. 'Ah,' says she, 'we do not take Kings so.' 'We do in America,' said the Doctor." We are also told that the Emperor Joseph the Second was then at Paris, travelling incognito, under the title of Count Falkenstein, and used to overlook these games.

— At a meeting of the New Jersey Historical Society at Newark, Governor Price related this anecdote: "On the day preceding the night on which General Washington had determined to cross the Delaware and attack the British in Trenton, an Englishman in the neighborhood dispatched his son with a note to General Rahl, to warn him of the approaching danger. The General being deeply absorbed in a game of Chess when the note was presented, without drawing his attention from the game, he thoughtlessly put the note in his vest pocket. After the battle next day, when General Rahl was brought mortally wounded, the note was found unread in his pocket."

— In the notice of Chess in New York mention has been made of an English traveller, Mr. I. Finch. Upon returning to London he published, in 1833, a work under the title of *Travels in the United States of America and Canada*, in which he relates the following incident, in connection with his sojourn in Philadelphia: “I had the honor of an introduction to a lady, a relative of Dr. Franklin, and had the pleasure of playing a game of Chess with the same board and men with which he was accustomed to play. His genius seemed still to accompany his fair relative; as, notwithstanding my utmost exertions, I was soon defeated. My Pawns were captured—my Knights broke their lances—my Bishops were put in prison and I could not release them—my Castles were taken and the Vizier dethroned—the King made a gallant resistance, and captured several of his opponents, but was finally checkmated.”

— This same Chess-loving Mr. Finch, when at Monticello, could not avoid introducing the subject of his favorite pastime into his conversations with Jefferson. The celebrated ex-president distinctly tells him: “I played with Dr. Franklin at Chess, and was equal to him at the game.”

— In addition to the places mentioned in a former portion of this chapter, a few stray particulars have been gleaned concerning Chess in other cities. A social Chess circle seems to have existed in Providence at a very early day. At West Point the game appears to have been practised more or less ever since the establishment of the Military Academy at that place. But about 1818, Major (now Colonel) Sylvanus Thayer, was appointed Superintendent and Commandant at that station, and at his house lovers of the game were wont for some years to assemble. Several officers of the army have been, and many still are, noted for their Chess skill. Indeed the amusement has ever been a favorite one among them, and many a tedious hour has been whiled away by means of Chess at our border military stations, in the glades of Florida, on the prairies of the West, or by the coast of the Pacific.

— The first instance of the employment of the electro-magnetic telegraph for the purposes of Chess-play, occurred in this country in 1844. In the latter part of that year, certain lovers of Chess in Baltimore and Washington—between which places the earliest telegraphic line was constructed—arranged a match of seven games, as much for the purpose of testing the accuracy of the new mode of communication as for their own amusement. The contest commenced November 16th, and was played by means of the numerical notation, the Baltimoreans

using, as we are told, "the white pieces placed on numbers 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, and 64." The six hundred and eighty-six moves which made up the match were transmitted without a single mistake or interruption. Two of the games have been published.

— Commencing with the year 1846 several annual tournaments took place at the watering-places of Kentucky. The first one was held in August, 1846, at Drennon Springs, and the second in August, 1847, at Blue Lick, near Maysville. They usually lasted for several days, and among the players who participated were Dr. B. I. Raphael, then a resident of Louisville, Mr. E. A. Dudley of Lexington, Mr. R. Beattie and Mr. J. Shaw of St. Louis, and Mr. J. H. Turner. Several of the games, resulting from these pleasant festivals, are published in Stanley's *American Chess Magazine*.

— In 1850 a match, which excited considerable interest, was played at the city of Washington. The combatants were Mr. Charles H. Stanley of New York City, and Mr. J. H. Turner of Mount Sterling, Kentucky. The latter gentleman, as is related, imagining that he had discovered and thoroughly analyzed an invincible attack in the King's Knight's Gambit, boldly challenged Mr. Stanley, then the recognised champion of the country. Mr. Turner supposed that by playing the above-mentioned opening whenever he should have the first move, he would be certain of scoring at least one-half of the games. Unfortunately Mr. Stanley, in the very first King's Gambit which occurred, lighted upon a defensive move which paralyzed the attack, and which had escaped the notice of his opponent. Still, Mr. Turner, considering the strength and renown of his adversary, came off creditably. The match was commenced on February 11th, and came to an end on February 14th. It resulted Stanley 11, Turner 5, drawn 1.

— The first American Problems were published in the *Spirit of the Times*. Among the earliest composers were Mr. J. Knous; Mr. Napoleon Marache, who has published his stratagems both under his own name and under the pseudonym of N. O. K.; Professor Hyacinth R. Agnel of West Point; Mr. Frederic Leake of the Commercial Bank, Troy; Mr. Franklin Bowly of Winchester, Virginia; and Mr. Denis Julien of New York. This branch of the art of Chess has received much notice of late years, and several problem tournays have been held in connection with the *Chess Monthly* and the various weekly Chess columns of the country.

— In the winter of 1856-7 a regularly organized Chess club was

instituted at Yale College, furnishing an example which has since been followed by a large number of the Universities and higher seminaries of learning in the land. The Free Academy of New York maintains two rival chess clubs among its students. Matches over the board, by correspondence or by telegraph, have frequently occurred of late between various colleges situated near each other.

— Several Chess libraries have been collected in this country. We have seen that already in the last century, Lewis Rou possessed a number of works upon the game. In this century our information is more exact. Judge Fisk collected between one and two hundred volumes which were sold at his death. Professor Anderson, formerly of Columbia College, New York, has a Chess library of considerable size, composed in part of the duplicates belonging to the Bledow collection. Professor H. R. Agnel of West Point, Mr. H. P. Russ and Mr. F. B. Wightman of New York, Mr. Eugene B. Cook of Hoboken, and several others within a few years have become interested in this branch of bibliomania. But the finest collection in the land, and one of the largest and most important in the world, is that of Professor George Allen of Philadelphia. It numbers over six hundred volumes, and is rapidly increasing. It contains many rare works, and among them books from the libraries of Mercier, Schumacher, and Lewis.

— After the sketch of Chess in Boston had been stereotyped, the writer ascertained that Maelzel visited Boston, with the Automaton Chess Player, in the year 1828, being the second visit to that city, and making the visit in the year 1833, the *third*, instead of the second, as named in the sketch. Of the *second* visit, in 1828, nothing has been learned from the amateurs of that period who are now living, and the newspaper notices of the day were devoted to descriptions and praises of the Diorama of the Conflagration of Moscow, then exhibited for the first time. It is more than probable that the Automaton sank into comparative insignificance beside the mighty hosts who played the game of war and nightly left the Russian Capital in ruins and desolation. These exhibitions commenced June 4, 1828, and continued until July 26, at which time they were suspended. They were renewed August 25th, and, with an interruption of one week, continued until October 3, 1828. It is understood that Maelzel disposed of his Diorama while in Boston, to a company who gave exhibitions in his name. This is very probable as from Sept. 13th, the Automaton was not exhibited and a card announces Maelzel's departure, leaving the exhibition to be conducted by an agent.

## CHAPTER X.

LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.—ACCOUNTS.—SOLUTIONS.—  
INDEX OF GAMES.—INDEX OF PROBLEMS.

### I. LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS.

ABBOTT, J., Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	\$10 00
AGNEL, Professor H. R., West Point, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
ALFARO, Mr., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
ALLEN, Professor GEORGE, Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	5 00
ALLISON, WILLIAM S., Hastings, Min.	. . . . .	5 00
ANDERSEN, VICTOR, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
ANDERSON, C. E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
AUSTIN, JAMES T., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
AYERS, ALFRED, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
BAILEY, THOMAS, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BALLY, E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BARKER, JOHN R., Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	10 00
BARNES, HENRY W., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BAXTER, JAMES F. G., Boston, Mass.	. . . . .	5 00
BEEMAN, SAMUEL, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BINNIE, Mr., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BOLLEY H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
BLYTHE, THOMAS H., San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
BREADY, JOHN, Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	5 00
BROUGHTON, WILLIAM R., Boston, Mass.	. . . . .	5 00
BRONSON, JAMES S., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
BURLEY, A. G., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
BYRNE, OLIVER, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
CALMAN, EMILE, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
CALTHROP, S R., Bridgeport, Conn.	. . . . .	10 00

## List of Subscribers.

537

CARNES, GEO. A., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	\$5 00
CARPLES, B., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
CHANDLER, M., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
CHAPMAN, J., Boston, Mass.	. . . . .	5 00
CHICAGO CHESS CLUB.	. . . . .	5 00
CLARKE, P. B., Texas.	. . . . .	5 00
CLEMENT, WILLIAM H., Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	10 00
COOK, EUGENE B., Hoboken, N. J.	. . . . .	10 00
CRAIG, WILLIAM P., Tallahassee, Florida.	. . . . .	5 00
DODGE, ROBERT J., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
DRÖGE, J., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
DRUMMOND, THOMAS, Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
DUNNING, JOHN S., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
DUTTON, SAMUEL, Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	5 00
EDGE, FREDERICK M., New York City	. . . . .	5 00
EIDLITZ M., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
ELKIN, LEWIS, Philadelphia, Penn.	. . . . .	5 00
FELDNER, E., Hoboken, N. J.	. . . . .	5 00
FISKE, DANIEL W., New York City	. . . . .	15 00
FRANKLIN, SELIM, San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
FRÈRE, THOMAS, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	10 00
FULLER, W. J. A., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
FULTON, H. L., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
FYRIE, EDWARD, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
GALLATIN, ALBERT R., New York City.	. . . . .	25 00
GERMAN CHESS CLUB, San Francisco, Cal	. . . . .	5 00
GROTJAN, GEORGE, San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
HAMMOND, GEORGE, Boston.	. . . . .	5 00
HAVEN, S. R., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
HAWES, A. C., M.D., Providence, R. I.	. . . . .	5 00
HEILBUTH, S., New York City.	. . . . .	15 00
HICKS, W. E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
HIGGINS, A. F., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
HINES, DAUPHINE S., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
HINMAN, D. B., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
HOARD, SAMUEL, Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
HODGES, P. H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
HORNER, WILLIAM, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
HOWARD, G. H., Boston.	. . . . .	5 00
HOWELLS, HENRY CHARLES, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00

## List of Subscribers.

HOWELLS, HENRY E., Jr., Cincinnati, O.	. . . . .	\$5 00
JENKINS, FRANK W., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
JOHNSON, J. E., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
JULIEN, DENIS, New York City.	. . . . .	15 00
KAHLER, SIMON, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
KAISER, C., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
KENNICOTT, HIRAM, Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	25 00
KEYES, FREDERICK J., Boston.	. . . . .	5 00
KIND, WILLIAM, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
KNOTT, HUBERT, Brooklyn.	. . . . .	5 00
KUTTER, GEORGE, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
LAJUS, Dr., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
LANE, GEORGE W., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
LEE, GEORGE, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
LEWIS, SAMUEL, M.D., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
LICHENHEIN, THEODORE, New York City.	. . . . .	15 00
LOHSE, JOHN F., San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
LOYD, SAMUEL, Florence, N. J.	. . . . .	5 00
MANTIN, M., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MARACHE, NAPOLEON, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MARSTON, WARD, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MAURIAN, CHARLES A., New Orleans.	. . . . .	5 00
MAYNARD, S. H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
McGEAR, THOMAS F., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
MCNULTY, JOHN, M.D., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MEAD, CHARLES D., New York City.	. . . . .	25 00
MEEK, Honorable A. B., Mobile, Ala.	. . . . .	10 00
MEYER, LEOPOLD, San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
MICHINARD, FRANCIS, New Orleans.	. . . . .	20 00
MILLER, WILLIAM C., New York City.	. . . . .	10 00
MILLET A., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MOEHLE, ADOLPHE, New York, City.	. . . . .	5 00
MOGRIDGE, JOSEPH, Sacramento, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
MONTGOMERY, H. PHILIPS, Philadelphia..	. . . . .	10 00
MONTGOMERY, JOHN C., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
MONTGOMERY, RICHARD R., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
MOMTGOMERY, WILLIAM W., Augusta, Ga.	. . . . .	15 00
MONTHOLON, MARQUIS DE, French Consul-General, N. Y. City.	. . . . .	5 00
MORGAN, JAMES, Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	25 00
MORPHY, ERNEST, Quincy, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00

## List of Subscribers.

539

MORPHY, PAUL, New Orleans.	. . . . .	\$5 00
MORRELL, WILLIAM H., New York City.	. . . . .	10 00
MORRISS, E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
NEWMAN, JOHN B., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
NICHOLS, F. B., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
NICHOLS, J. S., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
OGDEN, B., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
OGDEN, C. H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
OVERMAN, WILLIAM, Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
PAINE, JAMES W., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
PARRY, DAVID, Buckingham Co., Va.	. . . . .	10 00
PAULSEN, LOUIS, Dubuque, Iowa.	. . . . .	7 50
PELHAM, J. C., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
PERRIN, ALPHONSE, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
PERRIN, FREDERICK, New York City.	. . . . .	15 00
PHILIP, JACOB, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	10 00
POINES, MR., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
POLLACK, MORRIS, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
POPE, JOHN F., San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
PUTNAM, J. E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
QUEEN, F., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
QUIMBY, EDWARD E., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
RANDOLPH, PHILIP, Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
RAPHAEL, B. I., M.D., Louisville, Ky.	. . . . .	5 00
REES, JAMES, Utica, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
REIF, ALBIN, New York City.	. . . . .	10 00
ROBERTS, DANIEL S., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	10 00
RUNGE, H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
SCHULTZ, C. H. New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
SCHWENDLER, A., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00
SHARPE, JACOB L., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
SHAW, JOHN, San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
SMYTH, SAMUEL, Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
SOLOMONS, MOSES, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
STEEVER, HENRY C., St. Paul, Min.	. . . . .	5 00
STITT, JOSEPH, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
STONE, J. W., M.D., Boston.	. . . . .	5 00
STRAZNICKY, E. RICHARD, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
STRONG, P. N., New Orleans.	. . . . .	5 00
STRONG, THOMAS W., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	20 00

## List of Subscribers.

SWEET, J. D. J., New York City.	. . . . .	\$5 00
TATUM, DANIEL O., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
THOMAS, E. S., New Haven, Conn.	. . . . .	5 00
THOMAS, WILLIAM G., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	10 00
THOMPSON, ALFRED, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
THOMPSON, JAMES, New York City.	. . . . .	25 00
THOMPSON, LUCAS, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
TILLSON, JOHN, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
TIMM, HENRY C., Hoboken, N. J.	. . . . .	5 00
TOWNSEND, DWIGHT, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
TURNER, J. SPENCER, Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
WADDELL, WILLIAM C. H., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WALKER, DANIEL, New York City.	. . . . .	10 00
WALTON, Reverend Doctor, Wm. New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WARD, AUGUSTUS H., New York City	. . . . .	5 00
WELLER, EDWIN J., Boston.	. . . . .	5 00
WELLS, MR., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WEMPLE, C. Y., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WHEATON, WILLIAM R., San Francisco, Cal.	. . . . .	5 00
WHITE, S. P., M.D., New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WHITING, Honorable J. R., New York City	. . . . .	5 00
WICKHAM, W. T., Virginia.	. . . . .	5 00
WILSON, H. L., Chicago, Ill.	. . . . .	5 00
Wood, Honorable FERNANDO, New York City.	. . . . .	5 00
WOODWARD JAMES S., Philadelphia.	. . . . .	5 00
WORTHINGTON, HENRY R., Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	25 00
YZNAGA, J. SANCHY, Brooklyn, N. Y.	. . . . .	5 00

---

The total amount of subscriptions, was eleven hundred and seventy-seven dollars and fifty cents. The whole number of subscribers was one hundred and seventy-two.

---

## II.—ACCOUNT OF MR. JAMES THOMPSON, TREASURER.

## RECEIPTS.

Subscriptions to the General Fund . . . . .	\$ 1177,50
From sale of Cards of Admission . . . . .	86,00
Entrance Fees.—Grand Tournament . . . . .	160,00
"    "    Minor Tournament . . . . .	80,00
	<hr/>
	\$ 1503,50

## EXPENDITURES.

Prizes.—Grand Tournament.	First Prize	\$ 300,00
"    "    "	Second "	100,00
"    "    "	Third "	66,67
"    "    "	Fourth "	33,33
"    Minor Tournament.	First "	75,00
"    "    "	Second "	50,00
"    "    "	Third "	25,00
"    "    "	Fourth "	12,50
"    Problem Tournay.	First "	30,00
"    "    "	Second "	15,00
		<hr/> \$707,50
Rent of Hall. . . . .	. . . . .	384,66
Printing. . . . .	. . . . .	107,87
Advertising. . . . .	. . . . .	37,88
Stationery . . . . .	. . . . .	18,00
Postage and Sundries . . . . .	. . . . .	47,59
Subscribers' Copies to the Book of the Congress . . . . .	. . . . .	<hr/> 200,00
"	Total . . . . .	\$1503,50

## III.—SOLUTIONS OF PROBLEMS,

## DEDICATION PROBLEM.

White.

1. P. to Kt. 4.
2. R. to B. 3.
3. R. to B. 4.
4. R. Mates.
  
3. R. to Q. 3.
4. Q. Mates.

Black.

1. P. to Kt. 3 (A).
2. P. to K. 5.
3. Any move.
  
 If 2. Any other move.
   
3. Any move.

(A.)

2. Q. takes B. P. (ch.)
3. R. to B. 5.
4. Mates.

1. Kt. to Kt. 3.
2. K. takes P.
3. Any move.

## SET "STRIVE FOR HONOR!"

## No. I.

1. Q. to Kt. 3.
2. Q. to Kt. 3.
3. Kt. to Q. B. 3.
4. Mates.
  
3. Kt. to Q. 6 (ch.).
4. R. Mates.
  
3. Q. to Q. 3 (ch.).
4. Q. Mates.

1. K. to Kt. 4 (A, B, C, D, E, F, G).
2. K. to R. 4.
3. Any move.

If 2. P. takes Q.  
 3. K. moves.

If 2. Kt. to Q. 4.  
 3. K. to R. 4.

(A.)

2. Q. to K. 5 (ch.).
3. R. to R. 3.
4. Mates.

1. K. to Q. 4.
2. K. to B. 5.
3. Any move.

# Solutions.

543

White.	(B.)	Black.
		1. K. takes P. 2. [K. takes Kt.] 3. K. moves.
2. R. to Q. sq. (ch.). 3. Q. to B. 3 (ch.). 4. Q. to K. 3, Mate.		
	(C.)	
2. Kt. to Q. 6 (ch.). 3. Q. to Q. 3 (ch.). 4. P. Mates.		1. B. to K. 2. 2. B. takes Kt. 3. K. moves.
	(D.)	
2. Q. to B. 3 (ch.). 3. Q. to B. 5 (ch.). 4. Q. Mates.		1. P. to Kt. 6. 2. [K. to Q. 4.] 3. K. takes Kt.
	(E.)	
2. Kt. to Q. 6 (ch.). 3. R. to Q. sq. (ch.). 4. Q. to B. 2, Mate.		1. R. takes Kt. 2. [K. takes P.] 3. K. to B. 4.
	(F.)	
2. Kt. to Q. 2 (ch.). 3. Q. to Q. 3 (ch.). 4. Kt. Mates.		1. Kt. to Q. Kt. 4. 2. [K. takes P.] 3. K. Anywhere.
	(G.)	
2. R. to Q. B. sq. (ch.) 3. R. to B. 5 (ch.). 4. Mates.		1. P. to K. 4. 2. [K. to Q. 4.] 3. K. anywhere.
	No. II.	
1. Kt. to B. 6. 2. Kt. to Q. 5. 3. Q. takes Q. P. (ch.) 4. Q. to B. 5, Mate.		1. P. takes Q. Kt. 2. [P. takes Kt.] 3. K. moves.

## Solutions.

<p style="text-align: center;">White.</p> <p>2. Q. takes Q. P. (ch.)      3. Q. to B. 5 (ch.).      4. Kt. to K. 8, Mate.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">(A.)</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Black.</p> <p>1. Kt. takes Kt.      2. [K. to K. 4.]      3. K. to Q. 3.</p>
<p>2. Kt. to K. 8 (ch.).      3. Q. takes Kt.      4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">(B.)</p> <p>1. K. to Q. 3.      2. K. takes Kt.      3. Any move.</p>
<p>3. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).      4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p>If 2. K. to B. 4.      3. K. takes Kt.</p>
<p>1. Kt. to K. 4 (dis. ch.).      2. B. to Q. 4.      3. Q. to B. 5 (ch.).      4. P. Mates.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">No. III.</p> <p>1. K. to Q. 4 (A).      2. K. takes B.      3. K. takes Kt.</p>
<p>3. Kt. to Kt. 5 (ch.).      4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p>If 2. K. to K. 3.      3. K. to Q. 4, or B. 4.</p>
<p>3. Kt. to B. 6 (ch.).      4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p>If 2. R. to R. 4, or P. to Q. 7.      3. K. takes B, or to K. 3.</p>
<p>3. Q. to Q. 6 (ch.).      4. Q. or Kt. mates accordingly.</p>	<p>If 2. R. to Q. B. 8, or R. to K. R.      2.      3. K. takes Kt. or to B. 5.</p>
<p>3. Q. to Q. 7 (ch.).      4. P. or Kt. mates accordingly.</p>	<p>If 2. P. to Q. Kt. 5.      3. Kt. takes Kt. or to B. 5.</p>
<p>2. Kt. to Q. 2 (ch.).      3. B. to Q. B. 3.      4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">(A.)</p> <p>1. K. to Kt. 6.      2. [K. to R. 5 or Kt. 5.]      3. Any move.</p>

## SET "THREE IS THE CHARM."

## No. I.

White.

1. P. to B. 5.
2. Kt. to R. 3.
3. R. to K. 4.
4. Q. Mates.
  
3. Q. takes B. (ch.)
4. Q. to Q. 3, Mate.
  
3. Q. to B. 2 or Kt. sq.
4. Q. or Kt. mates.

Black.

1. [B. takes P.]
2. P. takes Kt.
3. Any move.

If 2. R. takes Kt.

3. K. to B. 5.

If 2. P. to B. 5.

3. Any move.

## No. II.

1. K. to Q. 3.
2. Q. to Kt. 7 (ch.).
3. Kt. takes P. at R. 4.
4. Kt. or Q. Mates.
  
3. Q. to Kt. 6 (ch.).
4. Q. Mates.

1. K. takes B. (A, B, C, D, E.)
2. Kt. to B. 3.
3. Any move.

If 2. K. to B. 4.

3. K. moves.

## (A.)

2. Kt. to K. 3 (ch.).
3. Kt. to Kt. 6 (ch.).
4. Q. Mates.

1. Kt. to B. 3.
2. [K. takes B.]
3. K. to K. 3.

## (B.)

2. Q. to K. 4 (ch.).
3. Kt. to K. 6 (ch.).
4. B. Mates.

1. Kt. to K. 2.
2. [K. to Kt. 4]
3. K. to R. 3.

## (C.)

2. Q. to K. 4 (ch.).
3. Kt. takes R. P. (ch.)
4. Q. Mates.

1. R. to R. 3.
2. K. to Kt. 4.
3. K. moves.

White.	(D.)	Black.
2. Q. to K. 4 (ch.).		1. P. takes Kt.
3. Kt. to K. 2, or P. to R. 3 (ch.).		2. [K. to Kt. 5.]
4. Mates.		3. Any move.

White.	(E.)	Black.
2. Q. takes R. or Q. to K. 4 (ch.). And mates in two moves.		1. R. to R. 2.

## No. III.

1. Q. takes R. P. 2. Q. to R. 2. 3. R. to Kt. 2. 4. R. Mates.  3. R. takes Q. (ch.) 4. R. takes R. Mate.  3. Q. takes Kt. P. 4. Q. or B. Mates.	1. [P. to B. 4.] 2. P. takes Q. 3. Any move.  If 2. R. takes Q. 3. R. to B. 2.  If 2. P. to Kt. 7. 3. Any move.
--	---

## SET "CERTUM PETE FINEM."

## No. I.

1. K. to Kt. 3.  2. K. to B. 4. 3. Mates.	1. Kt. to K. 5 (ch.). R. to B. 3, or R. to Kt. 8 (ch.). (A, B, C.) 2. Any move.
--	--

## (A.)

2. Q. takes B. (ch.) 3 Kt. takes P. Mate.	1. B. to K. 4 (ch.). 2. K. takes Q.
--	--

## (B.)

2. K. to B. 4. 3. P. Mates.	1. B. takes B. (dis. ch.) 2. B. to K. 5.
--------------------------------	---

# Solutions.

547

White.	(C.)	Black.
2. Q. to Kt. 6 (ch.).		1. Anything else.
3. Kt. takes P. Mate.		2. K. to K. 4.
	No. II.	
1. Q. takes Kt. (ch.)		1. Q. takes Q. (ch.) (A.)
2. K. to Q. sq.		2. Q. takes P. (ch.)
3. K. takes Q.		3. Any move.
4. R. or Kt. Mates.		
	(A.)	
2. K. to B.		1. P. takes Q.
3. Kt. to Kt. 5 (ch.).		2. Q. to Kt. 5.
4. B. to K. 5. Mate.		3. R. takes Kt.
	No. III.	
1. K. takes Kt.		1. P. takes R. (A, B, C, D.)
2. Kt. to B. 2 (ch.).		2. P. takes Kt.
3. Q. takes P. (ch.)		3. K. takes Q.
4. P. to K. 4 (ch.).		4. K. to K. 3 or 5.
5. B. Mates.		
	(A.)	
2. P. takes P. (ch.)		1. R. takes Q.
3. K. R. to K. B. 2.		2. [K. takes P.]
4. Q. R. to K. 2.		3. [B. to Kt. 6.]
5. Mates.		4. Any move.
	(B.)	
2. P. takes P. (ch.)		1. B. takes R.
3. R. to K. B. 2.		2. P. takes P.
4. B. to Kt. 4.		3. P. takes R., or B. to R. 3.
5. Mates.		4. Any move.
3. Q. takes P. (ch.)		If 2. K. to B. 4.
4. Q. to K. 6 (ch.).		3. K. to Kt. 3.
5. Kt. Mates.		4. K. to R. 2.

White.

(C.)

2. P. takes P. (ch.)
3. Kt. to B. 4 (ch.).
4. B. to K. 2 (ch.).
5. R. Mates.
  
3. Kt. to B. 2 (ch.).
4. R. to K. 2 (ch.).
5. B. to B. 2, Mate.

Black.

1. P. Queens.
2. K. takes P.
3. [P. takes Kt.]
4. K. to K. 4.

If 2. P. takes P.  
 3. P. takes Kt.  
 4. P. takes R.

(D.)

2. P. Queens.
3. Q. takes B.
4. Kt. takes P. (ch.)
5. R. Mates.

1. Kt. to B. 4.
2. Kt. to K. 3.
3. [B. takes 2d Q.]
4. Kt. takes Kt.

## SET "NON QUO, SED QUOMODO."

## No. I.—VIVE LA DAME!"

1. R. takes P. (ch.)
2. R. to Kt. 8 (ch.).
4. B. takes P. (ch.)
4. Q. takes P. (ch.)
5. Q. takes Kt. (ch.)
6. P. to Q. 7 (ch.).
7. Q. Mates.

1. [K. to B.]
2. [R. takes R.]
3. P. takes B.
4. Q. to Q. 2.
5. Q. to Q. sq.
6. K. takes P.

## No. II.—"TOUT EST PERDU FORS L'HONNEUR."

1. R. to R. 5.
2. R. to Q. 6.
3. R. to Q. 4.
4. P. Mates.

1. K. takes R.
2. P. to Kt. 3.
3. P. takes R.

## No. III.—"THE AMBUSH."

1. B. to Q. 3.
2. R. to K. 4.
3. B. to B. sq.
4. B. to Kt. 2.
5. Mates.

1. [K. moves.]
2. K. moves.
3. K. moves.
4. K. moves.

## SET "Des Strebend werth,"

White.	No. I.	Black.
1. Q. to B. (ch.)		1. K. to K. 4. (A.)
2. Kt. to Q. 5.		2. P. takes Kt.
3. R. to K. 6 (ch.).		3. K., B., or P. takes.
4. Mates accordingly.		
3. B. to Q. 6 (ch.).	If 2. Kt. to Kt. 3.	3. K. takes Kt.
4. Q. Mates.		
3. Q. to K. B. 4 (ch.).	If 2. B. to Q. Kt. sq.	3. K. takes Kt.
4. R. Mates.		
	(A.)	
2. Q. to K. B. sq. (ch.)		1. K. to B. 6.
3. B. to Q. R. 3.		2. K. to K. 6.
4. B. Mates.		3. Any move.
	(B.)	
1. Q. to K. R. 2.		1. B. to Kt. 5, or R. 3. (A, B)
2. P. to B. 3.		2. K. B. moves.
3. Kt. to K. 3 (ch.).		3. B. takes Kt.
4. P. to B. 4 (ch.).		4. K. to Q. 5.
5. Q. Mates.		
	(A.)	
2. Kt. to K. 3 (ch.).		1. Kt. to Kt. 4.
3. Q. to B. 5 (ch.)		2. [K. to Q. 5.]
4. Q. takes Kt. (ch.)		3. Kt. to K. 5.
5. Mates.		4. K. to B. 6.
	(B.)	
2. Q. to Q. 6 (ch.).		1. K. to Q. 5.
3. P. to B. 3 (ch.).		2. [B. to Q. 4.]
4. Q. to B. 4 (ch.).		3. [B. takes P.]
5. Q. takes B. Mate.		4. B. to K. 5.

# Solutions.

No. III. *is defective.*

## SET

*"But Washington's a watchword such as ne'er  
Shall sink while there's an echo left to air."*

### No. I.

White.

1. Q. takes Kt. P.
2. P. to Q. 6.
3. P. to Q. 7.
4. Mates.

Black.

1. [B. takes Q.]
2. [B. takes Kt.]
3. Any move.

### No. II.

1. Q. to Q. B. 8.

2. K. to Kt. 3.

3. Q. to Q. B. 5 (ch.).

4. B. Mates.

1. B. to Q. 7. (A, B.)
2. Any move.
3. P. takes Q.

### (A.)

2. K. to Kt. 3.

3. Q. to B. 3 (ch.).

4. B. Mates.

1. K. to K. 6 (ch.).
2. Kt. to Q. 4.
3. Kt. takes Q.

### (B.)

2. Q. to Q. 8 (ch.).

3. Q. to Q. 4 (ch.).

4. Q. or B. Mates.

1. P. to Q. Kt. 4.
2. K. takes P.
3. Any move.

No. III. *is defective.*

## SET "QUOD POTUI PERFECI."

### No. I.

1. B. to Kt. 7.

2. Q. to Q. 5 (ch.).

3. B. to B. 8. Mate.

1. Any move.

2. Kt. takes Q.

No. II. *is faulty.*

## No. III.

White.

1. B. takes P. (ch.)
2. Q. to K. R. sq. (ch.)
3. R. takes R.
4. R. to Kt. 6 (dis. ch.).
5. R. to Q. 6 (ch.).
6. Kt. Mates.

Black.

1. P. takes B.
2. R. to Kt. 7.
3. [Q. to R. 2 (ch.).]
4. Q. takes Q.
5. R. takes R.

## SET "CEDO MAJORI!"

## No. III.

1. Kt. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
2. R. takes R. (ch.)
3. Q. takes P. (ch.)
4. Kt. to Kt. 6 (ch.)
5. Kt. to K. 7 (ch.).
6. Kt. to B. 6 (ch.).
7. Kt. takes R. (ch.)
8. Kt. to B. 6 (ch.).
9. Kt. to K. 7 (ch.).
10. Kt. to Kt. 6 (ch.)
11. Kt. takes P. (ch.)
12. Kt. to Kt. 6 (ch.)
13. Kt. to K. 7 (ch.).
14. P. to B. 4 (ch.).
15. Kt. Mates.

1. R. takes Kt.
2. K. takes R.
3. B. takes Q.
4. K. to Q. 4.
5. K. to K. 4.
6. K. to Q. 4.
7. K. to K. 4.
8. K. to Q. 4.
9. K. to K. 4.
10. K. to Q. 4.
11. K. to K. 4.
12. K. to Q. 4.
13. K. to K. 4.
14. Q. takes P.

## "CURIOSUM."

1. Kt. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
2. Kt. to Q. 7 (ch.).
3. R. to Kt. 5 (ch.).
4. Q. to R. 8 (ch.).
5. R. to K. 7 (ch.).
6. Q. to Q. Kt. 8 (ch.).
7. Q. to Kt. 2 (ch.).
8. Q. takes B. (ch.)
9. *Pion Coiffé* Mates.

1. B. takes Kt.
2. B. takes Kt.
3. B. to B. 4.
4. Q. to B. 3.
5. Kt. to K. 3.
6. Kt. to Q. 3.
7. R. to Q. 5.
8. R. takes B.

## DEDICATION PROBLEM.

White.

1. B. to K. Kt. 5.
2. Q. takes R. (ch.)
3. B. to B. 6 (ch.).
4. P. to K. 4 (ch.).
5. B. to Q. 5. Mate.

Black.

1. R. takes Kt. (A, B, C, D, F)
2. [K. takes Q.]
3. K. to B. 4.
4. K. to K. 3.

(A.)

2. Q. to B. 7 (ch.).
3. Q. takes R. (ch.)
4. Q. to B. (ch.)
5. B. Mates.

1. P. to B. 3, or Q. Kt. 6.
2. K. takes Kt.
3. [K. to B. 6.]
4. K. to K. 5.

(B.)

2. K. to Kt. 6.
3. K. to Kt. 7.
4. Kt. to Q. B. 3 (ch.).
5. Q. Mates.

1. K. to K. 3.
2. [Kt. to B. sq. (ch.)]
3. [K. to Q. 4.]
4. K. to K. 3, or B. 4.

(C.)

2. Kt. takes Kt. (ch.)
3. Q. to Q. 5 (ch.).
4. Q. takes R.
5. Mates.

1. Kt. to B. 3 (ch.).
2. [K. to K. 3.]
3. [K. to B. 4.]
4. Any move.

(D.)

2. Kt. to K. B. 6 (ch.).
3. Q. to K. B. 5 (ch.).
4. Q. to R. 7 (ch.).
5. B. to R. 6. Mate.

1. B. to Q. Kt. 2.
2. [K. to K. 3.]
3. K. to B. 2.
4. K. to B.

(E.)

2. Kt. to Q. B. 3 (ch.).
3. Q. to Q. 5 (ch.).
4. Q. to B. 7 (ch.).
5. Q. takes Kt. Mate.

1. P. to K. Kt. 7.
2. [K. to K. 3.]
3. K. to B. 4.
4. Kt. to B. 3 (ch.).

# Solutions.

553

## No. 23.

White.

1. R. to Q. B. 6.
2. Mates.

Black.

1. Any move.

## No. 24.

1. R. takes B. (ch.)
2. Mates.

1. Any move.

## No. 25.

1. Kt. to B. 3 (dis. ch.).
2. Q. to K. Kt. 4 (ch.).
3. B. Mates.

1. R. takes R. (A.)
2. Kt. takes Q.

(A.)

2. B. takes Kt.
3. Mates.

1. Kt. to B. 4 (ch.).
2. Any move.

## No. 26.

1. B. to K. Kt. 7.
2. B. to K. 8.
3. Q. Mates.

1. [K. to Q. 4.]
2. K. anywhere.

## No. 27.

1. Q. takes P. at B. 5.
2. B. to Q. 5.
3. Mates.

1. K. R. takes Q. (A, B, C, D.)
2. Any move.

(A.)

2. P. to B. 4.
3. Mates.

1. Q. R. takes Q.
2. Any move.

(B.)

2. Q. takes P. (ch.)
3. B. Mates.

1. Kt. to K. 4.
2. K. takes Q.

(C.)

2. B. takes B.
3. Mates.

1. Q. to R. 4.
2. Any move.

White.

2 Q. to K. B. 5.  
3 Mates.

(D.)

Black.

1. Q. to K. Kt. sq.  
2. Any move.

No. 28.

1. Q. to Q. 2.  
2. Kt. to K. B. 5.  
3. Mates.

1. Kt. to K. 2. (A, B, C, D.)  
2. Any move.

(A.)

2. Kt. to Q.  
3. Mates.

1. B. takes R. P., or P. to Kt. 5.  
2. Any move.

(B.)

2. B. checks.  
3. Q. Mates.

1. B. takes B. P.  
2. K. to K. 4.

(C.)

2. B. to Q. 5 (ch.).  
3 Q. to Q. 4. Mates.

1. P. to B. 7, &c.  
2. K. takes P.

(D.)

2. B. to B. 5 (ch.).  
3 Q. Mates.

1. Kt. to Kt. 3.  
2. K. takes P.

No. 29.

1. R. to Kt. 3.  
2. Q. takes Kt.  
3. R. to K. 3. Mate.

1. Kt. to Kt. 5. (A, B, C, D.)  
2. P. moves.

(A.)

2. Q. to Q. 7.  
3. R. to Kt. 4. Mate.  
3. Q. to Q. 3. Mate.

1. P. to R. 6.  
2. P. to B. 6.

If 2. Any other move.

<p><b>White.</b></p> <p>2. Q. to Kt. 2. 3. Q. Mates.</p>	<p><b>(B.)</b></p>	<p><b>Black.</b></p> <p>1. Kt. to B. 6. 2. Any move.</p>
<p>2. Q. to Kt. 5. 3. Mates.</p>	<p><b>(C.)</b></p>	<p>1. P. to B. 6. 2. Any move.</p>
<p>2. Q. to Kt. 2 (ch.). 3. Q. Mates.</p>	<p><b>(D.)</b></p>	<p>1. Kt. to B. 8. 2. Any move.</p>
<p>1. Q. to K. Kt. sq. 2. B. to B. 2. 3. B. takes Kt. P. 4. Q. Mates.</p>	<p><b>No. 30.</b></p>	<p>1. B. or P. moves. 2. K. or P. moves. 3. Any move.</p>
<p><b>No. 31.</b></p> <p><b>(FIRST STIPULATION.)</b></p>		
<p>1. R. to Q. 8 (ch.). 2. Q. to Kt. 8 (ch.). 3. Q. to K. B. 8 (ch.). 4. Q. or B. Mates.</p>	<p><b>(A.)</b></p>	<p>1. K. takes R. 2. K. to K. 2. (A.) 3. Any move.</p>
<p>3. B. to R. 4 (ch.). 4. B. takes Q. Mate.</p>	<p><b>(SECOND STIPULATION.)</b></p>	<p>2. Kt. to B. sq. 3. Q. interposes.</p>
<p><b>Black.</b></p> <p>1. R. takes Kt. (ch.) 2. R. to R. 6 (ch.) 3. B. to B. 3 (ch.). 4. R. Mates.</p>	<p><b>White.</b></p> <p>1. [K. to R. 2.] 2. K. to Kt. 2. (A.) 3. K. takes R.</p>	
<p>3. R. to R. 8 (ch.). 4. R. Mates.</p>	<p><b>(A.)</b></p>	<p>2. K. takes R. 3. K. to Kt. 2.</p>

## No. 32.

White.

1. Kt. takes B.
2. R. to K. B. 5.
3. Kt. takes Q. P. (ch.), or Kt. to Q. B. 6, accordingly.
4. Mates.

Black.

1. [R. takes Kt.]
2. [K. takes either R.]
3. K. moves.

## No. 33.

1. Kt. takes Q. B. P. (dis. ch.)
2. R. to Q. 4 (ch.).
3. Kt. to K. 3 (ch.).
4. P. Mates.

1. Q. takes Q.
2. K. takes R.
3. R. takes Kt.

## No. 34.

1. B. takes K. P.
2. B. takes B. P.
3. B. takes Kt. P.
4. P. Mates.

1. [P. takes R.]
2. P. takes P.
3. P. moves.

## No. 35.

1. Kt. takes K. P. (dis. ch.).
2. Kt. to Q. 5.
3. Kt. to K. B. 4 (db. ch.).
4. Kt. to Kt. 6. Mate.

1. K. to K. 4. (A.)
2. K. to K. 3.
3. K. to K. 4.

(A.)

2. B. to K. 6.
3. P. to Q. 4.
4. P. Mates.

1. K. takes P.
2. P. takes Kt.
3. P. to K. 7.

## No. 36.

1. R. to Q. 3.
2. R. at Q. 3 takes B.
3. P. to Q. 4 (ch.).
4. B. Mates.

1. B. to Q. 3. (A.)
2. R. takes R. (B. C.)
3. K. takes R.

(A.)

2. R. takes B.
3. Kt. to Q. 7 (ch.).
4. Kt. to Q. B. 5. Mate.

1. B. takes P.
2. R. to B. 4, or Q. sq.
3. K. to K. 5.

If 2. P. to B. 6.

# Solutions.

557

White.	Black.
3. Kt. to R. 5, or Q. 5 (dis. ch.).	3. K. to K. 5.
4. R. to Q. 4. Mate.	If 2. P. to Kt. 6, &c.
3. R. to Kt. 5 (ch.).	3. R. to B. 4.
4. Mates.	

(B.)

3. P. to Q. 4 (ch.).	2. P. to Kt. 6.
4. R. takes P. Mate.	3. R. takes P.

(C.)

3. Kt. to R. 5 (dis. ch.).	2. P. to B. 6.
4. R. Mates.	3. K. to K. 5.

No. 37.

1. R. to Q. B. 4.	1. [K. takes R.]
2. K. takes P.	2. K. to B. 6.
3. R. to R. 2.	3. K. moves.
4. R. Mates.	

No. 38.

1. Q. takes Kt. (ch.)	1. [Q. takes Q.]
2. Kt. to Q. 4 (ch.).	2. [K. to Q. 2.]
3. R. takes B. (ch.)	3. K. moves.
4. Kt. Mates.	

No. 39.

1. Q. to B. 6 (ch.).	1. [K. to K. 2.]
2. Kt. to K. 5.	2. [R. to R. 3.]
3. P. to Kt. 5.	3. Any move.
4. Mates.	

No. 40.

1. Q. to Q. 8.	1. [K. Kt. to B. 3.]
2. Q. takes Kt.	2. [Kt. takes Q.]
3. Kt. to K. 5.	3. Any move.
4. Kt. Mates.	

## Solutions.

## No. 41.

White.

1. Kt. to Q. 4.
2. Q. takes B.
3. P. to Q. Kt. 4.
4. Kt. Mates.

Black.

1. B. to Q. R. 4. (A.)
2. R. takes Q. (B, C.)
3. Any move.

(A.)

2. P. takes R.
3. P. to Q. Kt. 4.
4. Kt. Mates.

1. R. takes P.
2. [B. to Q. R. 4.]
3. Any move.

(B.)

3. P. to K. 4 (ch.)
4. R. takes P. Mate.

2. Kt. takes Q.
3. K. takes Kt.

(C.)

3. R. to Q. B. 5 (ch.).
4. Kt. Mates.

2. B. to Q. Kt. 5.
3. B. takes R.

## No. 42.

1. R. to Q. B. 4 (ch.).
2. Kt. to K. B. 2.
3. Q. to B. 6 (ch.).
4. Kt. Mates.

1. [P. takes R.]
2. K. takes R. (A.)
3. K. takes Q.

(A.)

3. Kt. to B. 5 (ch.).
4. Q. or B. Mates.

2. Q. takes Kt. at B. 7.
3. Any move.

## No. 43.

1. B. to Q. B. 5.
2. B. to Q. 7.
3. R. to K. R. 3.
4. R. to K. B. 3.
5. R. to B. 5. Mate.

1. P. to R. 4.
2. P. to R. 3.
3. K. to K. 4.
4. K. to Q. 4.

## No. 44.

1. Kt. takes Kt.
2. Q. takes Kt.
3. B. takes B. (ch.)
4. R. to B. 4 (ch.).
5. B. Mates.

1. P. takes Kt. (A.)
2. [B. takes Q.]
3. K. to B. 4.
4. K. to K. 4.

# Solutions.

559

White.	(A.)	Black.
2. Q. to K. 3 (ch.).		1. B. takes B.
3. R. takes Kt.		2. [Kt. to B. 5.]
White mates in 2 moves.		3. Many moves.
	No. 45.	
1. B. to Q. 2 (dis. ch.).		1. K. to Q. 4.
2. Q. Kt. to K. B. 6 (ch.).		2. K. to K. 4.
3. Q. to K. B. 5 (ch.).		3. K. takes Q.
4. R. takes P. (ch.)		4. K. takes R.
5. K. to K. 4 (dis. ch.).		5. Kt. to B. 5. Mate.
	No. 46.	
1. P. to R. 4.		1. [B. to B. 3.]
2. P. takes B.		2. K. takes P.
3. R. to K. 7.		3. K. to Kt. 3.
4. Kt. to K. 3 (dis. ch.).		4. K. anywhere.
5. Kt. or R. Mates.		
	No. 47.	
1. R. to Q. 4 (ch.).		1. K. takes B.
2. R. to K. Kt. 4 (dis. ch.).		2. [K. to Q. 4.]
3. Q. to R. 8 (ch.).		3. K. to K. 4.
4. Q. to K. 4 (ch.).		4. P. takes Q.
5. R. Mates.		
4. Q. to Q. 8 (ch.).		If 3. R. to B. 3.
5. Mates.		4. Any move.
	No. 48.	
1. Q. to K. sq. (ch.)		1. [K. to Q. 5.]
2. Q. to K. Kt. sq. (ch.)		2. K. to K. 4.
3. Q. to Kt. 7 (ch.).		3. [K. to Q. 3.]
4. Q. to Q. B. 7 (ch.).		4. K. takes Q.
5. Kt. to Kt. 5. Mate.		
	No. 49.	
1. Kt. to B. 6 (ch.).		1. B. takes Kt.
2. B. to Kt. 6 (ch.).		2. K. to Kt. 2.
3. B. to Q. 3 (dis. ch.).		3. B. to Kt. 4.
4. Q. to K. 5 (ch.).		4. Q. to K. B. 3.
5. K. takes R.		5. Q. takes Q. Mate.

## No. 50.

White.

1. B. takes R. (dis. ch.)
2. B. to Q. 7 (ch.).
3. B. to Q. R. 4 (dis. ch.).
4. Kt. to B. 5 (ch.).
5. P. to K. 4 (ch.).
6. B. Mates.

Black.

1. K. to K. sq.
2. K. to K. 2.
3. K. to K. 3.
4. K. to B. 4.
5. K. to Kt. 5.

## No. 51.

1. Kt. to K. B. 5.
2. Kt. to Q. 8.
3. Kt. to K. 6.
4. Kt. to Q. B. 7.
5. Kt. to Q. 5.
6. Kt. Mates.

1. B. to Q. Kt. 5. (A.)
2. B. to Q. 3.
3. B. to K. 2.
4. B. to Q. B. 4.
5. B. anywhere.

(A.)

2. Kt. to Q. R. 5.
3. Kt. to Q. Kt. 3.
4. Kt. to Q. R. sq.
5. Kt. to Q. B. 2.
6. Kt. Mates.

1. B. to K. 2.
2. B. to Q. B. 4.
3. B. to Kt. 5, or K. 6.
4. B. anywhere.
5. B. anywhere.

## No. 52.

1. B. takes K. Kt. P. (dis. ch.)
2. B. to K. 3 (ch.).
3. R. to R. 8 (ch.).
4. B. to Kt. 7 (dis. ch.).
5. Q. to Q. R. 5.
6. K. to B. sq.
7. K. to Kt. sq.
8. K. to R. sq.
9. B. to Kt. sq.
10. R. to Kt. 8 (ch.).

1. K. to R. 2.
2. P. to Kt. 3.
3. B. takes R.
4. K. takes B.
5. P. takes Q.
6. P. to R. 5.
7. P. to R. 6.
8. P. to R. 7.
9. P. Queens.
10. K. takes R. Mate.

## No. 53.

1. Kt. to K. Kt. 2.
2. Kt. to K. sq.
3. Kt. to K. Kt. 3.
4. Q. to Q. sq.

1. K. to Kt. sq.
2. K. to R. sq.
3. K. to Kt. sq.
4. K. to R. sq.

# Solutions.

561

## White.

5. Q. to Q. R. sq.
6. Kt. to K. 2.
7. Kt. to Q. B. sq.
8. K. R. to B. 8 (ch.).
9. Q. R. to B. 7 (ch.).
10. R. to R. 8 (ch.).
11. B. to R. 4 (ch.).
12. B. to B. 5 (ch.).
13. Q. Kt. to Q. 3 (ch.).
14. Q. to Kt. 2.
15. K. to B. 2.
16. R. to Q. R. 7.
17. R. to Q. R. 6.
18. K. to B. 3.
19. B. to K. Kt. 4.
20. K. to Kt. 2 (dis. ch.).
21. P. to B. 4 (dis. ch.).
22. Q. to B. sq. (ch.)
23. B. to B. 3 (ch.).
24. Q. to Kt. 5 (ch.).
25. B. to Kt. 4 (ch.).
26. B. to R. 5 (ch.).
27. R. to R. 6 (ch.).
28. Q. to Q. 8 (ch.).
29. P. to B. 5.
30. Q. to R. 8 (ch.).
31. B. to Q. 8 (ch.).
32. P. Mates.

## Black.

5. K. to Kt. sq.
6. K. to R. sq.
7. K. to Kt. sq.
8. K. to Kt. 2.
9. K. to R. 3.
10. K. to Kt. 4.
11. K. to Kt. 5.
12. K. to B. 5.
13. K. to K. 6.
14. K. to Q. 7.
15. K. to Q. 8.
16. K. to Q. 7.
17. K. to Q. 8.
18. K. to Q. 7.
19. K. to Q. 8.
20. K. to Q. 7.
21. K. to K. 6.
22. K. to K. 5.
23. K. to B. 4.
24. K. to K. 3.
25. K. to B. 2.
26. K. to K. 3.
27. K. to Q. 2.
28. K. to B. 3.
29. K. to Kt. 2.
30. K. to B. 2.
31. K. to Q. 2.

## SOLUTION TO FRONTISPICE.

1. R. to Q. 2 (db. ch.).
2. Q. to R. 3 (ch.).
3. B. to Q. R. 2 (ch.).
4. B. to K. Kt. 8 (dis. ch.).
5. B. to K. R. 7 (ch.).
6. Q. to Q. Kt. 3 (ch.).
7. Q. to Q. B. 3 (ch.).
8. R. to Kt. 2 (ch.).
9. R. to Kt. 3 (dis. ch.).
10. R. to R. 3 (ch.).
11. Q. to Q. 4.

1. K. to R. 8.
2. K. to Kt. 8.
3. K. to R. 8.
4. K. to Kt. 8.
5. R. to K. Kt. 3.
6. K. to B. 8 or R. 8.
7. K. to Kt. 8.
8. K. to R. 8.
9. K. to R. 7.
10. K. to Kt. 8.
11. K. to B. 7 or 8.

## White.

12. R. to Q. B. 3 (ch.).
13. Q. to Q. 2.
14. R. to Q. R. 3 (ch.).
15. R. to K. B. 3.
16. Q. to Q. B. sq. (ch.).
17. Q. to R. 3 (ch.).
18. R. to B. 2.
19. P. to K. 4 (dis. ch.).
20. Q. to Q. 3 (ch.).
21. Q. to K. 3 (ch.).
22. Q. to K. 2 (ch.).
23. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
24. P. to K. 5.
25. Q. to Q. R. 5 (ch.).
26. P. to K. 6.
27. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
28. P. to K. 7.
29. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
30. P. to K. 8 (bec. R.).
31. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
32. R. to K. 7.
33. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
34. R. to K. Kt. 7.
35. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
36. K. to Kt. 8.
37. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
38. K. to B. 8.
39. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
40. K. to K. 7.
41. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
42. R. at Kt. 7 to B. 7.
43. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
44. R. at B. 7 to B. 6.
45. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
46. K. to K. 6.
47. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
48. K. to K. 5.
49. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).
50. R. at B. 6 to B. 4.
51. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).
52. R. to K. Kt. 4.
53. Q. to R. 5. (ch.).

## Black.

12. K. to Kt. 7 or 8.
13. [K. to R. 8.]
14. K. to Kt. 8.
15. K. to R. 8.
16. K. to R. 7.
17. K. to Kt. 8.
18. K. to B. 7.
19. [K. to Q. 8.]
20. [K. to K. 8.]
21. K. to Q. 8.
22. K. to B. 8.
23. K. to Kt. 8.
24. K. to R. 8.
25. K. to Kt. 8.
26. K. to B. 8.
27. K. to Kt. 8.
28. K. to R. 8.
29. K. to Kt. 8.
30. K. to B. 8.
31. K. to Kt. 8.
32. K. to R. 8.
33. K. to Kt. 8.
34. K. to B. 8.
35. K. to Kt. 8.
36. K. to R. 8.
37. K. to Kt. 8.
38. K. to B. 8.
39. K. to Kt. 8.
40. K. to R. 8.
41. K. to Kt. 8.
42. K. to B. 8.
43. K. to Kt. 8.
44. K. to R. 8.
45. K. to Kt. 8.
46. K. to B. 8.
47. K. to Kt. 8.
48. K. to R. 8.
49. K. to Kt. 8.
50. K. to B. 8.
51. K. to Kt. 8.
52. K. to R. 8.
53. K. to Kt. 8.

## White.

54. K. to B. 4.  
 55. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).  
 56. K. to Kt. 3.  
 57. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).  
 58. K. to Kt. 2.  
 59. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).  
 60. K. to R. sq.  
 61. Q. to R. 5 (ch.).  
 62. R. to K. R. 2.  
 63. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).  
 64. Q. to R. 2 (ch.).  
 65. Q. to Q. Kt. 2 (ch.).  
 66. Q. to Q. B. 2 (ch.).  
 67. Q. to Q. 2 (ch.).  
 68. R. to Kt. sq. (ch.)

## Black.

54. K. to B. 8.  
 55. K. to Kt. 8.  
 56. K. to R. 8.  
 57. K. to Kt. 8.  
 58. K. to B. 8.  
 59. K. to Kt. 8.  
 60. K. to R. 8.  
 61. K. to Kt. 8.  
 62. K. to B. 8.  
 63. K. to Kt. 8.  
 64. K. to B. 8.  
 65. K. to Q. 8.  
 66. K. to K. 8.  
 67. K. to B. 8.  
 68. R. takes R. Mate.

## IV.—INDEX OF GAMES.

## KING'S KNIGHT'S GAME.

Philidor's Defence, 514 (2), 517, 522, 524.  
 Petroff's Defence, 153, 213, 224.  
 Centre Counter Gambit, 191, 263, 268.  
 Scotch Gambit, 151, 161, 170, 181, 189, 203,  
 223, 261, 264, 363.  
 Ruy Lopez Opening, 200, 218, 235, 242.  
 Giuoco Piano, 147, 150, 161, 163, 179.  
 Evans Gambit, 164, 506, 509, 520, 525, 526.

## KING'S BISHOP'S GAME.

Two Bishops' Opening, 404, 519.  
 King's Knight's Defence, 417.

## KING'S GAMBIT.

Knight's Gambit, 168.  
 Bishop's Gambit, 157, 37.  
 Gambit Declined, 238, 515.

## QUEEN'S GAMBIT.

Gambit Declined, 154, 173, 185, 194, 226.

## UNCLASSIFIED GAMES.

Queen's Bishop's Pawn's Opening, 167,  
 211.  
 Queen's Knight's Opening, 230.  
 Centre Counter Gambit, 208, 528.  
 Sicilian Opening, 148, 158, 159, 171, 177,  
 183, 188, 205, 209, 214, 220, 228, 240, 248,  
 255, 262, 362, 418, 529.  
 French Opening, 169, 174, 187, 192, 195,  
 196, 201, 214, 510.  
 Fianchetto, 197, 221.  
 Irregular Openings, 175, 199, 217, 227, 238,  
 246, 252, 506.  
 Pawn and Move, 131, 132 (2), 133, 134 (2),  
 510.

## V.—INDEX OF PROBLEMS.

## Two Moves, 299, 300.

Three " 284, 294, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305.

Four " 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283,  
 285, 288.

Five Moves, 286, 289, 291, 298, 319, 320, 321,  
 322, 323, 324, 325.

Six Moves, 295, 326, 327.

Seven " 287.

Fifteen " 296.

Conditional and Suicidal, 297, 328, 329,

3477-6











LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 015 956 521 A